

LEARN SPANISH

LEARN SPANISH FOR BEGINNERS IN YOUR CAR LIKE CRAZY. LESSONS FOR TRAVEL & EVERYDAY. HOW TO SPEAK SPANISH WITH GRAMMAR, COMMON PHRASES, VOCABULARY, CONVERSATIONS AND SHORT STORIES



LANGUAGE LEARNING SCHOOL

LEARN SPANISH

LEARN SPANISH FOR BEGINNERS IN YOUR CAR LIKE CRAZY. LESSONS FOR TRAVEL & EVERYDAY. HOW TO SPEAK SPANISH WITH GRAMMAR, COMMON PHRASES, VOCABULARY, CONVERSATIONS AND SHORT STORIES



LANGUAGE LEARNING SCHOOL

LEARN SPANISH

Learn Spanish for Beginners in Your Car Like Crazy.

Lessons for Travel & Everyday.

How to Speak Spanish with Grammar, Common
Phrases, Vocabulary, Conversations and Short
Stories.

Spanish Grammar

Spanish Conversations VOL 1

Spanish Conversations VOL 2

Spanish Common Phrases VOL 1

Spanish Common Phrases VOL 2

Spanish Short Stories

SPANISH GRAMMAR

Learn Spanish for Beginners in Your Car Like Crazy.

Language Learning Lessons for Travel and Everyday.

How to Speak Spanish with Dialogues, Dictionary,
Vocabulary and Conversations.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction

(Introducción)

CHAPTER I

ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION

(ALFABETO Y PRONUNCIACIÓN)

CHAPTER II PRONOUNS

(PRONOMBRES)

CHAPTER III BASIC VOCABULARY (LEARNING THE
SIMPLE SPANISH WORDS)

(VOCABULARIO BÁSICO (APRENDIENDO LAS PALABRAS
SIMPLES EN ESPAÑOL))

CHAPTER IV TIPS FOR PRONUNCIATION

(CONSEJOS PARA LA PRONUNCIACIÓN)

CHAPTER V HOW TO READ IN SPANISH

(CÓMO LEER EN ESPAÑOL)

CHAPTER VI

ACCENT AND ACCENTUATION OF WORDS

(ACENTO Y ACENTUACION DE PALABRAS)

CHAPTER VII

ACCENTUATION RULES

(REGLAS DE ACENTUACION)

CHAPTER VIII

TIPS FOR LEARNING NEW LANGUAGE (IMMERSIONS FOR
LEARNING)

CONSEJOS PARA APRENDER NUEVA LENGUA
(INMERSIONES PARA APRENDER).

CHAPTER IX

ARTICLES
(ARTICULOS).

CHAPTER X

NUMBERS
(NUMEROS).

CHAPTER XI

OTHER IMPORTANT LESSONS TO LEARN ABOUT SPANISH
LANGUAGE

(OTRAS LECCIONES IMPORTANTES PARA APRENDER SOBRE
LENGUA ESPAÑOL).

CHAPTER XII

VERBS
(VERBOS).

CHAPTER XIII

DOUBLED VOCABULARY AND PHRASES FOR
PRACTICING SPANISH

(VOCABULARIO DOBLADO Y FRASES PARA PRACTICAR EL
ESPAÑOL).

CONCLUSION

(CONCLUSIÓN).

© Copyright 2019 by Language Learning School - All rights reserved.

The following Book is reproduced below with the goal of providing information that is as accurate and reliable as possible. Regardless, purchasing this Book can be seen as consent to the fact that both the publisher and the author of this book are in no way experts on the topics discussed within and that any recommendations or suggestions that are made herein are for entertainment purposes only. Professionals should be consulted as needed prior to undertaking any of the action endorsed herein. This declaration is deemed fair and valid by both the American Bar Association and the Committee of Publishers Association and is legally binding throughout the United States.

Furthermore, the transmission, duplication, or reproduction of any of the following work including specific information will be considered an illegal act irrespective of if it is done electronically or in print. This extends to creating a secondary or tertiary copy of the work or a recorded copy and is only allowed with the express written consent from the Publisher. All additional right reserved.

The information in the following pages is broadly considered a truthful and accurate account of facts and as such, any inattention, use, or misuse of the information in question by the reader will render any resulting actions solely under their purview. There are no scenarios in which the publisher or the original author of this work can be in any fashion deemed liable for any hardship or damages that may befall them after undertaking information described herein.

Additionally, the information in the following pages is intended only for informational purposes and should thus be thought of as universal. As befitting its nature, it is presented without assurance regarding its prolonged validity or interim quality. Trademarks that are mentioned are done without written consent and can in no way be considered an endorsement from the trademark holder.

Introduction

(Introducción)

Learning is different from growth. Just because you are growing does not mean that you are learning. Learning is more focused on human strategy to solve a certain problem. There is a lot of ways on learning and one of which is knowing that it is different from growth. Growth is attributable to physical development, for instance the development of body hair (mustache) or the increase in one's height and weight. But once again, it does not follow that a growing man is a learning man too. *(El aprendizaje es diferente del crecimiento. El hecho de que esté creciendo no significa que esté aprendiendo. La inclinación se centra más en la estrategia humana para resolver un problema determinado. Hay muchas maneras de aprender y una de ellas es saber que es diferente del crecimiento. El crecimiento es atribuible al desarrollo físico, por ejemplo, el desarrollo del vello corporal (bigote) o el aumento de la altura y el peso. Pero una vez más, no se sigue que un hombre en crecimiento sea un hombre que aprende también.)*

It is caused by the person's experiences in which case, the learnings obtained from there are considered as permanent. From the absence of knowledge, it will be changed to the presence of knowledge that is permanent. It means it is long-term. On the other hand, the focus of such change is the knowledge itself that is previously absent in one's mind. Through that, the behavior of the learner has also changed. Possibly, his self-confidence will be developed because of the additional learnings. Another, since learning is a change in one's life through his experience, which would mean that it is for the betterment of the learner. It is different from the change in one's system through bad vices like alcoholism, drug-use, and even fatigue. In these cases, the learner will become of low morale or will lose his confidence rather than develop it. *(Es causado por las experiencias de la persona, en cuyo caso, los aprendizajes obtenidos de allí se consideran permanentes. De la ausencia de conocimiento, se cambiará a*

la presencia de conocimiento que es permanente. Significa que es a largo plazo. Por otro lado, el foco de tal cambio es el conocimiento en sí mismo que previamente estaba ausente en la mente de uno. A través de eso, el comportamiento del alumno también ha cambiado. Posiblemente, su confianza en sí mismo se desarrollará debido a los aprendizajes adicionales. Otro, ya que el aprendizaje es un cambio en la vida de uno a través de su experiencia, lo que significaría que es para el mejoramiento del alumno. Es diferente del cambio en el sistema de uno a través de malos vicios como el alcoholismo, el uso de drogas e incluso la fatiga. En estos casos, el alumno perderá la moral o perderá su confianza en lugar de desarrollarla.)

Spanish learning is either not easy or not that difficult. It is just in the middle, wherein the learner must only develop his own strategy on how to approach the process. Just do not fall into the wrong way of dealing with the problems you might encounter along the way. *(Aprender español no es fácil o no es tan difícil. Es justo en el medio, donde el alumno solo debe desarrollar su propia estrategia sobre cómo abordar el proceso. Simplemente no caiga en la forma incorrecta de lidiar con los problemas que pueda encontrar en el camino.)*

The first thing to remember is that you must not consider yourself in a rush. No one will check your grammar tomorrow or even next week. In other words, you just need a lot of time, say one year, for instance. Then after a year of learning the Spanish Grammar Course, do not expect that you have already attained perfection. It takes another year to attain fluency. *(Lo primero que debe recordar es que no debe considerarse apurado, nadie revisará su gramática mañana, incluso la próxima semana. En otras palabras, solo necesita mucho tiempo, por ejemplo, un año. Luego, después de un año de aprender el curso de gramática española, no esperes que ya hayas alcanzado la perfección. Se necesita otro año para alcanzar la fluidez.)*

Another thing to remember is that Spanish people learning fluent Spanish are different from English-speaking people who do not have a slight knowledge about Spanish. The former is at an advantage because even if

they are not expert in the Spanish Language but they already have a piece of knowledge about basic Spanish Language, and they could hear people talking to each other everyday using the said language. *(Otra cosa para recordar es que los españoles que aprenden español con fluidez son diferentes de las personas de habla inglesa que no tienen un ligero conocimiento del español. El primero tiene una ventaja porque incluso si no son expertos en el idioma español pero ya tienen un conocimiento básico del idioma español, y podían escuchar a las personas hablando entre sí todos los días usando dicho idioma.)*

CHAPTER I

ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION

(ALFABETO Y PRONUNCIACIÓN)

Learning the Spanish Alphabet involves three processes: *First* , you have to know the English Alphabet (*a-z* with the inclusion of *ch*, *ll*, *ñ*, and *rr*);

Second, you have to know its Spanish equivalent; *and Third* , you have to learn some friendly tips on how to pronounce it correctly. (*Aprender el alfabeto español implica tres procesos: primero, debe conocer el alfabeto inglés (a-z con la inclusión de ch, ll, ñ y rr); Segundo, debes saber su equivalente en español; y Tercero, debes aprender algunos consejos amigables sobre cómo pronunciarlo correctamente.*)

The first thing for you to do is start from letter a – i: (*Lo primero que debe hacer es comenzar desde la letra a - i:*)

English Alphabet (Alfabeto Inglés)	Spanish Equivalent (Equivalente Español)	Friendly Tips on How to Pronounce it Correctly (Consejos Amigables Sobre Cómo Pronunciarlo Correctamente)
A	A	In pronouncing this letter, you must say A as in Ah, which is the same sound you make (<i>Al pronunciar esta letra, debe decir A como en Ah, que es el mismo sonido que hace al aceptar algo.</i>)
B	BE	The proper way of pronouncing the letter is just like the same with the letter B in the English Alphabet. (<i>La forma correcta de pronunciar la letra es exactamente igual con</i>

		<i>la letra B del alfabeto inglés.)</i>
C	CE	<p>It is spelled as <i>CE</i>, but it is pronounced as <i>Se</i> (like the sound of letter <i>S</i> in English Alphabet). Another tip is that in some parts of Spain, it is pronounced as <i>The/Thi</i> (like the sound of <i>Th</i> in the word <i>Thick</i>)</p> <p><i>(Se deletrea como CE pero se pronuncia como Se (como el sonido de la letra S en alfabeto inglés). Otro consejo es que en algunas partes de España, se pronuncia como The / Thi (como el sonido de Th en la palabra Thick)</i></p>
CH	CHE	<p>This is no longer considered as a letter in the English Alphabet, but since it is most often used in Spanish conversation, it is still included in this list. It is pronounced as <i>Che/Chi</i> (like the sound of the word <i>Cheese</i>).</p> <p><i>(Esto ya no se considera como una letra en el alfabeto inglés, pero</i></p>

		<p><i>como se usa con mayor frecuencia en la conversación en español, todavía se incluye en esta lista. Se pronuncia como Che / Chi (como el sonido de la palabra Queso)</i></p>
D	DE	<p>It is pronounced as the letter <i>D</i> of the English Alphabet. It is the same sound used in words like <i>Then, The</i> or <i>They</i>. <i>(Se pronuncia como la letra D del alfabeto inglés. Es el mismo sonido usado en las palabras Then, The o They.)</i></p>
E	E	<p>If you are going to pronounce this letter, think that it is the same sound you make in clarifying a certain statement. <i>(Eh? Can you please say it again?)</i> <i>(Si va a pronunciar esta letra, piense que es el mismo sonido que hace al aclarar cierta afirmación.</i> <i>(¿Eh? ¿Puedes decirlo de nuevo?)</i></p>
F	EFE	<p>It is the same sound you</p>

		use in the English Alphabet <i>F</i> only that it is has a letter <i>E</i> at the end. <i>(Es el mismo sonido que usa en el alfabeto inglés F solo que tiene una letra E al final.)</i>
G	GE	When pronounced, it resembles the sound of letter <i>H</i> in English Alphabet and followed by an English letter <i>E</i> . <i>(Cuando se pronuncia, se asemeja al sonido de la letra H en alfabeto inglés y seguido de una letra en inglés E.)</i>
H	HACHE	The correct pronunciation of this is <i>Ah-Che</i> which means it must be silent <i>H</i> . <i>(La pronunciación correcta de esto es Ah-Che, lo que significa que debe ser silencioso H.)</i>
I	I	In pronouncing the letter, it is just the same with the letter <i>E</i> only that it is shorter than <i>Ee</i> . <i>(Al pronunciar la letra, es igual con la letra E solo que es más corta que Ee.)</i>

Now, you need to practice using it in a sentence.
 (*Ahora, necesita practicar su uso en una oración.*)

English Alphabet (Alfabeto Inglés)	Spanish Equivalent (Equivalente Español)	Sentence Use (Uso de Oraciones)
A	A	¿ A dónde vas? (Where are you going?)
B	BE	La b iología es mi materia favorita. (Biology is my favorite subject.)
C	CE	Mi c asa es simple. (My house is simple.)
CH	CHE	Me encanta ch atear con mi amigo. (I love chatting with my friend.)
D	DE	Quiero hacer d ieta pero también quiero comer mucho. (I want to diet but I also want to eat a lot.)
E	E	No use un signo de e xclamación, parece que está enojado. (Do not use an exclamation point, it seems that you are angry.)
F	EFE	Ella es f amosa. (She is famous.)
G	GE	Ella tiene una g ran boda. (She has a great

		wedding.)
H	HACHE	El h ambre es visible hoy en día. (<i>Hunger is visible today.</i>)
I	I	Me gusta construir un i mperio. (<i>I like to build an empire.</i>)

Then, continue from letters j – q:
(Luego, continúe de las letras j – q:)

English Alphabet (Alfabeto Inglés)	Spanish Equivalent (Equivalente Español)	Friendly Tips on How to Pronounce it Correctly (Consejos Amigables Sobre Cómo Pronunciarlo Correctamente)
J	JOTA	The proper way of pronouncing it is like the letter <i>H</i> in the English Alphabet. Remember that even if it is spelled as <i>J</i> however, it does not mean that it should be pronounced as <i>Judge</i> . (<i>La forma correcta de pronunciarlo es como la letra H en el alfabeto inglés. Recuerde que incluso si se deletrea como J, sin embargo, no significa que deba pronunciarse como</i>

		<i>Juez.)</i>
K	CA	It is not used regularly in the Spanish Language, but for purposes of learning Spanish Grammar, it is pronounced like the English <i>K</i> . (<i>No se usa regularmente en español, pero con el propósito de aprender gramática española, se pronuncia como el inglés K.</i>)
L	ELE	The correct pronunciation of this letter is just the same as the letter <i>L</i> in the English Alphabet. However, it is slightly raised to the mouth roof or has a letter <i>E</i> at the end. (<i>La pronunciación correcta de esta letra es la misma con la letra L en alfabeto inglés. Sin embargo, está ligeramente elevado al techo de la boca o tiene una letra E al final.</i>)
LL	ELLE	Like <i>Ch</i> , <i>LL</i> is no longer considered as included in the English Alphabet. But, for the purpose of

		<p>Spanish Grammar, it is still included in this list. It is important because some words contain <i>Ll</i> like <i>yellow</i>. When it comes to proper pronunciation, it resembles the letter <i>J</i> of the English Alphabet. <i>(Al igual que Ch, LL ya no se considera incluido en el alfabeto inglés. Pero, a los efectos de la gramática española, todavía se incluye en esta lista. Es importante porque algunas palabras contienen Ll como amarillo. Cuando se trata de una pronunciación adecuada, se asemeja a la letra J del alfabeto inglés.)</i></p>
M	EME	<p>This is just the same with the English Alphabet <i>M</i>. <i>(Esto es lo mismo con el alfabeto inglés M.)</i></p>
N	ENE	<p>It is pronounced similarly with the English Alphabet <i>N</i>. <i>(Se pronuncia de manera similar con el alfabeto inglés N.)</i></p>

Ñ	EÑE	For the correct pronunciation of this letter, it is similar to the <i>Ni</i> in the English word <i>Onion</i> . <i>(Para la pronunciación correcta de esta letra, es similar con el Ni en la palabra inglesa Onion.)</i>
O	O	This is a short version of the English Alphabet <i>O</i> . <i>(Esta es una versión corta del alfabeto inglés O.)</i>
P	P	You have to hold your breath and breathe out minimally as you pronounce the letter <i>P</i> in English Alphabet. <i>(Debe contener la respiración y exhalar mínimamente mientras pronuncia la letra P en alfabeto inglés.)</i>
Q	CU	In order for you to properly pronounce this letter, you have to combine <i>K</i> of the English Alphabet and the letter <i>U</i> of the same English Alphabet. <i>(Para poder pronunciar correctamente esta letra, debe combinar K</i>

	<i>del alfabeto inglés y la letra U del mismo alfabeto inglés.)</i>
--	---

For a better understanding of the Spanish Alphabet, it is important to test our ability by using these in sentences: *(Para una mejor comprensión del alfabeto español, es importante probar nuestra habilidad mediante el uso de estos en oraciones:)*

English Alphabet (Alfabeto Inglés)	Spanish Equivalent (Equivalente Español)	Sentence Use (Uso de Oraciones)
J	JOTA	Soy español pero hablo j aponés. (<i>I am Spanish but I speak Japanese.</i>)
K	CA	Puedo caminar 1 k ilómetro. (<i>I can walk 1 kilometer.</i>)
L	ELE	Uso la l ámpara si no hay corriente. (<i>I use the lamp if there is no power.</i>)
LL	ELLE	Se ll ama felicidad. (<i>It is called happiness.</i>)
M	EME	Eres tan m agnifico. (<i>You are so magnificent.</i>)
N	ENE	Amo n adar. (<i>I love swimming.</i>)
Ñ	EÑE	Tengo miedo de ñ us. (<i>I am scared of wildebeest.</i>)
O	O	¿Que es la o casion? (<i>What is the occasion?</i>)
P	P	Me gusta el p imiento rojo. (<i>I like red pepper.</i>)
Q	CU	¿Por q ué te pones rojo? (<i>Why do you wear red?</i>)

Then the last batch of letters in the Spanish Alphabet is from r – z:
(Entonces el último lote de letras en el alfabeto español es de r - z:)

English Alphabet <i>(Alfabeto Inglés)</i>	Spanish Equivalent <i>(Equivalente Español)</i>	Friendly Tips on How to Pronounce it Correctly <i>(Consejos Amigables Sobre Cómo Pronunciarlo Correctamente)</i>
R	ERE	It sounds like the letter <i>R</i> in the English Alphabet, only that it is slightly touching the roof of the mouth. Aside from that, there is a letter <i>E</i> at the end of the word. <i>(Suena como la letra R en el alfabeto inglés, solo que toca ligeramente el paladar. Aparte de eso, hay una letra E al final de la palabra.)</i>
RR	DOBLE ERE	Again, just like the <i>Ch</i> and the <i>Ll</i> , <i>Rr</i> is not included in the letters of the English Alphabet. But for purposes of learning the Spanish Language, there is a need for it to be understood. It is a little difficult, but with

practice, everything will be easier. For instance, the word *butter*, the *Tt* is similar to the *Rr*. When pronounced using the American

pronunciation, you have to remember how did you pronounce the *Tt* in the middle of the word *butter*, that will be how you will pronounce words with *Rr* too.

(Nuevamente, al igual que Ch y Ll, Rr no está incluido en las letras del alfabeto inglés. Pero para aprender el idioma español, es necesario que se entienda. Es un poco difícil pero con práctica, todo será más fácil. Por ejemplo, la palabra mantequilla, el Tt es similar al Rr. Cuando se pronuncia usando la pronunciación americana, debe recordar cómo pronunció el Tt en el medio de la palabra mantequilla, así también pronunciará las palabras con Rr.)

S	ESE	When pronounced, it is similar to the English Alphabet <i>S</i> . (<i>Cuando se pronuncia, es similar con el alfabeto inglés S.</i>)
T	TE	It is almost the same with the English Alphabet <i>T</i> however in Spanish it is shorter and softer, touching the teeth with the tongue and immediately released. (<i>Es casi lo mismo con el alfabeto inglés T, sin embargo, en español es más corto y suave, toca los dientes con la lengua y se libera de inmediato.</i>)
U	U	It is very much simple to understand since it is similar to <i>Oo</i> , as in the case of word <i>food</i> . (<i>Es muy simple de entender ya que es similar con Oo como en el caso de la palabra comida.</i>)
V	VE	It was discussed in letter <i>B</i> of the Spanish Alphabet that it is similar to this <i>V</i> in English Alphabet. There is less breathing, and

		<p>there is only a slight touch of the tongue to the teeth. (<i>En la letra B del alfabeto español se discutió que es similar con esta V en el alfabeto inglés. Hay menos respiración y solo hay un ligero toque de la lengua a los dientes.</i>)</p>
W	DOBLE VE	<p>It is being pronounced as <i>Dob-leh Be</i>. However, in the English Alphabet, it is similar to the English Alphabet W. (<i>Se pronuncia como Dob-leh Be. Sin embargo, en el alfabeto inglés, es similar con el alfabeto inglés W.</i>)</p>
X	EQUIS	<p>It is very easy to pronounce this letter, as it is only pronounced <i>ks</i>. For instance, in the word <i>socks</i>, the last two letters of which (<i>ks</i>) is the sound of <i>X</i> in the English Alphabet. (<i>Es muy fácil pronunciar esta letra, ya que solo se pronuncia ks. Por ejemplo, en la palabra calcetines, las dos</i></p>

		<i>ultimas letras (ks) son el sonido de X en alfabeto inglés.)</i>
Y	I GRIEGA	The sound of this letter is <i>Ee Gryeh-gah</i> . It sounds like the letter Y of the English Alphabet. But at the end of the word, it may sound like <i>I</i> (pronounced as <i>Hay</i>) and <i>Ye</i> . (<i>El sonido de esta carta es Ee Gryeh-gah. Suena como la letra Y del alfabeto inglés. Pero al final de la palabra, puede sonar como I (pronunciado como Hay) y Ye.</i>)
Z	ZETA	It is pronounced as <i>Se-tah</i> or the letter S of the English Alphabet. However, in some parts of Spain, they pronounce it as <i>Th</i> like in the word <i>Thick</i> or <i>Thin</i> . (<i>Se pronuncia como Se-tah o la letra S del alfabeto inglés. Sin embargo, en algunas partes de España, lo pronuncian como Th como en la palabra Grueso o Fino.</i>)

Now, you should use this last batch of letters in the Spanish Alphabet in a sentence in order for you to practice the word pronunciation: *(Ahora, debe usar este último lote de letras en el alfabeto español en una oración para poder practicar la pronunciación de la palabra:)*

CHAPTER II

PRONOUNS

(PRONOMBRES)

Pronouns are used in order to stop you from using and reusing the subject or the noun. Take, for instance, this example, “*The boat is sinking. It is sinking.*” In this sentence, the noun is “boat” and since you have already mentioned it in your first sentence, you do not need to repeat the word “boat” in the second and succeeding sentences. Instead, it should be replaced by the pronoun “It.” (*Los pronombres se usan para evitar que use y reutilice el sujeto o el sustantivo. Tomemos, por ejemplo, este ejemplo: “El bote se está hundiendo. Se está hundiendo”. En esta oración, el sustantivo es “ bote ”y como ya lo mencionó en su primera oración, no necesita repetir la palabra“ bote ”en la segunda oración y en las siguientes. En cambio, debe ser reemplazado por el pronombre "It."*)

In the succeeding discussion, you will be able to learn the use and importance of some pronouns, like in the English Alphabet, these are the following: (*En la siguiente discusión, podrá aprender el uso y la importancia de algunos pronombres, como en el alfabeto inglés, estos son los siguientes:*)

First Person (Primera Persona)	Second Person (Segunda Persona)	Third Person (Tercera Persona)
Singular (Singular)		
I (Yo)	You (Tú)	It (Eso) , He (Él) , She n(Ella)
Plural (Plural)		
We (Nosotros/Nosotras)	You (Tú)	They (Ellos/Ellas)

ENGLISH ALPHABET (ALFABETO INGLÉS)

There is a need for you to know how to use the pronouns in the English Alphabet in order for you to make a comparison with the pronouns used in the Spanish Alphabet. You will see below thirteen rules in the proper use of pronouns. (*Es necesario que sepa cómo usar los pronombres en el alfabeto inglés para poder hacer una comparación con los pronombres usados en el alfabeto español. Verá a continuación trece reglas en el uso apropiado de los pronombres.*)

•

Rule Number I. This is similar to the abovementioned example wherein the pronoun is the subject in that particular sentence. (*Regla número I. Esto es similar al ejemplo mencionado anteriormente en el que el pronombre es el sujeto en esa oración en particular.*)

_____ is sinking. (Here, you are referring to the boat)

_____ *se está hundiendo.* (*Aquí te refieres al bote*)

What qualifies in the blank is the appropriate pronoun for the word “boat.”

Lo que califica en el espacio en blanco es el pronombre apropiado para la palabra "barco".

You have to ask yourself, what person is the boat? Is it singular or plural?

Tienes que preguntarte, ¿qué persona es el barco? ¿Es singular o plural?

In this example, a boat is a third person and is singular. You look at the abovementioned table, what must be used is “It,” hence **It** is sinking.

En este ejemplo, un barco es una tercera persona y es singular. Si observa la tabla mencionada anteriormente, lo que debe usarse es "Eso", por lo tanto, se está hundiendo.

•

Rule Number II. This is the second use of the pronoun, which is the renaming of the subject. (*Regla número II. Este es el segundo uso del pronombre que es el cambio de nombre del sujeto.*)

It is we who are writing this literature.

Somos nosotros quienes estamos escribiendo esta literatura.

- **Rule Number III. This rule is similar to the second rule. If you are going to rename the subject, the verb that must be used must agree to the pronoun used. Here are some examples that will make you spot what is wrong with the “Incorrect” example.** (*Regla número III. Esta regla es similar a la segunda regla. Si va a cambiar el nombre del sujeto, el verbo que debe usarse debe coincidir con el pronombre usado. Aquí hay algunos ejemplos que lo harán detectar lo que está mal con el ejemplo "Incorrecto."*)

<p align="center">Wrong Combination of Subject and Verb <i>(Combinación Incorrecta de Sujeto y Verbo)</i></p>	<p align="center">Correct Combination of Subject and Verb <i>(Combinación Correcta de Sujeto y Verbo)</i></p>
<p>It is I who is writing this literature.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is (I is) correct? NO. <p><i>Soy yo quien escribe esta literatura.</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ¿Es (es) correcto? NO. 	<p>It is I who am writing this literature.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is (I am) correct? YES. <p><i>Soy yo quien escribe esta literatura.</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ¿Es (soy) correcto? SÍ.

•

Rule Number IV. This rule explains more about the use of pronoun as an object pronoun. In this instance, the pronoun is either direct, indirect object or the object of the preposition. (*Regla número IV. Esta regla explica más sobre el uso del pronombre como pronombre de objeto. En este caso, el pronombre es un objeto directo, indirecto o el objeto de la preposición.*)

His mother scolded him. (In this case, **him** here is the direct object, because it is being described by the word **scolded**.)

Su madre lo regañó. (En este caso, él aquí es el objeto directo, porque lo describe la palabra regañada).

Lend me your ear. (In this instance, **me** is the indirect object, because it has an implied **to/for** appearing before the word itself. Hence, lend your ears (to) **me**.)

Préstame tus orejas. (En este caso, yo es el objeto indirecto, porque tiene implícito a / para aparecer antes de la palabra misma. Por lo tanto, preste sus oídos (a) mí.

Is he looking at **her**? (In this instance, **her** is the object of the preposition **at**.)

¿La está mirando a ella? (En este caso, ella es el objeto de la preposición en.)

•

Rule Number V. This rule refers to some pronouns like who, which, and that. Some speakers (the ones who use grammar all the time) are confused with the use of is and are in these examples. (*Regla número V. Esta regla se refiere a algunos pronombres como quién, qué y eso. Algunos oradores (los que usan gramática todo el tiempo) se confunden con el uso de is y are en estos ejemplos.*)

The Use of IS After WHO	The Use of ARE After WHO
--------------------------------	---------------------------------

<i>El Uso De IS Después De La WHO</i>	<i>El Uso De ARE Después De La WHO</i>
<p>She is the only one among those girls who is loyal to her partner.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Here, what is being described by WHO is SHE that is why it must be followed by IS. <p><i>Ella es la única entre esas chicas que es leal a su pareja.</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aquí, lo que está describiendo la WHO es ELLA, por eso debe ser seguido por el SI. 	<p>She is one of those girls who are not loyal to their partners.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Here, what is being described by WHO is THOSE GIRLS that is why it must be followed by ARE. <p><i>Ella es una de esas chicas que no son leales a sus parejas.</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aquí, lo que está describiendo la WHO es AQUELLAS CHICAS, por eso debe ser seguido por ARE.

- **Rule Number VI. The pronouns that are singular must also be supported with singular verbs. To some, it is somewhat confusing but always remember that if a pronoun is singular, the verb must have an S at its end (meaning, it is singular). On the other hand, if the verb does not have an S at its end, it means it is plural. (Regla número VI. Los pronombres que son singulares también deben ser compatibles con verbos singulares. Para algunos, es algo confuso, pero siempre recuerde que si un pronombre es singular, el verbo debe tener una S al final (es decir, es singular). Por otro lado, si el verbo no tiene una S en su extremo, significa que es plural.)**

- **Each** of the kids **dances** gracefully. (It means that the kids “individually” classified means only **one**. Hence, the **kid** is singular, and it must be supported by a singular verb, too (dances). (*Cada uno de los niños baila con gracia. (Significa que los niños clasificados "individualmente" significan solo uno. Por lo tanto, el niño es singular, y también debe ser apoyado por un verbo singular (danzas).*)

- **Rule Number VII. This rule explains that in the inclusion of AS or THAN in a sentence, you must apply your mental analysis. This one example will give you a clarity of mind.** (*Regla número VII. Esta regla explica que al incluir AS o THAN en una oración, debe aplicar su análisis mental. Este ejemplo te dará claridad mental.*)

<p style="text-align: center;">INCORRECT USE OF AS/THAN (USO INCORRECTO DE AS / THAN)</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">CORRECT USE OF AS/THAN (USO CORRECTO DE AS / THAN)</p>
<p>I am as tired as her .</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Applying the mental analysis, you should complete the sentence, (<i>I am as tired as her is) is not correct.</i> 	<p>I am as tired as she .</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Applying the same analysis, you should complete the sentence, (<i>I am as tired as she is) is correct.</i>

- **Rule Number VIII. It must be remembered that there are known as possessive pronouns. Among these are the**

following: (*Regla número VIII. Debe recordarse que se conocen como pronombres posesivos. Entre estos están los siguientes*):

○

Yours, His, Hers, Its, Ours, Theirs and Whose.

■

You only need not be confused about the use of apostrophes. In possessive pronouns, the following are incorrect: (*No necesita confundirse con el uso de apóstrofes. En pronombres posesivos, los siguientes son incorrectos:*)

•

Your's

•

His'

•

Her's

•

It's

•

Our's

•

Their's

•

Who'se

•

Rule Number IX. The use of an apostrophe is a must in these examples. (*Regla número IX. El uso del apóstrofe es imprescindible en estos ejemplos.*)

It is my own car. (**It's** my own car.)

Es mi propio carro. (Es mi propio auto).

•

Rule Number X. The tenth rule is about the so called reflexive pronouns, which are used if the subject and the object are the same person.

•

Regla número X. La décima regla trata sobre los llamados pronombres reflexivos, que se usan si el sujeto y el objeto son la misma persona.

He carried it all by **himself** . (*Lo llevó todo solo.*)

•

Rule Number XI. Consistency is also the key to a good grammar. For instance, you started with a singular pronoun, then the second phrase must also be singular. You try looking at this example: (*Regla número XI. La consistencia también es la clave para una buena gramática. Por ejemplo, comenzaste con pronombres singulares, luego la segunda frase también debe ser singular. Intenta mirar este ejemplo:*

Somebody must fix this faucet, and **they** must be professional enough to do the job.

*Here, there is an inconsistency. **Somebody** is a singular, and **they** is a plural one.*

The correct construction is: **Somebody must fix this faucet, and he must be professional enough to do the job.**

Alguien debe arreglar este grifo, y debe ser lo suficientemente profesional como para hacer el trabajo.

Aquí hay inconsistencia. Alguien es singular y es plural.

La construcción correcta es: Alguien debe arreglar este grifo y debe ser lo suficientemente profesional como para hacer el trabajo.

•

Rule Number XII. This rule discusses the combination of pronouns and added with a conjunction AND. Here, if you remove the AND, what will be left must still be grammatically correct. (*Regla número XII. Esta regla trata sobre la*

combinación de pronombres y se agrega con una conjunción AND. Aquí, si elimina el AND, lo que quedará aún debe ser gramaticalmente correcto.

<p style="text-align: center;">INCORRECT USE OF RULE XII (USO INCORRECTO DE LA REGLA XII)</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">CORRECT USE OF RULE XII (USO CORRECTO DE LA REGLA XII)</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Him <i>and</i> his brother arrived early this morning. <p>➤ Here, if you remove “and,” what will be left is no longer grammatically correct. Hence, Him arrived early this morning.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He <i>and</i> his brother arrived early this morning. <p>➤ Here, if you remove “and,” what will be left is still grammatically correct. Hence, He arrived early this morning.</p>

SPANISH ALPHABET (ALFABETO ESPAÑOL)

The following are some of the pronouns that are used in the Spanish Alphabet: *(Los siguientes son algunos de los pronombres que se usan en el alfabeto español:)*

<p style="text-align: center;">Spanish Pronoun (Pronombre Español)</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">English Equivalent (Equivalent en Inglés)</p>
<p>PERSONAL PRONOUNS (PRONOMBRES PERSONALES)</p>	
Yo	I
Tú	You in its singular form

Usted	You in its formal form
Él, ella	He, She
Nosotros/ nosotras	We
Vosotros/ vosotras	You in its plural
Ustedes	You in its formal form (plural)
Ellos, ellas	They
DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS (PRONOMBRES DEMOSTRATIVOS)	
Éste	This
Ése	That
Éstos	These
Ésos	Those
Ésta	This in its singular feminine form
Ésa	That in its singular feminine form
Éstas	These in its plural feminine form
Ésas	Those in its plural feminine form
Esto	This in its neuter form
Eso	That in its neuter form

In order to understand the abovementioned discussion on *pronouns* , these must be used in sentences. You must see these sample sentences for better understanding and grasp of the lesson. *(Para entender la discusión mencionada anteriormente sobre los pronombres, estos deben usarse en oraciones. Debe ver estas oraciones de muestra para una mejor comprensión y comprensión de la lección.)*

1.

Mi hermano es un empresario consumado. **Él** es un buen padre también.

- **My brother is an accomplished businessman. He is a good father too.**

2.

Mi esposa es la mejor mujer de la ciudad. **Ella** también es una buena madre.

- **My wife is the best woman in town. She is also a good mother.**

3.

Tengo un par de zapatos de buena calidad. Es de color brillante.

- **I have a good pair of shoes. It is of bright color.**

For a better understanding of the proper pronunciation of the Spanish Language, there is a need to read a short story with Spanish translation. It has been proven to be one of the most effective ways of learning the Spanish Language. Here, the proper pronunciation will be practiced because you, as a reader, are obliged to repeat reading it over and over again. At the end of these short stories, you will find it a little easier to pronounce the words. But always remember that you need to speak louder because if you listen to yourself while speaking those words, you will be able to make your tongue flexible enough to adjust from one kind of accent to another. *(Para una mejor comprensión de la pronunciación correcta del idioma español, es necesario leer una historia corta con traducción al español. Se ha demostrado que es una de las formas más efectivas de aprender español. Aquí, se practicará la pronunciación correcta porque usted, como lector, está obligado a repetir la lectura una y otra vez. Al final de estas historias cortas, le resultará un poco más fácil pronunciar las palabras. Pero recuerde siempre que necesita hablar más alto porque si se escucha a sí mismo mientras pronuncia esas palabras, podrá hacer que su lengua sea lo suficientemente flexible como para adaptarse de un tipo de acento a otro.)*

The first Spanish short story that you will practice reading in this Chapter is the one entitled *Cayendo Hacia La Tierra*, or in English Language, it means

Falling Towards Earth. At first, you might think that this short story is a tragic one. But the truth is that it is one of the most beautiful and inspiring short stories of all time. This revolves upon the fear of a boy (the character in this short story). That fear includes jumping off the plane in order to experience sky diving. The truth is that his entire body seems like trembling because of the anticipated jumping off. It is very scary at first, but as time passes by, he learned how to trust his sky diving instructor. He developed this confidence that his instructor will not let him fall without the needed safeguards. *(La primera historia corta en español que practicaré leer en este Capítulo es la titulada Cayendo Hacia La Tierra o en inglés, significa Falling Towards Earth. Al principio, podrías pensar que esta historia corta es trágica. Pero la verdad es que es una de las historias cortas más bellas e inspiradoras de todos los tiempos. Esto gira en torno al miedo a un niño (el personaje de este cuento). Ese miedo incluye saltar del avión para experimentar el paracaidismo. La verdad es que todo su cuerpo parece temblar debido al salto anticipado. Al principio da mucho miedo, pero a medida que pasa el tiempo, aprendió a confiar en su instructor de paracaidismo. Desarrolló esta confianza de que su instructor no lo dejará caer sin las garantías necesarias.)*

At first, the boy has experienced the worst feeling ever when it comes to fear. He has a lot of fear in his life, but diving in the sky is the worst of all. He thought that he would never get out of such situation alive. Anxiety slowly crawls into his being, and all the negative thoughts are playing in his mind. He prayed and put it all in the decision of his instructor. He learned how to follow the rules and regulations of the instructors. At first, he just moves so slowly. It appears that he is not actually moving, but the truth is that he moves but in a very minimal steps. Until he is now in front of the door and he does not have any choice but to be strong enough and brave enough to jump off the plane. The instructor now opens the door, and a very powerful wind approaches him. Again, he just prays, and nervousness is slowly cracking his entire body. But he does not have any choice but to jump. He now jumps off! *(Al principio, el niño ha experimentado el peor sentimiento de miedo. Tiene mucho miedo en su vida, pero bucear en el*

cielo es lo peor de todo. Pensó que nunca saldría vivo de tal situación. La ansiedad lentamente se arrastra hacia su ser y todos los pensamientos negativos están jugando en su mente. Rezó y lo puso todo en la decisión de su instructor. Aprendió a seguir las reglas y regulaciones de los instructores. Al principio, se mueve muy lentamente. Parece que en realidad no se está moviendo, pero la verdad es que se mueve, pero en pasos muy mínimos. Hasta ahora, él está frente a la puerta y no tiene más remedio que ser lo suficientemente fuerte y valiente como para saltar del avión. El instructor ahora abre la puerta y un viento muy poderoso se le acerca. Nuevamente, él solo reza y el nerviosismo está rompiendo lentamente todo su cuerpo. Pero no tiene más remedio que saltar. ¡Ahora salta!)

He shouted as loud as he could, it gives him relief from the existing fear and all the anticipated fear as well. His instructor, as what he has expected, did not leave him. He is still behind him and assisting him as he experiences the sky diving the first time. He pacifies him and promises that just if he relaxes, he will experience the best sky diving experience ever. His instructor did not fail him because, in just a few minutes, he is slowly beginning to enjoy the view that he is able to see. The trees, the birds chirping lively, the mountains as high as the sky, the clouds which resemble the appearance of a very big cotton. He is totally enjoying the view, he loves it, and as he flies the sky, he promises to himself that that will not be the last time that he will do the sky diving. He also promises that he will recommend it to his friends, and let them experience the happiness and contentment that he feels now. *(Gritó tan fuerte como pudo, lo alivia del miedo existente y de todo el miedo anticipado también. Su instructor, como lo esperaba, no lo dejó. Él todavía está detrás de él y lo ayuda mientras experimenta el paracaidismo la primera vez. Lo tranquiliza y promete que solo si se relaja, experimentará la mejor experiencia de paracaidismo. Su instructor no le falló porque en solo unos minutos, lentamente comienza a disfrutar de la vista que puede ver. Los árboles, los pájaros cantando animadamente, las montañas tan altas como el cielo, las nubes que se asemejan a la apariencia de un algodón muy grande. Está disfrutando totalmente la vista, le encanta y mientras vuela por el cielo, se promete a sí*

mismo que esa no será la última vez que hará el paracaidismo. También promete que lo recomendará a sus amigos y les permitirá experimentar la felicidad y la satisfacción que siente ahora.)

You must have read it aloud and if you are lucky enough to have the luxury of time, you must from time to time look at the mirror in order for you to see if you are speaking it right. That strategy will be very effective in order for you to know whether your tongue has already adjusted to the language, and in order for you to see if your gestures match with the Spanish Language. *(Debes haberlo leído en voz alta y, si tienes la suerte de tener el lujo del tiempo, de vez en cuando debes mirar al espejo para ver si lo estás hablando bien. Esa estrategia será muy efectiva para que usted sepa si su lengua ya se ha adaptado al idioma, y para que pueda ver si sus gestos coinciden con el idioma español.)*

The next story is again designed for beginners. It is the story of a boy who is considered as a book worm, and who goes to the library most of the time of everyday. One day, while he is reading his favorite storybook, he saw a man a little bit older than his father. However, he noticed that he does not just resemble him. He really looks exactly like him. So, he presumed that his mother had an affair with that person and the fruit of their love affair is no one but him. What he did is to observe every little movement of that man, his face, his hair, even his complexion – these are all possessed by him too. He ran as fast as he could and confronted his mother. He looked for his mother from all over the house, but he found his mother in the kitchen. He asked her direct to the point, seeking answers to his confusion. He asked her why is it that there is a man who is a little bit older than his father who looks exactly like him. His mother asked him where did he see that person, and he said he is in the library. His mother suddenly kept quiet. Again, he assumed that his doubt is indeed true. He told them her that it cannot be happening; she cannot be cheating on his father. He even cried in front of his mother, but his mother clarified that he is not cheating on his father. She said that he is related to that person but not as a father. That man in the library is the elder brother of his father, and they are not in good terms. That

is the reason why he is not so familiar with that man. He still insisted why is it that he looks exactly like him. His mother answered him because they are related by blood. That man is his Uncle. *(La próxima historia está nuevamente diseñada para principiantes. Es la historia de un niño que es considerado como un gusano de libro y que va a la biblioteca la mayor parte del tiempo todos los días. Un día, mientras leía su libro de cuentos favorito, vio a un hombre un poco mayor que su padre, sin embargo, notó que no solo se parecía a él. Realmente se ve exactamente como él. Entonces, presumió que su madre tuvo una aventura con esa persona y que el fruto de su amor no es nadie más que él. Lo que hizo fue observar cada pequeño movimiento de ese hombre, su rostro, su cabello, incluso su complexión, todos ellos también los posee. Corrió tan rápido como pudo y se enfrentó a su madre. Buscó a su madre por toda la casa, pero encontró a su madre en la cocina. Le preguntó directamente al grano, buscando respuestas a su confusión. Él le preguntó por qué es que hay un hombre un poco mayor que su padre que se parece exactamente a él. Su madre le preguntó dónde vio a esa persona, y él dijo que estaba en la biblioteca. Su madre de repente se quedó callada. Nuevamente, asumió que su duda es realmente cierta. Él le dijo que no podía estar sucediendo, que ella no podía estar engañando a su padre. Incluso lloró frente a su madre, pero su madre aclaró que no está engañando a su padre. Ella dijo que él está relacionado con esa persona pero no como padre. Ese hombre en la biblioteca es el hermano mayor de su padre, y no están en buenos términos. Esa es la razón por la que no está tan familiarizado con ese hombre. Todavía insistía por qué es que se parece exactamente a él. Su madre le respondió porque están relacionados por sangre. Ese hombre es su tío.)*

If you followed the tips stated in the preceding discussion, then you will surely have a good day today because at the end of this short story, for sure you have already learned a lot about Spanish Language and surely, your tongue has already adjusted to the accent, your hand gestures also have adjusted to the proper reaction and facial expression, and your ears are already listening well with the words used in these two short stories. *(Si siguió los consejos indicados en la discusión anterior, seguramente tendrá*

un buen día hoy porque al final de este cuento, seguramente ya ha aprendido mucho sobre el idioma español y, seguramente, su lengua ya se ha adaptado al acento, sus gestos con las manos también se han ajustado a la reacción y expresión facial adecuadas, y sus oídos ya están escuchando bien con las palabras utilizadas en estas dos historias cortas.)

CHAPTER III

BASIC VOCABULARY (LEARNING THE SIMPLE SPANISH WORDS)

(VOCABULARIO BÁSICO (APRENDIENDO LAS PALABRAS SIMPLES EN ESPAÑOL)

Learners, who are mostly beginners, need to create their personal phrasebook if they want to learn the Spanish Language in less than a year. The purpose of a phrasebook is to serve as a bucket full of Spanish words or vocabulary. You will see here the basic vocabulary in the Spanish Language that you can use in your Course. *(Los estudiantes, en su mayoría principiantes, deben crear su libro de frases personal si quieren aprender el idioma español en menos de un año. El propósito del libro de frases es servir como un cubo lleno de palabras o vocabulario en español. Verá aquí el vocabulario básico en español que puede usar en su curso.)*

English Vocabulary	Spanish Equivalent
COLORS	

Blue	Azul
Red	Rojo
Yellow	Amarillo
Green	Verde
Violet	Violeta
Pink	Rosa
Orange	Anaranjado
Brown	Marrón
Black	Negro
White	Blanco
Purple	Morado
MUSIC	
Drums	Tambores
Trumpet	Trompeta
Guitar	Guitarra
Piano	Piano
Lyrics	Letra
Organ	Órgano
FOOD	
Honey	Miel
Milk	Leche
Potatoes	Papas
Chicken	Pollo
Egg	Huevo
Avocado	Aguacate
Beef	Carnederes
Peanut	Maní
Candy	Dulce
Pear	Pera
Grape	Uva

RELATIONSHIP	
Mom	Mamá
Dad	Papá
Son	Hijo
Daughter	Hija
Daughter-in-law	Nuera
Husband	Marido
Wife	Esposa
Grandma	Abuela
Grandpa	Abuelo
Uncle	Tío
Aunt	Tía

It may appear that these words are elementary to those Spanish-speaking people, but to those who are only beginning to learn about the Spanish Language, these will be of great help. It is just the same with a toddler who could not leave his or her parents during first day of school. There is always a separation anxiety. So, instead of immediately proceeding with the Spanish Language proper, you should also help yourself by collecting words and writing it in the phrasebook. *(Puede parecer que estas palabras son elementales para las personas de habla hispana, pero para aquellos que recién comienzan a aprender sobre el idioma español, serán de gran ayuda. Es lo mismo con un niño pequeño que no pudo dejar a sus padres durante el primer día de clases. Siempre hay una ansiedad por separación. Entonces, en lugar de continuar inmediatamente con el idioma español, también debe ayudarse a sí mismo recolectando palabras y escribiéndolas en el libro de frases.)*

The best advice that could be given to you when it comes to learning the Spanish Language is considered your time. Time is of the essence so it must always be treasured, and this should not be wasted. A schedule or calendar of your activities must be prepared and practiced regularly. You should spare an hour or two in your everyday schedule. That spared time must be devoted to learning the Spanish Language, and if you are lucky enough to

finish the hour without any difficulty, and you still have time and energy, you may consider going back to your phrasebook. It pays to read your phrasebook over and over again because as the cliché goes, practice makes perfect. *(El mejor consejo que se le puede dar cuando se trata de aprender español es considerar su tiempo. El tiempo es esencial, por lo que siempre debe ser atesorado, y esto no debe desperdiciarse. Se debe preparar y practicar regularmente un cronograma o calendario de sus actividades. Debe dedicar una o dos horas en su horario diario. Se debe dedicar ese tiempo libre al aprendizaje del idioma español, y si tiene la suerte de terminar la hora sin ninguna dificultad, y aún tiene tiempo y energía, puede considerar volver a su libro de frases. Vale la pena leer tu libro de frases una y otra vez porque, como dice el cliché, la práctica hace la perfección.)*

If your sole purpose is to learn the basic vocabulary of the Spanish Language, you should think of some ways other than reading. Watching TV shows and movies is a good move, most particularly if you have already previously watched those movies and shows. But what is important to note is to change its Language setting to Spanish Language and disable the subtitle. By doing so, you will be able to test yourself if you have truly learned even the basic of the Spanish Language. *(Si su único propósito es aprender el vocabulario básico del idioma español, debe pensar en otras formas además de la lectura. Ver programas de televisión y películas es un buen movimiento, especialmente si ya ha visto esas películas y programas anteriormente. Pero lo que es importante tener en cuenta es cambiar su configuración de idioma a idioma español y deshabilitar los subtítulos. Al hacerlo, podrás ponerte a prueba si realmente has aprendido incluso lo básico del idioma español.)*

In learning basic vocabulary, your cellular phone must be given importance this time because it is not only used as a form of communication. There are applications that you may use in order to collect words that you may use in your Spanish Language Course. Instead of using your cellular phones for purposes of capturing the moments, you may use it in searching for a phone application which you may find over the web. *(Al aprender vocabulario básico, su teléfono celular debe tener importancia esta vez porque no solo*

se usa como una forma de comunicación. Hay aplicaciones que puede usar para recopilar palabras que puede usar en su curso de español. En lugar de usar sus teléfonos celulares para capturar los momentos, puede usarlos para buscar una aplicación de teléfono que puede encontrar en la web.)

However, even if you have your own means in learning the language, it is still imperative to enroll in a formal Spanish Class. You may enroll in an actual class-type discussion or through online. *(Sin embargo, incluso si tiene sus propios medios para aprender el idioma, es imperativo inscribirse en una clase formal de español. Puede inscribirse en una discusión real de clase o en línea.)*

On the other hand, there are also some points which must be avoided when learning about the Basic Spanish Language. You cannot avoid your excitement and your eagerness to learn the language the fastest way you can. As such, you set a very high goal and consider all obstacles as mere challenges towards the achievement of your goal. It may sound like a positive one, but the truth is that it is not good and definitely not advisable. *(Por otro lado, también hay algunos puntos que deben evitarse al aprender sobre el idioma español básico. No puede evitar su entusiasmo y su entusiasmo por aprender el idioma de la manera más rápida posible. Como tal, establece una meta muy alta y considera todos los obstáculos como simples desafíos para alcanzar su meta. Puede sonar positivo, pero la verdad es que no es bueno y definitivamente no es aconsejable.)*

This is the same as setting a deadline or a due wherein you are already fit to converse with a Spanish-speaking person or friend. A month is an impossible deadline setting. A month is just too little and too narrow for you to learn all the things and important grammatical usage of a Spanish Language. Even a quarter is also unachievable. The best deadline or timeline to be set is a minimum of 1 year or even less than a month, and a maximum of 2-3 years. Through that, you will be able to totally grasp everything that you should know about the Spanish Language. It is similar to a four year bachelor's course wherein the first two years are all basics, and the last two years will be devoted for reviewing of all the lessons learned in the first two years. *(Esto es lo mismo que establecer una fecha*

límite o un plazo en el que ya está en condiciones de conversar con una persona o amigo de habla hispana. Un mes es una fecha límite imposible. Un mes es demasiado pequeño y demasiado limitado para que aprenda todas las cosas y el uso gramatical importante de un idioma español. Incluso una cuarta parte también es inalcanzable. El mejor plazo o plazo para establecer es un mínimo de 1 año o incluso menos de un mes, y un máximo de 2-3 años. A través de eso, podrás comprender totalmente todo lo que debes saber sobre el idioma español. Es similar a un curso de licenciatura de cuatro años en el que los dos primeros años son todos básicos, y los últimos dos años se dedicarán a revisar todas las lecciones aprendidas en los primeros dos años.)

Another thought to avoid is being a hundred percent sure that everything will work out just fine. If for instance, a certain activity does not carry a sure win when it comes to learning the language, then you should not indulge – that is a big NO. Always think that in everything that you do, there will always be a time that you will not get a hundred percent sure win. There will always be obstacles, challenges, and a lot of frustrations. You should not give up and be open about it. *(Otro pensamiento a evitar es estar cien por ciento seguro de que todo saldrá bien. Si, por ejemplo, una determinada actividad no conlleva una victoria segura cuando se trata de aprender el idioma, entonces no debe permitirse el lujo de hacerlo, es un gran NO. Siempre piense que en todo lo que haga, siempre habrá un momento en que no obtendrá una ganancia cien por ciento segura. Siempre habrá obstáculos, desafíos y muchas frustraciones. No debes rendirte y ser abierto al respecto.)*

ANOTHER USEFUL TIP IN LEARNING THE BASIC VOCABULARY IN THE SPANISH LANGUAGE (OTRO CONSEJO ÚTIL PARA APRENDER EL VOCABULARIO BÁSICO EN LA LENGUA ESPAÑOLA)

If you have already used all your energy in learning the basic vocabulary in the Spanish Language, then you should consider some of these friendly tips which are mere additional to the above discussion:

1. Try finding a place of comfort. There are people who find it so comfortable to read while laying down. Although it is not advisable because it may cause a lot of pressure in your eyes and neck or nape, but still if that is your favorite position while reading, then just consider some useful tips and precautions. But then again, you have to remember that it must not be for a long period of time.

There are also some people who find it so comfortable to ride a bus, and while travelling from home to work and vice versa, there will be no idle time but instead, a time devoted in reading a lot. But then, you have to remember that you need to rest once in a while in order to avoid excessive pressure in your eyes.

2. Once you have established your most comfortable place and position, you should now proceed with your vocabulary proper. Ask yourself questions like, *Is my knowledge about the Spanish Language, particularly my vocabulary enough to sustain a conversation? Am I already prepared for a lengthy discussion with a client or a friend?* If your answers are all yes, then let yourself practice more because as the cliché goes, *practice makes perfect*.
3. “IS MY KNOWLEDGE ABOUT SPANISH LANGUAGE, PARTICULARLY MY VOCABULARY ENOUGH TO SUSTAIN A CONVERSATION?”
 - This may be known through a tool which makes you either a winner in the vocabulary collection scheme or a not-so-winner.
 - The ultimate test is the phrasebook, and once you got to be familiar with the phrasebook, you will surely realize the lesser need of a phrasebook. It means you can already transact or converse with another friend even without referring to the phrasebook from time to time.

- Another is the use of a personalized flash cards. It may be used to combine words which may be found in the phrasebook. These word combination, phrases or sentences are being written in an instrument known as the flash cards, and you may paste in on your door or walls because these may help you memorize the word combination, phrases or sentences with the Spanish Language.
- Always remember that if your aim is memorizing, then you do not need the phrasebook. What you need is the flash card.

Si ya ha utilizado toda su energía para aprender el vocabulario básico en el idioma español, entonces debe considerar algunos de estos consejos amigables que son meramente adicionales a la discusión anterior:

1. Intenta encontrar un lugar de comodidad. Hay personas a quienes les resulta muy cómodo leer mientras se acuestan. Aunque no es aconsejable porque puede causar mucha presión en los ojos y el cuello o la nuca, pero si esa es su posición favorita mientras lee, considere algunos consejos y precauciones útiles. Pero, de nuevo, debe recordar que no debe ser por un largo período de tiempo.

También hay algunas personas a las que les resulta tan cómodo viajar en autobús y mientras viajan de casa al trabajo y viceversa, no habrá tiempo de inactividad, sino un tiempo dedicado a leer mucho. Pero luego, debe recordar que necesita descansar de vez en cuando para evitar una presión excesiva en los ojos.

2. Una vez que haya establecido su lugar y posición más cómodos, debe continuar con su vocabulario apropiado. Hágase preguntas como: ¿Mi conocimiento sobre el idioma español, particularmente mi vocabulario, es suficiente para mantener una conversación? ¿Ya estoy preparado para una larga discusión con un cliente o un amigo? Si todas sus respuestas son afirmativas, entonces permítase practicar más porque, como dice el cliché, la práctica hace la perfección.

3. “¿ES MI CONOCIMIENTO SOBRE EL IDIOMA ESPAÑOL EN PARTICULAR MI VOCABULARIO SUFICIENTE PARA SOSTENER UNA CONVERSACIÓN?

- *Esto puede conocerse a través de una herramienta que lo convierte en un ganador en el esquema de recopilación de vocabulario o en un no tan ganador.*

- *La prueba definitiva es el libro de frases, una vez que se familiarice con el libro de frases, seguramente se dará cuenta de la menor necesidad de un libro de frases. Significa que ya puede realizar transacciones o conversar con otro amigo, incluso sin consultar el libro de frases de vez en cuando.*

- *Otro es el uso de tarjetas flash personalizadas. Puede usarse para combinar palabras que se pueden encontrar en el libro de frases. Estas combinaciones de palabras, frases u oraciones se escriben en un instrumento conocido como tarjetas flash y puede pegarlas en su puerta o paredes porque pueden ayudarlo a memorizar la combinación de palabras, frases u oraciones con el idioma español.*

- *Recuerde siempre que si su objetivo es memorizar, entonces no necesita el libro de frases. Lo que necesitas es la tarjeta flash.*

CHAPTER IV

TIPS FOR PRONUNCIATION

(*CONSEJOS PARA LA PRONUNCIACIÓN*)

There are few tips on how to properly pronounce Spanish words, and if you try to recall each one during an actual conversation with a Spanish friend, then it will surely be of great help. These are the following: (*Hay algunos consejos sobre cómo pronunciar correctamente las palabras en español, y si intenta recordar cada una de ellas durante una conversación real con un amigo en español, seguramente será de gran ayuda. Estos son los siguientes:*)

- **Rolling the letter R's**

-

The worst period is that trying to practice this rolling the letter R's because no matter how you ask for an explanation, if you have not listened well, you will not get it right.

-

If you want to learn about this very difficult tip, you give your full attention here. There are two R's which are actually different from one another, but they sound similar.

-

As discussed in the abovementioned chapters, this *rr* sound is the same as the *tt* sound in the word *butter*.

-

Going back to the letter *rr*, it may be explained and understood well through an example. The word *pe rr o*, which means *dog* in English grammar, is different from the word *pero*, which means *but* in English grammar.

- **Rodar la letra R**
 - *El peor período es que tratar de practicar esto tirando la letra R porque no importa cómo pidas una explicación, si no has escuchado bien, no lo entenderás bien.*
 - *Si desea conocer este consejo tan difícil, preste toda su atención aquí. Hay dos R que en realidad son diferentes entre sí, pero suenan similares.*
 - *Como se discutió en los capítulos mencionados anteriormente, este sonido rr es el mismo que el sonido tt en la palabra mantequilla.*
 - *Volviendo a la letra rr, puede explicarse y entenderse bien a través de un ejemplo. La palabra perro, que significa perro en la gramática inglesa, es diferente de la palabra pero que significa pero en la gramática inglesa.*

- **There is one question that will answer your query about the importance of correct pronunciation: Why do you need to learn the Spanish Language?**
 - Research says that the Spanish Language is one of the easiest languages on Earth. As such, it is expected that half of the people all over the world know how to speak the language. Some hoteliers and people connected to restaurant businesses are expected to know more than one language aside from their native language. The reason here is that customers in this nature of business are varied. There are Western people, there are Asians, and so on.

- It will be very useful, particularly if you are asked to repeat your statement, if you know the exact language and how to properly use it, you can make these people understand you.
- ***Hay una pregunta que responderá a su pregunta sobre la importancia de una pronunciación correcta: ¿Por qué necesita aprender español?***
 - *La investigación dice que el idioma español es uno de los idiomas más fáciles en la Tierra. Como tal, se espera que la mitad de las personas en todo el mundo sepan hablar el idioma. Se espera que algunos hoteleros y personas relacionadas con negocios de restaurantes sepan más de un idioma además de su idioma nativo. La razón aquí es que los clientes en esta naturaleza de negocios son variados. Hay gente occidental, hay asiáticos, etc.*
 - *Será muy útil especialmente si se le pide que repita su declaración, si conoce el idioma exacto y cómo usarlo adecuadamente, puede hacer que estas personas lo entiendan.*
- **One tip in order for you to be persuaded to learn more about the Spanish Language is that it gives you a high degree of self-confidence.**
 - For instance, you know the language itself, you understand, but there is a slight problem regarding your proper pronunciation. You will surely lose your self-confidence and will be very afraid to afraid.
 - You must know the varied sounds of the Spanish Language, and you must also know how to mix and use them.
 - You must also learn how to use the phonics and the best way of knowing this is through watching movies and TV shows.

- ***Un consejo para que pueda ser persuadido a aprender más sobre el idioma español es que le da un alto grado de confianza en sí mismo.***
 - *Por ejemplo, conoces el idioma en sí, lo entiendes, pero hay un pequeño problema con respecto a tu pronunciación correcta. Seguramente perderá su confianza en sí mismo y tendrá mucho miedo o miedo.*
 - *Debe conocer los variados sonidos del idioma español, y también debe saber cómo mezclarlos y usarlos.*
 - *También debe aprender a usar la fonética y la mejor manera de saberlo es viendo películas y programas de televisión.*

THERE ARE SOME FRIENDLY REMINDERS ABOUT THE PROPER PRONUNCIATION OF SPANISH LANGUAGE OR VOCABULARY

- You have to remember that there are consonants which are soft and there are also some which are soft. Among these soft consonants are the letters B, D, and G.
- If you see these letters between two vowels, that would indicate that the word must be pronounced in a much softer manner.
- There are consonants which are not aspirated. Usually, the letters P, T, and C are not clearly pronounced.
- There are consonants also which are considered as dental ones. As the word suggests, it means that when pronounced, the tongue gently touches the roof of the mouth or the upper teeth.
- In pronouncing the letter L, it is divided into two ways:
 - The dark L which means that you pronounce it harder than the usual words starting with a letter L or simply with letter L in the word itself; and
 - The clear L, on the other hand, is pronounced in a much softer than the first one.

HAY ALGUNOS RECORDATORIOS AMIGOS SOBRE LA PRONUNCIACIÓN APROPIADA DEL LENGUAJE O VOCABULARIO ESPAÑOL

- *Debes recordar que hay consonantes que son suaves y también hay algunas que son suaves. Entre estas consonantes suaves están las letras B, D y G.*
- *Si ve estas letras entre dos vocales, eso indicaría que la palabra debe pronunciarse de una manera mucho más suave.*
- *Hay consonantes que no son aspiradas. Por lo general, las letras P, T y C no se pronuncian claramente.*
- *También hay consonantes que se consideran dentales. Como sugiere la palabra, significa que cuando se pronuncia, la lengua toca suavemente el paladar o los dientes superiores.*
- *Al pronunciar la letra L, se divide de dos maneras:*
 - *La L oscura, que significa que la pronuncia con más fuerza que las palabras habituales que comienzan con una letra L o simplemente con la letra L en la palabra misma; y*
 - *La L clara, por otro lado, se pronuncia de manera mucho más suave que la primera.*

CHAPTER V

HOW TO READ IN SPANISH

(CÓMO LEER EN ESPAÑOL)

Just like in the usual physical exercise, there must be a warm-up phase. In the process of learning the Spanish Language, you must consider the following friendly advice and tips:

- You should exercise your jaw, open it as wide as you can, and then close it slowly. After that, you must also gently massage both jaws;
- Speak in front of the mirror. Through that, you can be able to see if you are confident enough to speak the Spanish Language;
- You must also speak aloud, clearly and slowly;
- If you want to make some exaggeration when speaking, do it. Do not think twice if you know that it will make your learning better; and lastly,
- You should allot an hour of everyday to be devoted to the proper way of learning the Spanish Language.

Al igual que en el ejercicio físico habitual, debe haber una fase de calentamiento. En el proceso de aprender el idioma español, debe considerar los siguientes consejos y sugerencias amistosas:

- *Debe ejercitar la mandíbula, abrirla lo más que pueda y luego cerrarla lentamente. Después de eso, también debes masajear suavemente ambas mandíbulas;*
- *Habla frente al espejo. A través de eso, puede ver si tiene la confianza suficiente para hablar español;*
- *También debes hablar en voz alta, clara y lentamente;*
- *Si quieres hacer una exageración al hablar, hazlo. No lo piense dos veces si sabe que mejorará su aprendizaje; y por último,*
- *Debe dedicar una hora diaria para dedicarse a la forma correcta de aprender el idioma español.*

When reading, you should develop your own strategy in reading the Spanish Language. You may want to go to a place wherein you are most comfortable with. You must also consider your time, and how fast you want to finish the book, you are about to read. Do not compare yourself with other people who can read aloud and confidently. You may use your own control in reading, you may go the fastest way you can, or you can be as slow as you want to. *(Al leer, debe desarrollar su propia estrategia para leer el idioma español. Es posible que desee ir a un lugar en el que se sienta más cómodo. También debe considerar su tiempo y la rapidez con que desea terminar el libro que está a punto de leer. No te compares con otras personas que puedan leer en voz alta y con confianza. Puede usar su propio control en la lectura, puede ir de la manera más rápida posible o puede ser tan lento como desee.)*

Going to your own hibernation place or a sanctuary, as what some people call it, is a must if you want to get serious with your reading. That reading may be a novel or a simple book for learning, and either way, you must find a good place to start reading. It may be a library if you want to be alone but seeing other people who are also doing the same thing with you. It may be a canteen if you want to eat while reading. It may be an enclosed room where you may be comfortable laying or slouching while reading. *(Ir a su propio lugar de hibernación o un santuario como lo llaman algunas personas es imprescindible si quiere tomar en serio su lectura. Esa lectura puede ser una novela o un libro simple para aprender, y de cualquier manera, debe encontrar un buen lugar para comenzar a leer. Puede ser una biblioteca si quieres estar solo pero viendo a otras personas que también están haciendo lo mismo contigo. Puede ser una cantimplora si quiere comer mientras lee. Puede ser una habitación cerrada donde puede estar cómodo acostado o encorvado mientras lee.)*

Another tip is that you may consider listening to music because there are people who can concentrate well by listening to music, which may be a soft one or even modern kind of music. *(Otro consejo es que puede considerar*

escuchar música porque hay personas que pueden concentrarse bien escuchando música que puede ser suave o incluso música moderna.)

THE FOLLOWING ARE ANOTHER BATCH OF FRIENDLY TIPS ABOUT READING SPANISH LANGUAGE:

Below are some tips that you might use in the correct and enjoyable reading of Spanish Language short stories. After these tips, you will have to read two of the basic short stories for kids. It is intentionally for kids because kids need baby steps in order to learn, in as much the same way as a learner needs to know about the Spanish Language.

- The first tip is the presence of titles and photos or pictures in the book. The reason here is that you will have a hint of the story because of the graphics. By having a slight idea, you can already formulate some possibilities or possible events that might happen along with the story;
- The second tip is that as you read the story, start relating it to yourself. You might have a similar experience with the character of the story. You might want to draw in your mind what might possibly happen because this exact scene has already happened in your life before;
- Usually, the short stories have preguntas or questions, and then before answering it directly, you must consider reading all the questions so that as time passes by, you will surely have the gist as to where you will get answers to those questions. Sometimes, in reading comprehension, the tendency of the reader is to read all the questions all at the same time and then after that, he will be able to capture the gist of the story;
- Lastly, you must use your own grammar because you already have your knowledge about the Spanish Language since you are in course where Spanish Language is its subject. So, it is imperative to use your stock knowledge in reading. Say, for instance; there is a pregunta or question, your respuesta or answer must be based on your own knowledge as a learner of Spanish Language.

LOS SIGUIENTES SON OTRO LOTE DE CONSEJOS AMIGOS SOBRE LA LECTURA DEL LENGUA ESPAÑOLA:

- *A continuación hay algunos consejos que puede usar para leer correctamente y de manera agradable las historias cortas en español. Después de estos consejos, tendrá que leer dos de los cuentos básicos para niños. Es intencional para los niños porque los niños necesitan pequeños pasos para aprender, de la misma manera que un alumno necesita saber sobre el idioma español.*
- *El primer consejo es la presencia de títulos y fotos o imágenes en el libro. La razón aquí es que tendrás una pista de la historia debido a los gráficos. Al tener una ligera idea, ya puede formular algunas posibilidades o posibles eventos que podrían ocurrir a lo largo de la historia;*
- *Second El segundo consejo es que a medida que lees la historia, comienza a relatarla contigo mismo. Es posible que tenga una experiencia similar con el personaje de la historia. Es posible que desee recordar en su mente lo que podría suceder porque esta escena exacta ya ha sucedido en su vida antes;*
- *Por lo general, las historias cortas tienen preguntas o preguntas, luego, antes de responderlas directamente, debe considerar leer todas las preguntas para que a medida que pase el tiempo, seguramente tenga la idea de dónde obtendrá las respuestas a esas preguntas. A veces, en la comprensión lectora, la tendencia del lector es leer todas las preguntas al mismo tiempo y luego, después de eso, podrá capturar la esencia de la historia;*
- *Por último, debe usar su propia gramática porque ya tiene su conocimiento sobre el idioma español, ya que está en el curso donde el idioma español es su materia. Por lo tanto; es imprescindible utilizar su conocimiento de valores en la lectura. Digamos, por ejemplo, que hay una pregunta o pregunta, su respuesta o respuesta debe basarse en su propio conocimiento como estudiante de español.*

PRACTICE READING: This story is entitled “CIMA DEL MUNDO (TOP OF THE WORLD)” which is a very nice story to read. Here, you will understand the meaning of letting go and seizing the day. (LECTURA PRÁCTICA: Esta historia se titula "CIMA DEL MUNDO," que es una muy buena historia para leer. Aquí, comprenderá el significado de dejar ir y aprovechar el día.)

The character is a working man, who has been working for a long period of time. He loves doing his job for the customers or clients they cater. He enjoys his work but there are people who cause him a lot of pressure and a lot of disappointment in his everyday life. He is a person who is dedicated to his craft but he just cannot take all the insults coming from his boss' mouth. One day, he promised to himself that he will make a decision on May 23. *(El personaje es un hombre trabajador, que ha estado trabajando durante un largo período de tiempo. Le encanta hacer su trabajo para los clientes o clientes que atienden. Disfruta de su trabajo, pero hay personas que le causan mucha presión y mucha decepción en su vida cotidiana. Es una persona dedicada a su oficio, pero no puede soportar todos los insultos que salen de la boca de su jefe. Un día, se prometió a sí mismo que tomará una decisión el 23 de mayo.)*

One fine day, it is May 23. He woke up late but instead of cramming going to work, he just slowly wakes up and gets his towel for him to take a bath. After bathing, he got his cup of coffee and bread for breakfast. He looked at his watch, and he is really late already. But he said to himself, it is okay because this is the day that he will never forget. He went outside the house and proceeded to his car. He rode in his car, but it is so humid because there is no air-conditioning unit available inside his old car. He may be sweating, but he told himself, *“It is alright. It will be a fine day, and I will make the best decision of my life today.”* While driving, the traffic approached him, but it is alright because according to him, all is well, all is going well. Then after that, he finally reached his office. He went outside the car and proceeded inside the office building. He saw the face of his boss with a frown, and instead of explaining why he is late, he just greeted him *“Good*

day Sir! It is a fine day, isn't it?" The boss' face continues to make a very frowning one. So the boss asked him, "*What time is it?"* and then he answered, "*It is time to make the best decision of my life, Sir.*" The boss again asked him when he will be early to come to the office, and he said, "*Never Sir.*" The boss frowned up even more and shouted, "*What?"* and then he answered again, "*I said, I will never come to work early Sir, not now, not ever, ever!"* His boss repeated all the questions, and he even answered the same answers in a more confident way.

(Un buen día, es el 23 de mayo. Se despertó tarde, pero en lugar de irse a trabajar, se levanta lentamente y toma su toalla para que se bañe. Después de bañarse, tomó su taza de café y un pan para el desayuno. Miró su reloj y ya es muy tarde. Pero se dijo a sí mismo, está bien porque este es el día que nunca olvidará. Salió de la casa y se dirigió a su automóvil. Él viajaba en su automóvil, pero está muy húmedo porque no hay una unidad de aire acondicionado disponible dentro de su automóvil antiguo. Puede estar sudando, pero se dijo a sí mismo: "Está bien. Será un buen día y tomaré la mejor decisión de mi vida hoy ". Mientras conducía, el tráfico se acercó a él, pero está bien porque, según él, todo está bien, todo va bien. Luego, después de eso, finalmente llegó a su oficina. Salió del auto y entró al edificio de oficinas. Vio la cara de su jefe con el ceño fruncido, y en lugar de explicar por qué llega tarde, simplemente lo saludó: "¡Buenos días, señor! Es un buen día, ¿no es así?" La cara del jefe sigue haciendo una mueca muy ceñuda. Entonces, el jefe le preguntó: "¿Qué hora es?" Y luego respondió: "Es hora de tomar la mejor decisión de mi vida, señor". El jefe nuevamente le preguntó cuándo llegaría temprano a la oficina, y él dijo: "Nunca, señor". El jefe frunció el ceño aún más y gritó: "¿Qué?" El jefe repitió todas las preguntas e incluso respondió las mismas respuestas de una manera más segura.)

He resigned and got all his things up. His boss is just watching him, and he told him that he is not going back to that office ever again. The end!

(Renunció y levantó todas sus cosas. Su jefe solo lo está mirando y él le dijo que no volverá a esa oficina nunca más. ¡El fin!)

In this story, the morale of the story is that people who are not happy with their lives and work always have a choice. It is either to leave the work or that situation or continue living and suffering the same situations again. For instance, you choose to leave and resign; there is no turning back. You have to stand up for your decision, and you have to have a great job in replacement for what you have lost. Remember that even if you have the worst boss, but you have to admit that you are earning out of those insults. The second one is that choose to stay, you must be firm, and you must avoid being too sensitive at all times. It is because once you become too sensitive, you tend to think of many things which are not even existing in the first place. *(En esta historia, la moral de la historia es que las personas que no están contentas con sus vidas y su trabajo siempre tienen una opción. Es dejar el trabajo o esa situación o continuar viviendo y sufriendo las mismas situaciones nuevamente. Por ejemplo, si elige irse y renunciar, no hay vuelta atrás. Debe defender su decisión y debe tener un gran trabajo en reemplazo de lo que ha perdido. Recuerde que incluso si tiene el peor jefe, pero debe admitir que está ganando con esos insultos. Segundo, si elige quedarse, debe ser firme y debe evitar ser demasiado sensible en todo momento. Es porque una vez que te vuelves demasiado sensible, tiendes a pensar en muchas cosas que ni siquiera existen en primer lugar.)*

CHAPTER VI

ACCENT AND ACCENTUATION OF WORDS

(ACENTO Y ACENTUACION DE PALABRAS)

Accent is very important in a conversation because it gives confidence, art and rhythm to the entire conversation with a friend. In Spanish Language, accents are varied. It may be Argentinian, Cuban or Mexican. To fully understand what it means, you may refer to the hereunder chart: *(El acento es muy importante en una conversación porque le da confianza, arte y ritmo a toda la conversación con un amigo. En español, los acentos son variados. Puede ser argentino, cubano o mexicano. Para comprender completamente lo que significa, puede consultar el cuadro a continuación:)*

ARGENTINIAN (ARGENTINO/A)	CUBAN (CUBANO/A)	MEXICAN (MEXICANO/A)
<p>CH is very useful in this kind of accent. Even if the double LL is being pronounced as CH.</p> <p><i>CH es muy útil en este tipo de acento. Incluso si el doble LL se pronuncia como CH.</i></p>	<p>In this accent, the letter R resembles the sound of H with a slight breath.</p> <p><i>En este acento, la letra R se asemeja al sonido de H con un ligero aliento.</i></p>	<p>In this accent, the letter S in the English Alphabet sounds like the letter Z in the French Language.</p> <p><i>En este acento, la letra S en el alfabeto inglés suena como la letra Z en el idioma francés.</i></p>

ARGENTINIAN ACCENT

(ACENTO ARGENTINO)

The truth is that Argentinian Accent may stand out from the rest of Spanish Accent. Not only because Argentina is considered as the land of steaks which are as juicy as their accent, but people of Argentina are also known to be best football players. Aside from that, Argentina is also known to be the land of the very famous Evita Peron. *(La verdad es que el acento argentino puede destacarse del resto del acento español. No solo porque Argentina es considerada la tierra de los filetes que son tan jugosos como su acento, también se sabe que los argentinos son los mejores jugadores de fútbol. Aparte de eso, Argentina también es conocida por ser la tierra de la muy famosa Evita Perón.)*

If you will immerse yourself with a family in Argentina, you will be able to know the use of some verbs which are formed by dropping the R and is being replaced by S. Another unique trait of Argentinians is the gesture of their hands when talking to their friends and even to those whom they consider as their adversaries. As if they are going to tell you, *“Talk to my hand.”*

(Si te sumerges con una familia en Argentina, podrás conocer el uso de algunos verbos que se forman al soltar la R y se reemplazan por S. Otro rasgo único de los argentinos es el gesto de sus manos al hablar con ellos. sus amigos e incluso a aquellos a quienes consideran sus adversarios. Como si te fueran a decir: "Habla con mi mano.")

Some important points that you must remember are the following:

- The verbs in Argentinian Accent are different.
- The words are variedly pronounced.
- The use of slang words is evident in Argentina.
- There is a sudden change of names of a certain item from time to time.
- Their facial expression and their hand gesture are somewhat powerful.

Algunos puntos importantes que debe recordar son los siguientes:

- *Los verbos en acento argentino son diferentes.*
- *Las palabras se pronuncian de manera variada.*
- *El uso de palabras de argot es evidente en Argentina.*
- *Hay un cambio repentino de nombres de cierto artículo de vez en cuando.*
- *Su expresión facial y su gesto con la mano son algo poderosos.*

CUBAN ACCENT (ACENTO CUBANO)

What is distinct in Cuban Accent is its being informal. There are also changes in the pronunciation if the syllable is ending in letter R or L. In which case, the pronunciation of such a letter is the same the next syllable. For instance, the feminine name *Carla* has R as the ending of the first syllable, then it will be pronounced the same as the next letter in the second syllable, which is L. Hence, from *Carla*, it becomes *Calla*. *(Lo que es distinto en el acento cubano es que es informal. También hay cambios en la pronunciación si la sílaba termina en la letra R o L. En cuyo caso, la pronunciación de dicha letra es la misma que la siguiente sílaba. Por ejemplo, el nombre femenino Carla tiene R como el final de la primera sílaba, luego se pronunciará igual que la siguiente letra en la segunda sílaba, que es L. Por lo tanto, de Carla, se convierte en Calla.)*

Another distinct characteristic of a Cuban Accent is its being nasal and has a rhythm while speaking. Most of the Cuban Accent is pleasing to the ears because of the somewhat music that they create, making the listeners wow while observing two Cuban speaking with each other. *(Otra característica distintiva de un acento cubano es que es nasal y tiene un ritmo mientras habla. La mayoría del acento cubano es agradable a los oídos debido a la música que crean, lo que hace que los oyentes sorprendan al observar a dos cubanos hablando entre sí.)*

MEXICAN ACCENT

(ACENTO MEXICANO)

The Mexican Accent is somewhat monotonous because there are two different words which call for different pronunciation, but to them, those can be pronounced alike. For instance, the words *feel* and *fill*. In which case, **feel** is being pronounced in English Alphabet as a long **e**, however **fill** is being pronounced in English Alphabet as a short **e**. This is even true in some other examples like the words *rich* and *reach*. In English, you are taught to pronounce them differently in order to distinguish one word from the other. However, in Mexican Accent, they are only pronounced similarly. *(El acento mexicano es algo monótono porque hay dos palabras diferentes que requieren una pronunciación diferente, pero para ellos, se pueden pronunciar por igual. Por ejemplo, las palabras sienten y llenan. En cuyo caso, sentir se pronuncia en alfabeto inglés como una e larga, sin embargo, el relleno se pronuncia en alfabeto inglés como una e corta. Esto es incluso cierto en algunos otros ejemplos, como las palabras rico y alcance. En inglés, se le enseña a pronunciarlos de manera diferente para distinguir una palabra de la otra. Sin embargo, en el acento mexicano, solo se pronuncian de manera similar.)*

CHAPTER VII

ACCENTUATION RULES

(REGLAS DE ACCENTUACION)

As was mentioned a while ago in the preceding chapters, the accent gives happiness to the conversation. Furthermore, it also gives confidence to the speakers most particularly if the accent is correct with all its intents and purposes. *(Como se mencionó hace un tiempo que en los capítulos anteriores, el acento da felicidad a la conversación. Además, también da confianza a los hablantes más particularmente si el acento es correcto con todas sus intenciones y propósitos.)*

Spanish accents are called *tildes*, and these are only applicable in the vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, and *u*.

There are two rules in the Accentuation Rules in the Spanish Language:

First, there are words ending in a vowel like *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, and *u*. There are also words ending with *n* or *s*. If this happens, the stress or the accent is put on the next up to the last syllable.

For example, the word *inteligente* or smart in English, it may be divided into these syllables – *in-te-li-**gen-**te*.

Second, there are words not ending in vowels. In which case, they end in consonants except for *n* or *s*. Here, the stress or accent will be put on the last syllable.

For example, the word *animal* or animal in English, it may be divided into these syllables – *a-ni-**mal*** .

Los acentos españoles se llaman tildes y estos solo son aplicables en las vocales a, e, i, o y u.

Hay dos reglas en las Reglas de acentuación en español:

Primero, hay palabras que terminan en una vocal como a, e, i, o y u. También hay palabras que terminan con n o s. Si esto sucede, el estrés o el acento se coloca en la siguiente hasta la última sílaba.

Por ejemplo, la palabra inteligente o inteligente en inglés, se puede dividir en estas sílabas: in-te-li-gen-te.

Segundo, hay palabras que no terminan en vocales. En cuyo caso, terminan en consonantes excepto n o s. Aquí, el énfasis o el acento se colocarán en la última sílaba.

Por ejemplo, la palabra animal o animal en inglés, puede dividirse en estas sílabas: a-ni-mal.

CHAPTER VIII

TIPS FOR LEARNING NEW LANGUAGE (IMMERSIONS FOR LEARNING)

CONSEJOS PARA APRENDER NUEVA LENGUA (INMERSIONES PARA APRENDER)

Learning a new language is similar to reliving the second time around. For instance, your native language is American however you are required to learn a new language other than that for purposes of work. It is very difficult because for long period of time, you are used to the native language. So, you have to do everything to adjust on the new language that

you are learning. (*Aprender un nuevo idioma es similar a revivir la segunda vez. Por ejemplo, su idioma nativo es el estadounidense, sin embargo, se le exige que aprenda un idioma nuevo que no sea ese para fines de trabajo. Es muy difícil porque durante un largo período de tiempo, estás acostumbrado al idioma nativo. Por lo tanto, debe hacer todo lo posible para adaptarse al nuevo idioma que está aprendiendo.*)

Here are some tips for learning a new language:

- You have to immerse yourself to a Spanish family and try to observe the manner of their communication. In this instance, you may consider the following simple steps while you are immersing yourself.
 - The first step is perfecting the present tense. The purpose of which is that the sentence is happening at the moment. Everything that is present must be given importance. The future and a past tense will easily be learned once you know about the correct use of present tense.
 - When you immerse, do not observe their language alone. Learn to observe their traits and how they talk to their family members and friends. It is because, through that, you will be able to adapt easily with the environment.
 - Just like the same with other kinds of immersion, the immersing student will be able to learn more about the culture of Spain and most particularly how they treat each other in front or even not in front of the speaker.

Aquí hay algunos consejos para aprender un nuevo idioma:

- *Tienes que sumergirte en una familia española e intentar observar la forma en que se comunican. En este caso, puede considerar los siguientes pasos simples mientras se sumerge.*

- *El primer paso es perfeccionar el tiempo presente. El propósito de esto es que la oración está sucediendo en este momento. Todo lo que está presente debe tener importancia. El futuro y el pasado se aprenderán fácilmente una vez que sepa sobre el uso correcto del tiempo presente.*
- *Cuando te sumerjas, no observes su idioma solo. Aprenda a observar sus rasgos y cómo hablan con sus familiares y amigos. Es porque a través de eso, podrá adaptarse fácilmente con el entorno.*
- *Al igual que con otros tipos de inmersión, el estudiante inmerso podrá aprender más sobre la cultura de España y, más particularmente, cómo se tratan entre sí frente o incluso frente al orador.*

THE PROBABLE FINDINGS YOU MAY DISCOVER UPON IMMERSION

One good trait that a student must possess is his ability to talk, listen, and comprehend. If he possesses those traits then that will make him a winner already in the language which you are studying with. However, it must be identified that talking, listening and comprehending are three different words which also have different meanings too.

For instance, if you love to talk, you are just a talkative person. You are not a converser. Yes, that is true, you cannot be called a converser or a very good speaker if what you want is only to talk. You will not be heard because you are not listening in the first place. How could you supply answers to the questions of your partner if you do not listen? In the same way, you cannot be able to ask questions to your partner because he is also not listening to your talking. Now, if you practice it over and over again, you listen, you speak, and you listen again, then there is already comprehension. That is a very good point of conversation if there is already the combination of these three – listening, speaking, and comprehending.

You may also want to read some short examples translated into the Spanish Language so that you can be familiarized with the use of some Spanish

words.

LOS PROBABLES RESULTADOS QUE PUEDES DESCUBRIR AL INMERSIÓN

Un buen rasgo que debe poseer un estudiante es su capacidad para hablar, escuchar y comprender. Si posee esos rasgos, eso lo convertirá en un ganador ya en el idioma con el que está estudiando. Sin embargo, debe identificarse que hablar, escuchar y comprender son tres palabras diferentes que también tienen significados diferentes.

Por ejemplo, si te encanta hablar, solo eres una persona habladora. No eres un conversador. Sí, eso es cierto, no puedes ser llamado un conversador o un muy buen orador si lo que quieres es solo hablar. No te escucharán porque no estás escuchando en primer lugar. ¿Cómo podría proporcionar respuestas a las preguntas de su pareja si no escucha? De la misma manera, no puede hacer preguntas a su pareja porque él tampoco está escuchando su conversación. Ahora, si lo practicas una y otra vez, escuchas, hablas y escuchas de nuevo, entonces ya hay comprensión. Ese es un muy buen punto de conversación, si ya existe la combinación de estos tres: escuchar, hablar y comprender.

También es posible que desee leer algunos ejemplos breves traducidos al idioma español para que pueda familiarizarse con el uso de algunas palabras en español.

ENGLISH/ INGLÉS	SPANISH/ ESPAÑOL
This boy is known as Boy, and he is a very good boy. He loves giving to people who are less fortunate, he even prepared a separate lunch box to whoever is hungry and does not have food to eat during lunch time. Yes, he is a shy one but his classmates love him and because of that, he has a	Este chico es conocido como Boy, y es un muy buen chico. Le encanta dar a las personas que son menos afortunadas, incluso preparó una caja de almuerzo separada para quien tiene hambre y no tiene comida para comer durante la hora del almuerzo. Sí, es tímido, pero sus compañeros de clase lo aman y, por

lot of friends from different stages of his school.	eso, tiene muchos amigos de diferentes etapas de su escuela.
---	--

Finally, when you speak about immersion, that does not at all times mean you have to physically immerse yourself with a Spanish. Well, technically there is a need for a total immersion, and after a month, you will be assessed by your instructor, and after that, you will either elevate a step higher, or you will maintain your immersion in the same family. But, if you do not have enough time to immerse with a Spanish family, and if you are only an online student about Spanish Language, then what you need to do is immerse yourself with the language and not with a certain family.

It means you have to allot a reasonable time each day and devote it to your Spanish Language learning. In this example, you will find the difference between the feminine and masculine form of a sentence.

Finalmente, cuando hablas de inmersión, eso no significa en todo momento que tengas que sumergirte físicamente en un español. Bueno, técnicamente existe la necesidad de una inmersión total y después de un mes, su instructor lo evaluará y luego elevará un paso más o mantendrá su inmersión en la misma familia. Pero, si no tiene tiempo suficiente para sumergirse con una familia española, y si solo es un estudiante en línea sobre el idioma español, entonces lo que debe hacer es sumergirse en el idioma y no con una determinada familia.

Significa que debe asignar un tiempo razonable cada día y dedicarlo a su aprendizaje del idioma español. En este ejemplo, encontrarás la diferencia entre la forma femenina y masculina de una oración.

MASCULINE/ MASCULINO	FEMININE/ FEMENINA
I have a friend from a beautiful place in Mexico. He loves eating a lot, but he does not get fat easily. I envy him because of that characteristic. I also have a friend from Australia, and he just loves	I have a friend in the name of Mich. She is cute, and she loves singing sweet songs. One time, she came over our house and said that she would sleep over. All night, we just laughed a lot because she is a

wearing tight pants, and that is fine because he is not fat at all. They are both lucky, and I am also one lucky friend because I can get a lot of advice from them.

Tengo una amiga del hermoso lugar de México. Le encanta comer mucho, pero no engorda fácilmente. Lo envidio por esa característica. También tengo un amigo de Australia y le encanta usar pantalones ajustados, y eso está bien porque no es gordo en absoluto. Ambos tienen suerte y yo también soy un amigo afortunado porque puedo obtener muchos consejos de ellos.

joker and she loves comedy movies. Being a girl, we easily get along. She loves giving people her smile, and she also taught me how to sweetly smile.

Tengo una amiga en el nombre de Mich. Ella es linda y le encanta cantar dulces canciones. Una vez, ella vino a nuestra casa y dijo que se quedará a dormir. Toda la noche, nos reímos mucho porque es una bromista y le encantan las películas de comedia. Siendo una niña, nos llevamos fácilmente bien. Le encanta darle a la gente su sonrisa y también me enseñó a sonreír dulcemente.

CHAPTER IX

ARTICLES

(*ARTICULOS*)

To some, articles are not that important because the noun may exist even without it. But it is very important because it determines the identity of the noun, whether it is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

Usually, in the English Alphabet, articles are usually *the* whether it is singular or plural. In Spanish, it must first be determined whether the noun is feminine, masculine or neuter. In case of feminine, the article is *La* or *Las* when plural. In case of masculine, the article is *El* or *Los* in case of plural. Neuter only has *Lo* in its singular.

It must be noted that if the noun ends in *a* or *as* , then it is always presumed that the noun is feminine. On the other hand, if the noun ends in *o* or *os*, then it is always presumed that the noun is masculine.

Para algunos, los artículos no son tan importantes porque el sustantivo puede existir incluso sin él. Pero es muy importante porque determina la identidad del sustantivo, ya sea masculino, femenino o neutro.

Por lo general, en el alfabeto inglés, los artículos son generalmente si es singular o plural. En español, primero se debe determinar si el sustantivo es femenino, masculino o neutro. En caso de femenino, el artículo es La o Las cuando está en plural. En caso de masculino, el artículo es El o Los en caso de plural. Neutro solo tiene Lo en su singular.

Cabe señalar que si el sustantivo termina en a o as, siempre se presume que el sustantivo es femenino. Por otro lado, si el sustantivo termina en o u os, siempre se presume que el sustantivo es masculino.

In case of a word ending in a vowel, the proper way of constructing is to put *s* after the noun as well as the article. For example, the word is *Apple*, it means that in Spanish, it will become *Manzana*. In case of plural, it will be

added with an S at the end of the word or noun, thus **Manzanas**. (*En el caso de una palabra que termina en una vocal, la forma correcta de construir es poner s después del sustantivo y del artículo. Por ejemplo, la palabra es Apple, significa que en español se convertirá en Manzana. En caso de plural, se agregará con una S al final de la palabra o sustantivo, por lo tanto, Manzanas.*)

If the word is ending with a consonant, the usual thing done by Spanish people is to add *es* or *s*. For instances, the word *cancion*. If you will be translating it into plural, the word will become *cancion es* . (*Si la palabra termina con una consonante, lo habitual que hacen los españoles es agregar es o s. Por ejemplo, la palabra cancion. Si va a traducirlo al plural, la palabra se convertirá en canciones.*)

You will be able to distinguish English and Spanish when it comes to the use of articles. You have to look at these examples and tips which may be very useful in your Spanish Language lesson:

- Usually in the English Alphabet, the most used article is THE. It is different in the Spanish Language because there are actually four articles in it that you need to understand and use properly. These are EL, LOS, LAS, and LA.
- There are instances wherein in English Alphabet, the use of article is omitted, but in the Spanish Language, there must always be an article to make the sentence formal and to make it formal. Without it, it will be a mere slang word or combination of words.
- You will find here examples or short stories using articles. Again, it is narrated in the English Language, and it is translated to the Spanish Language for better understanding of the lesson.

SHORT STORIES SHOWING THE USE OF “ARTICLES” IN SPANISH LANGUAGE

There are stories in Spanish Language that you may want to read over and over again because they are considered as priceless since what you need to do is just to open your eyes and start reading. Some may find it boring, but to a learner, it is really a must. You need to start it by yourself, and when

you are already fluent with some basic words in the Spanish Language, then the next thing to do is to create a group or circle of friends and start having conversational discussion with them. You may start with the very popular story of the vain mouse or little mouse to be specific. *(Hay historias en español que es posible que desee leer una y otra vez porque se consideran invaluable, ya que lo que debe hacer es abrir los ojos y comenzar a leer. Algunos pueden encontrarlo aburrido, pero para un alumno, es realmente imprescindible. Debes comenzar por ti mismo y cuando ya domines algunas palabras básicas en español, lo siguiente que debes hacer es crear un grupo o círculo de amigos y comenzar una conversación con ellos. Puede comenzar con la historia muy popular del ratón vano o ratoncito para ser específicos.)*

In that story, the little mouse is so vain that all her suitors are being criticized, mocked, and rejected simultaneously. She fell attractive to a good looking cat. She immediately said yes to the cat's proposal, and to her surprise, it turned out that during their first picnic date, there is no food to eat together. Instead, what was offered as food is the little vain mouse herself. Because of that, she was so afraid and shouted at the top of her voice, asking for a help. Luckily, she was followed by her suitor, her neighbor mouse who rescued her from the dark plan of the cat. *(En esa historia, el ratoncito es tan vanidoso que todos sus pretendientes son criticados, burlados y rechazados simultáneamente. Ella se sintió atractiva para un gato guapo. Inmediatamente dijo que sí a la propuesta del gato, y para su sorpresa, resultó que durante su primera cita de picnic, no hay comida para comer juntos. En cambio, lo que se ofreció como alimento es el pequeño ratón vanidoso. Debido a eso, tenía mucho miedo y gritó en voz alta, pidiendo ayuda. Afortunadamente, fue seguida por su pretendiente, su ratón vecino que la rescató del oscuro plan del gato.)*

In another Spanish short story, you will find here the use of articles. This is the story of the Ugly Woman. Here, you will not only get to see the correct use of articles in Spanish short stories, but you will also be able to understand the meaning of regret which may come at the end of a decisión you have made. *(En otro cuento español, encontrará aquí el uso de*

artículos. Esta es la historia de la mujer fea. Aquí, no solo podrá ver el uso correcto de los artículos en cuentos cortos en español, sino que también podrá comprender el significado del arrepentimiento que puede surgir al final de una decisión que haya tomado.)

This is the story of *Siguanaba*, which used to be a very beautiful woman. However, she was swallowed whole by her dream and lack of love and empathy towards her son. She only has a single son, and yet she did not show any interest in keeping his son. She found a man whom she thought could give her everything that she needs – love, sexual desires and wealth. That was the reason why she made the biggest decision of her life, and that is to leave her son alone. Her son does not have food to eat from then on, he does not have shelter to stay in during the time that rain persists. However, that decision of her will only leave her with an outcome which she will surely regret. One day, the known God punished her by switching her face from the very beautiful and attractive one into a very ugly face. The curse includes her appearance along the high way, and she will slowly walk towards the river, and she appears beautifully and gracefully. However, during the time that the man being seduced has already focused his attention to her, she will turn into a monster with a very ugly face. *(Esta es la historia de Siguanaba, que solía ser una mujer muy hermosa. Sin embargo, su sueño la tragó por completo y la falta de amor y empatía hacia su hijo. Ella solo tiene un hijo único y, sin embargo, no mostró ningún interés en mantener a su hijo. Encontró a un hombre que pensó que podría darle todo lo que necesita: amor, deseos sexuales y riqueza. Esa fue la razón por la que tomó la decisión más importante de su vida, y esa es dejar a su hijo solo. Su hijo no tiene comida para comer desde entonces, no tiene refugio para quedarse durante el tiempo que persiste la lluvia. Sin embargo, esa decisión de ella solo la dejará con un resultado del que seguramente lamentará. Un día, el Dios conocido la castigó cambiando su rostro del muy hermoso y atractivo por uno muy feo. La maldición incluye su apariencia a lo largo del camino y ella caminará lentamente hacia el río, y se ve hermosa y con gracia. Sin embargo, durante el tiempo en que el hombre que está siendo seducido ya ha centrado su atención en ella, ella se convertirá en un monstruo con una cara muy fea.)*

On the other hand, her son has been awarded by the known God with a youthful appearance which will last as long as he lives. He has been blessed because of the sacrifices he has undergone with under the hands of her mother. The hunger he has suffered turned out to be a blessing this time because the known God also blessed him with abundance and happiness of the heart. *(Por otro lado, su hijo ha sido premiado por el Dios conocido con una apariencia juvenil que durará tanto como él viva. Ha sido bendecido por los sacrificios que ha sufrido bajo las manos de su madre. El hambre que ha sufrido resultó ser una bendición esta vez porque el Dios conocido también lo bendijo con abundancia y felicidad del corazón.)*

These two short stories may be elementary and kid-like, but these surely help you find the **articles** in the sentence, and now, you already know how to properly construct the sentences. Next time, you will be put in a conversation with a Spanish friend, and you will notice that you will no longer find it so difficult as compared to the first time that you started conversing with them. *(Estas dos historias cortas pueden ser elementales y parecidas a las de un niño, pero seguramente te ayudarán a encontrar los artículos en la oración y ahora, ya sabes cómo construir correctamente las oraciones. La próxima vez, se le pondrá a conversar con un amigo español, y notará que ya no le resultará tan difícil en comparación con la primera vez que comenzó a conversar con ellos.*

CHAPTER X

NUMBERS

(NUMEROS)

Without further discussion, numbers are very useful in the study about the Spanish Language. As mentioned in the preceding chapters, Spanish Language is a very famous language and as such, work or employment may also be considered as in demand with applicants with more than one language known. Here are some of the numbers written with the correct Spanish Language equivalent. *(Sin más discusión, los números son muy útiles en el estudio sobre el idioma español. Como se mencionó en los capítulos anteriores, el idioma español es un idioma muy famoso y, como tal, el trabajo o el empleo también pueden considerarse demandados por los solicitantes con más de un idioma conocido. Estos son algunos de los números escritos con el equivalente en español correcto.)*

ENGLISH NUMBER <i>(Numero Ingles)</i>	SPANISH EQUIVALENT <i>(Equivalente Español)</i>
1 (One)	Uno
2 (Two)	Dos
3 (Three)	Tres
4 (Four)	Cuatro
5 (Five)	Cinco
6 (Six)	Seis
7 (Seven)	Siete
8 (Eight)	Ocho
9 (Nine)	Nueve
10 (Ten)	Diez

The abovementioned counting is only limited until **ten (10)** in order for the students or beginners to familiarize themselves with the basics of Spanish counting. The following will definitely make you amazed because, at the end of this session, you will find yourself being able to count from eleven (11) to twenty (20). *(El conteo mencionado anteriormente solo está limitado hasta diez (10) para que los estudiantes o principiantes se familiaricen con los conceptos básicos del conteo en español. Lo siguiente definitivamente lo sorprenderá porque al final de esta sesión, podrá contar de once (11) a veinte (20).)*

ENGLISH NUMBER <i>(Numero Ingles)</i>	SPANISH EQUIVALENT <i>(Equivalente Español)</i>
11 (Eleven)	Once
12 (Twelve)	Doce
13 (Thirteen)	Trece
14 (Fourteen)	Catorce
15 (Fifteen)	Quince
16 (Sixteen)	Dieciséis
17 (Seventeen)	Diecisiete
18 (Eighteen)	Dieciocho
19 (Nineteen)	Diecinueve
20 (Twenty)	Veinte

CHAPTER XI
OTHER IMPORTANT LESSONS TO
LEARN ABOUT SPANISH
LANGUAGE
(OTRAS LECCIONES
IMPORTANTES PARA APRENDER
SOBRE LENGUA ESPAÑOL)

A. TIME

(HORA)

If you are working in an Office or Establishment, then the customers there are of varied nationalities, and surely these customers will ask you about anything under the sun. How about, if he asks you about the time, what will you do in return or in exchange of the services? *(Si está trabajando en una oficina o establecimiento, entonces los clientes allí son de variadas nacionalidades, y seguramente estos clientes le preguntarán acerca de cualquier cosa bajo el sol. ¿Qué tal si le pregunta sobre la hora, qué hará a cambio o a cambio de los servicios?)*

TIME IN ENGLISH <i>(Tiempo en Ingles)</i>	SPANISH EQUIVALENT <i>(Equivalente Español)</i>
One o'clock; 1:00	La una en punto
Two o'clock; 2:00	Dos en punto
Three o'clock; 3:00	Tres en punto
Four o'clock; 4:00	Cuatro en punto

Five o'clock; 5:00	Cinco en punto
Six o'clock; 6:00	Seis en punto
Seven o'clock; 7:00	Siete en punto
Eight o'clock; 8:00	Otso en punto
Nine o'clock; 9:00	Nueve en punto
Ten o'clock; 10:00	Diez en punto
Eleven o'clock; 11:00	Onse en punto
Twelve o'clock; 12:00	Dose en punto

B. ADJECTIVES (ADJETIVO/A)

You are familiar with the definition of the adjective as that particular word describing a person, place, thing or an event which is the subject of the sentence. The following are known as the most common adjectives used in the Spanish Language: *(Usted está familiarizado con la definición de adjetivo como esa palabra en particular que describe a una persona, lugar, cosa o evento que es el sujeto de la oración. Los siguientes son los adjetivos más comunes utilizados en el idioma español:)*

ENGLISH ADJECTIVE (INGLÉS ADJETIVO)	SPANISH EQUIVALENT (EQUIVALENTE ESPAÑOL)
Beautiful	Hermoso/a
Kind	Tipo
Caring	Cuidando
Thoughtful	Pensativo/a
Wonderful	Maravilloso/a
Happy	Feliz
Inspiring	Inspirador/a

C. ADVERBS (ADVERBIO)

If an adjective is describing a noun which is the subject of the sentence, then the adverb is describing a verb. There are three kinds of adverb, and you should know about this because it will help you a lot in your journey towards learning the Spanish Language. *(Si un adjetivo está describiendo un sustantivo que es el sujeto de la oración, entonces el adverbio está describiendo un verbo. Hay tres tipos de adverbio y debes saberlo porque te ayudará mucho en tu viaje hacia el aprendizaje del idioma español.)*

Adverbs of Manner <i>Adverbio de Modo</i>	Adverbs of Frequency <i>Adverbio de frecuencia</i>	Adverbs of Place <i>Adverbio de Lugar</i>	Adverbs of Time <i>Adverbio de Tiempo</i>
<p>This is the kind of adverb which describes how a particular thing or event is done.</p> <p><i>Este es el tipo de adverbio que describe cómo se hace una cosa o evento en particular.</i></p>	<p>This is the kind of adverb which describes how fast or how often the event does transpire.</p> <p><i>Este es el tipo de adverbio que describe qué tan rápido o con qué frecuencia se produce el evento.</i></p>	<p>This is the kind of adverb that describes where an action took place.</p> <p><i>Este es el tipo de adverbio que describe dónde tuvo lugar una acción</i></p>	<p>This is the kind of adverb that describes when or what times an action took place.</p> <p><i>Este es el tipo de adverbio que describe cuándo o en qué momento tuvo lugar una acción.</i></p>

D. PREPOSITIONS (PREPOSICION)

To some, the preposition is a very scary thing to learn. However, that is not true. The preposition is just a word that connected two elements composing a sentence. *(Para algunos, la preposición es algo muy aterrador de aprender. Sin embargo, eso no es cierto. La preposición es solo una palabra que conecta dos elementos que componen una oración.)*

For example, the following phrases or combination of words are **prepositions**:

ENGLISH PREPOSITION (PREPOSICION INGLESA)	SPANISH PREPOSITION (PREPOSICION ESPAÑOLA)
1. Caja De Chocolates	Box of Chocolates
2. Bolsa De Dulces	Bag of Candies
3. Banco De Dinero	Bank of Money

E. NOUNS (SUSTANTIVOS)

Just like the English Alphabet, a *noun* is either the subject or the object of the sentence. The noun may be used either way, as in these examples: *(Al igual que el alfabeto inglés, un sustantivo es el sujeto o el objeto de la oración. El sustantivo se puede usar de cualquier manera, como en estos ejemplos:)*

SUBJECT NOUN/ SUSTANTIVO	OBJECT NOUN/ NOMBRE DEL OBJETO
The bag is red.	That thing which is colored red is a bag .

In which case, both **bag** is considered as a noun, either as subject or as an object. *(En cuyo caso, ambas bolsas se consideran como un sustantivo, ya*

sea como sujeto o como un objeto.)

CHAPTER XII

VERBS

(*VERBOS*)

A. CONJUGATION OF VERBS

(*CONJUGACIÓN DE VERBOS*)

Even in other languages, a verb is a part of a speech that denotes an action or a state of being. In Spanish like in English, verbs can be in an infinitive form. They are called conjugated in Spanish. The function of a conjugated verb is to show the state of the action. Infinitives in Spanish, infinitives can have three different endings, namely –ar, -er and –ir. (*Incluso en otros idiomas, un verbo es parte de un discurso que denota una acción o un estado de ser. En español como en inglés, los verbos pueden estar en forma infinitiva. Se llaman conjugados en español. La función de un verbo conjugado es mostrar el estado de la acción. Infinitivos en español, los infinitivos pueden tener tres terminaciones diferentes: –ar, -er y –ir.*)

Here is a sample conjugation of the verb to swim:

(*Aquí hay una muestra de conjugación del verbo nadar:*)

nadar (to swim)

Le gusta nadar. (He likes to swim.)

Basically, the infinitive form of the verb has two parts: the stem of the word (which is everything before the ending) and the ending itself (which is either -ar, -er, or -ir). For example, the stem of viajar (“to travel”) is viaj-, and the verb’s ending is -ar. Once you’ve identified the stem of a verb, you conjugate the verb by adding the appropriate ending to the stem for the given subject. (*Básicamente, la forma infinitiva del verbo tiene dos partes: la raíz de la palabra (que es todo antes de la terminación) y la terminación misma (que es -ar, -er o -ir). Por ejemplo, la raíz de viajar ("viajar") es viaj-, y la terminación del verbo es -ar. Una vez que ha identificado la raíz*

de un verbo, conjuga el verbo agregando la terminación apropiada a la raíz del tema dado.)

The importance of conjugating verbs is it tells whether the action was, is or will be and also when and by whom. (*La importancia de conjugar verbos es si indica si la acción fue, es o será y también cuándo y por quién.*)

VERB VOCABULARY
(VOCABULARIO VERBO)

abrazar - to hug, to embrace

abrir - to open

abrochar - to fasten, to button up, to do up, to buckle

aburrirse - to get bored

abusar - to abuse, to take advantage of

acabar - to finish, to end

acariciar - to caress, to stroke

aceptar - to accept, to agree

acercar - to get closer

aclarar- to clarify, to clear up

acordar - to remember, to agree

acostarse- to lie down, to go to bed

actuar - to act

acudir - to go, to come, to turn to

acusar - to accuse, to charge

adivinar- to guess

administrar - to manage, to administer
admirar - to admire, to amaze
admitir - to admit, to allow entry
adorar - to adore, to love, to worship
afeitarse - to shave
aguantar - to bear, to endure, to tolerate
ahorrar - to save, to spare
alcanzar - to reach, to catch, to achieve, to be sufficient
alegrarse - to be glad, to be happy
aliviarse - to get better, to be relieved
alquilar- to rent, to lease, to hire
amar - to love
amarrar- to tie, to moor
analizar- to analyze
andar- to walk, to go ahead, to work
apagar- to turn off, to switch off
aplicar- to apply, to put into practice
apoyar- to support, to back
apreciar- to be fond of to appreciate, to see
aprender - to learn
aprobar - to approve, to pass (an exam)
aprovechar - to make the most of, to use
armar - to assemble, to put together, to arm
arreglar - to fix, to repair, to arrange, to sort out

asistir - to attend, to assist

asolearse - to sunbathe

atar - to tie

atender - to pay attention, to serve, to tend to

aterrizar - to land, to arrive

atrapar - to catch

atravesar - to cross, to go through

auxiliar - to help, to assist

aventar - to throw

averiguar- to find out

avisar - to notify to warn, to let know

ayudar- to help

bailar - to dance

bajar - to go down, to come down, to lower, to download

banarse - to take a bath

barrer - to sweep, to sweep away

batallar - to battle, to fight, to struggle

batir - to beat, to churn, to mix

beber- to drink

besar - to kiss

borrar - to delete, to erase, to clear

bostezar- to yawn

brincar - to jump, to skip

bucear- to dive

buscar- to look for, to search
caber - to fit, to hold (capacity)
caer - to fall
callarse - to be quiet, to shut up
calmarse - to calm down, to ease off
cambiar- to change, to swap
caminar-. to walk
cansarse - to get tired
cantar - to sing
captar - to attract, to grasp, to get, to gain
carecer - to lack, to be lacking
cargar -to load, to bear, to charge, to fuel, to carry
casarse - to get married
castigar- to punish, to penalize
cazar - to hunt
celebrar- to celebrate, to perform
cenar- to have dinner
cepillar - to brush, to plane (wood)
cerrar - to close, to shut, to turn off
chechar- to check
chiflar - to whistle, to boo
chocar- to crash, to collide, to run, into
cobrar - to charge, to earn, to cash, to collect
cocer - to cook, to boil, to bake

cocinar - to cook

coger - to take, to pick, to catch, to get

cojear - to limp, to hobble, to wobble

colaborar- to collaborate, to cooperate

coleccionar - to collect

colgar - to hang, to put up

colocar - to place, to put, to lay

comenzar- to begin, to start

comer - to eat

cometer - to commit, to make

comparar- to compare

compartir - to share

componer - to fix, to repair, to compose

comportarse - to behave

comprar - to buy, to purchase, to bribe

comprender - to understand, to comprehend, to included, to cover

concordar - to agree, to concur

conducir - to drive

conectar - to connect, to link

confesar - to confess, to admit

confiar- to trust, to be confident

confirmar- to confirm

conjugar - to conjugate, to combine

conocer- to know, to meet

conseguir - to get, to obtain, to achieve
conservar - to keep, to preserve
considerer- to consider, to take into account
construir - to build, to construct
consumir- to consume
contagiarse - to get infected
contar - to count, to tell
contestar - to answer, to reply
continuar- to continue, to go on
contribuir - to contribute
controlar - to control
convencer - to convince, to persuade
conversar - to talk, to chat
copiar - to copy, to imitate, to cheat
coquetear - to flirt
corregir - to correct, to grade
correr - to run
cortar - to cut, to chop, to break up
crear - to create
crecer - to grow, to rise
creer - to believe, to think
criticar - to criticize, to review
cruzar - to cross, to go across
cuidar - to take care, to look after

culpar - to blame, to accuse
cumplir - to fulfill, to accomplish, to carry out, to turn (age)
curar - to cure, to heal
danar- to damage, to harm
dar - to give
deber- to owe, to have to, must, should
decidir - to decide
decir - to tell, to say
declarar- to declare, to state, to announce, to testify
deducir - to deduce, to deduct
dejar - to leave, to abandon, to let, to stop doing something
demostrar - to demonstrate, to show, to prove
derramar - to spill, to shed
derribar- to demolish, to knock down, to bring down
desaparecer - to disappear, to vanish
desarmar - to dismantle, to disarm, to take apart
desarrollar - to develop
desatar - to untie, to undo, to unleash
desayunar - to have breakfast
descansar - to rest
descender - to descend, to fall, to go down
describir - to describe
descubrir- to discover, to find out, to uncover, to reveal
descuidar - to neglect, to be inattentive

desear- to wish, to desire, to want

desesperarse - to despair, to get exasperated

desfallecer - to faint, to feel faint, to lose heart

desgarrar- to tear, to rip

deshacer - to undo, to untie, to break up

desmayarse - to faint

despedirse - to say good-bye

desperdiciar - to waste

despertar- to wake, to awaken, to arouse

despreciar - to look down on, to despise, to reject

destapar - to unblock, to open, to take a lid off

destruir - to destroy, to ruin, to wreck

desvelarse - to stay awake

detener - to stop, to halt, to detain, to arrest

detestar - to detest, to hate

devolver - to give back, to return, to throw up

dibujar - to draw, to sketch

dirigir - to run, to manage, to direct

disculpar - to excuse, to forgive

discutir - to argue, to discuss, to debate

disfrazarse - to dress up

disfrutar - to enjoy to have a good time

disponer - to stipulate, to order, to arrange, to have available

distinguir - to distinguish, to make out, to honor

divertirse - to have fun, to have a good time, to enjoy oneself

doblar - to fold, to turn, to dub

dormir - to sleep

dudar - to doubt, to hesitate

echa - to throw, to expel, to put

elaborar - to produce, to make, to develop, to prepare

elegir - to choose, to elect

elevar - to raise, to lift, to increase

eliminar - to eliminate, to get rid of to remove

embarcarse - to board, to go on board, to undertake

emborracharse - to get drunk

emocionarse - to get excited, to be moved, to get upset

empatar - to tie, to get even, to match

empezar - to start, to begin

emplear - to employ, to use

emprender - to undertake, to embark on, to set out

empujar - to push, to shove, to drive

enamorarse - to fall in love

encargar - to ask, to order, to take care

encender- to light, to switch on, to awaken

enchufar - to plug in, to switch on, to set up with

encontrar- to find

enderezar - to straighten, to sort out

endulzar - to sweeten, to soften, to brighten up

enfermarse - to fall ill, to get ill, to get sick
enflacar - to lose weight, to get thin
enganar - to deceive, to mislead, to cheat on
engordar - to put on or gain weight, to fatten, to swell
enloquecer - to go crazy, to drive iusane, to be mad about
enojarse - to get angry, to get mad
ensayar - to rehearse, to try, to test, to practice
enseñar - to teach, to show
ensuciar - to get dirty, to sully
entender - to understand, to know
entrar - to enter, to go or come in, to start
entregar - to deliver, to give, to turn in
entrenarse - to train
entristecerse - to grow sad, to become sad
enviar - to send, to dispatch
equivocarse - to make a mistake, to be wrong
escalar - to climb, to scale
escapar - to escape, to run away, to get away
escoger - to choose, to pick, to select
esconder - to hide
escribir - to write
escuchar - to listen, to hear
esperar - to wait, to expect, to hope
estar - to be

estornudar - to sneeze

estudiar - to study, to learn, to consider

evitar - to avoid, to prevent, to save

examinar- to examine, to inspect, to study

explicar - to explain

explorar - to explore, to examine, to scout, to surf (Web)

expresar - to express, to state

extraviar - to lose, to misplace

fabricar - to manufacture, to produce, to make

fallar - to fail, to go wrong, to miss, to rule (legal)

faltar - to miss, to need, to lack

fingir - to feign, to pretend

fracasar - to fail, to be unsuccessful

frenar - to brake, to stop, to slow down

fumar - to smoke

ganar - to earn, to win, to gain

gastar - to spend, to waste

girar - to turn, to spin, to revolve

gobernar - to govern, to rule

golpear - to hit, to beat

gozar - to enjoy to have fun, to take pleasure

grabar - to record, to engrave, to etch

gritar - to shout, to scream, to yell

guardar - to keep, to put away, to save

habitar - to live in, to dwell

hablar - to speak, to talk

hacer - to do, to make

hallar - to find

heredar - to inherit, to succeed to, to get from

herir - to hurt, to wound

hervir - to boil

hoxnear - to balce

huir - to escape, to run away, to avoid something

ignorar - to ignore, to be unaware of

imaginar - to imagine

imitar - to imitate, to simulate, to copy

impeder - to prevent, to hinder, to impede

imprimir - to print

indicar - to indicate, to show

ingresar - to join, to enter, to be admitted, to deposit

iniciar - to begin, to start, to initiate

insistir - to insist

intentar - to try, to attempt

interferir - to interfere, to meddle

intuir - to sense, to intuit, to have a feeling

inventar - to invent, to come up with, to make up

invertir - to invest, to reverse

investigar - to investigate, to find out, to do research

invitar - to invite, to treat

ir - to go

jalar - to pull, to flush

jugar - to play

juntar - to put together, to join, to collect, to unite

jurar - to swear (an oath)

juzgar - to judge, to consider

laborar - to work, to labor

lamentar - to regret, to be sorry

lanzar - to throw, to launch

lastimar - to hurt

lavar - to wash, to clean

leer - to read

levantar - to lift, to raise

limpiar - to clean, to clear

llamar - to call, to summon, to phone, to knock

llegar - to arrive, to reach, to come

llenar - to fill

llevar - to take, to wear, to carry

llorar - to cry

lograr - to achieve, to attain, to manage

luchar - to struggle, to fight

madrugar - to get up early

mandar - to command, to order, to send

manejar - to handle, to drive, to manipulate

maquillarse - to put on makeup

masticar - to chew

matar - to kill

memorizar - to memorize

mentir - to lie

merecer - to deserve

merendar - to have an afternoon snack, to have an early dinner

meter - to put in

mezclar - to mix

mirar - to look, to watch

molestar - to disturb, to bother, to upset

montar- to ride

morar - to dwell, to reside

morder - to bite

morir - to die

mostrar - to show, to display

mover - to move, to drive

mudarse - to move (dwelling), to change (clothes)

nacer - to be born

nadar - to swim

narrar - to tell, to narrate, to relate

necesitar - to need, to require

negar - to deny, to refuse

nombrar - to name, to mention, to appoint
notar - to notice, to note
obedecer - to obey, to respond
obligar- to force, to require
observar - to observe, to watch
obtener - to obtain, to get
ocultar- to hide, to conceal
odiar - to hate
ofrecer- to offer
oír - to hear, to listen
oler - to smell
olvidar- to forget
omitir - to omit, to leave out
opinar - to express an opinion, to think
oponerse - to be opposed, to object
ordenar - to arrange, to tidy up, to order, to ordain
organizar- to organize, to arrange
osar - to dare
padecer- to suffer, to endure
pagar - to pay
parar - to stop
parecerse - to be alike, to look like, to resemble
participar - to take part, to participate, to announce
pasar- to pass, to go past, to go by, to cross, to happen

pasear - to take a walk (a stroll, a ride)

patear - to kick

pedir - to ask for, to order, to beg

pegar - to hit, to stick, to glue, to paste

pelear - to fight, to quarrel

pensar- to think

percibir - to perceive, to sense, to receive

perder- to lose

perdonar - to forgive, to excuse

perjudicar - to harm, to be detrimental, to damage

permitir - to allow, to permit, to make possible

perseguir- to chase, to pursue

perseverar - to persevere, to persist

pintar - to paint

planear - to plan

poder - to be able to, can, may

poner - to put, to set, to set up, to turn on

poseer - to possess, to own, to have

practicar - to practice, to play, to perform

preferir - to prefer

preguntar - to ask

prender - to turn on, to light, to pin, to catch

preocuparse - to worry, to be concerned

preparar - to prepare, to make

presenter - to present, to introduce
prestart - to lend
presumir - to boast, to predict, to suppose
pretender - to expect, to aspire, to pretend
principiar - to begin, to start
probar - to prove, to try, to test, to taste
procurar - to try, to get
prohibir - to prohibit, to ban, to forbid
prometer - to promise, to be promising
pronunciar - to pronounce, to give (a speech)
proponer - to propose, to suggest
proseguir - to continue, to carry on
proteger - to protect
protestar - to protest, to complain
proveer - to provide, to supply
quedarse - to stay, to remain
querer- to want, to love
quitar - to remove, to take away, to get out
rascar - to scratch
rechazar - to reject, to turn down, to repel
recibir- to receive, to get, to welcome
reciclar - to recycle
reclamar - to demand, to claim, to complain
recobrar - to recover, to retrieve, to regain

recoger - to pick up, to collect, to tidy up
reconocer - to recognize, to admit, to reconnoiter
recordar - to recall, to remember, to remind
reflexionar - to reflect, to think
regalar- to present (as a gift), to give away
regañar - to scold, to give a talking to
regir - to rule, to manage, to control
regresar - to return, to go back, to give back
rehusar - to refuse
reír - to laugh
relajarse - to relax, to slacken
remplazar - to replace, to substitute
rendirse - to surrender, to give up, to bow
rentar - to rent, to lease, to yield
renunciar - to resign, to quit, to renounce
reparar - to repair, to fix, to correct, to notice
repartir - to allocate, to distribute, to hand out
reparar - to review, to check, to go over
reponer - to replace, to put back
representar - to represent, to signify, to symbolize, to perform
rescatar - to rescue, to save, to recover
reservar - to reserve
resguardar - to safeguard, to protect
resistir- to resist, to stand, to bear

resolver - to solve, to resolve, to settle, to decide

respetar - to respect, to obey

respirar - to breathe

responder - to answer, to reply, to respond

retroceder - to move back, to back away, to back down

reunirse - to meet, to reunite

revisar - to inspect, to check, to review

revolver - to stir, to mix, to agitate

rezar - to pray, to say

rogar - to beg, to request, to pray

romper - to break, to smash, to tear

roncar - to snore

saber - to know, to know how

sacar - to take out, to get, to take (a picture)

salir - to go out, to get out, to leave, to date

saltar - to jump, to leap, to bounce

saludar - to greet, to say hello, to salute

seguir - to follow, to continue, to keep on

sentarse - to sit

sentir - to feel, to be sorry, to regret, to hear

ser - to be

servir - to serve, to be of use for

situar - to locate, to set, to post

sobrevivir - to survive

socorrer - to help, to aid
solicitar - to request, to apply for
soltar - to let go, to release
solucionar - to solve, to resolve
sonar - to dream
soportar - to support, to bear, to stand
sospechar - to suspect
sostener - to support, to hold, to uphold, to maintain
subir - to go up, to climb, to raise
sudar - to sweat
sufrir - to suffer, to bear, put up with
sugerir - to suggest, to recommend, to propose
suicidarse - to commit suicide, to kill oneself
suplicar - to implore, to beg, to beseech
suponer - to suppose, to assume, to involve
suspirar - to sigh
susurrar – to whisper, to murmur
tapar - to cover, to put the lid (cap, cover) on, to block
tardar - to take (a long) time
teclear - to key, to type
tejer - to knit, to weave
temblar - to tremble, to shake, to shiver, to shudder
temer - to fear, to dread, to be afraid
tener - to have, to hold, to be (age, measure, condition)

terminar - to end, to end up, to finish

tirar - to throw, to toss, to throw away, to drop

tocar - to touch, to handle, to play (a musical instrument)

tomar - to take, to drink

trabajar - to work

traducir - to translate

traer - to bring, to cause, to wear

transportar - to transport, to carry

tratar - to treat, to try to, to deal with

trepar - to climb, to creep up

tropezar - to trip, to stumble, to run into

usar - to use, to wear

utilizar - to use, to utilize

vencer - to defeat, to overcome, to expire

vender- to sell, to sell out, to betray

venir - to come

ver - to see, to look

vestir - to dress, to clothe, to wear

viajar- to travel, to journey

vigilar - to watch, to keep an eye on, to guard

visitar - to visit

vivir - to live, to make a living

volar - to fly

voltear - to turn over, to turn, to toss

volver - to return, to come / go back, to do again

vomit - to vomit, to throw up, to spew out

votar - to vote

yacer - to lie (dead)

zarpar - to set sail, to weigh anchor

B.

AS IF: CONDITIONAL TENSE

(COMO SI: TIEMPO CONDICIONAL)

As if's are theoretical. They are the “conditionally appropriate” without the assurance that they will happen. In English, they come in forms of “I would've if. . .” Basically, conditional tense is laid out for a conditional action. You can also make it as a request to show that somebody can do the particular action. *(Cuando los ifs son teóricos. Ellos son el con reservas apropiados sin el aseguramiento que ellos pasarán. En Inglés, ellos vienen a formas “de yo tendría si...” Básicamente, el tiempo condicional es presentado para una acción condicional. Usted también puede hacerlo como una petición para mostrar que alguien puede hacer la acción particular.)*

In the following sentences, observe how the regular and irregular conditions of the conditional tense are formed. You will find out how to form the conditional tense and how to utilize it in a sentence. *(En las oraciones siguientes, observe como las condiciones regulares e irregulares del tiempo condicional son formadas. Usted averiguará como formar el tiempo condicional y como utilizarlo en una oración.*

WAFLING WITH THE CONDITIONAL TENSE

The conditional tense can be used if you are waffling on issues. You could be able to state an impossible action or set of conditions you like and then say you would've done something if only that condition or set of conditions had been in place. It can be stated in every language either English, Spanish or Italian or any other else. You do not have to be a politician to use it. *(El tiempo condicional puede ser usado si usted es waffling en cuestiones. Usted puede ser capaz de declarar una acción imposible o ponerse de condiciones que le gustan y luego dice que usted habría hecho algo si sólo que la condición o se puso de condiciones hubiera estado en el lugar. Puede ser declarado en cada lengua inglés, español o italiano o alguno otro más. Usted no tiene que ser un político para usarlo.)*

Usually, the conditional tense is used in a sentence with two verbs. One verb states the condition or problem, and then the second verb states, in the conditional, what you would personally do if you were faced with the same problem. For example, in the sentence, "If only I had been given another chance at love, I would try to be the better person," the first verb states what situation you are in and in the second, what you would do if you are in the situation. *(Por lo general, el tiempo condicional es usado en una oración con dos verbos. Un verbo declara la condición o el problema, y luego los segundos estados de verbo, en el condicional, lo que usted haría personalmente si usted fuera afrontado con el mismo problema. Por ejemplo, en la oración, "Si sólo me hubieran dado otra posibilidad en el amor, trataré de ser la mejor persona," el primer verbo declara que situación usted está en y en el segundo, lo que usted haría si usted está en la situación.)*

REGULAR CONDITIONALS

In English, the main word in forming the conditional tense is would. You or somebody else will certainly do these things if the conditions are arguably just. In Spanish, however, you actually change the form of the verb to build the sense of would right into it. Whenever conjugating Spanish verbs in the regular conditional tense, remember the following points *(En Inglés, la palabra principal en la formación del tiempo condicional es. Usted o alguien más harían ciertamente estas cosas si las condiciones son*

posiblemente sólo. En Español, sin embargo, usted realmente se cambia la forma del verbo para construir el sentido de directamente en ello. Conjugando verbos españoles en el tiempo condicional regular, recuerde los puntos siguientes) :

The regular conditional tense is a combination of the imperfect and future tenses. It requires no spelling or stem changes. When conjugating regular -ar, -er, and -ir verbs in the conditional tense, you simply take the entire verb infinitive (don't drop anything) and then add the imperfect verb endings you use for -er and -ir verbs. *(El tiempo condicional regular es una combinación del imperfecto y futuros. Esto no requiere ninguna ortografía o cambios de tallo. Conjugando-ar regular,-er, y verbos-ir en el tiempo condicional, usted simplemente toma el infinitivo de verbo entero (no deje caer nada) y luego añade los finales de verbo imperfectos que usted usa para-er y verbos-ir.)*

Consider the following examples (Considere los ejemplos siguientes):

Conditional endings for all verbs

yo -ía	nosotros/as -íamos
tú -ías	vosotros/as -íais
él, ella, usted -ía	ellos/as, ustedes -ían

Here is a table for conjugations of the following verb types (*Aquí está una mesa para conjugaciones de los tipos de verbo siguientes*):

preparar (to prepare)
prepararía prepararíamos
prepararías prepararíais
prepararía prepararían
Ud. prepararía. (You [formal] would prepare.)

vender (to sell)

vendería	venderíamos
prepararías	venderíais
venderías	venderían

Vosotras venderíais. (You [informal, plural, female] would sell.)

escribir (to write)

escribiría escribiríamos

escribirías escribiríais

escribiría escribirían

Ella escribiría. (She would write.)

C.

**INDICATIVE VS.
SUBJUNCTIVE**

(INDICATIVO VS. SUBJUNTIVO)

When it comes to verbal moods, think of two separate timelines that are running parallel to each other. The indicative mood is one where things have actually happened in the past, are happening in the present and will happen in the future. Meanwhile, the other timeline is called subjunctive. It is where things may or may not happen or may or may not have happened – like desires. The subjunctive mood is a plethora of uncertainties, while the indicative one is always grounded in reality. In practice, a subjunctive clause always depends, at least implicitly, on an indicative statement; they are linked by a conjunctive element, most often “que.” *(Cuando esto viene a humores verbales, piense en dos objetivos separados que dirigen la paralela el uno al otro. El humor indicativo es el que donde las cosas realmente han pasado en el pasado, pasan en el presente y pasarán en lo venidero. Mientras tanto, el otro objetivo es llamado el subjuntivo. Es donde las cosas pueden o poder no pasar o puede o poder no haber pasado – como deseos. El modo subjuntivo es muchas incertidumbres mientras el indicativo siempre es basado en realidad. En la práctica, una cláusula subjuntiva siempre depende, al menos implícitamente, en una declaración indicativa; ellos son unidos por un elemento conjuntivo, el más a menudo "que.")*

Consider the following example:

Es posible que vaya a México en verano. (It is possible that I will go to Mexico in the summer.)

Generally speaking, the subjunctive is used to converse about situations that go beyond the control of a sentence's primary subject. Its outcome is mostly uncertain. It is more like a wish. One example of this is when we expect drivers to arrive at a full stop in stop signs, but it does not necessarily mean that they will. We wish for it to happen, but it depends still. It is the same way as Teresita wanting to lend the money to Pedring, but there is still a possibility that Pedro will refuse. *(Hablando en general, el subjuntivo está acostumbrado opuesto sobre situaciones que van más allá del control del sujeto primario de una oración. Esto es el resultado es sobre todo incierto. Es más bien un deseo. Un ejemplo de este es cuando esperamos que choferes lleguen a un punto en signos de parada pero esto no necesariamente significa que ellos van a. Deseamos para ello pasar pero esto depende todavía. Esto es el mismo camino que Teresita deseo para prestar el dinero a Pedring, pero hay todavía una posibilidad que Pedro rechazará.)*

Take a look at the situation below:

Es importante (necesario) que los conductores respeten las señales de tránsito. (It is important (necessary) that drivers respect traffic signals.)

Teresita quería que Pedring le prestara dinero. (Teresita wanted Pedring to lend him money.)

The subjunctive mood is also used to express empathy. For expressing condolences or feeling sorry for another person's mishap but unable to do anything about it, the subjunctive mood is used. *(El modo subjuntivo también es usado para expresar la empatía. Para expresar condolencias o compadecer a la desgracia de otra persona pero incapaz de hacer algo sobre ello, el modo subjuntivo es usado.)*

Siento que hayas perdido tu vuelo. (I am sorry [that] you (have) missed your flight.)

In expressing certainty on the part of the primary subject, the verbs pensar (to think) and creer (to believe) are used. In this regard, the subjunctive becomes unnecessary. Meanwhile, the lack of belief does not necessarily remove the possibility of an event occurrence that is why the subjunctive is still used. *(En la expresión de la certeza de parte del sujeto primario, los verbos pensar (para pensar) y creer (para creer) son usados. En este aspecto, el subjuntivo se hace innecesario. Mientras tanto, la carencia de creencia no necesariamente quita la posibilidad de un acontecimiento de acontecimiento por eso el subjuntivo todavía es usado.)*

Consider the following sentence:

María cree (piensa) que existen los fantasmas, pero yo no pienso (creo) que existan. (María believes (thinks) ghosts exist, but I don't think (believe) that they do.)

Whenever the subject is directly related in action per se, there is no more a need to incorporate a subjunctive clause. The verb in its infinitive form is utilized in the main clause. . *(Siempre que el sujeto esté directamente relacionado en la acción en sí, no hay más una necesidad de incorporar una cláusula subjuntiva. El verbo en su forma de infinitivo es utilizado por lo general cláusula.)*

Observe the following sentences:

Quiero que (tú) aprendas español. (I want you to learn Spanish)

Quiero aprender español. (I want to learn Spanish.)

D.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

(MODO IMPERATIVO)

While the indicative mood is for things that happened, is happening and will happen, and the subjunctive mood is for wishes and desire, the imperative mood is for the things one ought to do. Commands and requests use the imperative mood. *(Mientras el humor indicativo es para cosas que pasaron, pasan y pasarán y el modo subjuntivo es para deseos y deseo, el humor imperativo son para las cosas que habría que hacer. Las órdenes y las peticiones usan el humor imperativo.)*

Commands can either be affirmative or negative. In Spanish, they can be formal or informal. Informal commands are usually directed at someone whom the speaker would address as “tú” like a child, a family member, a good friend. On the other hand, formal commands are directed towards someone who would be addressed as “usted” such as an elder, a teacher, an officer, the president, and a new acquaintance. *(Las órdenes pueden ser o afirmativas o negativas. En Español, ellos pueden ser formales o informales. Las órdenes informales son por lo general dirigidas a alguien a que el altavoz se dirigiría como “tú” como un niño, un miembro de familia, un amigo bueno. Por otra parte, las órdenes formales son dirigidas hacia alguien que sería dirigido como “usted” como un mayor, un profesor, un oficial, el presidente, y un nuevo conocido.)*

Here are some examples of informal commands:

AFFIRMATIVE

habla (talk)

come (eat)

siéntate (sit down)

NEGATIVE

no hables (don't talk)

no comas (don't eat)

no te sientes (don't sit down)

Here are some examples of formal commands or requests:

AFFIRMATIVE

hable (talk)

siéntese (sit down)

coma (eat)

NEGATIVE

no hable (don't talk)

no coma (don't eat)

no se siente (don't sit down)

Remember that formal commands usually use subjunctive verb forms as if they are sending out that there is a possible refusal on the other party. In this case, formal affirmative commands are usually requests. Moreover, even in negative commands, subjunctive forms are also used. (*Recuerde que las órdenes formales por lo general usan formas de verbo subjuntivas como si ellos envían esto hay una respuesta negativa posible en el otro partido. En este caso, las órdenes afirmativas formales son por lo general peticiones. Además, hasta en órdenes negativas, las formas subjuntivas también son usadas.*)

Commands and requests may also be addressed to a group. Subjunctive form is again used to show that the group has the chance to refuse if they do not want to (*Las órdenes y las peticiones también pueden ser dirigidas a un grupo. La forma subjuntiva otra vez es usada para mostrar que el grupo tiene la posibilidad para negarse si ellos no quieren*):

AFFIRMATIVE

hablemos (let's talk)

comamos (let's eat)

entémonos (let's sit down)

hablad (talk)

med (eat)

sentaos (sit down)

hablen (talk)

coman (eat)

siéntense (sit down)

NEGATIVE

no comáis (don't eat)

no os sentéis (don't sit down)

no hablen (don't talk)

no coman (don't eat)

no se sienten (don't sit down)

no comamos (let's not eat)

no hablemos (let's not talk)

no nos sentemos (let's not sit down)

no habléis (don't talk)

E. INDICATIVE VS. SUBJUNCTIVE

(INDICATIVO VS. SUBJUNTIVO)

When it comes to verbal moods, think of two separate timelines that are running parallel to each other. The indicative mood is one where things have actually happened in the past, are happening in the present and will happen in the future. Meanwhile, the other timeline is called subjunctive. It

is where things may or may not happen or may or may not have happened – like desires. The subjunctive mood is a plethora of uncertainties, while the indicative one is always grounded in reality. In practice, a subjunctive clause always depends, at least implicitly, on an indicative statement; they are linked by a conjunctive element, most often “que.”

Consider the following example:

Es posible que vaya a México en verano. (It is possible that I will go to Mexico in the summer.)

Generally speaking, the subjunctive is used to converse about situations that go beyond the control of a sentence’s primary subject. Its outcome is mostly uncertain. It is more like a wish. One example of this is when we expect drivers to arrive at a full stop in stop signs, but it does not necessarily mean that they will. We wish for it to happen, but it depends still. It is the same way as Teresita wanting to lend the money to Pedring, but there is still a possibility that Pedro will refuse.

Take a look at the situation below:

Es importante (necesario) que los conductores respeten las señales de tránsito. (It is important (necessary) that drivers respect traffic signals.)

Teresita quería que Pedring le prestara dinero. (Teresita wanted Pedring to lend him money.)

The subjunctive mood is also used to express empathy. For expressing condolences or feeling sorry for another person’s mishap but unable to do anything about it, the subjunctive mood is used.

Siento que hayas perdido tu vuelo. (I am sorry [that] you (have) missed your flight.)

In expressing certainty on the part of the primary subject, the verbs pensar (to think) and creer (to believe) are used. In this regard, the subjunctive becomes unnecessary. Meanwhile, the lack of belief does not necessarily remove the possibility of an event occurrence that is why the subjunctive is still used.

Consider the following sentence:

María cree (piensa) que existen los fantasmas, pero yo no pienso (creo) que existan. (María believes (thinks) ghosts exist, but I don't think (believe) that they do.)

Whenever the subject is directly related in action per se, there is no more a need to incorporate a subjunctive clause. The verb in its infinitive form is utilized in the main clause.

Observe the following sentences:

Quiero que (tú) aprendas español. (I want you to learn Spanish)

Quiero aprender español. (I want to learn Spanish.)

F. IMPERATIVE MOOD

(MODO IMPERATIVO)

While the indicative mood is for things that happened, is happening and will happen, and the subjunctive mood is for wishes and desire, the imperative mood is for the things one ought to do. Commands and requests use the imperative mood.

Commands can either be affirmative or negative. In Spanish, they can be formal or informal. Informal commands are usually directed at someone whom the speaker would address as “tú” like a child, a family member, a good friend. On the other hand, formal commands are directed towards someone who would be addressed as “usted” such as an elder, a teacher, an officer, the president, and a new acquaintance.

Here are some examples of informal commands:

AFFIRMATIVE

habla (talk)

come (eat)

siéntate (sit down)

NEGATIVE

no hables (don't talk)

no comas (don't eat)

no te sientes (don't sit down)

Here are some examples of formal commands or requests:

AFFIRMATIVE

hable (talk)

siéntese (sit down)

coma (eat)

NEGATIVE

no hable (don't talk)

no coma (don't eat)

no se sienta (don't sit down)

Remember that formal commands usually use subjunctive verb forms as if they are sending out that there is a possible refusal on the other party. In this case, formal affirmative commands are usually requests. Moreover, even in negative commands, subjunctive forms are also used.

Commands and requests may also be addressed to a group. Subjunctive form is again used to show that the group has the chance to refuse if they do not want to:

AFFIRMATIVE

hablemos (let's talk)

comamos (let's eat)

entémonos (let's sit down)

hablad (talk)

med (eat)

sentaos (sit down)

hablen (talk)

coman (eat)

siéntense (sit down)

NEGATIVE

no comáis (don't eat)
no os sentéis (don't sit down)
no hablen (don't talk)
no coman (don't eat)
no se sienten (don't sit down)
no comamos (let's not eat)
no hablemos (let's not talk)
no nos sentemos (let's not sit down)
no habléis (don't talk)

G.

FUTURE MOOD

(MODO FUTURO)

You will probably not write a futuristic novel but it is important to know how to express an action that is yet to happen in Spanish. (*Usted no escribirá probablemente una novela futurista pero es importante saber expresar una acción que debe pasar aún en español.*)

In the upcoming sections, you will be introduced to a couple of ways to describe the future or “near future” by utilizing what you already know. These are sort of mock future tenses. We then show you how to form the future tense with regular and irregular verbs. (*En las secciones próximas, usted será presentado en un par de modos de describir el futuro "o el futuro próximo" utilizando lo que usted ya sabe. Éstos son la clase de futuros fingidos. Entonces le mostramos como formar el futuro con verbos regulares e irregulares.*)

Whenever implying something about the future, the present tense is used especially when asking for directions or whenever the proposed action will happen in a time that is not very distant or when the action will happen in the near future. (*Implicando algo sobre el futuro, el presente es usado sobre todo pidiendo direcciones o siempre que la acción propuesta pase en un*

tiempo que no es muy distante o cuando la acción pasará en el futuro próximo.)

Consider the following examples:

¿Dejo de hablar? (Shall I stop talking?)

Ellos pasan por nuestra casa. (They'll be stopping by our house.)

EXPRESSING THE NEAR FUTURE WITH IR + A

Whenever expressing something that will take place in the near future or soon, use the present tense of the verb *ir* (to go) + the preposition *a* (which, in this case, has no meaning) + the infinitive of the verb. Take a look at the following examples that express what the subject is going to do (*Siempre que exprese algo que ocurrirá en el futuro cercano o pronto, use el tiempo presente del verbo ir (ir) + la preposición a (que, en este caso, no tiene significado) + el infinitivo del verbo. un vistazo a los siguientes ejemplos que expresan lo que el sujeto va a hacer*) :

Voy a salir. (I'm going to go out.)

Vamos a esperarlos. (We are going to wait for them.)

The present tense of *ir* is irregular, and you conjugate it as follows:

ir (to go)

voy

vamos

vas

vais

va

van

FUTURIZING REGULAR VERBS

One of the easiest tenses to form in Spanish is the future tense. This is because all verbs, regular or irregular, have the same future endings. Depending on the subject, regular future tense verbs simply take the entire -ar, -er, or -ir verb in its infinitive form and add the appropriate ending.

When you are able to memorize all the endings, you can now be able to slay your Spanish class! (*Uno de los tiempos más fáciles para formarse en español es el futuro. Este es porque todos los verbos, regulares o irregulares, tienen los mismos futuros finales. Según el sujeto, los verbos de futuro regulares simplemente toman -ar entero, -er, o el verbo -ir en su infinitivo forma y añade el final apropiado. ¡Cuándo usted es capaz de memorizar todos los finales, usted puede ser capaz ahora de matar su clase española!*)

Future endings for all verbs:

yo –é

nosotros -emos

tú –ás

vosotros -éis

él, ella, Ud. -á

ellos, ellas, Uds. –án

EXAMPLES! The words that follow show how you form the future of some regular verbs with the endings from the previous table (*¡EJEMPLOS! Las palabras que siguen el espectáculo como usted forma el futuro de algunos verbos regulares con los finales de la mesa anterior*):

:

trabajar (to work)

trabajaré

trabajaremos

trabajarás

trabajaréis

trabjará

trabjarán

vender (to sell)

yo venderé

nosotros venderemos

tú venderás
vosotros venderéis
él, ella, Ud. venderá
venderán
discutir (to discuss, argue)
yo discutiré
nosotros discutiremos
tú discutirás
vosotros discutiréis
él, ella, Ud. discutirá
discutirán

Here are some sentences that use the future tense (*Aquí están algunas oraciones que usan el future*):

Yo no los invitaré a mi fiesta. (I won't invite them to my party.)

Ellos no beberán alcohol. (They won't drink alcohol.)

FUTURIZING WITH IRREGULAR VERBS

While setting verbs in the future tense is the easiest, some Spanish verbs are irregular in the future tense. These verbs have irregular future stems and they always end in -r or -rr. That is the easiest way to remember them! (*Poniendo verbos en lo venidero tensan es lo más fácil, algunos verbos españoles son irregulares en lo venidero tensan. Estos verbos tienen futuros tallos irregulares y ellos siempre terminan en-r o-rr. ¡Es el modo más fácil de recordarlos!*)

There are three ways to form the future of irregular verbs. You can do one of the three things (*Hay tres modos de formar el futuro de verbos irregulares. Usted puede hacer una de las tres cosas*):

- 1. Before adding the future ending discussed in futurizing regular verbs, you can add an r to the stem of the verb.**

Infinitive	Meaning	Future Stem
-------------------	----------------	--------------------

caber	to fit	cabr-
poder	to be able	podr-
querer	to want	querr-
saber	to know	sabr-

Check out the following sample sentences:

¿Cabrará esa máquina en el gabinete? (Will that machine fit in the cabinet?)

No podremos venir. (We won't be able to come.)

Querré verlo. (I'll want to see it.)

¿Sabrá hacerlo? (Will he know how to do it?)

2. You can add the letters -dr to the verb stem before adding the proper future ending:

Infinitive	Meaning	Future Stem
poner	to put	pondr-
salir	to leave	saldr-
tener	to have	tendr-
valer	to be worth	valdr-
venir	to come	vendr-

The following sentences use the irregular verbs following the condition above.

Yo pondré los papeles en la mesa. (I'll put the papers on the table.)

¿Cuándo saldrán? (When will they leave?)

Ella no tendrá bastante dinero. (She won't have enough money.)

¿Cuánto valdrá ese coche? (How much will that car be worth?)

¿No vendrás mañana? (Won't you be coming tomorrow?)

3. The third thing that you can do is if verbs are in the third group of future irregulars and have irregular stems, you must simply memorize and then add the proper future endings:

Infinitive	Meaning	Future Stem
------------	---------	-------------

decir	to say	dir-
hacer	to make, to do	har-

The verbs are used in the following sentences.

Yo diré lo que pienso. (I'll say what I think.)

¿Qué harán para resolver el problema? (What will they do to solve the problem?)

FORETELLING, PREDICTING, AND WONDERING WITH THE FUTURE TENSE

(ANULAR, PREDECIR Y MARAVILLAR CON EL TIEMPO FUTURO)

Expressing the future statements with the use of the future tense can be obvious. However, there are also other ways that you can use the future tense in Spanish. Just observe the following statements (*La expresión de las futuras declaraciones con el uso del futuro puede ser obvia. Sin embargo, hay también otros caminos que usted puede usar el futuro en español. Sólo observe las declaraciones siguientes*):

To say what somebody is about to do:

Yo te ayudaré. (I'll help you.)

To predict a future action or event:

Lloverá pronto. (It will rain soon.)

It can also be used to express wonder, probability, conjecture, or uncertainty in the present.

The Spanish future, in this case, is equivalent to the following English phrases: "I wonder," "probably," or "must be." Here are a few examples:

¿Cuánto dinero tendrán? (I wonder how much money they have.)

Serán las seis. (It's probably [It must be] six o'clock.)

Alguien viene. ¿Quién será? (Someone is coming. I wonder who it is.)

¿Será mi esposo? (I wonder whether it's my husband.)

¿Irá a darme un anillo mi novio? (I wonder whether my boyfriend is going to give me a ring.)

To express something that you expect and that is due to or caused by a present action or event:

The Spanish future, in this case, is equivalent to the following English phrases: “I wonder,” “probably,” or “must be.” Here are a few examples:

¿Cuánto dinero tendrán? (I wonder how much money they have.)

Serán las seis. (It’s probably [It must be] six o’clock.)

Alguien viene. ¿Quién será? (Someone is coming. I wonder who it is.)

¿Será mi esposo? (I wonder whether it’s my husband.)

¿Irá a darme un anillo mi novio? (I wonder whether my boyfriend is going to give me a ring.)

To express something that you expect and that’s due to or caused by a present action or event:

Si viene a tiempo el jefe no se quejará. (If you come on time, the boss won’t complain.)

Si sigues la receta prepararás una buena comida. (If you follow the recipe, you’ll prepare a good meal.)

H.

VERB RULES

(REGLAS VERBALES)

For pronunciation purposes, some Spanish verbs undergo spelling changes to preserve the original sound of the verb after having been added a new ending. This change is often nothing to be overly concerned about since it occurs only in the first-person singular (yo) form of the verb. *(Para objetivos de pronunciación, algunos verbos españoles se someten a cambios que saben escribir correctamente para conservar el sonido original del verbo habiendo sido añadido un nuevo final. Este cambio no es*

a menudo nada para estar demasiado preocupado por ya que esto ocurre sólo en la primera persona singular (yo) la forma del verbo.

In the present tense, verbs shown below undergo spelling changes. Refer to the list below (*En el presente, los verbos mostrados abajo se someten a cambios que saben escribir correctamente. Refiérase a la lista abajo*):

Infinitive Ending	Spelling Change	Verb Examples	
Present Conjugation			
vowel + -cer/-cir	c ⇒ zc	ofrecer (to offer)	yo
ofrezco			
		traducir (to translate)	yo
		traduzco	
consonant + -cer/-cir	c ⇒ z	convencer (to convince)	yo
convenzo			
		esparcir (to spread out)	yo esparzo
-ger/-gir	g ⇒ j	escoger (to choose)	
yo escojo			
		exigir (to demand)	yo exijo
-guir	gu ⇒ g	distinguir (to distinguish)	yo
distingo			

Most of the verbs that undergo spelling changes in the present tense end in vowel + -cer or vowel + -cir. Only a few high-frequency verbs fall under the other categories (-ger, -gir, -guir); in all likelihood, you'll see them rarely, if at all. (*La mayor parte de los verbos que se someten a cambios que saben escribir correctamente al final de presente en vocal-cer o vocal-cir. Sólo unos verbos de alta frecuencia se caen bajo las otras categorías (-ger,-gir,-guir); en toda la probabilidad, usted los verá raramente, si en absoluto.*

Here are the verbs with spelling changes in the present tense that you can expect to encounter most often (*Aquí están los verbos con la ortografía de cambios del presente que usted puede esperar encontrar el más a menudo*):

Spanish Verb	Translation
---------------------	--------------------

aparecer	to appear
conocer	to know (to be acquainted with)
merecer	to deserve, merit
nacer	to be born
obedecer	to obey
parecer	to seem
producir	to produce
reconocer	to recognize
reducir	to reduce
reproducir	to reproduce

STEM-CHANGING VERBS

A number of Spanish verbs undergo stem changes, this means that there are changes in the stem of the verb. Note that the stem of the verb is what remains when the –ar, –er, or –ir ending has been taken off. In the present tense, all stem changes are applicable in all of the conjugated forms except for the nosotros and vosotros forms. (*Varios verbos españoles se someten a cambios de tallo, este significa que hay cambios del tallo del verbo. Note que el tallo del verbo es lo que permanece cuando el -ar, -er, o final de -ir ha sido quitado. En el presente, todos los cambios de tallo son aplicables en todas las formas conjugadas excepto formas de vosotros y el nosotros.*)

-ar stem changes

As stated above, the only exception are nosotros and vosotros and many Spanish verbs with an –ar do undergo stem changes. The list below details these changes:

e ⇒ ie: For instance, empezar (to begin) changes to yo empiezo (nosotros empezamos).

Here are the sample Spanish verbs that are frequently used and also fit into this category:

- cerrar (to close)

- comenzar (to begin)
- despertar (to wake up)
- negar (to deny)
- nevar (to snow)
- pensar (to think)
- recomendar (to recommend)

o/u ⇒ ue: For instance, mostrar (to show) changes to yo muestro (nosotros mostramos), and jugar (to play) changes to yo juego (nosotros jugamos). Here are the most frequently used Spanish verbs that fit into this category:

- acordar (to agree)
- acostar (to put to bed)
- almorzar (to eat lunch)
- colgar (to hang up)
- contar (to tell)
- costar (to cost)
- encontrar (to meet)
- probar (to try [on])
- recordar (to remember)

Jugar is the only common -ar verb whose stem vowel changes from u to ue. Consider the following sentences:

- Yo juego al fútbol. (I play soccer.)
- Julio y yo jugamos al golf. (Julio and I play golf.)

-er stem changes

Spanning verbs ending with -er undergo stem changes in all forms except nosotros and vosotros. The following list shows these changes (*Los verbos españoles que se terminan con -er se someten a cambios de tallo de todas las formas excepto nosotros y vosotros. La lista siguiente muestra estos cambios*):

e ⇒ ie: Consider this, querer (to wish, want) changes to yo quiero (nosotros queremos). Here are the most frequently used Spanish verbs that fit into this category:

- defender (to defend)
- encender (to light)
- entender (to understand)
- perder (to lose)

o ⇒ ue: For instance, volver (to return) changes to yo vuelvo (nosotros volvemos). Here are the most frequently used Spanish verbs that fit into this category:

- devolver (to return)
- doler (to hurt)
- envolver (to wrap up)
- llover (to rain)
- poder (to be able to, can)

Some verbs with stem changes in the present tense are used impersonally in the third-person singular only:

Llueve. (It's raining.) (llover; o ⇒ ue)

Nieva. (It's snowing.) (nevar; e ⇒ ie)

Huela. (It's freezing.) (helar; e ⇒ ie)

Trueno. (It's thundering.) (tronar; o ⇒ ue)

-ir stem changes

Many Spanish verbs with an -ir ending undergo stem changes in all forms except nosotros and vosotros. The following list outlines these changes (*Muchos verbos españoles con un final de-ir se someten a cambios de tallo de todas las formas excepto nosotros y vosotros. La lista siguiente perfila estos cambios*):

e ⇒ ie: For instance, preferir (to prefer) changes to yo prefiero (nosotros preferimos). Here are the most frequently used Spanish verbs that fit into

this category:

- advertir (to warn)
- consentir (to allow)
- divertir (to amuse)
- mentir (to lie)
- sentir (to feel, regret)
- sugerir (to suggest)

o ⇒ ue: For instance, dormir (to sleep) changes to yo duermo (nosotros dormimos). Another verb conjugated like dormir is morir (to die).

e ⇒ i: For instance, servir (to serve) changes to yo sirvo (nosotros servimos). Here are the most frequently used Spanish verbs that fit into this category:

- despedir (to say goodbye to)
- expedir (to send)
- medir (to measure)
- pedir (to ask for)
- repetir (to repeat)
- vestir (to clothe)

Stem change for verbs ending in -iar

Some Spanish verbs with an -iar ending undergo a stem change in all forms except nosotros and vosotros. This stem change is i ⇒ í. For instance, guiar (to guide) changes to yo guío (nosotros guiamos). Here are the most frequently used Spanish verbs that fit into this category (*Algunos verbos españoles con un final de-iar se someten a un cambio de tallo de todas las formas excepto nosotros y vosotros. Este cambio de tallo es yo ⇒ í. Por ejemplo, guiar (para dirigir) se cambia a yo guío (nosotros guiamos). Aquí están los verbos españoles el más con frecuencia usados que caben en esta categoría*) :

- enviar (to send)

esquiar (to ski)
fotografiar (to photograph)
vaciar (to empty)

LET'S EXERCISE!

Fill in the table with the correct form of the verb group corresponding to the pronouns modified. The first one is already filled out. (*Rellene la mesa con la forma correcta del grupo de verbo correspondiente a los pronombres modificados. El primer es llenado ya.*)

	-ar	-er	-ir
I	hablo	como	vivo
he/she/it/you (Vd.)			
we			
they/you (Vds.)			

A LITTLE TEST

Now that you have been introduced to the different moods namely: subjunctive, indicative, and imperative. It is now time for you to try answering some exercises. (*Ahora que usted ha sido presentado en los humores diferentes a saber: subjuntivo, indicativo e imperativo. Esto es ahora el tiempo para usted para tratar de contestar algunos ejercicios.*)

For the following sentences, conjugate the verb in parentheses in the present tense of the indicative mood. (*Para las oraciones siguientes, conjugue el verbo en paréntesis en el presente del humor indicativo.*)

1. ¡Hola! ¿Cómo _____ (estar) hoy? (Hello! How are you today?)
2. Mi nombre _____ (ser) Juan y _____ (ser) de España. (My name is Juan, and I am from Spain.)
3. Mis amigos y yo _____ (querer) visitar la ciudad. (My friends and I want to visit the city.)
4. Tú y tu novia _____ (poder) venir con nosotros, si _____ (querer). (You and your girlfriend can come)

- with us if you want to.)
5. Le _____ (tener) que preguntar a ella, pero _____ (creer) que dirá que sí. (I have to ask her, but I think that she will say yes.)
 6. ¿A dónde _____ (pensar, ustedes) ir primero? (Where are you thinking of going first?)
 7. ¿Por qué no _____ (ir, nosotros) al museo de arte moderno? (Why don't we go to the modern art museum?)
 8. Escuché que _____ (haber) una exhibición de Pablo Picasso muy interesante. (I heard there is a very interesting Pablo Picasso exhibit.)
 9. ¿Qué tal si luego _____ (comer, nosotros) en el centro? (What if afterwards, we eat downtown?)
 10. ¡Excelente idea! (conocer) un buen restaurante de mariscos. (Excellent idea! I know a good seafood restaurant.)

For the following sentences, conjugate the verbs in parentheses in the preterit tense of the indicative mood. (*Para las oraciones siguientes, conjugue los verbos en paréntesis en el tiempo de preterit del humor indicativo.*)

1. El verano pasado _____ (estar, yo) en Mexico por seis semanas. (Last summer I was in Mexico for six weeks.)
2. _____ (ser) uno de los viajes más divertidos de mi vida. (It was one of the most fun trips of my life.)
3. _____ (conocer, yo) a mucha gente e _____ (hacer) muchos amigos. (I met many people and made many friends.)
4. ¿_____ (comer, tú) mucha comida mexicana? (Did you eat a lot of Mexican food?)
5. _____ (probar) de todo, ¡hasta chapulines fritos en Oaxaca! (I tried everything, even fried grasshoppers in Oaxaca!)
6. ¿Qué cosas _____ (ver, tú)? ¿Qué lugares _____ (visitar, tú)? (What things did you see? What places did you visit?)

7. La familia con la que _____ (quedarse, yo) me _____ (llevar) a todas partes. (The family that I stayed with took me everywhere.)
8. _____ (subir, nosotros) a las pirámides de Tulúm y _____ (bucear) en Cancún. (We climbed the pyramids in Tulúm and scuba dived in Cancún.)
9. Suena como que _____ (divertirse, tú) mucho. (It sounds like you had a lot of fun.)
10. Sí, me _____ (dar) tristeza pero al final _____ (tener, yo) que regresar a casa. (Yes, it made me sad to leave but in the end I had to come back home.)

For the following sentences, conjugate the verbs in parentheses in the future tense of the indicative mood. (*Para las oraciones siguientes, conjugue los verbos en paréntesis en lo venidero el tiempo del humor indicativo.*)

1. ¿Adónde _____ (ir, vosotros) de vacaciones este verano? (Where will you all go on vacation this summer?)
2. No lo _____ (saber, nosotros) hasta el ultimo minuto. (We won't know until the last minute.)
3. Pero en cuanto sepáis me lo _____ (decir, vosotros), ¿no? (But as soon as you all know you will tell me, won't you?)
4. ¿Para qué? De cualquier manera no _____ (poder, tú) venir con nosotros. (What for? You won't be able to come with us anyway.)
5. No, pero finalmente _____ (tener, yo) un poco de paz y tranquilidad. (No, but I will finally have some peace and quiet.)

For the following sentences, conjugate the verbs in parentheses in the present perfect tense of the indicative mood. (*Para las oraciones siguientes, conjugue los verbos en paréntesis en el tiempo de pretérito perfecto del humor indicativo.*)

1. ¿Alguna vez _____ (estar, tú) enamorado de alguien? (Have you ever been in love with someone?)
2. No, nunca _____ (querer, yo) a nadie en mi vida. (No, I have never loved anyone in my life.)

3. Nunca le _____ (decir, yo) palabras de amor a nadie. (I have never said words of love to anyone.)
4. Nadie me _____ (escribir) ni yo _____ (abrir) una carta de amor nunca. (No one has written me nor have I opened a love letter ever.)
5. Parece que tu vida _____ (ser) muy triste hasta ahora. (It seems that your life has been very sad until now.)
6. Pero _____ (tener, yo) muchos buenos amigos y _____ (hacer, yo) muchas cosas. (But I have had many good friends, and I have done many things.)
7. Simplemente no _____ (poner, yo) mucho esfuerzo en el aspecto romántico de mi vida. (I simply haven't put much effort in the romantic aspect of my life.)
8. Por lo menos tampoco _____ (romperse) muchos corazones por mi culpa. (At least not many hearts have been broken because of me.)
9. Y ¿_____ (resolver, tú) hacer algo al respecto de tu vida amorosa? (And have you resolved to do something about your love life?)
10. Todo lo que puedo decir es que no _____ (morir, yo) todavía. (All that I can say is that I haven't died yet.)

For the following sentences, conjugate the verbs in parentheses in the present tense of the subjunctive mood.

1. ¿Qué quieres ser cuando _____ (ser, tú) grande? (What do you want to be when you grow up?)
2. Sólo espero que en el futuro todavía _____ (haber) recursos naturales suficientes. (I only hope that in the future there are still sufficient natural resources.)
3. Es probable que el planeta _____ (tener) muchos más problemas de los que tiene ahora. (It's probable that the planet may have many more problems than it has now.)
4. ¡Necesitamos que los líderes del mundo _____ (hacer) algo ahora! (We need the world leaders to do something now!)
5. ¿Crees que a ellos les importa lo que tú _____ (pensar) o _____ (decir, tú)? (Do you think that they care what you may think or say?)

For the following sentences, conjugate the verbs in parentheses in the past tense of the subjunctive mood. (*Para las oraciones siguientes, conjugué los verbos en paréntesis en el pasado del modo subjuntivo.*)

1. No puedo creer que nadie _____ (estar) consciente del peligro. (I can't believe that no one was aware of the danger.)
2. Yo pedí muchas veces que alguien _____ (hacer) una investigación completa. (I requested many times that someone do a thorough investigation.)
3. Supongo que nadie pensaba que algo así _____ (poder) pasar. (I suppose that nobody thought that something like this could happen.)
4. O quizá alguien les ordenó a los empleados que no _____ (decir) nada. (Or maybe someone ordered the employees not to say anything.)
5. Si yo _____ (ser) tú, trataría de involucrar a los medios en el asunto. (If I were you, I would try to get the media involved in the matter.)

For the following sentences, use the appropriate imperative form of the verb in parentheses. (*Para las oraciones siguientes, use la forma imperativa apropiada del verbo en paréntesis.*)

1. ¡Anda! _____ (llevar + me, inf.) al cine esta noche. (Come on! Take me to the movies tonight.)
2. Bueno, pero no _____ (tardarse, inf.) mucho en salir de la casa. (All right, but don't take too long getting out of the house.)
3. ¡No _____ (ser, inf.) pesado! (Don't be a pain!)
4. _____ (dar+nos, for.) dos boletos para la función de las ocho, por favor. (Give us two tickets for the eight o'clock show, please.)
5. No le _____ (poner, for.) mucha mantequilla a las palomitas, por favor. (Don't put too much butter on the popcorn, please.)

CHAPTER XIII

DOUBLED VOCABULARY AND PHRASES FOR PRACTICING SPANISH

(VOCABULARIO DOBLADO Y FRASES PARA PRACTICAR EL ESPAÑOL)

PHRASES FOR PRACTICING SPANISH

Here are some phrases that you can practice on for speaking Spanish. These are basic phrases and sentences with the correct pronunciation to better guide you in verbal Spanish. *(Aquí están algunas frases con las cuales usted puede practicar para decir el español. Éstos son frases básicas y oraciones con la pronunciación correcta para dirigirle mejor en el español verbal.)*

padre (pah-dreh) (father)
madre (mah-dreh) (mother)
hijo (ee-Hoh) (son)
hija (ee-Hah) (daughter)
hermano (ehr-mah-noh) (brother)
hermana (ehr-mah-nah) (sister)
yerno (yehr-noh) (son-in-law)
nuera (nooeh-rah) (daughter-in-law)
nieto (neeh-toh) (grandson)

nieta (neeeh-tah) (granddaughter)
cuñado (koo-nyah-doh) (brother-in-law)
cuñada (koo-nyah-dah) (sister-in-law)
primo (pree-moh) (cousin [male])
prima (pree-mah) (cousin [female])
padrino (pah-dree-noh) (godfather)
madrina (mah-dree-nah) (godmother)
tío (tee-oh) (uncle)
tía (tee-ah) (aunt)
abuelo (ah-bvooeh-loh) (grandfather)
abuela (ah-bvooeh-lah) (grandmother)
oy mujer. (sohy moo-Hehr) (I'm a woman.)
Soy Canadiense. (sohy kah-nah-dee-ehn-seh) (I'm Canadian.)
Soy de Winnipeg. (sohy de Winnipeg) (I'm from Winnipeg.)
Ellos son muy altos. (eh-yohs sohn mooy ahl-tohs) (They're very tall.)
¿Ustedes son Uruguayos? (oos-teh-dehs sohn oo-roo-gooah-yohs) (Are you [formal] Uruguayan?)
Ella es maestra. (eh-yah ehs mah-ehs-trah) (She's a teacher.)
Eres muy bella. (eh-rehs mooy bveh-yah) (You're very beautiful.)
Eres muy gentil. (eh-rehs mooy Hehn-teel) (You're very kind.)
¿Quién? (keeehn) (Who?)
¿Qué? (keh) (What?)
¿Dónde? (dohn-deh) (Where?)
¿Cuándo? (kooahn-doh) (When?)
¿Por qué? (pohr keh) (Why?)
¿Cómo? (koh-moh) (How?)
¿Cuánto? (kooahn-toh) (How much?)

¿Cuál? (kooahl) (Which?)

¿Quién es él? (keeehn ehs ehl) (Who is he?)

¿Qué hace usted? (keh ah-seh oos-tehd) (What do you do?)

¿Dónde viven? (dohn-deh bvee-bvehn) (Where do you [plural]/they live?)

¿Cuándo llegaron? (kooahn-doh yeh-gah-rohn) (When did you [plural]/they arrive?)

¿Por qué está aquí? (pohr keh ehs-tah ah-kee) (Why are you [formal] here? Why is he/she/it here?)

¿Cómo es el camino? (koh-moh ehs ehl kah-mee-noh) (What's the road like?)

¿Cuánto cuesta el cuarto? (kooahn-toh kooehs-tah ehl kooahr-toh) (How much is the room?)

¿Cuál hotel es mejor? (kooahl oh-tehl ehs meh-Hohr) (Which hotel is better?)

Muchas gracias. (moo-chahs grah-seeahs) (Thank you very much.)

No, gracias. (no grah-seeahs) (No, thank you.)

Nada, gracias. (nah-dah grah-seeahs) (Nothing, thanks.)

Lo siento. (loh seeehn-toh) (I'm sorry.)

Mi culpa. (mee kool-pah) (My fault.)

Con permiso. (kohn pehr-mee-soh) (Excuse me. [in the way])

Discúlpeme. (dees-kuhl-peh-meh) (Excuse me. [interrupt])

¿Qué necesita usted? (keh neh-seh-see-tah oos-tehd) (What do you need?)

Quiero unas baterías. (keeeh-roh oo-nahs bah-tehr-ee-ahs) (I want some batteries.)

¿Habla usted inglés? (ah-bvlah oos-tehd een-glehs) (Do you speak English?)

Hablo inglés. (ah-bvloh een-glehs) (I speak English.)

¿Habla usted español? (ah-bvlah oos-tehd eh-spah-nyohl) (Do you speak Spanish?)

Hablo español. (ah-bvlah eh-spah-nyohl) (I speak Spanish.)

No entiendo. (noh ehn-teeehn-doh) (I don't understand.)

No hablo mucho español. (no ah-bvloho moo-choh eh-spah-nyohl) (I don't speak much Spanish.)

¿Repita, por favor? (reh-pee-tah pohr fah-bvohr) (Can you repeat that, please?)

Necesito información, por favor. (neh-seh-see-toh een-fohr-mah-see-ohn pohr fah-bvohr) (I need information, please.)

Necesito ayuda. (neh-seh-see-toh ah-yoo-dah) (I need some help.)

¿Adónde va usted? (ah-dohn-deh bvah oos-tehd) (Where are you going?)

No sé. (noh seh) (I don't know.)

¡Buen provecho! (bvooehn proh-bveh-choh) (Enjoy your meal! — the equivalent of the French Bon appetit!)

¿Con qué está servido? (kohn keh ehs-tah sehr-bvee-doh) (What does it come with?)

Está caliente. (ehs-tah kah-leeehn-teh) (It's hot [temperature].)

Está frío. (ehs-tah freeoh) (It's cold.)

Está picante. (ehs-tah pee-kahn-teh) (It's hot [flavor/spice].)

Es sabroso. (ehs sah-bvroh-soh) (It's tasty.)

Lamento, no tenemos . . . (lah-mehn-toh noh teh-neh-mohs) (Sorry, we don't have . . .)

¿Qué ingredientes tiene? (keh een-greh-deeehn-tehs teeeh-neh) (What are the ingredients?)

¿Qué más trae el plato? (keh mahs trah-eh ehl plah-toh) (What else is in the dish?)

Escoger un vino. (ehs-koh-Hehr oon bvee-noh) (Choose a wine.)

¡Salud! (sah-lood) (Cheers!)

Tomar un refresco. (toh-mahr oon reh-frehs-koh) (Drink a soda pop.)

Tomar un trago. (toh-mahr oon trah-goh) (Have a drink [alcoholic].)

Un vaso de agua. (oon bvah-soh deh ah-gooah) (A glass of water.)

Un vaso de leche. (oon bvah-soh deh leh-cheh) (A glass of milk.)

Ahora no, gracias. (ah-oh-rah noh grah-seeahs) (Not now, thank you.)

Ya tengo, gracias. (yah tehn-goh grah-seeahs) (I already have some [or it], thanks.)

No me interesa, gracias. (no meh een-teh-reh-sah grah-seeahs) (It doesn't interest me, thank you.)

Más tarde, gracias. (mahs tahr-deh grah-seeahs) (Later, thank you.)

No me gusta, gracias. (noh meh goos-tah grah-seeahs) (I don't like it, thanks.)

No me moleste, ¡por favor! (noh meh moh-lehs-teh pohr fah-bvohr) (Don't bother me, please!)

el arroz (ehl ah-rrohs) (the rice)

el atún (ehl ah-toon) (the tuna)

el fideo (ehl fee-deh-oh) (the pasta)

los cereales (lohs seh-reh-ah-lehs) (the cereals)

las galletas (lahs gah-yeh-tahs) (the cookies or crackers)

la leche (lah leh-cheh) (the milk)

pagar (pah-gahr) (to pay)

el pasillo (ehl pah-see-yoh) (the aisle)

las sardinas (lahs sahr-dee-nahs) (the sardines)

el vino (ehl bvee-noh) (the wine)
el vuelto (ehl bvooehl-toh) (change [as in money back]); la
vuelta (lah bvooehl-tah) in Spain
las ollas (lahs oh-yas) (pots)
el tercer pasillo (ehl tehr-sehr pah-see-yoh) (the third aisle)
al fondo (ahl fohn-doh) (at the back)
Gracias, aquí está su vuelto. (grah-seeahs ah-kee ehs-tah soo
bvooehl-toh) (Thanks, here's your change.)
¿Dónde está la entrada? (dohn-deh ehs-tah lah ehn-trah-dah)
(Where's the entrance?)
¿Dónde está la salida? (dohn-deh ehs-tah lah sah-lee-dah)
(Where's the exit?)
empuje (ehm-poo-Heh) (push)
tire (tee-reh) (pull)
jale (Hah-leh) (pull [in Mexico])
el ascensor (ehl ah-sehn-sohr) (the elevator)
la escalera mecánica (lah ehs-kah-leh-rah meh-kah-nee-kah)
(the escalator)
el vendedor (ehl bvehn-deh-dohr) or la vendedora (lah bvehn-
deh-doh-rah) (the salesperson [male and female])
la caja (lah kah-Hah) (the check-out stand)

DOUBLED VOCABULARY

Here are some words with English-Spanish translation to better orient you with the Spanish verb vocabulary. (*Aquí están algunas palabras con la traducción inglés-española para orientarle mejor con el vocabulario de verbo español.*)

admit - confesar

abandon - dejar

abuse - abusar
accept- aceptar
accomplish - cumplir
accuse- acusar, culpar
achieve-alcanzar, conseguir, lograr
act- actuar
administer - administrar
admire- admirar
admit - admitir, reconocer
adore - adorar
agitate - revolver
agree - aceptar, concordar
aid- ayudar, socorrer
allocate - repartir
allow - permitir
allow entry - admitir
amaze - admirar
analyze - analizar
announce-declarar, participar
answer-contestar, responder
apply - aplicar
apply for - solicitar
appoint - nombrar
appreciate - apreciar
approve - aprobar
argue - discutir
arm - armar
arouse - despertar

arrange - arreglar, disponer, ordenar, organizar

arrest - detener

arrive - aterrizar, llegar

ask - encargar, preguntar

ask for - pedir

aspire - pretender

assemble - armar

assist - asistir, auxiliar

assume - suponer

appoint - nombrar

appreciate - apreciar

approve - aprobar

argue - discutir

arm - armar

arouse - despertar

arrange - arreglar, disponer, ordenar, organizar

arrest - detener

arrive - aterrizar, llegar

ask - encargar, preguntar

ask for - pedir

aspire - pretender

assemble - armar

assist - asistir, auxiliar

assume - suponer

attain - lograr

attempt - intentar

attend - asistir

attract - captar

avoid - evitar
avoid something - huir
awaken-despertar, encender
back away - retroceder
back down - retroceder
bake - cocer, hornear
ban - prohibir
battle - batallar
be - estar, ser
be (age, measure) - tener
be able to - poder
be admitted - ingresar
be afraid - temer
be alike - parecerse
be born - nacer
be concerned - preocuparse
be confident - confiar
be detrimental - perjudicar
be fond of - apreciar
be glad - alegrarse
be happy - alegrarse
be inattentive - descuidar
be lacking - carecer
be mad about - enloquecer
be moved - emocionarse
be of use for - servir
be opposed - oponerse
be promising - prometer

be quiet- callarse
be relieved - aliviarse
be sorry- lamentar, sentir
be sufficient - alcanzar
be unaware of - ignorar
be unsuccessful - fracasar
be wrong - equivocarse
bear - aguantar, cargar, resistir, soportar, sufrir
beat - batir, golpear
become sad - entristecerse
beg - pedir, rogar, suplicar
begin - comenzar, empezar, iniciar, principiar
behave - comportarse
believe - creer
beseech- suplicar
betray - vender
bite - morder
blame - culpar
block - tapar
board - embarcarse
boast - presumir
boil - cocer, hervir
boo - chiflar
bother - molestar
bounce - saltar
bow - rendirse
brake - frenar
break - romper

break up - cortar, deshacer
breathe - respirar
bribe - comprar
brighten up - endulzar
bring - traer
bring down - derribar
brush - cepillar
buckle - abrochar
build - construir
button up - abrochar
buy - comprar
call - llamar
calm down - calmarse
can - poder
caress - acariciar
carry - cargar, llevar, transportar
carry on - proseguir
carry out - cumplir
cash - cobrar
catch - alcanzar, atrapar, coger, prender
cause - traer
celebrate - celebrar
change - cambiar
change (clothes) - mudarse
charge - acusar, cargar, cobrar
chase - perseguir
chat - conversar
cheat - copiar

cheat on - engañar
check - checar, repasar, revisar
chew - masticar
choose - elegir, escoger
chop - cortar
churn - batir
claim - reclamar
clarify - aclarar
clean - lavar, limpiar
clear - borrar, limpiar
clear up - aclarar
climb - escalar, subir, trepar
close - cerrar
clothe - vestir
collaborate - colaborar
collect - cobrar, coleccionar, juntar, recoger
collide - chocar
combine - conjugar
come - acudir, llegar, venir
come/go back - volver
come down - bajar
come up with - inventar
command - mandar
commit - cometer
commit suicide - suicidarse
compare - comparar
complain - protestar, reclamar
compose - componer

comprehend - comprender
conceal - ocultar
concur- concordar
confess - confesar
confirm - confirmar
conjugate - conjugar
connect - conectar
consider - considerar, estudiar, juzgar
construct - construir
consume - consumir
continue - continuar, proseguir, seguir
contribute - contribuir
control - controlar, regir
convince - convencer
cook - cocer, cocinar
cooperate - colaborar
copy - copiar, imitar
correct- corregir, reparar
count - contar
cover - comprender, tapar
crash - chocar
create - crear
creep up - trepar
criticize - criticar
cross - atravesar, cruzar, pasar
cry - llorar
cure - curar
cut- cortar

damage - dañar, perjudicar

dance - bailar

dare - osar

date - salir

deal with - tratar

debate - discutir

deceive - engañar

decide - decidir, resolver

declare - declarar

deduce - deducir

deduct- deducir

defeat - vencer

delete - borrar

deliver - entregar

demand - reclamar

demolish - derribar

demonstrate - demostrar

deny - negar

deposit - ingresar

descend- descender

describe - describir

deserve - merecer

desire - desear

despair - desesperarse

despise - despreciar

destroy - destruir

detain - detener

detest - detestar

develop-desarrollar, elaborar

die - morir

direct - dirigir

disappear - desaparecer

disarm - desarmar

discover - descubrir

discuss - discutir

dismantle - desarmar

dispatch - enviar

display - mostrar

distinguish - distinguir

distribute - repartir

disturb - molestar

dive - bucear

do - hacer

do again - volver

do research - investigar

do up - abrochar

doubt - dudar

download - bajar

draw - dibujar

dread - temer

dream - soñar

dress - vestir

dress up - disfrazarse

drink - beber, tomar

drive - conducir, empujar, manejar, mover

drive insane - enloquecer

drop - tirar
dub - doblar
dwell - habitar, morar
earn - cobrar, ganar
ease off - calmarse
eat- comer
elect - elegir
eliminate - eliminar
embark on - emprender
embrace - abrazar
employ - emplear
end - acabar, terminar
end up - terminar
endure - aguantar, padecer
engrave - grabar
enjoy - disfrutar, gozar
enjoy oneself - divertirse
enter - entrar, ingresar
erase - borrar
escape - escapar, huir
etch - grabar
examine - examinar, explorar
excuse - disculpar, perdonar
expect - esperar, pretender
expel - echar
expire - vencer
explain - explicar
explore - explorar

express - expresar
express an opinion - opinar
fail - fallar, fracasar
faint-desfallecer, desmayarse
fall - caer, descender
fall ill - enfermarse
fall in love - enamorarse
fasten - abrochar
fatten - engordar
fear - temer
feel - sentir
feel faint - desfallecer
feign - fingir
fight - batallar, luchar, pelear
fill - llenar
find - encontrar, hallar
find out - averiguar, descubrir, investigar
finish - acabar, terminar
fit - caber
fix - arreglar, composer, reparar
flee - huir
flirt - coquetear
flush - jalar
fly - volar
fold - doblar
follow - seguir
forbid - prohibir
force - obligar

forget - olvidar
forgive - disculpar, perdonar
fuel - cargar
fulfill - cumplir
gain - captar, ganar
get - captar, coger, conseguir, obtener, procurar, recibir, sacar
get angry - enojarse
get away - escapar
get better - aliviarse
get bored - aburrirse
get closer - acercarse
get dirty- ensuciar
get drunk - emborracharse
get even - desquitarse, empatar
get exasperated - desesperarse
get excited - emocionarse
get from - heredar
get ill - enfermarse
get infected - contagiarse
get mad - enojarse
get married - casarse
get out- quitar, salir
get rid of - eliminar
get sick - enfermarse
get thin - enflacar
get tired - cansarse
get up early - madrugar
get upset - emocionarse

give - dar, entregar
give (a speech) - pronunciar
give a talking to - regañar
give away - regalar
give back - devolver, regresar
give up - rendirse
go - acudir, ir
go across - cruzar
go ahead - andar
go back - regresar
go by - pasar
go crazy - enloquecer
go down - bajar, descender
go on - continuar
go on board - embarcarse
go or come in - entrar
go out - salir
go over - repasar
go past - pasar
go through - atravesar
go to bed - acostarse
go up - subir
go wrong - fallar
govern - gobernar
grade - corregir
grasp - captar
greet - saludar
grow - crecer

grow sad - entristecerse
guard - vigilar
guess - adivinar
halt - detener
hand out - repartir
handle - manejar, tocar
hang - colgar
happen - pasar
harm - dañar, perjudicar
hate - detestar, odiar
have - poseer, tener
have an early dinner- merendar
have a feeling - intuir
have a good time - disfrutar, divertirse
have an afternoon snack - merendar
have available - disponer
have breakfast - desayunar
have dinner - cenar
have fun - divertirse, gozar
have to - deber
heal - curar
hear - escuchar, oír, sentir
help - auxiliar, ayudar, socorrer
hesitate - dudar
hide - esconder, ocultar
hinder- impedir
hire - alquilar
hit - golpear, pegar

hobble - cojear
hold - sostener, teuer
hold (capacity) - caber
honor - distinguir
hope - esperar
hug - abrazar
hunt - cazar
hurt - herlr, lastimar
ignore - ignorar
imagine - imagitiar
imitate - copiar, imitar
impede - impedir
implore - suplicar
include - comprender
increase - elevar
indicate - indicar
inherit - heredar
initiate - iniciar
insist - insistir
inspect - examinar, revisar
interfere - interferir
introduce - presentar
invent - inventar
invest - invertir
investigate - investigar
invite - invitar
involve - suponer
join - ingresar, juntar

journey - viajar
judge - juzgar
jump - brincar, saltar
keep - conservar, guardar
keep an eye on - vigilar
keep on - seguir
key in (type) - teclear
kick - patear
kill - matar
kill oneself - suicidarse
kiss - besar
knit - tejer
knock - llamar
knock down - derribar
know - conocer, entender, saber
know how - saber
labor - laborar
lack - carecer, faltar
land - aterrizar
laugh - reír
launch - lanzar
lay - colocar
leap - saltar
learn - aprender, estudiar
lease - alquilar, rentar
leave - dejar, salir
leave out - omitir
lend - prestar

let - dejar
let go - soltar
let know - avisar
lie - mentir
lie (dead) - yacer
lie down - acostarse
lift- elevar, levantar
light - encender, prender
limp - cojear
link - conectar
listen - escuchar, oír
live - vivir
live in - habitar
load - cargar
locate - situar
look - mirar, ver
look after - cuidar
look down on - despreciar
look for - buscar
look like - parecerse
lose heart - desfallecer
lose - extraviar, perder
lose weight - enflacar
love - adorar, amar, querer
lower - bajar
maintain - sostener
make - cometer, elaborar, fabricar, hacer, preparar
make a living - vivir

make a mistake - equivocarse
make possible - permitir
make the most of - aprovechar
make up - inventar
manage - administrar, dirigir, lograr, regir
manipulate - manejar
manufacture - fabricar
match - empatar
may - poder
measure - tener
meddle - interferir
meet - conocer, reunirse
memorize - memorizar
mention - nombrar
mislead - engañar
misplace - extraviar
miss - fallar, faltar
mix - batir, mezclar, revolver
moor - amarrar
move - mover
move (dwelling) - mudarse
move back - retroceder
murmur - susurrar
must - deber
name - nombrar
narrate - narrar
need - faltar, necesitar
neglect - descuidar

note - notar
notice - notar, reparar
notify - avisar
obey - obedecer, respetar
object - oponerse
observe - observar
obtain - conseguir, obtener
offer - ofrecer
omit - omitir
open - abrir, destapar
ordain - ordenar
order - disponer, encargarse, mandar, ordenar, pedir
organize - organizar
overcome - vencer
owe - deber
own - poseer
paint - pintar
participate - participar
pass - pasar
pass (an exam) - aprobar
pay - pagar
pay attention - atender
penalize - castigar
perceive - percibir
perform - celebrar, practicar, representar
permit - permitir
persevere - perseverar
persist- perseverar

persuade - convencer
phone - llamar
pick - coger, escoger
pick up - recoger
pin - prender
place - colocar
plan - planear
plane (wood) - cepillar
play - jugar, practicar
play (a musical instrument) - tocar
plug in - enchufar
possess - poseer
post - situar
practice - ensayar, practicar
pray - rezar, rogar
predict - presumir
prefer - preferir
prepare - elaborar, preparar
present - presentar
present (as a gift) - regalar
preserve - conservar
pretend - fingir, pretender
prevent - evitar, impedir
print - imprimir
produce - elaborar, fabricar
prohibit - prohibir
promise - prometer
pronounce - pronunciar

propose - proponer, sugerir
protect- proteger, resguardar
protest- protestar
prove- demostrar, probar
provide - proveer
pull- jalar
punish- castigar
purchase - comprar
pursue- perseguir
push - empujar
put - colocar, echar, poner
put away - guardar
put back - reponer
put in - meter
put into practice - aplicar
put on makeup - maquillarse
put on or gain weight- engordar
put the lid (cap. cover) on - tapar
put together - armar, juntar
put up - colgar
put up with - sufrir
quarrel - pelear
quit - renunciar
raise - elevar, levantar, subir
reach - alcanzar, llegar
read - leer
recall - recordar
receive - percibir, recibir

recognize - reconocer
recommend - sugerir
reconnoiter - reconocer
record - grabar
recover - recobrar, rescatar
recycle - reciclar
reflect - reflexionar
refuse - negar, rehusar
regain - recobrar
regret - lamentar, sentir
rehearse - ensayar
reject - despreciar, rechazar
relate - narrar
relax - relajarse
release - soltar
remain - quedarse
remember - acordarse, recordar
remind - recordar
remove - eliminar, quitar
renounce - renunciar
rent- alquilar, rentar
repair - arreglar, componer, reparar
repel - rechazar
replace - remplazar, reponer
reply - contestar, responder
represent - representar
request - rogar, solicitar
require - necesitar, obligar

rescue - rescatar
resemble - parecerse
reserve - reservar
reside - morar, residir
resign - renunciar
resist- resistir
resolve - resolver, solucionar
respect - respetar
respond- obedecer, responder
rest - descausar
retrieve - recobrar
return - devolver, regresar, volver
reunite - reunirse
reveal - descubrir
reverse - invertir
review - criticar, repasar, revisar
revolve - girar
ride - montar
rip- desgarrar
rise - crecer
ruin- destruir
rule- gobernar, regir
rule (legal) - fallar
run - correr, dirigir
run away - escapar, huir
run into (something)- chocar, tropezar
safeguard - resguardar
salute - saludar

save - ahorrar, evitar, guardar, rescatar

say - decir, rezar

say good-bye - despedirse

say hello - saludar

scale - escalar

scold - regañar

scout - explorar

scratch - rascar

scream - gritar

search- buscar

see - apreciar, ver

select - escoger

sell - vender

sell out - vender

send - enviar, mandar

sense- intuir, percibir

serve- atender, servir

set- poner, situar

set out - emprender

set sail- zarpar

set up - poner

set up with - euchar

settle - resolver

shake - temblar

share - compartir

shave - afeitarse

shed - derramar

shiver - temblar

should - deber
shout - gritar
shove - empujar
show - demostrar, enseñar, indicar, mostrar
shudder- temblar
shut - cerrar
shut up - callarse
sigh - suspirar
signify - representar
simulate - imitar
sing - cantar
sit - sentarse
sketch- dibujar
skip- brincar
slacken - relajarse
sleep - dormir
slow down - frenar
smash - romper
smell- oler
smoke - fumar
sneeze- estornudar
snore- roncar
soften - endulzar
soil - ensuciar
solve - resolver, solucionar
sort out - arreglar, enderezar
spare - ahorrar
speak - hablar

spend - gastar
spew out - vomitar
spill- derramar
spin- girar
stand- resistir, soportar
start- comenzar, empezar, entrar, iniciar, principiar
state - declarar, expresar
stay - quedarse
stay awake- desvelarse
stick - pegar
stipulate - disponer
stir - revolver
stop - detener, frenar, parar
stop doing something - dejar
straighten - enderezar
stroke - acariciar
struggle- batallar, luchar
study- estudiar, examinar
stumble - tropezar
substitute - remplazar
succeed to - heredar
suffer- padecer, sufrir
suggest - proponer, sugerir
sully - ensuciar
summon - llamar
sunbathe - asolearse
supply- proveer
support - apoyar, soportar, sostener

suppose- presumir, suponer
surf (Web) - explorar
surrender - rendirse
survive - sobrevivir
suspect - sospechar
swap - cambiar
swear- jurar
sweat- sudar
sweep - barrer
sweeten- endulzar
swell - engordar
swim - nadar
switch off - apagar
switch on - encender, enchufar
symbolize - representar
take - coger, llevar, tomar
take (a long) time - tardar
take (a picture) - sacar
take a bath - banarse
take a lid off - destapar
take a walk (a stroll) - pasear
take advantage of - abusar
take apart - desarmar
take away - quitar
take care - cuidar, encargar
take into account - considerar
take out-sacar
take part - participar

take pleasure - gozar
talk - conversar, hablar
taste - probar
teach- enseñar
tear - desgarrar, romper
tell - contar, decir
tell - narrar
tend to- atender
test - ensayar, probar
testify - declarar
think - creer, opinar, pensar, reflexionar
throw- aventar, echar, lanzar, tirar
throw away - tirar
throw up - devolver, vomitar
tidy up- ordenar, recoger
tie - amarrar, atar, empatar
tolerate - aguantar
toss - tirar, voltear
touch - tocar
train - entrenarse
translate - traducir
transport - transportar
travel - viajar
treat - iuuitar, tratar
tremble - temblar
trip - tropezar
trust - confiar
try - ensayar, intentar, probar, procurar

try to - tratar
turn - doblar, girar, voltear
turn (age) - cumplir
turn down - rechazar
turn in - entregar
turn off - apagar, cerrar
turn on - poner, prender
turn over - voltear
turn to - acudir
type - teclear
unblock- destapar
uncover- descubrir
understand - comprender, entender
undertake - embarcarse, emprender
undo - desatar, deshacer
unleash - desatar
untie - desatar, deshacer
uphold - sostener
upset - molestar
use - aprovechar, emplear, usar, utilizar
utilize - utilizar
vanish - desaparecer
visit - visitar
vomit - vomitar
vote - votar
wait - esperar
wake - despertar
walk - andar, caminar

want - desear, querer
warn - avisar
wash - lavar
waste- desperdiciar, gastar
watch - mirar, observar, vigilar
wear - llevar, traer, usar, vestir
weave - tejer
weigh anchor - zarpar
welcome - recibir
whisper - susurrar
whistle - chiflar
win - ganar
wish - desear
wobble - cojear
work - andar, laborar, trabajar
worry- preocuparse
worship - adorar
wound - herir
wreck - destruir
write - escribir
welcome recibir
whisper - susurrar
whistle - chiflar
win -.. ganar
wish -. desear
wobble - cojear
work -. andar, laborar, trabajar
worry-. preocuparse

worship - adorar

wound - herir

wreck - destruir

write -. escribir

CONCLUSION (CONCLUSIÓN)

Learning a second language is not that easy but you have to admit that it is challenging. Aside from your native language, it is quite challenging to learn about a very unfamiliar language like the Spanish Language. *(Aprender un segundo idioma no es tan fácil, pero debes admitir que es un desafío. Además de su idioma nativo, es bastante difícil aprender sobre un idioma muy desconocido como el español.)*

Here, you have learned the correct pronunciation of some Spanish words, the proper gestures that must accompany the statement that you are making, and also the use of verbs, pronouns, nouns, adjectives, adverbs, prepositions and the like. Through this tool, you have learned all grammatical factors without enrolling in a formal class-type review of Spanish Language. *(Aquí, ha aprendido la pronunciación correcta de algunas palabras en español, los gestos adecuados que deben acompañar a la declaración que está haciendo, y también el uso de verbos, pronombres, sustantivos, adjetivos, adverbios, preposiciones y similares. A través de esta herramienta, ha aprendido todos los factores gramaticales sin inscribirse en una revisión formal de clase de español.)*

Furthermore, there are also short stories which make the learning even more exciting. Through some tips in reading, you will surely find Spanish Language reading and learning enjoyable instead of considering it as a burden. *(Además, también hay historias cortas que hacen que el aprendizaje sea aún más emocionante. A través de algunos consejos en lectura,*

seguramente encontrará agradable la lectura y el aprendizaje del idioma español en lugar de considerarlo como una carga.)

The use of short stories may be considered as designed for kids or children who are learning through baby steps, but the truth is that a learner of second language is considered as baby steps too. There is no harm in considering it as a kid-like way of learning. That is again a form of humility. Remember that humility is the start of learning. *(El uso de cuentos cortos puede considerarse diseñado para niños o niños que están aprendiendo a través de pequeños pasos, pero la verdad es que un aprendiz de segundo idioma también se considera como pequeños pasos. No hay daño en considerarlo como una forma de aprendizaje infantil. Esa es nuevamente una forma de humildad. Recuerda que la humildad es el comienzo del aprendizaje.)*

As parting words, you should always carve in your mind that learning is one way of showing humility because you are admitting into yourself that you still have a lot to learn and that will make you even more fit to perfect your goal – in this instance, the Spanish Language and Grammar. *(Como palabras de despedida, siempre debes recordar que aprender es una forma de mostrar humildad porque admites en ti mismo que todavía tienes mucho que aprender y que te hará aún más apto para perfeccionar tu objetivo; en este caso, Lengua y gramática española.)*

SPANISH CONVERSATIONS

Learn Spanish for Beginners in Your Car Like Crazy.

Language Learning Lessons for travel and Everyday.

How to Speak Spanish with Vocabulary, Common
Phrases and Grammar.

VOL 1

Table of Contents:

[INTRODUCTION](#)

[CHAPTER 1: Colors](#)

[CHAPTER 2: Numbers](#)

[CHAPTER 3: Ordinals](#)

[CHAPTER 4: Days and Months](#)

[CHAPTER 5: People](#)

[CHAPTER 6: Family & Relatives](#)

[CHAPTER 7: Directions](#)

[CHAPTER 8: Animals \(Farm, Forest & Sea\)](#)

[CHAPTER 9: Learning Adjectives, Attributes & Clothing in Spanish](#)

[CHAPTER 10: Different Clothing in Spanish](#)

[CHAPTER 11: Sports](#)

[CHAPTER 12: Countries](#)

[CHAPTER 13: Places in Town](#)

[Conclusion](#)

© Copyright 2019 by Language Learning School - All rights reserved.

The following Book is reproduced below with the goal of providing information that is as accurate and reliable as possible. Regardless, purchasing this Book can be seen as consent to the fact that both the publisher and the author of this book are in no way experts on the topics discussed within and that any recommendations or suggestions that are made herein are for entertainment purposes only. Professionals should be consulted as needed prior to undertaking any of the action endorsed herein.

This declaration is deemed fair and valid by both the American Bar Association and the Committee of Publishers Association and is legally binding throughout the United States.

Furthermore, the transmission, duplication, or reproduction of any of the following work including specific information will be considered an illegal act irrespective of if it is done electronically or in print. This extends to creating a secondary or tertiary copy of the work or a recorded copy and is only allowed with the express written consent from the Publisher. All additional right reserved.

The information in the following pages is broadly considered a truthful and accurate account of facts and as such, any inattention, use, or misuse of the information in question by the reader will

render any resulting actions solely under their purview. There are no scenarios in which the publisher or the original author of this work can be in any fashion deemed liable for any hardship or damages that may befall them after undertaking information described herein.

Additionally, the information in the following pages is intended only for informational purposes and should thus be thought of as universal. As befitting its nature, it is presented without assurance regarding its prolonged validity or interim quality. Trademarks that are mentioned are done without written consent and can in no way be considered an endorsement from the trademark holder.

INTRODUCTION

So, you're starting to learn the Spanish language. ¡Felicidades! Yes, it takes time and patience, but the end result would surely be rewarding.

Whether you're learning Spanish for future holiday or vacation stays, have better job opportunities, or simply want to familiarize yourself with the language, now is the best time to get started. Learning Spanish is an extremely rewarding and fun experience. It is one of the most commonly used languages across the world, so mastering it can just be relatively easy for you.

Still having a hard time? That's why we're here to help! Today, let us know common Spanish vocabulary and conversations that are helpful for future communications!

Why is it important to learn Spanish conversation and vocabulary?

When going to a country, preparation is a must. And, learning the native language is no exception. Imagine those awkward moments when a resident tries to speak with you using their foreign language and what you can only respond is a "curious eyebrow." Remember, they won't adjust for you! Some could do the honor, but it is still your job to do your assignment - which is to learn their language.

Enhancing your conversation skills and increasing your vocabulary are among the essential things in learning Spanish. They are considered as the building blocks of communication. Mastering these two components is a bit straightforward and simple. You can even use light objects, such as flash cards or a cardboard to help with your vocabulary.

While grammar and pronunciation differ from English, they are more consistent and simpler. Learning the Spanish language also proves to be a good idea because it opens up a world of opportunities for you. Future employers would definitely become electrified to see you can speak and understand Spanish. This is true especially for those who are planning to work in customer service.

CHAPTER 1: Colors

Your language learning session wouldn't be complete without knowing how to pronounce and use different colors in a conversation appropriately. It is a significant part of basic vocabulary. With a basic understanding of Spanish colors, you'll find it easier to communicate, make acquisitions, describe and identify things, etc. that are crucial in developing social interaction among Spanish speakers.

Common Spanish Colors

Get to know the most commonly used Spanish colors.

Spanish	English
Amarillo (ROH-hoh)	Yellow
Anaranjado (ah-nah-ran-HA-do)	Orange
Azul (ah-SOOL)	Blue
Azul Marino (a-SOOL ma-reeno)	Navy Blue
Blanco (BLAHN-koh)	White
Cafe (kah-FEY)	Dark Brown
Crema (krema)	Cream
Gris (GREES)	Grey
Marron (mah-RON)	Brown
Negro (NAY-groh)	Black
Rojo (ROH-hoh)	Red
Rosa (RO-sah)	Pink
Verde (BAYR-day)	Green
Violeta (vee-oh-LEH-tah)	Violet
Morado (moor-AH-do), Violeta (vio-LET-ah)	Purple
Plateado (pla-te-AH-do)	Silver
Dorado (do-rado)	Gold
Claro (KLA-ro)	Light
Oscuro (os-KUR-o)	Dark

Other Colors in Spanish

Albaricoque	(Apricot)
Alizarina	(Alizarin)
Amaranto	(Amaranth)
Anil o Indigo	(Indigo)
Azul Cobalto	(Cobalt Blue)
Azul de Prusia	(Prussian Blue)
Azur	(Azure)
Beige	(Beige)
Bermillon	(Vermilion)
Blanco Antiguo	(Antique White)
Borgona	(Burgundry)
Carmesi	(Crimson)
Carmin	(Carmine)
Coral	(Coral)
Escarlata	(Scarlet)
Esmeralda	(Emerald)
Esparrago	(Asparagus)
Fucsia	(Fuchsia)
Fucsia Antiguo	(Old Pink)
Glauco	(Glaucous)
Granate	(Garnet)
Gris de Davy	(Davy Gray)
Gris Fresco	(Cool Grey)
Jade	(Jade)
Lavanda	(Lavender)
Lavanda Flora	(Lavender Floral)
Lila	(Lilac)

Limon	(Lemon)
Magenta	(Magenta)
Marfil	(Ivory)
Nieve	(Snow)
Perla	(Pearl)
Piel	(Skin)
Platino	(Platinum)
Rosa Americana	(American Rose)
Rosa Cuarzo	(Quartz Rose)
Sesamo	(Sesame)
Turquesa	(Turquoise)
Vainilla	(Vanilla)
Verde Cazador	(Hunter Green)
Verde Lima	(Lime Green)
Verde Manzana	(Apple Green)
Verde Oliva	(Green Olive)
Zafiro	(Sapphire)

Some of the colors we have here were derived from minerals, flowers, and fruits, like aguamarina (aquamarine), rosa (rose), cafe (coffee), and marfil (ivory).

Some notes about Spanish colors:

- Orange color is called either Anaranjado or Naranja
- Use the term "claro" if you are referring to color with low shade, not including the blue color because the proper way to say "sky blue" or "light blue" is "Celeste."
- Use the term "oscuro" if you are referring to strong color. Examples are *rojo oscuro* and *verde oscuro*, which means dark red and dark green in the English language respectively.

The colors in Spanish work as adjectives and nouns.

- **Nouns:** All of the colors are masculine and singular.

An example is "*el azul*" (blue)

- **Adjectives:** When describing or saying something about a person or object.

An example is "*el coche azul*" (the blue car).

Spanish Colors as Nouns

When utilized in Spanish, common color names should comply with the nouns they are describing in both number and gender. Some unusual color names, however, are treated inversely in Spanish compared to English. In most cases too, the color names usually come next to the nouns being defined and not before as in English.

The form deviates depending upon the gender and number of what is being described.

Examples:

Tengo un coche amarillo - I have one yellow car.

Tiene dos coches amarillos - He has two yellow cars.

Tienes una flor amarilla - You have a yellow flower.

Tenemos diez flores amarillas - We have ten yellow flowers.

Other common colors include:

Amarillo (Yellow)

Azul (Blue)

Anaranjado (Orange)

Dorado (Golden)

Blanco (White)

Negro (Black)

Marron (Brown)

Gris (Gray)

Rojo (Red)

Verde (Green)

Rosa (Pink)

Purpura (Purple)

Moreover, make sure the Spanish color you'll be using to describe a plural noun must be written in plural forms, such as *verde/verdes* and *rojo/rojos* . For instance, Red Houses are translated as Casas Rojas, which makes both the Roja plural and noun Casa.

Examples:

Su libro tiene una portada verde - Her book has a green cover.

Yo tengo un sombrero negro - I have a black hat.

Me encanta tu vestido celeste - I love your sky blue dress.

Esa es una guitarra naranja hermosa - That is a beautiful orange guitar.

If the Spanish color you intend to use acts as a noun and is followed by a noun, the color could have a plural form, though the adjective or noun should remain in its basic form.

Examples:

Los rosas palo no me quedan bien - Pale pinks do not suit me well.

No me gustan los azules marino - I don't like navy blues.

Also, similar to English, Spanish allows the use of several nouns as colors. Although, the way where they're used as colors greatly differs based on the speaker's preference and region.

Example:

Cafe means coffee and is used to designate a coffee-colored shirt including *camisa cafe*, *camisa color cafe*, *camisa color de cafe*, and *camisa de color cafe*.

Other nouns that are popularly used in this way as colors include:

Cereza (Cherry)

Chocolate (Chocolate-colored)

Paja (Straw-colored)

Mostaza (Mustard-colored)

Violeta (Violet)

Beige or Beis (Beige)

Grana (Dark Red)

Esmeralda (Emerald)

Oro (Gold)

Malva (Mauve)

Lila (Lilac)

Humo (Smoky)

Turquesa (Turquoise)

Naranja (Orange)

Rosa (Pink)

Name of colors that change with gender:

Orange - Anaranjado/Anaranjada

Yellow - Amarilo/Amarila

Red - Rojo/Roja

Pink - Rosado/Rosada

Black - Negro/Negra

White - Blanco/Blanca

Purple - Morado/Morada

Dark - Oscuro/Oscura

Light - Claro/Clara

Colorful - Colorido/Colorida

Name of colors that DO NOT change with gender:

Orange - Naranja

Blue - Azul

Brown - Marron

Green - Verde

Purple - Violeta/Lila

Gray - Gris

Magenta - Magenta

Maroon - Granate

Turquoise - Turquesa

You can use the words *oscuro* (dark) and *claro* (light) if you want to discuss particular color hues. Use either these two words after another word of color or on their own.

Examples:

Mis pantalones son de color verde oscuro - My pants are dark green.

Mi coche es azul claro - My car is light blue.

El tiene los ojos claros - He has light eyes.

Spanish Colors as Adjectives

In Spanish, colors are also used for describing people, animals, objects, etc. It is important too that the adjectives and nouns should agree in number and gender. The number is either in plural or singular, and the gender is either feminine or masculine.

El is a masculine noun and is used for singular. Ex: *el sofa* (the sofa)

La is a feminine noun and is used for singular.

Los is a masculine noun and is used for plural.

Las is a feminine noun and is used for plural. Ex: *las actrices* (the actresses)

The propensity to name colors for certain objects is more typical in Spanish. Plus, the object-adjective grammar rules are quite different from that of other adjectives.

Additionally, the color adjectives follow and go along with the nouns being modified. But, colors could be changed by added adjectives such as dark green, bright yellow, navy blue, and light green. Once it happens, the color adjective doesn't modify to agree with the noun. It becomes inflexible.

How to Properly Use *Ser* and *Estar*

These Spanish words are two different verbs that mean "to be."

We use the verb "*ser*" when you intend to describe what color something is. Here, you need to make sure the color word agrees with the noun's gender and number since it is still working as an adjective.

Examples:

Las botellas son amarillas - The bottles are yellow.

El telefono es negro - The phone is black.

As for the "*estar*" adjective, it usually denotes to temporary states of being. In rare cases, this verb is used for describing the color of an object or something.

Examples:

El cielo es azul - The sky is blue.

El cielo esta gris - The sky is gray.

Colors that end in -o

The group of Spanish colors ending in -o includes all of the colors that act similar to standard adjectives. There are two major rules that must be adhered to:

- (1) they follow the noun they modify; and
- (2) they consist of four forms, and each has four varying endings - feminine singular (ends in -a), masculine singular (ends in -o), feminine plural (ends in -as), and masculine plural (ends in -os).

Examples:

Juan tiene un mechero blanco - Juan has a white lighter.

El gato blanco esta en la cocina - The white cat is in the kitchen.

Las paredes blancas son aburridas - White walls are boring.

¿Has encontrado el boligrafo plateado? - Have you found the silver pen?

Colors that end in *-a*, *-e* , or a consonant

The color names included in this group have no special feminine forms, thereby, not gender-specific. They are just similar to any other colors that work as an adjective.

Examples:

Tengo unos pantalones azules - I have a pair of blue pants.

He perdido el boligrafo rosa - I have lost the pink pen.

Mi hermana ha encontrado una rana verde - My sister had found a green frog.

Las rosas rosas son mi flores favoritas - Pink roses are my favorite flowers.

Color Words for Human Attributes

In the English language, you usually would not describe a person as having "blonde hair." Except if you're trying to sound poetic. You'd rather say that someone had "yellow hair." The same goes for Spanish language.

Be careful, though, when using colors to describe human attributes. In States, Black, Latino/Hispanic, and White/Caucasian are considered to be three separate races. While in Spanish speaking regions, everyone is a member of a similar race. They call it ***la raza*** .

Color words are applied to express color variations in the race.

Moreno/Morena - dark-skinned with dark hair and dark eyes.

Negro (though *Negrito* is most commonly used for polite conversation) - refers to any person of African descent or to an unusually dark Latino.

Rubio/Rubia - often refers to someone whose natural color of hair is lighter than dark brown. It is typically translated as "blond."

Blanco - refers to an actual Caucasian visitor/migrant or an unusually pale Latino.

Castano/Castana - frequently used than the word *marron* to describe brown hair or eyes.

Canoso/Canosa - used to describe a person with gray hair.

Pelirrojo/Pelirroja - this is used to describe a person with ginger or red hair.

Spanish Phrases with Colors

There are also several phrases that make use of colors when attempting a conversation. Among the most commonly used are:

Christe verde - a vulgar or adult joke (dirty joke). It is the form of a joke that you would never say around your kids, parents, etc. It is also known as a joke with indicative connotations. Aside from *charity verde*, *humor negro* is also popular among Spanish speaking countries. It is what they call black humor or dark humor in English.

Spanish: *El siempre cuenta chistes verdes.*

English translation: He always tells dirty jokes.

Velo negro - means being obstinate about something.

Spanish: *Veo el futuro negro.*

English translation: I feel hopeless about the future.

Principe azul - meaning to say the ideal man. Knight in shining armor is its identical English expression.

Spanish: *Sigo esperando a mi principe azul.*

English translation: I'm still waiting for my prince charming.

Media naranja - means to be the other half or significant other of a person.

Spanish: *Por fin encontrado a mi media naranja.*

English translation: I've finally found my other half.

Ponerse morado - this means to eat a lot. It makes use of the similar reflexive verb to that of *ponerse rojo*. Although, this one differs through filling your face to the point of flare-up.

Spanish: *Me puse morado en la cena anoche. ¡Habia tanta comida rica!*

English translation: I stuffed my face at the dinner last night. There was so much delicious food!

Estar sin blanca - means when you are without white or without money. This expression was purportedly came from a coin (known as blanca) that occurred during the fourteenth century in Spain.

Spanish: *Quiero ir al concierto contigo, pero estoy sin blanca.*

English translation: I want to go to the concert with you, but I don't have any money.

Prensa rosa or prensa amarilla - refers to news sources including celebrity gossip, tabloids, and trashy news sources - all of which are below legitimate. Though, *prensa amarilla* talks about over-the-top, inflated news.

Spanish: *No hagas caso a la prensa amarilla.*

English translation: Don't pay attention to the tabloid news.

CHAPTER 2: Numbers

Making a social interaction with Spanish-speaking people and building a rapport with them wouldn't be possible without proper understanding and usage of Spanish numbers. This guide is intended to help you along the way!

Numbers are everywhere - from the telephone number you have to call in for reservation to the address of a residential property where you are visiting a friend. You have to work out the bill, inquire about the cost of a particular item or food, count to arrange a dinner time, and so much more. It is not enough to produce the numbers; you also need to understand the numbers that Spanish natives or speakers say to you.

Here are the Spanish versions of numbers which you will probably use for future business or travel plans.

Numbers 0-20 in Spanish

0 - Cero

1 - Un, Una, Uno

2- Dos

3 - Tres

4 - Cuatro

5 - Cinco

6 - Seis

7 - Siete

8 - Ocho

9 - Nueve

10 - Diez

11 - Once

12 - Doce

13 - Trece

14 - Catorce

15 - Quince
16 - Dieciseis
17 - Diecisiete
18 - Dieciocho
19 - Diecinueve
20 - Veinte

Examples:

Hay dieciocho personas en la clase. (There are 18 people in the class.)

Tengo dos hijos. (I have two children.)

Yo tengo el numero diez. (I have the number ten.)

La empresa tiene veinte trabajadores. (The empresa has twenty workers.)

¿Tu tienes diecinueve años? (Are you 19 years old?)

Es catorce de noviembre. (It's the fourteenth of November.)

Numbers 20-100 in Spanish

20 - Veinte

- 21 - Veinteuno, 22 - Veintedos, 23 - Veintetres, 24 - Veintecuatro...
- Note: All of the 20s are a single word.

Examples:

El pasaporte es valido por otros veinticinco dias. (The passport is valid for another twenty-five days.)

Mi padre se divorcio cuando tenia veintisiete años. (My father got divorced when he was 27 years old.)

30 - Treinta

- 31 - Treinta y uno, 32 - Treinta y dos, 33 - Treinta y tres, 34 - Treinta y cuatro...
- Note: The two words of the 30s are joined by the letter " y."

Examples:

El autobus sale dentro de treinta minutos. (The bus departs in thirty minutes.)

Noviembre tiene treinta dias. (November has thirty days.)

40 - Cuarenta

- 41 - Cuarenta y uno, 42 - Cuarenta y dos, 43 - Cuarenta y tres, 44 - Cuarenta y cuatro...
- Note: The two words of the 40s are joined by the letter "y."

50 - Cincuenta

- 51 - Cincuenta y uno, 52 - Cincuenta y dos, 53 - Cincuenta y tres, 54 - Cincuenta y cuatro...
- Note: The two words of the 50s are joined by the letter "y."

Tengo cincuenta y ocho anos. (I am 58 years old.)

60 - Sesenta

- 61 - Sesenta y uno, 62 - Sesenta y dos, 63 - Sesenta y tres, 64 - Sesenta y cuatro...
- Note: The two words of the 60s are joined by the letter "y."

70 - Setenta

- 71 - Setenta y uno, 72 - Setenta y dos, 73 - Setenta y tres, 74 - Setenta y cuatro...
- Note: There is only one letter difference between 60 (*se s enta*) and 70 (*se t enta*). The two words of the 70s are joined by the letter "y."

Example:

Yo peso setenta kilogramos. (I weigh seventy kilograms.)

80 - Ochenta

- 81 - Ochenta y uno, 82 - Ochenta y dos, 83 - Ochenta y tres, 84 - Ochenta y cuatro...
- Note: The two words of the 80s are joined by the letter " y."

Examples:

Mido un metro ochenta. (I am 1.80 meters in height.)

Mi abuela tiene ochenta y tres años. (My grandma is 83 years old.)

90 - Noventa

- 91 - Noventa y uno, 92 - Noventa y dos, 93 - Noventa y tres, 94 - Noventa y cuatro...
- Note: The two words of the 90s are joined by the letter "y."

Examples:

Nací en mil novecientos noventa y tres. (I was born in 1993.)

Tengo noventa y nueve problemas. (I've got ninety-nine problems.)

100 - Cien or Ciento

- 105 - Ciento cinco, 145 - Ciento cuarenta y cinco, 165 - ciento sesenta y cinco
- Note: We use *cien* when there's exactly 100 of something, and this number is used before nouns of gender, either feminine or masculine. Examples: Cien plumas (one hundred pens) and cien blusas (one hundred blouses)

On the other hand, *ciento* is used if you want to produce numbers with one hundred. Examples: 114 (ciento catorce) and 127 (ciento veintisiete)

Numbers 200-900 in Spanish

200 - Doscientos

- 220 - Doscientos veinte, 250 - Doscientos cincuenta

Example: *Aqui establn las llaves de la habitacion doscientos dos.* (Here are the keys for room 202.)

300 - Trescientos

- 325 - Trescientos veinticinco, 330 - Trescientos treinta

Example: *Invite a trescientas personas para la boda.* (I invited 300 people for the wedding.)

400 - Cuatrocientos

- 402 - Cuatrocientos dos

500 - Quinientos

- 513 - Quinientos trece, 560 - Quinientos sesenta

600 - Seiscientos

- 620 - Seiscientos veinte, 689 - Seiscientos ochenta y nueve

700 - Setecientos

- 767 - Setecientos sesenta y siete, 777 - Setecientos setenta y siete

800 - Ochocientos

- 802 - Ochocientos dos, 806 - Ochocientos seis

900 - Novecientos

- 910 - Novecientos diez, 948 - Novecientos cuarenta y ocho

Numbers 1 Thousand to 1 Million in Spanish

1,000 - Mil

2,000 - Dos mil

3,000 - Tres mil

4,000 - Cuatro mil

5,000 - Cinco mil

6,000 - Seis mil
7,000 - Siete mil
8,000 - Ocho mil
9,000 - Nueve mil
10,000 - Diez mil
1,000,000 - Un million

Examples:

¿Cuales son tus planes para dos mil veinte? (What are your plans for 2020?)

Estamos en dos mil diecinueve. (We are in 2019.)

Tengo mil y una razones para no creerte. (I have 1,001 reasons not to believe you!)

Hay cincuenta mil automotiviles en la carretera. (There are fifty thousand automobiles on the highway.)

Be careful when applying for these numbers because they could be tricky. For the 1000 number, you do not say *un mil* . Use only the word *mil* even though it has a "one" word in it. Whereas for 1,000,000 (*un million*) , you cannot count out the *un* .

Gazillion Numbers in Spanish

Numbers bigger than the millions could spin your head a bit. But, don't worry! We're sure you could pull them off in no time! Practice makes perfect, right?

1,000,000 (10⁶) - un million
1,000,000,000 (10⁹) - mil millones
1,000,000,000,000 (10¹²) - un billon
10¹⁸ - un trillon
10²⁴ - un cuatrillon
10³⁰ - un quintillon
10³⁶ - un sextillon

10 (42) - un septillon

10 (48) - un octillon

10 (54) - un nonillon

10 (60) - un decillon

10 (66) - un undecillon

10 (72) - un duodecillon

10 (78) - un tredecillon

10 (84) - un catordecillon

10 (90) - un quindecillon

10 (96) - un sexdecillon

10 (102) - un septendecillon

10 (108) - un octodecillon

10 (114) - un novendecillon

10 (120) - un vigintillon

Gazillions - Tropecientos or Chorrocientos millones

Examples:

Tengo un millon doscientos mil quinientos pesos en el banco. (I have 1,200,500 pesos in the bank).

En Chile hay mas o menos trece millones de habitantes. (In Chile, there are more or less 13,000,000 inhabitants.)

En dos mil dieciseis, mas de cuatrocientos setenta y dos millones de personas tienen el español como lengua materna. (In 2016, more than 472 million people have Spanish as a mother tongue.)

Also, as you have noticed, the million numbers in Spanish must include the word "un." The identical rule also applies for a billion number. Simply add -es and then take out the accent if you want to make the plural of billion or millon.

Examples:

2,457,022 - Dos millones cuatrocientos cincuenta y siete mil veintidos

5,382,368 - Cinco millones trescientos ochenta y dos mil trescientos sesenta y ocho

6,986,410 - Seis millones novecientos ochenta y seis mil cuatrocientos diez

Ordinal Numbers

Ordinal numbers are the ranking numbers, including first, second, third, etc. They are very simple to learn and master, yes, however, there are a few grammatical considerations you have to keep in mind.

First (1st) - Primero

Second (2nd) - Segundo

Third (3rd) - Tercero

Fourth (4th) - Cuarto

Fifth (5th) - Quinto

Sixth (6th) - Sexto

Seventh (7th) - Septimo

Eighth (8th) - Octavo

Ninth (9th) - Noveno

Tenth (10th) - Decimo

Eleventh (11th) - Undecimo

Twelveth (12th) - Duodecimo

Thirteenth (13th) - Decimotercero

Fourteenth (14th) - Decimocuarto

Fifteenth (15th) - Decimoquinto

Sixteenth (16th) - Decimosexto

Seventeenth (17th) - Decimoseptimo

Eighteenth (18th) - Decimoctavo

Nineteenth (19th) - Decimonoveno

Twentieth (20th) - Vigesimo

Thirtieth (30th) - Trigesimo
Fortieth (40th) - Cuadragésimo
Fiftieth (50th) - Quincuagesimo
Sixtieth (60th) - Sexagesimo
Seventieth (70th) - Septuagesimo
Eightieth (80th) - Octogesimo
Ninetieth (90th) - Nonagesimo

Similar to other adjectives, make sure the gender agrees with the object's gender that you are counting. Though, you can likely notice that ordinals exist before the noun they are describing not like other adjectives.

Examples:

El segundo piso (The second floor)
El piso veinte (The twentieth floor)
La novena niña (The ninth girl)
El noveno chico (The ninth boy)
El tercer hijo (The third son)
Los primeros carros (The first cars)
La segunda persona (The second person)
El segundo libro (The second book)
La quincuagesima sexta persona (The 56th person)
El undécimo día (The 11th day)

Fractions in Spanish

1/2 - una mitad
1/3 - un tercio
1/4 - un cuarto
1/5 - un quinto
1/6 - un sexto
1/7 - un séptimo

1/8 - un octavo
1/9 - un noveno
1/10 - un decimo
2/3 - dos tercios
3/4 - tres cuartos

Examples:

Tres decimas partes (Three-tenths)

Una tercia parte (A third)

Una octava parte (An eighth)

How to Tell the Time in Spanish

The way on how to state the time in Spanish is equally the same as that in English, although with a little bit of differences.

When asked: *¿Que hora es?* (What time is it)

You'll say: *Son las cinco.* (It is 5 o'clock.)

Or: *Es la una.* (It is 1 o'clock.)

Remember that time is always feminine; hence, it should be *son las dos* or *es la una*. Add *de la noche* (nighttime or p.m.), *de la manana* (morning or a.m.), or *de la tarde* (afternoon or p.m.) if you want to differentiate between whether it is a morning or afternoon/evening (a.m. or p.m.)

Examples:

Son las dos de la manana (It is 2 in the morning)

Son las dos de la tarde (It is 2 in the afternoon)

Other examples to get you started working with the Spanish numbers:

Son las seis menos cuarto (It is 5:45 or quarter of 6)

Son las cinco y cuarto (It is 5:15 or quarter past five)

Son las cinco y media (It is 5:30 or half past five)

Many Spanish-speakers or Spanish-speaking countries make use of the twenty-four-hour clock. They are saying it as *son las catorce* (It is 14:00).

How to Tell the Date in Spanish

It may seem a bit complex, but we know it will be a piece of cake for you. In Spanish, there is a pattern when telling the date. You need to state first the day, followed by the month, and then the year.

Example:

17 de junio, de 2015 (17th of June, 2015)

How about if you want to add the week? That's just simple.

It will now become *Jueves 17 de Junio, 2015* (Thursday 17th of June, 2015).

Another thing that differs Spanish language in the English language is that you don't necessarily need capital letters to write the months as well as the days of the week. But, never abridge the date. The year should always be stated as a number. For instance, 1987 is specified as *mil novecientos ochenta y siete* .

Plus, you just tell the number in Spanish – no ordinal numbers required for the date (e.g., 1st, 9th, 13th, 20th).

When asked: *¿Cual es la fecha?* (What is the date?)

You'll say: *Es el 17 de junio, 2015.* (It is the 17th of June, 2015.)

How about numbers with a decimal part?

Currently, coma is the only type of delimiter used for separating the integer and fractional part of a decimal number. You should not separate numbers with just 4 digits.

Example:

The number pi 3, 14159 is stated as tres coma uno cuatro uno cinco nueve.

Tips to Practice Spanish Conversation and Vocabulary

Learning the Spanish language is not only about reading books and other reading materials or watching telenovelas and films. There are various ways to expand your abilities in communicating using the language!

To further help you, we have here some essential tips that are guaranteed to help master and improve your skills in Spanish conversation. Make sure to check them out below!

- ***Practice. Practice. Practice.***

As the saying goes..."Practice makes perfect." And, this also applies when learning Spanish vocabularies and conversations. Speak as frequently as possible. It is okay to make mistakes once, twice, and many times. That's part of the process. You don't need to kill much of your time engaging in long sessions. Practice at least two to three times every week. Thirty minutes three times per week is enough to yield great results.

Fortunately, opportunities abound. Why not start a conversation with Spanish speakers every time you have the opportunity? Then, use as many of the words you'll learn as possible. What if you're not fully capable of speaking to other people? That's not necessarily a problem since there are other alternatives. Why not talk to yourself in front of a mirror? That could help a lot with your practice.

- ***Take notes***

Another great little trick to learn vocabulary and conversation in Spanish is to take notes, especially the words or phrases with difficult meanings. Either has a journal or a small notebook with you every time. Note down all the new words you come across and re-read them all through the week. Doing so will aid you in getting acquainted with the vocabulary and parades as well as implementing them more frequently. Your learning should never stop!

Build a list of key phrases as possible. The initial list must be the one that's particular to the conversation you want to have. Basic Spanish phrases

include "What is your name?" "How are you?" and "Where are you from?" Though, consider your phrase lists as your training wheels for learning Spanish. You don't need to memorize them all. Just familiarize yourself with them. That's enough.

- ***Act it out***

Writing down notes and speaking with native Spanish speakers or people who know how to speak Spanish fluently is not enough. You also have to put your new Spanish words into motion. This means to act out or do the word or story you're leaning. Just a simple idea: why not perform food word/phrase learning while cooking or in the grocery? The process can be challenging but will be worth it.

- ***Find someone or a variety of people to talk with or engage in group conversations***

As we have mentioned earlier, find either a native or experienced Spanish speaker who can help you learn and master both the basics and complexities of every word. After all, the more, the merrier. This would not only help improve your fluency but would also help you make new friends and learn about the cultural facets of speaking Spanish.

Sharing knowledge, taking quizzes, and doing some activities will help both of you keep motivated, dedicated, and engaged in learning. You and your language buddy could also talk about your personal lives, art exhibitions, and other interesting things that will help increase your potential for speaking the Spanish language.

Otherwise, hiring a private tutor can be an ideal solution. Here, you can be able to set your own goals no matter how strict your schedule is and wherever you may be. Several teachers are now specializing in conversational and vocabulary Spanish lessons.

Group sessions, on the other hand, prove to be useful as well since they force you to speak Spanish while simultaneously listening to a group of

language learners. They could help you in learning new words and phrases as well as improving your own Spanish quickly. They prepare you for actual social situations in Spanish so that once you're in the same case, you'll end up handling it perfectly.

- ***Attend social events***

The main purpose here is to mingle with other Spanish speakers and learn with them for further language improvement. But aside from that, you can also discover some interesting facts about Spanish, its people, history, etc. Social events could be a local art gallery, community meeting, or a cultural event.

You will learn about the sentence expressions and structures through observing the Spanish speakers the ways where they try to express themselves in the language.

- ***Take advantage of online communities and forums***

The internet is packed with helpful resources for those who want to learn the language of all types, including Spanish. Visit a few online communities and forums to help you out. They feature guides and articles from expert language tutors. Post your question if you can't find the specific answer to your question. Native and experienced Spanish speakers are always glad to give a lending hand.

- ***Use learning materials (e.g., flashcards) and reading materials (e.g. magazines)***

We suggest using flashcards during your language practice. Why flashcards? Mainly because it has proven to be an effective tool for learners. Plus, it doesn't need to be expensive and won't kill much of your time. There is a wide range of free apps available both for tablets and smartphones. They will help you create flashcards. Though you can also do it in the traditional way if you want.

If you want the modern way, simply make your own version of flashcards with special extras (e.g., multimedia options and timers). This would make learning as simple as possible for you. Make some that are small enough to carry around. Write English on one side and then in Spanish on the other side.

When it comes to the words or phrases you're going to write on your flashcards, just make it simple first. For instance, focus on things that you usually encounter at home, while shopping, while doing errands, or at work. Examples are *platos* (plates), *cucharas* (spoons), and *cocinar* (to cook). Then, continue with your list.

- ***Keep track of your pronunciation and fluidity***

Keep in mind that learning sessions, especially those who take up classes, are intended to improve pronunciation and fluidity. Give out all your focus and do not waste any single valuable time, for example, asking your private tutor or conversation partner to help conjugate in the past tense.

The secret here is to speak more, think less, and discount your errors. Conversation class sessions are more on fluidity; thus, make sure to go with the flow. Later on, you'll find yourself using Spanish vocabulary and conversations like a pro!

How would you address those mistakes during language sessions? Isn't it better to let your doubts known for further improvement? These questions may pop out of your head.

Well, the best solution we could recommend to do is create a note of grammars, words, and phrases you have doubts throughout the session. Then, revisit your notes afterward and look for the answer to your questions by another course. Don't push yourself too hard if you could work them out yourself at a sooner time.

- ***Reading short stories could also help***

Reading is learning. Don't worry about the proper pronunciation because the book or other reading materials also include the right way on how to pronounce the words, phrases, and sentences. What makes reading a great alternative way of learning is that it is cheap and effective. Plus, you're also the boss when it comes to managing your time.

It could be texts or books, dictionary, magazines, newspapers, or online articles. These reading materials can revise and inflate your vocabulary. Reading short stories is ideal too, particularly for beginners who want to learn vocabulary in context. Short stories are stay-focused-on and simple to follow. Not to mention, there are tons of places to find short stories, either physical or over the web.

Literature and magazines, on the other hand, give you cultural perspectives that you may not be able to get from textbooks. There are many Spanish language magazines and newspapers as well as Spanish language literature online. Read whatever suits your interest. Invest five to twenty minutes of your time in reading.

- ***Watch videos and films***

If you're a type of person who doesn't involve much in reading sessions and prefer actual alternatives, then watching videos, television series, or films in Spanish could be right for you. Take notice of new phrases or words and look them up either during or after. Among the recommended movies to watch to improve your Spanish vocabulary and conversations are Amores Perros, El Orfanato, and El Laberinto del Fauno.

Make sure the telenovela or films you are watching have Spanish subtitles to better understand and reinforce the language.

- ***Consistency is the key***

Remember that learning a language takes commitment and time. All of your efforts wouldn't be paid off if you will not take time to practice all of the methods suggested for you in a continual manner. You can spare a few

minutes of your time, but be sure to do the session every day until you're ready enough to show off your Spanish-speaking skills.

- ***Be Patient.***

There's no such thing as an overnight result. It is normal to commit mistakes once in a while, especially if you're still in the learning process. No one will dare to judge you. Don't expect to make similar quality of progress day after day and week after week. Sometimes, you might find yourself appearing to make little or no progress at all or struggling. Do not panic or feel embarrassed. Just keep your focus intact.

You are now ready to speak with confidence!

CHAPTER 3: Ordinals

When learning Spanish numbers, people don't forget to include ordinal numbers. Ordinal numbers show the order of thing or events. In simple terms, ordinal numbers refer to qualities, unlike cardinal numbers who talk about quantities.

Both ordinal and cardinal numbers are useful in learning the Spanish language. People who aim to learn Spanish can use ordinal numbers in every speech and conversation.

For example, you can use ordinals while talking about positions or grades. Ordinals also have genders such as masculine and feminine. We'll talk about this later but for now, let's first know the place of ordinals as adjectives.

Ordinals as Adjectives

Ordinal numbers are adjective forms of cardinal numbers.

Here's an example:

Uno or one refers to a cardinal number and **primero** or first is the ordinal form. You also say this for the cardinal number **dos** or two and the ordinal number **segundo** or second.

First time Spanish learners would discover that ordinal numbers are commonly used for numbers under 10. These numbers (that you can also use in Spanish conversations) are as follows:

- First: *primero*
- Second: *segundo*
- Third: *tercero*
- Fourth: *cuarto*
- Fifth: *quinto*
- Sixth: *sexto*
- Seventh: *séptimo* , *sétimo*
- Eighth: *octavo*
- Ninth: *noveno*
- Tenth: *decimo*

If you're going to use ordinal numbers as adjectives, make sure the numbers agree with the nouns they're referring in both gender and number.

Let me show you:

El Segundo coche – the second car

(Here, the Spanish word coche is masculine.)

La segunda vez – the second time

(The word vez is feminine.)

Now, what if you're going to use *primero* and *tercero* in a phrase or conversation? The cardinal numbers *primero* and *tercero* should precede a masculine noun (singular). Take note: the final -o isn't included in the phrase.

- El primer rey (the first king)
- El tercer trimestre (the third semester).

The change in the phrase is called apocopation.

What's apocopation?

Primero and *tercero* are shortened or apocopated when these numbers precede a masculine noun (singular). Hence, the numbers turn into *primer* and *tercer*.

Take a look at this short sentence:

Aquel fue mi primer gran éxito.

(That was my first great success.)

Now, let's say; you're using large numbers, what number are you going to use?

It's simple. Instead of ordinal numbers, you need to use cardinal numbers, particularly in speech. For example, you would use *el siglo veinte* or the 20th century than *el siglo vigésimo*, the cardinal form.

Spanish speakers can make a conversation using numerals in this way:

El siglo 20 is written as *el siglo XX*.

In general, the 11th and above cardinal numbers are used in formal language often.

Writing Ordinal Numbers Using Superscripted *o* or *a*

The *o* is used when you're talking about masculine nouns. Meanwhile, *a* refers to feminine nouns. So, you would write 2^o instead of 2nd when you tell about a masculine noun. Then, 2^a refers to a feminine gender.

Gender and Number in Ordinals

Since ordinal numbers are adjectives, ordinals should agree with the gender and number of the nouns they modify. You can speak or write the ordinal feminine form by replacing the ending with *-o* or *-a*. The formal structure of these number end in *s*.

Masculine	Feminine
Primero	Primera
Segundo	Segunda
Tercero	Tercera

Masculine (Plural)	Feminine (Plural)
Primeros	Primeras
Segundos	Segundas
Terceros	Terceras

Abbreviations of Ordinal Numbers

Spanish vocabulary and phrases on ordinals also have abbreviations of ordinals. The two ways to do this are with roman numerals and Arabic numerals. The digits are often followed with ordinal indicators that are or aren't underlined.

Primero, primera, primer	1. ^o , 1. ^a , 1.	I
Primeros, primeras	1. ^{os} , 1. ^{as}	I

Segundo, segundo	2. ^o , 2. ^a	II
Tercero, tercera, tercer	3. ^o , 3. ^a , 3. ^{er}	III
Cuarto, cuarta	4. ^o , 4. ^a	IV
Quinto quinta	5. ^o , 5. ^a	V

You would notice, there are dots between the numbers and ordinal indicators. Well, the dots are required in writing abbreviations but not in acronyms and symbols. But, you wouldn't use these often in writing basic ordinal vocabulary. It depends on you if you want to include the dot in your texts.

But, the Arabic numerals are often used by Spanish writers. Meanwhile, Roman numerals are commonly used in the following examples. (usually after the noun but except in the last example)

- ***In naming centuries***

Example: Siglo XX (20th Century)

- ***In reference to popes, monarchs and emperors***

Example: John Pope II

- ***In enumerating books, chapters, and volumes that have a literary work***

Example: Capitulo I (Chapter 1)

- ***In naming events such as festivals, congresses, etc.***

Example: La XXII edicion del san Juan de San Juan. (The 22nd edition of the San Juan Film Festival).

As we discussed, you can use ordinal numbers in communicating with native Spanish speakers or foreigners who want to learn Spanish.

What if you want to communicate with people using ordinal numbers more than 10? Here the following ordinal numbers you can use to enrich your vocabulary. You can also use these in making simple Spanish phrases.

- 11th: *undécimo*
- 12th: *duodécimo*
- 13th: *decimotercero*
- 14th: *decimocuarto*
- 15th: *decimoquinto*
- 16th: *decimosexto*
- 17th: *decimoséptimo*
- 18th: *decimoctavo*
- 19th: *decimonoveno*
- 20th: *vigésimo*
- 21st: *vigésimo primero*
- 22nd: *vigésimo segundo*
- 23rd: *vigésimo tercero*
- 24th: *vigésimo cuarto*
- 30th: *trigésimo*
- 31st: *trigésimo primero*
- 32nd: *trigésimo segundo*
- 40th: *cuadragésimo*
- 50th: *quincuagésimo*
- 60th: *sexagésimo*
- 70th: *septuagésimo*
- 80th: *octogésimo*
- 90th: *nonagésimo*
- 100th: *centésimo*
- 200th: *ducentésimo*
- 300th: *tricentésimo*
- 400th: *cuadringentésimo*
- 500th: *quingentésimo*
- 600th: *sexcentésimo*
- 700th: *septingentésimo*
- 800th: *octingésimo*
- 900th: *noningentésimo*
- 1,000th: *milésimo*
- 2,000th: *dosmilésimo*

- 3,000th: *tresmilésimo*
- 4,000th: *cuatromilésimo*
- 1,000,000,000th: *millonésimo*

The examples mentioned above are helpful not only in learning Spanish vocabulary but also in speaking and writing compound ordinal numbers. These numbers involve numerals or digits that are higher than 10.

Here's an example:

You're going to write the compound ordinal number 2365. °

What's the proper way to write it?

It should be *dosmilésimo tricentésimo sexcentésimo quinto* for the masculine. For the feminine, you would write:

dosmilésimo tricentésimo sexcentésimo quinta or 2365. ^a

What would you write if the numbers are in plural form?

That's simple. Here are examples:

- 31^{as} or (*trigésimas primeras*)
- *Olimpiadas* (the 31st Olympics)

For the numerals 13.° and 29.°, you can write it as two separate words such as *decimo cuarto* and *vigesino quinto* respectively.

Ordinal Alternative Forms

Spanish ordinal numbers have alternative forms that you can also use in learning ordinal vocabulary and phrases. These alternative forms are also considered correct.

Here's a table that shows the most often used ordinal numbers and their alternative forms:

Ordinals	Alternative
<i>Tercero</i>	<i>Tercio</i>
<i>Séptimo</i>	<i>Sétimo</i>

<i>Noveno</i>	<i>Nono</i>
<i>Undécimo</i>	<i>decimoprimer / décimo primero</i>
<i>Duodécimo</i>	<i>decimosegundo / décimo segundo</i>
<i>Decimotercero</i>	<i>decimotercio / tredécimo (obsoleto)</i>
<i>decim o ctavo...</i>	<i>decim oo ctavo...</i>
<i>decimonoveno...</i>	<i>decimonono...</i>

Some Spanish speakers and writers often use fractional numbers (lower 1/10) as if these numbers are numerals.

Some people write *el catarceavo* instead of the correct one: *el decimocuatro piso*). So, you need to be careful when you're speaking or writing fractional numbers.

Ordinal Numbers in Sentences

For beginners, it might be little challenging to use Spanish ordinals in sentences. Well, one of the reasons for this is we don't often use ordinals in sentences, unlike cardinals. But, take note that cardinal numbers correspond to the words first, second, third, etc. in the English language. Hence, ordinal numbers are used similarly in Spanish and English.

Take note: most people don't know how to speak ordinals after 10.

Here are the following tips how can you write ordinal numbers in sentences:

Ordinal Numbers Refer to Position or Grades

The word *DECIMO* and ordinal number, such as 1 to 9, is used to write numbers from 11 to 19. Hence, it's an important rule that you remember in using ordinal numbers from 1 to 10.

You can write the ordinal numbers *primero* and *tercero* as *primer* and *tercer* if these numbers are placed before masculine nouns.

Let's say you're going to write the masculine noun *regalo* in a sentence. The correct way to include *primer* or *tercer* in the sentence would be:

Mi primer regalo or My first gift.

But, you can still write primero and tercero in the following sentences:

Soy el primero or I'm the first one.

Primero, abra la caja or First, open the box.

Another rule says that you need to use primera and *tercera* before speaking or writing a feminine noun. But, most native Spanish speakers would say:

Soy la primer taza. In English, I am the first cup.

But, the correct way of saying this sentence would be:

Soy la primera tasa.

If you would notice, we use primera instead of using a primer in the sentence.

Spanish Ordinals Have Masculine and Feminine Gender

As we have discussed above, ordinals could be either masculine or feminine. But, primer and tercer don't have a gender.

Let's say you're going to use *Quinto* in conversation:

Fred: Ella es la quinta.

(She's the fifth one).

Anna: Estoy en quinto granado.

(I'm in fifth grade).

From here, you can see the word "granado" is a masculine noun. Hence, you would observe that ordinal numbers, like adjectives, should agree with the nouns they modify.

How to Make Sentences or Conversations in Spanish Using Ordinal Numbers?

In writing ordinal numbers in sentences to make conversations, most native Spanish speakers use ordinal numbers from 1 to 10.

Why?

Ordinal numbers that are less than 10 are more comfortable to speak and write than numbers more than 10. Even native Spanish speakers have difficulty in speaking ordinal numbers greater than 10.

Let's look at the following examples:

Native Spanish speakers wouldn't say, "I am the 30th". (Soy el trigesimo). But, they would use the phrase such as *EL NUMERO* and a cardinal number.

Hence, we can rephrase the sentence by saying:

Soy el numero treinta.

You would observe that the rephrased sentence version has more sense than the previous sentence. With this, you can make useful phrases and conversations in Spanish such as the following;

Elena: Soy el numero Segundo. (I am the second).

Alejandro: Gracias, Seniorita! (Thank you, Seniorita!)

Remember: Ordinal numbers in Spanish are often placed before nouns.

- El novena libro
- La primera casa

Spanish ordinal numbers also play roles as a subject in sentences, but you need to use definite articles such as the following:

- La
- El
- Los
- A

Sample sentence:

El Segundo es el granador.

(The second one is the winner).

Also, you can speak ordinal numbers in different ways, such as *decimo segundo* or *decimodsegundo*. The word *decimosegundo* is considered part of the Spanish ordinals by the Royal Spanish Academy in 2005.

How to Remember Ordinal Numbers?

It's wise for beginners to remember cardinal numbers so that it's easy for them to engage in any conversations. Also, it's easy for the person you're talking to understand the words you're saying if you speak the right ordinal number.

Here's an excellent tip you need to take note:

Remember ordinal numbers by connecting these with English words. Take a look at the following:

- The ordinal number *primero* is related to the English word "primary."
- *Segundo* is similar to the word "second."
- You can relate *tercero* with "tertiary."
- *Cuarto* is similar to "quarter."
- *Quinto* refers to the number "five."
- *Octavo* reflects octave that means "eight."
- You can connect the word *decimo* with the English word "decimal."

For beginners, it's quite challenging to learn Spanish ordinal numbers. But, knowing the ordinal numbers and how these functions help in learning the Spanish language quickly. Once you're familiar with the ordinals, and their roles in a sentence, it's easy to use these phrases in any conversation.

Also, one secret you should know to remember the rules about Spanish ordinals. Yes, it's quite tough from the start. But, as you continue to learn the Spanish language, you would have fun and who knows, you might write a book or poem in Spanish someday.

But, you know what, Spanish ordinal numbers aren't only great ways for you to make excellent conversations. You can also become good at buying

stuff from a Spanish online store successfully if you know these ordinal numbers.

So, take time and enjoy learning Spanish ordinals today!

CHAPTER 4: Days and Months

Do you plan to go on a five-week vacation in Spain? Besides knowing Spanish ordinals, you also need to be familiar with the days and months in Spanish. Why?

Knowing days and months in Spanish allows you to plan your trips easily. For example, you schedule your next Spanish destination by looking at the calendar. You can also extend the vacation without difficulty by reading days and months in Spanish touring sites.

Also, you can use days and months in Spanish in making conversations with native Spanish speakers. You can even teach your friends how to speak and read days and months in Spanish.

Are you ready to learn days and months in Spanish? Let's begin.

Unlike its French equivalents, the days in Spanish are easy to remember. Beginners only need to remember: days in Spanish are in small letters, unlike the days in English that are written in upper case letters.

The following are the days in Spanish and their English equivalent:

Spanish	English
Lunes	Monday
Martes	Tuesday
Miércoles	Wednesday
Jueves	Thursday
Viernes	Friday
Sábado	Saturday
Domingo	Sunday
fin de semana	Weekend

Besides these seven days in Spanish, here are other Spanish words that are also related to the days in the Spanish calendar:

- *The day before yesterday*

(antes de ayer)

- *Today*

(Hoy)

- *Yesterday*

(ayer)

- *Tomorrow*

(mañana)

- *The day after tomorrow*

(pasado mañana)

You can memorize the days in Spanish to start your journey on mastering the language. You can read the rest of the chapters in this e-book to enrich your vocabulary and phrases in Spanish.

You can spend your vacation in Spain by meeting new friends, and you can use your vocabulary about days in Spanish. Your knowledge in days in Spanish would be your key to enjoy your time in Spain.

Remember: mastering the days and months in Spanish isn't that tough. All you need is the willingness and sincerity to learn the language. It's best to use the simple phases first before you start long conversations.

Take the chance to use the info you learn to enrich your vocabulary skills. With this, you would learn to appreciate the language more.

Months in Spanish

Do you notice the slight similarities between the English and the Spanish months?

Yes, you're correct if you notice that Spanish months are quite the same as the months in English. Also, like days in Spanish, months in Spanish are all in small letters as well.

Here are the months you would see in the Spanish calendar:

Spanish	English
Enero	January
Febrero	February
Marzo	March
Abril	April
Mayo	May
Junio	June
Julio	July
Agosto	August
Septiembre	September
Octubre	October
Noviembre	November

Diciembre December

Here are example sentences using some of these months:

- Octubre tiene 31 days (October has 31 days)
- Mayo es el quinto mes del año. (May is the 5th month of the year)

What do you notice in the two examples above?

Yes, the months in Spanish are capitalized instead written in small letters. It's a rule that you shouldn't capitalize Spanish months. But, here's the exception, you can capitalize months in Spanish if these are subject of the sentence.

Unlike the days in Spanish, you don't need to use articles such as *El* before months.

In learning months in Spanish, there are a few essential questions that you would hear in a conversation. These following questions are as follows:

- ¿ Que mes es este?

(What month is this?)

- ¿ Cual es tu mes favorito?

(What is your favorite month?)

- ¿ En que mes....?

(What month...?)

On the third question, you would notice the *EN* preposition is used before *QUE* . The word *QUE* is an essential part of the question because you would still use it to create the answer.

¿ En que mes es?

Es en enero

You can say your favorite Spanish month by using *Estamos en + mes*.

You can say it like this:

Estamos en diciembre.

You would observe that *ESTAR* is the primary or main verb in the phrase. *ESTAMOS* would conjugate *ESTAR* when you would prefer to months.

For instance, you can use *Mi mes favorito es diciembre* about your favorite month. But to spice up the phrase, it would be awesome to add *PORQUE* to the sentence.

Mi mes favorito es diciembre porque lleuve.

Now, you would notice that the main verbs in the sentence are *SER* and *ESTAR*.

That's not all.

There are other ways on how can you talk about Spanish months. Here are the most notable phrases you can use:

- *El mes de* that refers to the month
- *Los meses de* that means the months

These phrases are useful when you're describing the events or weather in a particular month.

How Do You Speak the Date in Spanish?

For people who want to learn the Spanish language, saying the date in Spanish is essential. Well, for beginners, you wouldn't be in trouble if you speak the date in Spanish wrong. Yes, your Spanish tutor would forgive you for the simple mistake.

But, it's different when you're talking to native Spanish speakers. The chances are that the people you're talking to wouldn't understand you or they wouldn't be interested in talking to you.

Don't let that ruin your memorable travel to Spain. You can speak dates in Spanish quickly by the [number] of [month].

For example, how would you speak 5th of May as the answer to the question of your mother who asks you the date of your interview?

It simple. You would say “el cinco de mayo” that means “five of May” rather than fifth.

Professional Spanish speakers use this in any conversation, but there’s an exception – the 1st day of the month.

You can say *el primero de mayo*, but you can also say *el uno de mayo* on certain occasions. For beginners, they need to follow the correct one that is using primero instead of uno.

Here’s another example:

What if you’re going to say it’s the second of March, how would you say it?

You would say – *es e el segundo de marso* .

Take note: In English, you would say March the 2nd or the 2nd of March. But in Spanish, you wouldn’t reverse the word order.

How to Express the Year in Spanish?

Part of Spanish conversations is expressing the year in Spanish. Like the days and months, you also need to make sure that you say or write the year correctly.

Why?

It would be easy for you to make a conversation about dates. If you plan to travel or have a vacation in Spain, knowing to say the correct year would help you book flights and schedule the trip you plan to do.

It’s easy to express or say a specific year in Spanish. You only need to use the number itself.

The following are specific years in Spanish and its English number equivalents:

- Mil trescientos quince – 1315
- Mil novecientos noventa y nueve – 1999
- Dos mil – 2000

It's easy to express year in Spanish, so, come now and start practice saying years in Spanish!

Writing Spanish Dates

Dates in Spanish aren't that easy to speak or write. Countries have different norms that make it challenging to write Spanish dates. So, you might be confused to speak or write different dates in Spanish.

Don't worry! You won't get in trouble if you get the dates wrong. But, it's still essential for you to know how to write it correctly. Why?

For instance, you can always see dates pop up when you're traveling to Spain. Let's say you're booking flights to Spain or booking in hotels.

Differences

If you once read Spanish books, you would notice that there are differences in days in Spanish and its English equivalent. This difference enables native Spanish native speakers and (beginners) to make good conversations with each other.

One of the first differences you would notice is that days and months in Spanish are in small letters rather capital letters.

Dates in Spanish are in Cardinal Numbers

English dates are written using ordinal numbers, but Spanish dates are in cardinal numerals.

Here's an example:

Julio Catorce (July 14)

But, there's an exception – you can speak *primero* or first in your phrases such as:

Primero de Marzo (1st of March)

Segundo de Agosto (2nd day of August)

Spanish Years are Pronounced as Cardinal Numbers

If you're asked to speak or write years in Spanish, don't forget that Spanish years are pronounced as cardinal numbers.

Here's a good example:

Let's say you're about to read a date in Spanish in your history class.

1455

Your classmate whispers from the back:

Catorce Cincueta y cinco

Say this, and your professor would frown at you. Instead, say:

Mil cuatrocientos cincuenta y cinco.

Now, that's the correct one because you're pronouncing the year similar with cardinal numbers.

Using the Article "El"

In English, we use the preposition "on" to indicate that a particular event happened on a specific date. That's the usual thing we do in writing and speaking dates in English.

Stop if you plan to use the preposition "on" in Spanish.

You see, writing or speaking Spanish dates don't use any preposition but only the article "el." Yes, native Spanish speakers use "el" before a date.

For instance, you would say:

El 14 de Septiembre es mi cumplea ños.

(My birthday is on 14th of September).

Here are other examples you can use to enrich your vocabulary and improve your conversations with professional Spanish native speakers:

Spanish	English
veintinueve de mayo, 2019	29th of mayo, 2019
catorce de agosto, 2011	14th of July, 2011

doce de abril, 1963	12th of April, 1963
dieciseis de enero, 2020	16th of Enero, 2020

Now, you know the basics of speaking and writing dates in Spanish. But, do you know the versions on how you would write a specific date?

Then, let's be familiar with the two versions in writing Spanish days and months. First, you can write dates using the numbers-only version and second, the formal version.

What's the difference between these two versions?

Numbers- Only Version

Like most Spanish speaking countries, the format of this version is **dd/mm/yyyy** . You would notice that the form is the American style where the month is the first.

Take a look at this:

September 1, 1990 (American style)

01/09/1990 (Spanish style)

You would also notice people don't use the numbers-only version in writing Spanish phrases and conversations. But still, you need to know how to write this version. Why?

You can use this version if you're writing dates in Spanish or feel free to share this information with your friends and family.

Formal Version

An important note to remember: the days and months in Spanish aren't capitalized. The basic format in writing the date would be:

[day], el [day] de [month].

For example, you would write the date:

Saturday, May 18, 2017, to sabado, el 18 de mayo de 2017.

You see, most Spanish writers and speakers use the formal version in making conversations in Spanish. Unlike the numbers-only version, the formal version is excellent to include in conversations because you can speak the Spanish days and months. The numbers-only version isn't written in letters but numbers only.

Also, you can use a little variation in speaking dates in the formal version:

Let's take a look at this example:

domingo, el 9 de marzo de 2018

domingo, el 9 del marzo de 2018

What do you notice from the example?

Yes, you're right! The *de* was written before the year is replaced by *del*. In either way, both the *de* and *del* make a correct Spanish phrase if you use these before the year.

Days and months in Spanish take time to learn. But, once you know how to speak or write days, months, and years, you would be able to start good conversations with Spanish speakers.

Is there a secret to learn days and months in Spanish fast?

Yes, and it starts with you!

Relax and take it easy! It takes a lot of courage, patience, and determination to learn the Spanish language. Be passionate and determined in your learning.

CHAPTER 5: People

The Spanish language, like other languages, allows you to interact with people. For example, you plan to go to Spain with your family. Besides the food and scenic places there, meeting and talking with different people is one of the fun ways to enjoy your trip.

Even if don't plan to go there, you can still enjoy your Spanish language learning by making conversations with Spanish speakers.

But don't be excited yet.

You need to prepare first, So, here are common "people words" that are essential to add to your vocabulary.

People Words

El bebe	Baby
El muchacho El chico	Boy
La muchacha La chica	Girl
Los niños	Children
El amigo La amiga	Friend
La señora	Lady
La anciana	Old woman
El hombre	Man
El anciano	Old man
La mujer	Woman
El niño	Young boy
La niña	Young girl

La señorita	Young lady
El adolescente, la adolescente	Adolescent
El señor	Gentleman
La gente	People

Take time to memorize these words for you to have a basic vocabulary of the common words that refer to people in Spanish. If you hear these words in a conversation, it's would be easy to understand the conversation.

Don't forget – the people you're talking with would be happy to share more ideas and even stories with you.

What if you're asked to describe yourself or someone in Spanish, what words are best to use?

Don't worry!

Enrich your vocabulary more with the following words:

Agil	Agile
Afectuoso	Affectionate
Aburrido	Boring
Agradable	Pleasant
Amable	Kind
Alegre	Joyful
Ambicioso	Ambitious
Amoroso	Loving
Amigable	Friendly
Apatico	Listless
Atrevido	Sassy
Atento	Attentive
Curioso	Curious
Considerado	Considerate

Directo	Direct
Discreto	Discreet
Elagante	Elegant
Hermoso	Beautiful
Horrible	Awful
Insensible	Insensitive

These examples are only a few of the many words you can use in a conversation with a native Spanish speaker. But, there are instances where you find these words useful in the following scenarios:

- If someone asks you about your family and friends
- If you would discuss your favorite film
- If you're looking for someone
- If you're in a clinic or hospital in Spain

You can describe your personality in Spanish by saying *Yo soy* (I am). In describing another person, use *el* for man and *ella* for a woman. You can use *ella es* besides *ella* in your description.

Here are a few examples:

- Soy alegre (I'm happy)
- Ella es amigable (She is friendly)
- El es amoroso (He is loving)
- Soy bien ambicioso (I'm very ambitious)

Common Spanish Adjectives Used to Describe People Around You

Like most languages, the Spanish language also has commonly used adjectives to describe people (such as friends and family).

Besides the list above, here are other Spanish adjectives that can enrich your vocabulary and help you create good conversations with newbie and pro-Spanish speakers.

Feliz	Happy
Lindo	Pretty
Feo	Ugly
Alto	Tall
Triste	Sad
Grande	Big
Bajo	Short
Pequeño	Small
Complicado	Complicated
Simple	Simple
Divertido	Fun
Fiel	Loyal
Rico	Rich
Pobre	Poor
Repugnante	Disgusting
Delicioso	Delicious
Inteligente	Intelligent
Tonto	Stupid
Viejo	Old
Nuevo	New
Abierto	Open
Cerrado	Closed
Cansado	Tired
Caluroso	Hot
Despierto	Awake
Frio	Cold
Rapido	Fast

Lento	Slow
Tranquilo	Tranquil
Loco	Crazy
Debil	Weak
Fuerte	Strong
Enfermo	Sick
Dulce	Sweet
Sano	Healthy
Limpio	Clean
Sucio	Dirty
Mojado	Wet
Injusto	Unfair
Seco	Dry
Justo	Fair
Vacio	Empty
Lleno	Full
Delgado	Thin
Gordo	Fat
Bueno	Good
Malo	Bad
Torpe	Clumsy
Timido	Shy
Valiente	Brave

Do you notice the Spanish word ***simple*** has the same spelling with its English equivalent? Now, you would ask:

How do you I pronounce it?

It's easy! Take note that the Spanish simple has a stress on the beginning. In English, you put the stress at the word's end.

For example:

The stress on the word is in the first syllable like SIM-ple (SEEM-pley). In English, you pronounce the word as sim-PLE (sim-PULL).

Simple isn't only used to describe a person but also food. Why? The word simple has a connotation of lacking or bland. Most people use *simple* to describe what they think of the food they ate.

Now, read the word **abierto** .

If you aren't familiar with the word, you would think that it refers to an establishment or shop. But, it can also describe a person.

Let this example show you:

Es Una persona muy abierta.

(He or she is a very open person.)

Now, we go to the Spanish word **tranquilo** .

At first, you would use this as an adjective that means tranquil or calm. But, did you know that the word can also refer to order or suggestion?

For instance, you say tranquilo to your angry friend. The word doesn't only mean to relax or calm down but also mean the assurance that things would be alright. You say the word in a calm tone and your friend would get the message.

What do you think about the word **dulce** ?

No, dulce doesn't pertain to flavor but also a compliment. In saying dulce to describe a friend, you're saying about your friend's sweet nature. Hence, you would say:

Eres dulce. (You're sweet.)

The person you're talking to might use dulce to describe sweet candy on your feet. Thus, the person would describe the candy's sweet taste instead of referring to your personality.

Esta dulce.

Take note: using ser and estar change the meaning of dulce from a personality trait into a flavor.

Making Spanish Conversations with People

Before we start with the conversation proper, let me share a few ideas about the Spanish culture.

The culture in Spain is a cheek-kissing culture, so expect that you would kiss and be kissed on the cheek often. It doesn't mean that a person likes you, but it only shows politeness.

You can also be polite a person by saying Spanish phrases such as the following:

- **Buenos dias** (Good morning)
- **Buenos tardes** (Good afternoon)
- **Buenas noches** (Good night)

Then, you can start the conversation by saying the following:

- *¿Cómo se llama?* (**You can translate this to “What do you call yourself?” or “What is your name?”**)
- *Me llamo + name* (My name is__)
- *Mucho gusto* (or *Nice to meet you*)

This phrase means that you're pleased to meet the person. In Spain, this phrase is the standard response you would hear from a native Spanish speaker.

- *¿Cómo está usted?* (or How are you?)

You would hear this often in talking to a Spanish speaker. The polite way to answer this is to say bien (good) or muy bien (very good).

Using Spanish vocabulary and phrases, you can get into a small talk easily. Most cultures have this (not only Spain). A small talk enables people to relax and enjoy the casual moment of meeting someone for the first time.

When you're talking to strangers, it's good to be courteous because this marks an excellent conversation together.

Don't ask a person who's out in the rain questions like, "What are your favorite hobbies? Or "How much is the food here?"

The person you're talking to might get annoyed and wouldn't have the interest to start a conversation with you. Instead, you say the following phrases to lighten up the mood:

- Gracias (Thank you)
- De nada (You're welcome)
- Lo Siento (Sorry)
- Disculpeme

Getting to Know People in Spanish

One of the awesome things about learning foreign languages such as Spanish is you get to know about other people! Your Spanish language skills allow you to meet and talk with different people. You share your ideas with them and vice versa.

Once you get to know a person, you can create friendships and much more. But, you need to know the essential phrases to start the conversation,

The following are examples of the phrases you can say:

- ¿Qué? (What?)
- ¿A qué se dedica? (or What is your job?)
- ¿Dónde? (Where?)
- ¿Dónde vive ? (or Where do you live?)
- ¿De dónde es? (meaning Where are you from?)

Alright, you did good in asking questions, but what are your answering phrases if you're asked questions in Spanish?

Don't worry!

Here are a few answer phrases you need to know:

- *Sí.* (Yes.)
- *No.* (No.)
- *(Yo) tengo treinta años .* (or I am 30 years old.)
- *Soy ingeniero.* (meaning: I'm an engineer.)
- *Me gusta bailar.* (I like to dance.)
- *Me gusta* (I like)

When you're about to end the conversation, don't leave abruptly. Remember: talking to a person or people means you need to be polite even if you're about to say goodbye. Still, you need to be courteous and polite to your acquaintance or a new friend.

What are the common phrases you have to say?

Take a look at these examples:

- *¿Qué hora es? Or* (What time is it?)
- *Me tengo que ir.* Or (I have to go.)
- *Hasta luego.* (See you later.)
- *Hasta pronto.* (See you soon.)
- *Cuídese.* (Take care.)
- *Adiós.* (Goodbye.)

You can mention the important things you need before you exit. It's best to say these in 15 minutes. Like other conversations, you exit by wishing the person well and promise you would see each other again.

Remember: It's okay to make mistakes in making a conversation in Spanish. We're not perfect, and there's always room for improvement. If you're talking to a pro-Spanish speaker, he or she won't bother at all as long the conversation is fun.

Don't give up in learning about Spanish vocabulary and phrases in talking to people. It's tough from the start, but soon, you would speak Spanish like a pro, especially if you know how to ask personal information. (that would be discussed below)

Asking and Giving Personal Information

Let's say you've met someone in a restaurant and you start to make a conversation.

What possible questions you should ask? What answers would you give if you're asked common questions? You read the examples below for you to start and end the conversation successfully.

Before you start the conversation, don't ask personal questions but unique ones about the person or people.

Spanish Questions	English Equivalent	Answers	English Equivalent
¿Cómo se llama? (formal) ¿Cómo te llamas? (Informal)	What's your name?	<i>Me llamo...or</i> <i>Mi nombre es...</i>	My name is...
¿Cómo está? (formal) ¿Cómo estás? (informal)	How are you?	<i>Estoy bien, gracias.</i>	I'm fine, thank you.
¿Cuántos años tiene? (formal) ¿Cuántos años tienes? (informal)	How old are you?	<i>Tengo X años.</i>	I am X years old.
¿De dónde eres? ¿De dónde es?	Where are you from?	<i>Soy de España.</i>	I'm from Spain.
¿Tiene hermanos? (formal) ¿Tienes hermanos? (informal)	Do you have any siblings?	<i>Sí, tengo un hermano.</i>	Yes, I have one brother.
¿A qué se	What do you do	<i>Soy médico/a.</i>	I'm a doctor.

<i>dedica?</i> (formal) <i>¿A qué te dedicas?</i> (informal)	for a living?		
<i>¿Cuál es su número de teléfono?</i> (formal) <i>¿Cuál es tu número de teléfono?</i> (informal)	What is your phone number?	<i>Mi número de teléfono es...</i>	My phone number is...
<i>¿Está casado/a?</i> (formal) <i>¿Estás casado/a?</i> (informal)	Are you married?	<i>Sí, estoy casado/a.</i>	Yes, I'm married.

Take note: The Spanish questions use both **tu** for the informal and **usted** for the formal options. You would need to use either of these options depending on the people you're talking to and the situation.

In Spain, tu is often used on many occasions, But, if you're in Latin American countries, usted is often used in talking to strangers.

Conversations with people are fun if the questions are about hobbies or interest. If you want to enjoy the conversation, here are a few questions you might ask and its answers:

Spanish Questions	English Equivalent	Answers	English Equivalent
<i>¿Tiene un hobby?</i> (formal)	Do you have a hobby?	<i>Me gusta cocinar</i>	I like to cook.

¿Tienes un hobby? (informal)			
¿Tiene una mascota? (formal)	Do you have a pet?	<i>Sí, tengo un gato.</i>	Yes, I have a cat.
¿Tienes una mascota? (informal)			
¿Le gusta la música? (formal)	Do you like music?	<i>Sí, me gusta el jazz.</i>	Yes, I like jazz.
¿Te gusta la música? (informal)			

English Equivalent	Answers	English Equivalent
Do you have a hobby?	<i>Me gusta cocinar</i>	I like to cook.
Do you have a pet?	<i>Sí, tengo un gato.</i>	Yes, I have a cat.
Do you like music?	<i>Sí, me gusta el jazz.</i>	Yes, I like jazz.

There are other questions you can ask that are about movies, pastime and more. Don't out-Spanish the people you're talking to even if you're Spanish vocabulary improves. It's okay to be natural and casual around people.

Think that you're talking to your friends to make the conversation light and funny. Keep in mind that good conversations start with you, so make it memorable!

CHAPTER 6: Family & Relatives

Family is considered one of the primary topics of conversation, which will come about when you come across Spanish-speakers. In Hispanic culture, family plays a vital role, and new Spanish-speaking friends and associates are always interested in knowing about your whole family, too. If you're young, be ready to tell about your mom and dad, and siblings- their jobs, their age and their residences as well. If you look old enough to have kids, look forward to talking about them or enlighten why you do not have any yet. It is a smart idea to have pictures to spark your conversation.

One thing which makes learning Spanish vocabulary about family is a bit easier, and stress-free is the fact that sometimes instead of learning varying words for the male or female family members, you can alter the ending. The masculine plural version is able to be used to refer to many females and males. The only time you would utilize the female plural version is when the group is composed of all female.

Sexual Category and Members of the Family

Always remember that In Spanish, the plural form of a male can refer to varied groups of females and male. As a result, "cuatro hijos" can be signified either four children or four sons; it all depends on the context.

While it might sound odd to the ear adjusted to English language, padres is a grammatically correct way to refer father and mother, even if padre is only referred to a father. Keep in mind also that the phrase pariente in general means "family members or relative"; the cognate, which is a Spanish-English word, does not just refer to parents.

Here are Some of Family Vocabularies in Spanish

el padre	father
los padres	parents
el papá	Dad or daddy
la mamá	Mom or mommy
la madre	mother
el hija	Daughter
la hijo	Son
los hijos	children (males and female)
el esposo or marido	husband
la esposa	wife
el hermana	sister

la hermano	brother
los hermanos	siblings (male and female)
El arbol genealogico	Family tree
El bisabuelo	Great grandfather
El bisnieto	Great grandson
La conuge	Spouse
El cuatrillizo	Cuadruplet
El quintillizo	Quintuplet
El septillizo	Septuplet
El sextillizo	Sextuplet

Spanish Vocabulary of Extended Family

Countries that speak Spanish, the extended family is very significant. Therefore, it is good to have a firm and thorough understanding of the vocabulary and the terms of extended family. Here are some of the Spanish vocabularies of extended family.

los parientes	relatives
el abuela	grandmother
la abuelo	grandfather
los abuelos	grandparents
el nieta	granddaughter
la nieto	grandson
los nietos	grandchildren
el tía	aunt
la tío	uncle
los tios	aunt(s) and uncle(s)
la prima	cousin (female)
el primo	cousin (male)
los primos	cousins (male and female)

el sobrina	Niece
la sobrino	Nephew
los sobrinos	Both nieces and nephews

Spanish Vocabulary of the Mixed Family

At this point in time, the blended family is turning out to be the norm. In case you have a mixed family, it's a smart idea to learn the vocabulary which pertains to you to precisely illustrate the makeup and composition of your family.

Here are some examples of Spanish vocabulary of the mixed family:

el padrastra	stepmother
la madrastra	stepfather
los padrastros	stepparents
el hijastra	stepdaughter
la hijastro	stepson
los hijastros	stepchildren
el hermanastra	stepsister
la hermanastro	stepbrother
los hermanastros	stepbrothers and stepsisters
el medio hermana	half-sister
la media hermano	half-brother

Spanish Vocabulary of the In-Laws

If you're married, you might find that you spend most of your time talking about your in-laws. Many *in-law* terms are complicated compared to other family vocabularies, so begin by learning the basic which you utilize most often prior to knowing the additional terms and phrases.

Here are the examples of Spanish vocabulary of the in-laws:

el suegra	mother-in-law
-----------	---------------

la suegro	father-in-law
los suegros	mother and father-in-law
el yerno	son-in-law
la nuera	daughter-in-law
el cuñada	sister-in-law
la cuñado	brother-in-law

TIP: Don't be persuaded to utilize the term *pariente* to refer to parents as it signified relatives, anyone who is related to you. The phrase *Los padres* may look like an odd way of referring to *el padre* or *la madre*. However, it is, without a doubt, the right word for "parents." You can make use of the word *la familiapolitica* to refer to in-laws.

Family Vocabulary in Plural Form

Female	Male	Plural
adre [mother]	La mEl padre [father]	Lospadres [parents]
La hermana [sister]	La hermano [brother]	Loshermanos [siblings]
ija [daughter]	La hEl hijo [son]	Loshijos [children]
La abuela [grandmother]	El abuelo [grandfather]	Losabuelos [grandparents]
El nieta [granddaughter]	La nieto [grandson]	Lasnietas [grandchildren]
LatÃa [aunt]	El tÃo [uncle]	LostÃos [aunts and uncles]
La sobrina [niece]	El sobrino [nephew]	Los sobrinos [nieces and nephews]
La prima [female cousin]	El primo [male cousin]	Los primos [cousins]
El esposa [wife] La mujer [wife]	La esposo [husband] el marido [husband]	
La suegra [mother-in-law]	El suegro [father-in-law]	Los suegros [parents-in-law]
La cuñada [sister-in-law]	El cuñado [brother-in-law]	Los cuñados [siblings-in-law]

Some members of the family or relatives can be called in many ways. Like for instance, you can make use of *papa/padre* for a dad/father or a *mama/madre* for a mother in Spanish. In

general, children usually call their parents papa and mama. Always bear in mind that these two phrases require the accent on the last syllable, or when to pronounce in a different way will have a totally new meaning.

The term "padres," a generic name for parents, it is also the plural form of a father. See that the phrase parentes means members of the family or relatives. So, you do not make mistakes in Spanish and make use of it if the topic is your parents. We have already mentioned the Spanish term for sister and brother above, Hermana and Hermano. Hermanos is the generic name for them.

If you wish to learn simple and basic Spanish and speak to your grandmother and grandfather, you need to make use of Abuela or Abuelo, which has a generic name of abuelos. On the other hand, there's also a sweet way to address your grandparents in Spanish. You simply put in the suffix "ito" at the end of the phrases, and you will get abuelita and abuelito.

As you see, the female noun which portrays a family in Spanish normally ends in A. On the other hand, words that have -o at the end are regarded as a male noun. Like for instance:

- Niece – Sobrina
- Mother-in-law in Spanish – Suegra
- Cousin (female) – Prima
- Sister-in-law in Spanish – Cuñada
- Cousin (male) – Primo
- Nephew – Sobrino
- Brother-in-law – Cuñado
- Father-in-law – Suegro

Only some transformations with the phrase ending, and you will get another meaning. The only exception is the term papa who has a word ending. However, it still utilized for a father or dad in Spanish.

Family Relationships Spanish Vocabulary

Possessive Adjectives Forms

<u>Singular</u>	_____	-	<u>Plural</u>	_____
<u>My</u>	_____	-	<u>MI</u>	_____
<u>Your (Familia)</u>	_____	-	<u>Tu</u>	_____
<u>Her, His, Its, Your</u>	_____	-	<u>Su</u>	_____
<u>Our</u>	_____	-	<u>Nuestro/ a</u>	_____
<u>Your (fam.)</u>	_____	-	<u>Vuestro/ a</u>	_____

Their, Its, Your _____ S u _____ Sus _____

Possessive adjectives such as Mi (s) (my), Tu (s) (your), nuestros (s) (our), SU (s) (his, her, their) are normally utilized to refer to family relationships in Spanish. These phrases state possession and should agree in number and gender with the member of the family you like to discuss with. To put it in another way, if you like to know conversational Spanish and say My mom in Spanish, you will say Mi Mama. On the other hand, if you want to say, my brothers, you must make use of MIS instead of MI.

How to Describe a Member of the Family with Ser

Describing your loved ones to your Spanish friends is not a hard and complicated task. To successfully do it, you just keep in mind four important things; relatives or a family member you are planning to describe to talk about, right possessive adjective, the irregular verb SER as well as adjectives to portray physical appearance as well as personality in Spanish.

Irregular Verb SER

The infinitive form of SER stands for “to be”

As a guideline, make use of this verb to discuss inherent features or permanent states such as:

The traits or characteristics of a person

Things that will not change, such as family members and gender:

She is my mother –Ella Es Mi Madre

I am a person- Yo Soy Una Persona

You are tall – Tu eres alto

In general, the irregular verb SER is utilized in different forms; like if you like to discuss single person and son for many members of the family. Like for instance:

My father is—Mi Padre es...

My Mom Is- Mi Madre es

My cousins are --- Mis Prision son...

After the right form of verb SER, you must make use of an adjective like amiable or kind or titles of the job such as teacher (professor). To make the adjective stronger, never forget to utilize adverbs such as MUY, which means “very.”

Varied Family Terms in Spanish

Los políticos or la familia politica might be utilized as the counterpart of the in-laws. In other terms, the words refer to those to whom you are connected by marriage. In a diverse context, the word politicos also refer to politicians.

The word *amigovía* or *amigovio* can be utilized colloquially in most areas to an individual with whom you have a sexual or romantic relationship which has not necessarily been honored or formalized like friends with benefit, or live in love wherein there is not necessarily a hope or anticipation of getting married. This is a term of relatively recent origin; therefore, its meaning is not consistent in all aspects.

Keep in mind that while the term *marido* means a husband, there's no equivalent female form *marida*, in regular use.

Here are Some Helpful Expressions to Discuss Family Relationships

tengo plus number plus siblings or uncles or aunts and many others

Like for instance: *Una hermano y dos hermanos, tengo tres hermanas*, I have three siblings, one brother, and two sisters.

mi familia plus *es* plus adjective → my family plus is plus adjective

Here is an example: *Mi familia es muy grande.* → My family is really big.

presentar a alguien → to introduce someone

Like for example: *Te presento a mi esposa.* → I present you to my wife

él/ella plus *es* plus relationship to you → he/she plus is plus relationship to you

Like for example:

Él es mi tío. → He is my uncle.

TIP to Remember: *Keep in mind, we virtually always make use of possessive pronouns like tu, su, mi, sus, vuestro/a/os.as, nuestro/a/os/as when discussing members of the family.*

To give you an insight; please take a look at these examples:

They are my grandparents- *Ellos son nuestros abuelos*

She is his or her aunt- *Ella es su tía*

To look like someone- *parecerse a alguien*

Example:

Randy looks like his father- *Randy se parece a su padre.*

There's a high chance that the following Spanish discussion which you hear or participate will talk about members of the family. Ensure to take the time to get to know more about the vocabulary to discuss members of the family because it will surely be put to good use!

Sample Sentences which refer to members of the family

Here are simple sentences you are able to utilize as models for your own:

My dad is a carpenter – *Mi padre es carpintero*

My auntie is a dancer- *Mi tía es ballarina*

My mom is a housewife- *Mi madre es ama de casa*

I have three sisters and a brother- *tengo tres hermanas y un hermano*

Tengo cuatro hermanos. This can be viewed as vague and uncertain by English speakers. It could be translated correctly as either I have 4 siblings or I have 4 sisters.

Tengo cinco tías – I have five aunts or I have five uncles and aunts

Mi padrastro vive en el estado de Texas- My stepdad lives in Texas State.

Mis sobrinas viven en US- My nieces live in the US

Mi madre está muerta - My mom is dead.

Mi primo está muerto - My uncle is dead

John y Carol fueron los padres de Elisa - John and Carol were the parents of Elisa

Los primos no pueden casarse según nuestra cultura - Cousins can't marry according to our culture

CHAPTER 7: Directions

Your Linguistic Guide to Directions in Spanish

Have you lost while you're travelling a country or around a city? Losing yourself in a new place and country is a thrilling way to travel around! On the other hand, if you decide to go back to your hotel to take rest, it can be a challenge to look for your way, most particularly when there is a language difficulty to assert with.

Fortunately, this is a simple issue to address if you are spending your holiday in Spain or other Spanish speaking nations. Knowing how to speak directions in Spanish is indeed a very simple thing to do. With a little effort and time, you are able to know how to give and ask for directions in Spanish like you're living in the locality.

If you decide to spend a vacation in a Spain or other countries where Spanish is the primary language, you must allocate more time to evaluate how to give and ask for directions in Spanish. You will thank yourself the very first time you lost, and although you have a smartphone or a map to help you find the way, asking for directions is indeed a good way to practice the Spanish language with locals.

Even when you do not have a plan of travelling in Spanish speaking countries, giving and asking directions in Spanish is still a practical skill which is worth learning. Keep on reading for directions vocabulary, practice suggestions as well as useful phrases.

The Importance of Learning Directions in Spanish

Knowing how to give and ask directions in Spanish is extremely useful than what many people think. Going to a country with the Spanish language? Asking for a direction is perhaps the most common conversation you will have in Spanish, most especially if you are not skilled in using a map.

And it is not only vital to learn how to give and ask for directions in Spanish. If you aren't able to understand the answer, then you will also be lost. Learning the grammatical structures and vocabulary in this guide could make a huge difference between looking for a destination and being lost hopelessly on holiday.

What is more, knowing more about directions is indeed great due to the fact that it will enable you to practice many new vocabularies and it pressures you to listen and focus on difficult prepositions as well as configurations of the verb in the form of command. Below is the list of vocabulary that is broken down into nouns, verbs, adjectives as well as prepositions.

Important Vocabulary Phrases for Directions in Spanish

This list of vocabulary has lots of useful phrases/words related to directions in Spanish.

Nouns

- Avenue- la avenida
- Street- la calle
- Alleyway- el callejon
- Highway- la carretera
- Bridge- el Puente
- Pedestrian street- la peatonal
- Sidewalk- la vereda/ la acera
- Ma- el mapa
- Roundabout- la rotunda
- Stoplight- el semaforo
- Crosswalk- el paso de peatones
- Directions- las direcciones
- Address- la direccion
- Block- la manzana/ la cuadra
- Mile- la milla
- Kilometer- el kilometer
- The right (hand/side)- la derecha
- The left (hand/side)- la izquierda

Adjectives

- Right- derecho, derecha

- Left- izquierdo/a
- Straight (when describing physical appearance)- recto, recta, derecho, derecha
- Next- proximo, proxima
- First- primero, primera
- Second- Segundo, segunda
- Third- tercero- tercera
- Near- cerca
- Far- lejos
- Lost- perdido- perdida

Derecha and derecho are two easily confused Spanish words. Both are a distant relative of the words direct and right, and which is the main source of the uncertainty; depending on the use and context of these terms can give meanings like the *right (entitlement)*, *right (opposite of left)*, directly, straight, and upright.

Derecha and Derecho Explained

These terms are easiest to comprehend as nouns:

El derecho isn't an expression of direction. It is utilized to explain something which is due to a person in accordance with the law, custom or moral principle. When this word is utilized in plural form, usually it means rights like in the saying *derecho humanos*, or human rights. Also, it can refer to a kind of right which is less abstract.

La derecha, on the other, refers to something which is on the right side of opposite of left, like for instance, the political right or the right foot. A la derecha is an adverbial term which means on the right or to the right.

Here are Sample Sentences to Avoid Confusion:

*Queremos el **derecho** a decidir para toda la gente* - We want the right to decide for all the people.)

*El coche es caro, pero no me funciona la luz de cruce **derecha*** - The car is expensive, but the right turn signal does not work for me.)

Prepositions and Direction

Prepositions are utilized in virtually every sentence. They can be a remarkable tool to connect words. Like for instance, by just understanding how to make use of with, after, from, to, you are able to expand the scope of the conversation. In short, preposition explains a connection between phrase in a sentence.

Grammar Rule

In Spanish, prepositions are utilized the same way they used in English. To make life easier for Spanish learners, check out some of these examples:

- *The hat is under the table- El sombrero está debajo de la mesa.*
- *I like tea with milk- Me gusta el té con leche*

List of Preposition in Spanish

- Until- hasta
- Forward- adelante
- In front of- delante de
- Behind- detras de
- Next to- al lado de
- Across from- en frente de

Some Examples

- *La carta esta dentro del libro- The letter is inside the book*
- *¿Le puedo ayudar? ¿Le puedo ayudar?- Can I help you?*
- *La pluma está debajo del escritorio- The pen is under the desk*

Verbs

Other instances, people may want to give you specific directions. Therefore, they will tell you to turn left, walk one block, or keep on walking for half a mile.

Therefore, ensure you brush up on a number of these directional verbs you may hear.

Always remember that in the Spanish language, we have informal and formal ways of utilizing these directional verbs. Check out some of these examples:

Vos or tu- informal forms of you

Usted- formal

Let us discuss the tu that is the most form of the verb a lot of people utilize when providing direction on the road or street. You may hear them using these directional verbs such as this:

- *Gira a la izquierda- turn left*
- *Gira a la derecha- turn right*
- *Ve por- walk or take long*
- *Cruza- cross*
- *Sigue- continue*
- *Sigue derecho- Go straight ahead*

There is a public transport

When you ask is it far or "**¿Está lejos?**" and the reply is Si, you may have to take public transport. Someone may say to you:

- Toma- take
- El autobus- the buss
- El metro- subway
- El train- the train

- Un taxi – a taxi

Adverbs of Place and Location

In Spanish, adverbs are invariable, which is, they don't show gender or number. The role is to alter the meaning of adjectives and verbs and the adverbs as well. Adverbs can be classified in many categories like time, manner, doubt, quantity, place, etc.

Adverbs of place are utilized to discuss the place of a thing or an action. They are specifically valuable for giving directions or expressing where people or items can be located.

Let's see some examples of adverbs of place:

- Abajo- downstairs, below
- Arriba- overhead, upstairs, above
- aquí, acá -here, over here
- ahí, allá- over there,there
- adentro- inside
- afuera- outside
- detras- after, behind
- ante- before
- lejos- far away
- cerca- near, close, nearby
- delante- ahead of
- enfrente- in front of
- fuera- outside
- dentro- inside

Adverbial of Locations

Here are some examples of adverbs of locations:

- En casa- at home
- A casa- to home
- A la derecha- to the right
- A la izquierda- to the left
- de arriba hacia abajo- downward
- de abajo hacia arriba- upward
- dentro de- inside, within
- fuera de- outside, without
- en alguna parte- somewhere
- en cualquier parte- anywhere
- en el extranjero- abroad
- en cualquier momento- whenever, at any time

- en ninguna parte- nowhere
- al revés-backwards
- en todas partes- everywhere
- en otra parte- elsewhere
- por ahí- over there, that way
- por aquí- over here, this way

Sample Exercises

The bank is behind that building- Detrás de ese edificio está el banco.

People like to eat well everywhere in the world- En todas partes del mundo, a la gente le gusta comer bien

Additional Notes

In Spanish, adverbial locations are specific phrasal expressions which make use of adverbs. The lists of adverbs of place above aren't comprehensive. On the other hand, they must give a good idea of the whole formation and use. Adverbs of place find the action of the verb associated with the space that it happens. Think about the phrase *caminamos*, or we walk. What many people know from this is the action, the actor and the time when it happens, when you don't know where it happens. The adverb of place describes this place to make the action of verbs descriptive as well as more precise. As a result, you can say we walk behind the guide or *caminamos detras de la guia* that provides verbal act a sense of spatiality.

TIP : *Usually, if you ask for a direction, you will not totally comprehend the answer, just keep in mind the first two or three things people say.*

Using Command Form to Give Directions

When giving directions in Spanish, most likely you will be utilizing the mandato or command. If you are not totally familiar with Spanish commands, you don't have to worry. These commands are easy to conjugate and have few irregularities.

Check this quick refresher regarding Spanish commands:

In Spanish languages, there are four basic forms of the command, such as:

- Tu form- informal singular
- Usted form- formal singular
- Vosotros form- informal plural
- Ustedes form- formal form

Keep in mind that *vosotros* is just utilized in Spain, in countries in Latin America, they use *ustedes* to talk to a group of people, in spite of the formality of the situation. When providing directions, perhaps you will just give affirmative commands like telling them what to do.

Commands in the form of tu are similar to the ella, el, usted form of the present simple.

come

Come! (Eat!)- comer (to eat)

¡Camina! (Walk!)- Caminar (to walk)

¡Abre! (Open!)- abrir (to open)

To form commands in the form of vosotros, just eliminate the r at the last part of the infinitive and put in a d:

Take a look at the examples below:

¡Comed! (Eat!) – come (to eat)

¡Caminad! (Walk!)-Caminar (to walk)

¡Abrid! (Open!)-Abrir (to open)

Commands in the form of usted are similar to the el, ella, usted form of the present subjunctive. Take a look at the examples below:

¡Coma! (Eat!)-Comer (to eat)

¡Camine! (Walk!)-Caminar (to walk)

¡Abra! (Open!)- Abrir (to open)

To forms command in the form of ustedes, make use of the ellos, ellas as well as ustedes from of the present subjunctive. Here are some examples:

¡Coman! (Eat!)-Comer (to eat)

¡Caminen! (Walk!)- Caminar (to walk)

¡Abran! (Open!)-Abrir (to open)

Important Tip: *The verbs mentioned are regular in the command form, except for Ir. The tu form of ir is ve, while vaya in usted form, id in vosotros form as well as vayan in ustedes form.*

14 Key Phrases for Receiving and Giving Directions in the Spanish Language

Now that we have gone over important words and assessed verb conjugations, let us practice placing it all to make some key phrases related to direction.

Here are some of the best examples:

I'm lost- Estoy perdido/a.

- Excuse me, I'm lost. Can you help me?- Disculpe, estoy perdida. ¿Me puedes ayudar?
- Where is...- Dónde está...
- Where is Retiro Park?- ¿Dónde está el parque de Retiro?

- I'm looking for...- **Estoy buscando ...**
- I'm looking for Flower Street- *Estoy buscando la calle Flores.*
- Is there a good restaurant around here?- *Hay un buen restaurante por aquí?*
- Is it close/far away?- **¿Está cerca/lejos?**
- Is July 9th Avenue far away?- *¿Está lejos la avenida 9 de Julio?*

Providing Directions

- Continue straight - **Sigue recto**
- Continue straight until the stoplight- *Sigue recto hasta el semáforo .*
- Follow _____ Avenue - **Sigue la avenida _____.**

Of course, you can replace avenida for other the same words such as calle, or street, callejon or alleyway, carretera or highway, Puente or bridge. Always keep in mind that in Spanish, not like in English, phrases like these, in general, come before the street of the name, rather than after.

Like for instance, when a street was named Teresa Street in English, in Spanish, it will be called calle Teresa.

More examples:

- *Follow Chile Avenue- Sigue la avenida de Chile*
- *Turn left or right- Gira /dobla a la derecha/izquierda*
- **When you arrive at the peak, turn right-** *Cuando llegues al parque, gira a la derecha.*
- *Go/walk/drive until the _____. - Ve/camina/conduce hasta _____.*
- *Walk until the gym and turn left- Camina hasta el gimnasio y gira a la izquierda*
- **Take the first right/left. - Toma la primera derecha/izquierda.**

Surely, you can also replace primera or first for segunda or second or tercera or third according to your needs.

Check out the examples below:

- *Continue straight, and take the second left- Sigue recto, y toma la segunda izquierda.*
- *It's on the right/left. - Está a la derecha/izquierda.*
- *The bank is on Main Street. It's on the right- El banco está en la calle principal. Está a la derecha.*
- *It's next to _____. - Está al lado de _____ .*

Esta plus a preposition plus a place is a formula which you can utilize to describe the place of something which is relative to other locations. Take a look at these example phrases:

- *My house is across from the school - Mi casa está en frente de la escuela .*

- It's _____ minutes away- ***Está a _____ minutos.***
- It's not far. It's ten minutes away on foot. - *No está lejos. Está a diez minutos caminando.*
- It's _____ blocks/miles/kilometers away. - ***Está a _____ cuadras/manzanas/millas/kilómetros***

Practice Recommendation for Learning Your Spanish Directions

Here are easy, DIY exercises to learn directions in Spanish or just to restore your memory.

Writing Practice- This can help you concentrate on learning as well as memorizing the vocabulary words that are associated with directions in Spanish. It is very easy and straightforward- pick two locations in your city or vicinity, and write how to get from one to the other.

Listening and Speaking Practice: Choose to practice Spanish directions with your friends or loved ones? This is Spanish vocabulary exercise is ideal for you. Look for a map and a friend. Pick a starting point on the map and then mark it. Then, without telling your buddy what it is, pick an endpoint. Explain to your friend or buddy, in as many details as possible on how from the very beginning till end. Switch off to practice listening and speaking.

Comprehension practice: Today, people are becoming reliant on phones and devices to get them from one point to another. Feeling sure and positive in your abilities in the Spanish language? Switch your device into Spanish when utilizing the maps application. You are able to practice your reading comprehension with a walking direction and switch on the navigation to perform comprehension during trips.

Knowing how to receive and give Spanish directions is perhaps a valuable thing you are able to have when you are travelling. Imagine getting confused in an odd place and don't the way to your hotel. This is an overwhelming scenario. However, if you are able to speak basic Spanish directions, then there is no need for you to worry about. The most excellent way to become proficient in Spanish directions is to practice a lot.

CHAPTER 8: Animals (Farm, Forest & Sea)

Everyone loves animals. It serves as our stress reliever. Even when you have never had a pet before, perhaps you have watched the strange documentary on your favorite animal show. Animals when it comes to the conversation a universal topic. The list below must prepare you for a conversation with virtually any animal or pet lover.

Is it a Girl or a Boy? Animal and Gender in the Spanish Language

Prior to knowing animal's vocabulary in Spanish, there is a grammar point one must be wary of. In Spanish, nouns can be masculine or feminine. This disparity can frequently seem irrational and unsound to those who can't speak Spanish. Like for example, La Mesa or a table is feminine, while el escritorio or a desk is masculine.

Therefore, what occurs with animals? Most names of animal have a male and female form, however not all. Like for example, a cat can be a la gata which is in feminine form or el gato in a masculine form. On the other hand, a hamster will always be in a masculine form (el hamster).

It is very vital for you to know that biological gender and grammatical gender are not always alike or the same.

In Spanish, masculine is normally the default gender. Like for instance, if referring to many dogs, a Spanish people will say los perro (masculine form), in spite of whether a lot of dogs in that group are females or female.

Having said that, sometimes feminine can be utilized as a generic gender. If portraying a group of turtles, a Spanish person prefers to say in a feminine form which is las Tortugas before in the masculine form which is los tortugos. You can just utilize the second one when you are certain that in that group of turtles, most are males.

The list of animals below takes account of the generic form, which is to say, one you will make use of if you are not sure if the gender is male or female. So, let check this out!

LAS MASCOTAS (PETS)

Do you love dog, cat, rabbit or any types of animals? In spite of what kind of animals you prefer, pets are frequently the best place to begin a conversation concerning animals. Know the name of your pets in Spanish by checking this list:

- Dog- el perro
- Puppy- el cachorro
- Cat- el gato
- Hamster- el hamster
- Guinea Pig- La cobaya
- Fish- el pez
- Bird- el pajarito
- Turtle- la Tortuga

- Parakeet- el perico
- Snake- la serpiente

Let us check these popular phrases:

- I am going to walk the dog- *Voy a pasear el perro*
- My cat is white- *Mi gato es blanco.*
- That turtle doesn't eat lettuce- *Esa tortuga no come lechuga.*

LA GRANJA (THE FARM)

Do you love spending your extra time in the countryside? The names of animals listed below may come in handy:

- Rabbit- el conejo
- Chick/ chicken- el pollito/ el pollo
- Hen- la gallina
- Rooster- El gallo
- Cow- La vaca
- Bull- el toro
- Sheep- la oveja
- Horse- el caballo
- El Puerco/ el cerdo- pig
- Goat- la cabra
- Donkey- el burro
- Mouse- el raton

You may use these names of animals in the following sentences:

- Let's go milk the cows- *Vamos a ordeñar las vacas*
- I like to ride a horse- *Me gusta montar a caballo.*
- The sheep eat grass- *Las ovejas comen pasto.*
-

EL BOSQUE (THE FOREST)

There are lots of animals in the forest. Let's take a look at some of the common animals found in the forest and their names in Spanish.

- Deer- el ciervo
- Raccoon- el mapache
- Squirrel- la ardilla
- Owl- el buho
- Fox- El zorro
- Wolf- el lobo

- Bear- el oso
- El oso – Bear

You can mention them in sentences like these:

- The owl is in the tree- *El búho está en el árbol.*
- The squirrel eats nuts- *La ardilla come nueces. -*
- The bear sleeps- *El oso duerme*
- The owl is flying- *el búho está volando*
- The wolf is big- *el lobo es grande*

EL OCÉANO (THE OCEAN)

Love spending quality time in the sea? There may be instances that you may run into these sea animals:

- Crab- El cangrejo
- Jellyfish- La medusa/El aguaviva
- Dolphin- El delfín
- Whale- La ballena
- Shark- El tiburón
- Seal- La foca
- Sea lion- El lobo marino
- Walrus- La morsa
- Penguin- El pingüino

You can use these in the sentence like:

- There are lots of jellyfish- *Hay muchas medusas -*
- Look out, a shark! - *¡Cuidado, un tiburón! -*
- The sea lions eat fish- *Los lobos marinos comen pescado .*
- I want to see a sea lion in person- *quiero ver un lobo marino en persona*

EN EL ZOOLOGICO (AT THE ZOO)

Want to see some exotic animals. Well, most of them can be found at the zoo. Below are some of the common names of exotic animals in Spanish.

- Elephant- El elefante
- Rhinoceros- El rinoceronte
- Hippopotamus- El hipopótamo
- Lion- El león
- Tiger- El tigre
- Giraffe- La jirafa
- Zebra- La cebra

- Monkey- El mono
- Kangaroo- El canguro
- Crocodile- El cocodrilo

Let' us check some of the phrases regarding exotic animals in Spanish.

- Elephants have a good memory- *Los elefantes tienen buena memoria.*
- Elephants are the biggest animals in the world- *los elefantes son los animales más grandes del mundo*
- Lions are the kings of the jungle- *El león es el rey de la selva.* -
- Kangaroos live in Australia- *Los canguros viven en Australia.*
- The monkey has a baby- *el mono tiene un bebe*

INSECTOS E BICHOS (INSECTS AND BUGS)

They may not be the first think that comes to your mind when you talk about animals. However, for some, they may not even something they like to think of at all. Insects and bugs are almost everywhere. Therefore, it is very vital to become aware of their terms in Spanish. Let's check this out!

- Caterpillar- La oruga
- Butterfly- La mariposa
- Moth- la polilla
- Fly- La mosca
- Spider- la arana
- Cockroach- la curacha
- Snail- El caracol
- Worm- El gusano

Let us use this in the sentence:

- Butterflies are colorful- *Las mariposas son coloridas.*
- Spiders scare me- *Las arañas me dan miedo .*
- There is a snail on the plant- *Hay un caracol en la planta . -*

Making Use of the Personal A with Animals

Even if the personal A is usually utilized with a human being, it can also be utilized with animals like pets which the Spanish speaker has a strong attachment to. Keep in mind the difference in the sentences given below:

I saw a dog with just one eye- *Vi un perro con un solo ojo.* Here the Spanish speaker is referring to an otherwise unidentified dog.

The veterinarian euthanized my 9-year-old dog- *El veterinario sacrificó a mi perra de nueve años.* Here, the Spanish refer to a pet which he believes thinks of as a personality.

The above list covers many grounds, on the other hand. Still, there is a big part of the animal kingdom left that you have to explore.

CHAPTER 9: Learning Adjectives, Attributes & Clothing in Spanish

If you are going to choose, would you prefer watching a black and white show, or a high-quality standard, or a full-colored one?

I am sure that you are going to pick a full-colored movie since it is closer, more exciting, and more interesting in terms of a real-life situation.

If you are going to learn the Spanish language without the usage of an adjective, then you might consider it as you were watching a black and white movie version. Yes, we are all aware that you can get the idea of the movie even if it is on a black and white version, but we can't deny the fact that you can feel boringness.

During your childhood days, you are knowledgeable about telling your parents what you feel – either sad or happy or saying that someone is nice or a little bit mean. You usually see various things in black and white colors since you don't have the entire and colorful coloring materials.

The crayons in this article refer to the adjectives in Spanish. If you are knowledgeable about the basic Spanish terms, but you can't still describe a particular thing correctly, then you are at the right place. In this post, we will provide you with some of the adjectives in Spanish – that was translated into English, that you should know.

Noun-Adjective Agreements in Spanish

We are all aware in the saying that “in love, opposites attract.” Well, in Spanish, it was different, since every word must agree with each other. There will be no mix-matched and fighting pairs. It only means that you are required to use nouns in Spanish that will agree with the adjectives that you will use. If you prefer a feminine noun, then you should look for an adjective that is feminine as well.

All the adjectives that have *-o* in the end usually have 4 different endings – *-ne* for plural, singular, feminine, and masculine. Maintain the *-o* at the end of a masculine adjective, and switch it into the letter *-a* when used with feminine adjectives. If you want to make an adjective plural, add letter *-s* at every end of letters *-a* and *-o*.

Examples

The tall girl – “*La chica alta.*”

“Girl” is a feminine noun. Thus the adjective “tall” must be in the feminine form.

The red car – “*El coche rojo.*”

The noun “car” is considered masculine; thus, the adjective “red” must be in the masculine form.

This is also similar to plural adjectives and plural nouns. If you use a plural noun, then you are also required to change the used adjective into its plural form.

Examples

The red cars – “*Los coches rojos*”

The tall girls – “*Las chicas altas*”

This can also be used if your preferred adjective does not come up after the usage of the noun in the sentence.

Example

The man is tall – “*El hombre es alto.*”

Even though the placement of *es* – as a verb is in the middle of two, the *alto* – as an adjective is still being used to refer the *hombre* – as a noun, thus the noun and the adjective must agree with each other.

For your information, some of the adjectives are not in the masculine and feminine form. Some of these maintain their spellings and usage.

All the adjectives that have the ending of *-ista* or *-e* do not switch their versions into either feminine or masculine. If you are going to use this kind of Spanish adjective, then you are required not to change it.

Examples

My grandpa is idealistic – “*Mi abuelo es idealista.*”

My grandma is idealistic – “*Mi abuela es idealista.*”

The sad girl – “*La chica triste.*”

The sad day – “*El día triste.*”

Notice that all of the used adjectives above did not alter the spelling of its ending. On the other hand, you are still required to put letter –s at the end of the adjectives to turn it into its plural form.

Examples

The girls are sad – “*Las chicas están tristes.*”

My grandparents are idealistic – “*Mis abuelos son idealistas.*”

The similar rule is also being used in some adjectives that usually end with the consonant letters, but, with some exclusions.

Examples

The blue shirt – “*La camiseta azul.*”

The blue car – “*El coche azul.*”

If you prefer using the adjective on its plural form, then you are required to add –es on its end.

Example

The blue shirts – “*Las camisetas azules.*”

On the other hand, if the consonant –z is at the end of an adjective, then you are required to turn it into the letter –c before changing it into its plural form.

Examples

The girls are happy – “*Las chicas son felices.*”

The girl is happy – “*La chica es feliz.*”

Where is the Proper Placement of an Adjective in a Spanish Sentence?

This time that you are aware of making your basic adjective into a colorful one, the next thing that you should know is where to put them properly?

The only answer is very easy to follow – place your preferred adjective right after the position of your used noun. But in real-life, the placement is much more complicated.

Qualifying adjectives typically follow after the used noun.

These are the adjectives that are being used in describing the nationalities or even the physical characteristics of a person. These usually come from various verbs.

Examples

A black table – “*Una mesa negra.*”

An English man – “*Un hombre inglés.*”

Adjectives in Spanish that are Considered Identifiers are being placed before the Position of Noun

All the identifying Spanish adjectives include the so-called demonstrative adjectives, including that (*aquel*) and this (*este*.) The demonstrative adjectives are usually placed before the Spanish noun. This rule is also true in terms of possessive adjectives, which is usually used to refer someone who owns a particular thing, such as our or nuestro and my or mi in Spanish.

If you are going to use a limiting adjective, then you should also place it prior to the position of a noun. This kind of adjective is one of the adjectives that will limit the quantity of a noun.

Examples;

I have enough time – “*Tengo suficiente tiempo.*”

In this example, the adjective used was enough or suficiente in Spanish. Since it will limit the time or tiempo in Spanish, it is a must for you to place it before a noun. This rule is also used in terms of using numbers.

Spanish adjectives that will give you emotional impacts, or will release essential qualities must be written preceding the noun inside a sentence.

Examples;

The brave general – “*El valiente general.*”

In this example, placing the Spanish word valiente first emphasize the term brave and is usually defines as the emotional characteristic.

He or she is a good friend – “*Es un buen amigo.*”

In this example, a friend is good, which means he or she does good things to you and vice versa, instead of putting a “good” individual.

Spanish Adjectives That Alter the Meaning of a Sentence Based on its Placement

Yes, what you read is right. Some of the Spanish adjectives that you will encounter may change the meaning of your sentence because of its placement – whether you placed it after or before the placement of a noun.

Placing the Spanish adjective prior to the noun is usually completed for the addition of subjective feelings or emotional resonance, instead of using an objective fact.

Example;

The poor woman – “*La pobre mujer.*”

In this example, the speaker was touched because of the situation of the woman; it is considered as more than just a state of a human being compared to the financial fact.

The woman has little money – “*La mujer pobre.*”

On the other hand, this example is considered as an objective fact in a sentence.

I have a longtime friend – “*Tengo un viejo amigo.*”

I have an old friend – “*Tengo un amigo Viejo*” – the friend who was being pointed in this sentence has an old age.

Placing the Spanish term “Viejo” or old in English after the term amigo or friend shows that he has a longtime or old friend. On the other hand, putting it before the term amigo shows that the age of his friend was old.

The following are some of the Spanish adjectives that will change the meaning of a sentence varying upon their placement.

- Grande or gran – putting the Spanish adjective gran or grande after the noun means “big or large.” But, putting it before the noun means “excellent or great.”
- Nuevo – putting the Spanish adjective “Nuevo” after the noun means “new.” On the other hand, putting it prior to the placement of a noun means “different.”
- Varios – putting the Spanish term “varios” in front of a noun means “varied.” But, placing it before the placement of a Spanish noun means “several.”
- Único – placing the Spanish term “único” after the Spanish noun means “varied.” However, if you will place it before the placement of a Spanish noun, it will mean “only.”
- Cierto – If you will place the Spanish word “cierto” after a Spanish noun, it means “correct or right.” But, if you are going to place it before the usage of a Spanish noun, it will mean as “certain.”
- Alto – if you will put the Spanish word “alto” after the placement of a Spanish noun, it means “tall.” On the other hand, if you will place it before using a noun in a sentence, it means “top quality.”

We recommend you to use these Spanish adjectives in a sentence and determine what your sentence means when you place these after and before the usage of a Spanish noun.

How to Learn Spanish Attributes

Some of you see the world as a black and white movie. Well, we can't blame you with that. But, let us tell you something, our world is much more colorful and vibrant compared to what you think.

Even though malo and Bueno are considered as enough adjective-wise that can fix a sentence, separating our entire earth into bad and good would not only give boringness to those who are listening to you but, it will also limit your words.

But, if you are a type of person who gets worried about knowing and understanding the Spanish adjectives and attributes as a strain on your brain and very time-consuming, well we recommend you to throw away those thoughts from your mind.

For your information, some of the ordinary Spanish adjectives are closely similar to their counterparts in the English language. Because of that, it is not only the reason for learning with the common adjectives in Spanish and determining their meanings in the English language.

What is the Importance of Learning the Various Adjectives in Spanish?

Learning various languages is all about showing things on yourself, and it is similar in explaining your feelings and thoughts on some kinds of cases, people, places, films, and objects with the huge loads of languages. This is the real reason for you to at least understand and learn some of the Spanish adjectives that will define your physical attributes.

Adjectives – whether Spanish or English also add variety, interest, and color to our world, which helps you to express yourself and feel even better.

Where Should You Place a Spanish Adjective in a Sentence?

The proper order of the usage of Spanish adjectives is the number one problem of those who are just starting to learn Spanish adjectives and attributes. If you are one of them, keep in mind that dissimilar in the English language, the adjectives in Spanish are usually being placed after the usage of a noun. So, rather than saying “she possesses the beautiful pair of blue eyes,” why not say the equivalent sentence, which is “she possess the pair of eyes blue beautiful” or *tiene unos ojos azules preciosos* in Spanish.

You might say that it has a weird sound, but, when you already get the thought of the sentence, placing a noun right before the usage of an adjective will flow on you naturally.

On the other hand, do not forget that some of the Spanish adjectives can be either plural and singular or feminine and masculine. So, the Spanish term “lindo” can be written as *lindas* for feminine plural, *lindos* for masculine plural, *linda* for feminine singular, and *lindo* for masculine singular. But, keep in mind that a Spanish adjective that you are going to use must agree with the noun that it modifies.

It only means that if you will be talking with a person using a feminine, plural noun, such as words or *palabras*, you had to need to feminine and plural adjective.

For instance, “what a beautiful words!” in Spanish, “*¡Qué lindas palabras!*”

Common Adjectives in Spanish that will help you to Describe Things Around You

- Pretty – *Lindo*

Can you still recall those blue pair of beautiful eyes that she possesses? They are so pretty or *¡Qué lindos que son* in Spanish.

- Ugly – *Feo*

There is no doubt that there is no one in this world that will talk about the ugly pair of eyes, but we can't deny the fact that there is a lot of things in this world that are considered as *feo*. These *feo* things might include the performance, behavior, or appearance of something or someone.

- Happy – *Feliz*

Similar to the Pharrell Williams, can you recall the alteration between the usage of the Spanish term “Soy feliz “ or “I am a happy person” and “estoy feliz” or “I am temporarily happy? Pharrell will always be present.

- Sad – *Triste*

There is no individual in this world that feels happy on his or her entire life. We all experience sadness, and that is part of our lives.

“We all feel sad when Pharrell’s song is over” or “*Todos nos sentimos tristes cuando termina la canción de Pharrell*” in English.

- Tall – *Alto*

At this part, we are going to tackle some of the Spanish adjectives that you can use to describe a physical attribute of a person.

For instance, “some girls are tall, and some are not” or “*Algunas chicas son altas y otras no*” in Spanish. In this example, we had used the Spanish plural feminine adjective, which is “*altas*.”

- Short – *Bajo*

Everybody differs from each other. Thus, it is a must for you to understand and learn how to describe a wide array of various traits.

For example, “people who have short height are cute” or “*las personas que tienen estatura baja son lindas*” in Spanish.

- Big – *Grande*

Similar to the smile of Pharrell, it is big or grande. Keep in mind that adjectives that are usually ending with the letter “e” will always be the same for both feminine and masculine nouns.

For instance, “he has a very big tummy, and I think that is cute” or “*él tiene una grande barriga y creo que es lindo*” in Spanish.

- Small – *Pequeño*

For example, “there is also a small area in his house” or “*también hay una pequeña área en su casa*” in Spanish.

- Simple – *Simple*

This is the Spanish adjective that is very simple to read and pronounce. It is just that you need to take a look at your proper pronunciation to this adjective. Dissimilar to the English language, the Spanish terms, nouns, and adjectives, have their stresses at every start of the term. On the other hand, in English, you will pronounce this adjective as “sim-**PLE** or Sim**PULL**,” while in Spanish, you will pronounce it as SIM-ple or Seem-pley, wherein the stress is at the beginning of the first syllable.

The Spanish adjective “simple” also connotes the term “lacking” or “bland” in something, most notably when you will describe a food.

- Complicated – *Complicado*

Generally, it is not complicado for you to absorb and use these Spanish adjectives in a sentence.

- Fun – *Divertido*

For instance, “Learning Spanish language will give you so much fun” or “*aprender español te dará mucha divertido*” in the Spanish language.

Similar to other English terms, including “happy,” whether you will use Spanish terms, like *estar* or *ser* prior to the usage of this adjective, the placement of the adjective can impact the meaning of your composed sentence.

Juan is fun or *Juan es divertido* in Spanish.

The example mentioned above only means that the person, who is Juan, was described as a fun individual. Keep in mind that *ser* is being used in talking about the general cases, things, or properties that are considered as true.

On the other hand, the phrase “Juan esta divertido hoy” or *Juan is fun today* in English proposes that he is not fun every time except *today*. The usage of the Spanish term *estar* in this example emphasizes the impermanent nature of a person, who is Juan, for being a fun individual to be with.

- Boring – *Aburrido*

If you are a type of person who is thinking that learning Spanish adjectives is boring, then let me tell you that you are wrong.

For instance, “there is no boring item in this world” or *no hay artículo aburrido en este mundo* in Spanish.

Take note that the usage of *estar* and *ser* is being used in modifying the meanings of an adjective, but it can also give you various meanings: someone or something that can be bored or *está aburrido* or can be boring or *es aburrido*.

- Rich – *Rico*

This Spanish term is generally being used when you are talking with wealthy families or individuals.

For instance, “her family is rich” or *su familia es rica.*”

The Spanish term *rico* can also be used if you will describe a food. For example, “the food he served to us was delicious” or *la comida que nos sirvió estaba rico.*”

Take note that various usage of *estar* and *ser* can give you different meanings varying upon their placement. You have got the first example emphasizing the wealth of a family, and the second one is the temporary savor that was being perceived at a period.

- Poor – *Pobre*

Similar in the English language, you can also tackle about a person that is poor, which means he or she does not have any penny on his or her pocket.

For example, “the boy is very poor” or *la chica es muy pobre.* You can also use this Spanish adjective in an expression of sympathy or exclamation for a particular individual.

For instance, “poor boy!” or *pobre chico.*

In this example, it suggests that he won't have a good time anymore, even though he is considered as *rica* in terms of richness.

- Delicious – *delicioso*

Aside from using the Spanish adjective *rico*, you can also use *delicioso* as your adjective when describing the taste of a food or dish.

- Disgusting – *Repugnante*

The Spanish adjective *repugnante* is considered as a strong term that you can use in a sentence. For additional effect, you can also use your disgusted face when saying this term.

For example, “you have a disgusting scent” or *tienes un olor repugnante* in Spanish.

- Intelligent – *Inteligente*

You are not required to be an *inteligente* person to understand the basic Spanish terms and adjectives.

- Stupid – *Tonto*

Aside from the Spanish adjective *tonto*, you can also use the term *estúpido* in a sentence. But the latter is not usually being used in a sentence.

- New – *Nuevo*

This Spanish adjective is very self-explanatory.

- Old – *Viejo*

It is also common to use *los viejos* in referring your old parents, but we know that they might not love hearing that.

This Spanish adjective is not considered as being rude or offensive term, but, it will always vary upon the one who you are describing at.

- Open – *Abierto*

Similar to its English counterpart, open, you can use *abierto* in describing an individual. For example, “he or she is a very open person” or *Es una persona muy abierta* in Spanish.

You can also use it if you are going to describe an establishment or a shop. For example, “the company where I work was open for 12 hours” or *la empresa donde trabajo estuvo abierta durante 12 horas*.

Again, keep in mind the alteration of the usage of the verbs *estar* and *ser*.

- Closed – *Cerrado*

You can also take an establishment or a company as an example in this Spanish adjective. An establishment can close late depending on the area where it was located.

For example, “the company where I work was closed during 1 in the afternoon and opened at 8 in the morning” or “*La empresa donde trabajo estaba cerrada durante la 1 de la tarde y abre a las 8 de la mañana.*”

- Tired – *Cansado*

Some people are being confused between the word *casado* and *cansado*, wherein *casado* means married, and *cansado* means tired. For example, “she feels tired in their relationship, so she broke up with him” or *ella se siente cansada en su relación, así que rompió con él* in Spanish.

- Awake – *Despierto*

For example, “her baby was awake, thus she needs to give him some milk” or *su bebé estaba despierto, por lo que necesita darle un poco de leche* in Spanish.

- Hot – *Caluroso*

For example, “one of the reasons why babies are wake during nighttime because it was too hot” or *Una de las razones por las cuales los bebés están despiertos durante la noche porque hacía demasiado caluroso* in Spanish.

- Cold – *Frio*

You can use this Spanish adjective when you are referring to the lower temperatures that you see on a thermometer. For example, “Some people prefer cold weather, that is why they go to cold countries such as Antarctica” or *algunas personas prefieren el clima frío, por eso van a países fríos como la Antártida* in Spanish.

- Expensive – *Caro*

For example, do rich countries also manufacture and supply *caro* gadgets and other items?

- Barato – *Cheap*

For example, “one of the reasons behind the popularity of candies is that these are so *barato*

- Fast – *Rápido*

For instance, you will be able to learn the Spanish language *rápido* if you have a knowledgeable and effective mentor

- Slow – *Lento*

For instance, some people prefer riding in a *lento* vehicle for them to enjoy the beauty of the country they visited

- Crazy – *Loco*

For example, in these days, ladies fell in love with those men who have *loco* personality compared to those good-looking ones.

- Tranquil – *Tranquilo*

The Spanish adjective *tranquilo* can also be used as an order or suggestion, furthermore to its meaning as “tranquil” or “calm.”

For example, if you are going to tell someone who is working up with a sentence with the use of the Spanish adjective *tranquilo*, it only means that you are saying that they need to be relaxed. It is also a good way for you to tell this with a reassuring and calming voice.

- Strong – *Fuerte*

For instance, a man who usually goes to their gym area gets *fuerte* body and larger muscles compared to those who didn't.

- Weak – *Débil*

For example, she feels so *débil* when she sees a snake and a frog.

- Sick – *Enfermo*

There are times that you will feel a little *enfermo* when you try to push yourself performing heavy exercises. Thus, you need to take some rest.

- Healthy – *Sano*

I know that you are aware that the Spanish adjective “sano” can also be linked to the term “sane” in terms of emotional and mental health of a person. In some ways, this is considered as a positive or a compliment to a person.

- Sweet – *Dulce*

The Spanish adjective “dulce” is not all about savor, and it can also be used by some people in giving his or her compliment to a thing or a person.

For instance, you have a very sweet personality, and I think I like it or *Tienes una personalidad muy dulce y creo que me gusta* in Spanish.

If you are talking about the sticky and sweet bun beside the person you are communicating with, you can say “está dulce,” which is being used in describing the taste of the bun. Again, take note of the proper usage of *estar and ser* since its placement can change the meaning of your used adjective. It can turn to temporary savor of a meal from the permanent characteristic of a person.

- Savory – *Salado*

The Spanish adjective *salado* usually means “salty.” But, it is generally used in describing the taste of a dish. It is also being utilized in some colloquialisms in some parts of Latin America.

- Dirty – *Sucio*

For example, you are so dirty, get upstairs and clean yourself or *estás tan sucio, sube las escaleras y límpiate* in Spanish.

- Dry – *Seco*

For instance, I wish that tomorrow will be a dry day since my friends, and I have our seminars.

- Wet – *Mojado*

Mojado is the counterpart of *Seco*. It would be very helpful for you if you think that it will start to rain.

- Unfair – *Injusto*

Did your mother start ignoring you since your younger sibling was born? I know that its *injusto* but, take note that she still loves you.

- Fair - *Justo*

That feeling is not *justo* for you. You also need love and care from both of your parents.

- Empty – *Vasio*

That feeling of being *vasio* for your entire classes cause you didn't take your breakfast?

- Full – *Lleno*

When you write the things that you have been learned in your class, your notes will be *lleno*, and that will help you during your examinations.

- Thin – *Delgado*

People who have *Delgado* body are considered as slim, but some of those have baby fats which they cover with larger clothes.

- Good – *Bueno*

It would be *Bueno* for you if you will keep on reading this post until you memorized all the Spanish adjectives and attributes that you can use when talking in Spanish.

- Bad – *Malo*

Taking too many drugs and drinking a high amount of alcohol will give your body *malo* effects, most notably in your liver and kidneys.

CHAPTER 10: Different Clothing in Spanish

Accessories or Accesorios

- Hat or *Sombrero*

For example, the hat of the older man was on-trend or *el sombrero del Viejo estaba tan de moda* in Spanish.

- Sunglasses or *gafas de sol*

For example, she wears sunglasses, and it helps her to emphasize her pointed nose or *ella usa gafas de sol y le ayuda a enfatizar su nariz puntiaguda* in Spanish.

- Cap or *gorra*

For instance, he loves wearing a branded hat or *le encanta usar sombrero de marca* in Spanish.

Outwear or Desgastar

- Skirt or *Falda*

For example, some schools prefer skirts as their formal school uniform or *algunas escuelas prefieren faldas como su uniforme escolar formal* in Spanish.

- Polo shirt or *Camisa polo*

For instance, men who wear polo shirt are so attractive or *Los hombres que usan polo son muy atractivos* in Spanish.

- Culottes or *falda pantalón*

For example, culottes are one of the old styles of outfit that every woman wears from the ancient time until in this generation or *Culottes es uno de los viejos estilos de vestimenta que toda mujer usa desde la antigüedad hasta esta generación* in Spanish.

Sportswear or ropa deportiva

- Belt or *el cinturón*

For example, one of the must-have clothing in sports is a belt or *una de las prendas imprescindibles en el deporte es un cinturón* in Spanish.

- Cycling shorts or *las bermudas, el short, el culote, los pantalones cortos*

Cycling shorts are the must-have kit of many bikes in every corner of the world or *Los shorts de ciclismo son el kit imprescindible de muchas bicicletas en todos los rincones del mundo* in Spanish.

Swimwear or trajes de baño

- Bikini or *bikini*

For example, I see women in the beach who showcase their beautiful body in their great bikini or *veo mujeres en la playa que muestran su hermoso cuerpo en su gran bikini* in Spanish.

- Swimming Trunks or *Traje de baño*

For instance, lots of men in the pool wear swimming trunks which help them to emphasize their muscular body or *muchos hombres en la piscina usan bañador que les ayuda a enfatizar su cuerpo musculoso* in Spanish.

- Swimsuit or *traje de baño*

For example, i love wearing swimsuits because it makes me more beautiful or *me encanta usar trajes de baño porque me hace más bella* in Spanish.

Sleepwear or ropa de dormir

- Sweater or *la chompa, el jersey, el suéter*

For instance, I wear a sweater every time I go to sleep or *uso suéter cada vez que me voy a dormir* in Spanish.

- Sock or *el calcetín*

For example, even though socks are being used in wearin shoes, some people also use it while sleeping or *A pesar de que se usan calcetines en el uso de zapatos, algunas personas también lo usan mientras duermen* in Spanish.

- Pajamas or *la pijama*

For instance, pajamas and sweater are the perfect and most comfortable sleepwear for me or *el pijama y el suéter son la ropa de dormir perfecta y más cómoda para mí* in Spanish.

- Jacket or *la chaqueta*

For example, I love wearing jackets when I sleep and when I drive my motorcycle at summer or *Me encanta usar chaquetas cuando duermo y cuando conduzco mi motocicleta en verano* in Spanish.

Underwear or ropa interior

- Panty or *bragas*

For instance, panty is the underwear designed for women or *panty es la ropa interior diseñada para mujeres* in Spanish.

- Brief or *breve*

For example, on the other hand, brief is the underwear designed for men or *Por otro lado, breve es la ropa interior diseñada para hombres* in Spanish.

Formal wear or ropa formal

- Vest or *el chaleco*

For instance, a businessman who wears vest are respetuoso or *el empresario que usa chaleco es respetuoso* in Spanish.

- Dress or *vestir*

For example, women in the office usually wear dress as their formal attire or *las mujeres en la oficina usualmente visten como vestimenta formal* in Spanish.

- Coat or *capa*

For instance, both men and women inside the office are required to wear their coats or *tanto los hombres como las mujeres dentro de la oficina deben usar sus abrigos* in Spanish.

Skirts or las faldas

For instance, skirts emphasize the long legs of women in this world or *Las faldas enfatizan las largas piernas de las mujeres en este mundo* in Spanish.

Tips in Learning the Spanish Language

Do not Go Abroad Just to Learn Spanish

If you are thinking that going to South America or Spain will help you to learn Spanish fast and be fluent in the language, then stop those thoughts. We can say that living in a country with the reason that you want to learn their language, well it is not easy.

In the beginning, you might think that you will be able to speak Spanish throughout the day if you travel to a country with the Spanish language.

Well, most of the people living in these countries will not give you their entire time to assist you in learning Spanish skills and language.

On the other hand, if you will just stay at your home, you can set your schedule, which will not limit your time in studying the language.

Although packing your things and moving to Buenos Aires or Andalusia might be your romantic adventure with your loved one, you will not think about reading and learning the Spanish language when you are already there.

Consider Spanish as your Lifestyle

If you are learning and reading Spanish books for about three months regularly, you tend to consider it as your daily chore.

But, we can't deny the fact that some other times, you might be tempted to sit and just watch your favorite TV show. Thus, if you will consider studying the Spanish language as your regular chore rather than considering it as your past time activity, you will feel lesser stress, and you will notice a significant improvement in your vocabulary.

The question is, how can you consider Spanish in as your lifestyle?

That is very simple, the things that you should do are the following;

- Participate in various local language exchange activities and give yourself a chance to practice what you have learned with other people.

- You can consider participating in the drawing, salsa, or yoga classes that are being taught in Spanish.
- You can also attend Spanish events.

Read Spanish Books as Frequent as Possible

As a starter, we feel that you experience a problem in reading books with the Spanish language since you don't have sufficient Spanish vocabulary. On the other hand, if you think that you are ready to read Spanish books, then make sure that you will read it regularly.

By doing this, you can ensure that your vocabulary will improve and will learn the Spanish grammar naturally since you usually read it in the content of the book.

It would also be good for you if you will listen to the audio version of the content while you are reading it.

Do not be Obsessed over the Spanish Grammars

One of the hardest traps that every starter of Spanish learners experience is the wants in learning the grammars in Spanish perfectly and quickly.

In these days, while it is a must for you to know and understand the basic grammars in Spanish, you can make it perfect with the help of the *elementary knowledge of grammar* since the construction of a sentence in Spanish is usually like to the English language.

We recommend you not to overthink about your grammar when you are speaking in Spanish since grammar is not the basis with your excellent communication skills with others.

Consider Looking for a Professional Spanish Teacher

If your goal is to learn and understand the Spanish language quickly, then we recommend you to hire a Spanish teacher online.

Make sure that you will hire a trusted and reliable Spanish teacher for you to ensure that your money will be worthy.

Some online places will enable you to choose who a Spanish teacher you want to speak with.

We recommend you to take 20 minutes of studying or more and do it more frequent.

We also advised you to ask with your Spanish teacher to teach you with the Spanish language and request specific requirements from them.

In your every session, focus on conversational words rather than a plain studying session. In some words, you might ask your tutor to teach you new vocabulary, grammar, and topics from your textbook or course.

Consider Self Study

One of the most effective and efficient methods that you should consider if you want to learn Spanish is to self-studying. Aside from saving money, you have your own time on when to start and stop your session.

But to do this, you need to ensure that your textbook or course contains lots of dialogues that come up with the audio version for you to understand and know how to speak it in Spanish,

Create a Minimum to Maximum Spanish Vocabulary.

For your information, words are the base of the languages.

As you decided to learn and understand the Spanish language, it will always be a matter that you should consider, which is to learn and know some Spanish words. Now, the great way for you to understand and create a minimum to maximum Spanish vocabulary is to learn its basics.

CHAPTER 11: Sports

Learning the Spanish language, you must go all the way to the basic. You must first know the common words that are translated into the Spanish language. Let's start with easy words, how about learning the Spanish word equivalent of the different sports that are played by the people.

This can be useful as you may travel to countries that are using Spanish as their main language. Just by knowing the game that they are playing you may gain their respect or even have the chance to play with them.

Sports are used to pass the time, experience fun, and even as a mode of competitions. Various sports are played by people from all over the country, there are popular ones, and there are even sports that have not yet caught the interest of masses.

A great thing if you are an avid sports fan, learning the Spanish equivalent of the different sports is a good thing to know.

To guide you in learning the Spanish language, below are the different name of sports and their Spanish translations.

Some words are not of Spanish origin. Some words still take the English form of the word. But the accent is different because of the stress.

Common Sports Vocabulary in Spanish

Archery – El tiro con arco

Badminton – El bádminton

Backpacking – La caminata co mochila

Basketball – El Baloncesto
El basquetbol

Biking – El ciclismo

Baseball – El beisbol
El béisbol

Boating – El paseo en bote
El paseo en lancha

Billiards – El billar

Bullfight – La corrida de torros

Boxing – El boxeo

Bowling – El deporte de bochas
El Juego de bolos

Bodybuilding – La harterofilia

Bungee jumping – El saltar del amortiguador auxiliar

Bobsledding – El paseo en trineo

Croquet – El croquet

Camping – El acampar

Canoeing – El piragüismo

Cricket – El cricquet

Darts – El juego de flechillas

Fencing – La esgrima

Football – El futbol americano

Frisbee – El disco volante

Gymnastics – La gimnasia
La gimnástica

Golf – El golf

Handball – El balonmo

Hang gliding – La ala delta
El vuelo libre

Hunting – La caza

Hockey – El jockey

Hiking – La caminata

Horseback Riding – La equitación

Jogging – El correr

Kickboxing – El boxeo a patadas
Karate – El kárate
Kayaking - El piragüismo
Korfball – El korfboll
Lacrosse – El lacrosse
Petanque – La petanca
Paragliding – El parapente
 El vuelo libre
Ping-pong – El tenis de mesa
Polo – El polo
Paintball – El paintball
Repelling – El descenso de barrancos
 El descenso de cañones
Rodeo – El rodeo
Rock Climbing – El alpinismo
Rugby – El rugby
Running – El correr
Rowing – El remo
Sandboarding – El sandboarding
Sailing – El deporte de vela
Sepak Takraw – El fútvoleibol
Scuba Diving – El buceo
Sharpshooting – El tiro al blanco
Skating – El patinaje
Skydiving – El salto a paracaídas
 El paracaidismo
Soccer – El futbol
 El fútbol
Softball – El sofbol
Squash – El squash
Swimming – La natación
Surfing – El surfing
Snowboarding – El snowboarding
Tennis – El tenis

Track & Field – El atletismo
 Triathlon – El triatlón
 Volleyball – El voleibol
 Wakeboarding – El wakeboarding
 Water Polo – El polo acuático
 Waterskiing – El esquí acuático
 El esquí náutico
 White Water Rafting – El rafting en aguas bravas
 Wrestling – La lucha grecorromana
 La lucha libre
 Windsurfing – El windsurfing

Equipment & Physical Activity

caminar	walking	el patín de ruedas en línea	rollerblade
la caminata	walk	patinar (con patines de ruedas en línea)	rollerblade
las zapatillas de deporte	sneakers	el patín de ruedas	roller skate
la pista de patinaje	skating rink	la piscina, la alberca	pool
el monopatín	skateboard	el alpinismo	mountain climbing
patinar (con patines de ruedas)	skate, roller-skate	el chándal	jogging suit
el jogging, el footing	running	el jogging, el footing	jogging
correr	run	hacer footing, hacer jogging	jog
la equitación	horseback riding	el senderismo	hiking
el/la senderista	hiker	la gimnasia	gymnastics
el gimnasio	gym	la buena forma	fitness
el ejercicio	exercise	hacer ejercicio	exercise
la resistencia	endurance	la bici, la bicicleta	bike, bicycle
ir en bicicleta	bike	el aeróbic	aerobics

Team Sports (*Los deportes en equipo*)

el silbato	whistle	servir	serve
------------	---------	--------	-------

silbar	whistle	el fútbol	soccer
el árbitro, la árbitra	umpire	el indicador	scoreboard
el torneo	tournament	marcar un punto	score
empatado/a	tied	el rugby	rugby
empatar	tie	la raqueta	racket
lanzar, tirar	throw	el jugador, la jugadora	player
el equipo	team	la red	net
patear	kick	el jai alai, la pelota vasca	jai alai
el hockey sobre hielo	ice hockey	el hockey	hockey
el balonmano	handball	el portero, la portera; el/la guardameta	goalkeeper, goalie
el gol, la portería	goal	el guante	glove
el equipo	gear	la falta, el nulo	foul
el fútbol americano	football (American)	el campo; la cancha	field
el bate	bat	batear	bat
el básquetbol	basketball	el béisbol; el juego de pelota	baseball

Important People in Sports:

el ganador / la ganadora	winner	el jugador / la jugadora	player
el árbitro / la árbitra	umpire	el tirador / la tiradora, el lanzador / la lanzadora	pitcher
el entrenador / la entrenadora, el amaestrador / la amaestradora	trainer	el dueño / la dueña	owner
el compañero / la compañera de equipo	teammate	el/la oponente	opponent
el equipo	team	el/la gerente	manager
el árbitro / la árbitra	referee	el perdedor / la perdedora	loser

el lanzador / la lanzadora	quarterback	el portero / la portera	goalie
el entrenador / la entrenadora		el animador / la animadora	Cheerleader
el campeón / la campeona	champion	el/la receptor	catcher

More Useful Phrases to Take Note:

La tarjeta amarilla	Yellow card	El snowboarding	Snowboarding
La lucha libre, la lucha grecorromana	Wrestling	Soccer	El fútbol , el futbol
El windsurfing	Windsurfing	El vuelo libre, el parapente	Paragliding
El rafting en aguas bravas	Whitewater rafting	Los Juegos Olímpicos, Las Olimpiadas	Olympics
El snorkeling, el buzo superficial	Snorkeling	El alpinismo	Mountain climbing
El paracaidismo, el salto a paracaídas	Skydiving	El motociclismo	Motorcycle racing
El campo y pista, el atletismo	Track & field	El pentatlón	Modern pentathlon
El descenso de barrancos	Repelling	Los artes marciales	Martial arts
El salto de longitud	Long jump	El/la deportista	Sportsman
El salto con pértiga	Pole vault	El lanzamiento de jabalina	Javelin throw
El skateboarding	Skateboarding	El jai alai, el frontenis	Jai alai
El tiro al blanco	Sharpshooting	El hockey sobre hielo	Ice hockey

Conversations to Practice:

CHAPTER 12: Countries

Learning the Spanish language is a great thing to add in your repertoire. Using the language can be useful when you are traveling to countries that use the Spanish as their language. You will find approximately 20 countries that are using Spanish as their official language.

To name some of them: Puerto Rico, Ecuador, Argentina, Mexico, Nicaragua, and many more. Speaking of countries, to help you in learning the Spanish language, the countries all over the world will be translated in Spanish for your benefit.

There are approximately 195 countries in the entire world. 193 countries are members of the United Nations, while the other two are non-member states. The countries are the State of Palestine and the Holy See.

To help you learn them in an orderly fashion, the different countries have been arranged and situated in their respectful continents. Bonus, as you will also be learning the Spanish words of the seven different continents in the world.

Without further ado, here is the list of the different continents and countries that have been translated into Spanish:

Asia (Asia)

Considered most populated and largest continent in the world. Continent Asia is sharing its borders with Africa and Europe. Different countries in Asia contains vast places packed with mountains, rainforests, plateaus, deserts, and complemented with different freshwater and saltwater environments.

The continent makes up the 60% population of the whole world. Considering that this is the most populated continent in the world, it's not a bewildering fact anymore.

Without further ado here are the 48 countries that are located in the continent of Asia:

English

Afghanistan

Spanish

Afganistán

Armenia	Armenia
Azerbaijan	Azerbaiyán
Bahrain	Baréin
Bangladesh	Bangladés
Bhutan	Bután
Brunei	Brunéi
Cambodia	Camboya
China	China
Cyprus	Chipre
East Timor	Timor Oriental
Georgia	Georgia
India	India
Indonesia	Indonesia
Iran	Irán
Iraq	Irak
Israel	Israel
Japan	Japón
Jordan	Jordania
Kazakhstan	Kazajistán
Kuwait	Kuwait
Kyrgyzstan	Kirguistán
Laos	Laos
Lebanon	Líbano
Malaysia	Malasia
Maldives	Maldivas
Mongolia	Mongolia
Myanmar	Birmania
Nepal	Nepal

North Korea	Corea del Norte
Oman	Omán
Pakistan	Pakistán
Philippines	Filipinas
Qatar	Catar
Russia*	Rusia
Saudi Arabia	Arabia Saudita
Singapore	Singapur
South Korea	Corea del Sur
Sri Lanka	Sri Lanka
Syria	Siria
Tajikistan	Tayikistán
Thailand	Tailandia
Turkey	Turquía
Turkmenistan	Turkmenistán
United Arab Emirates	Emiratos Árabes Unidos
Uzbekistan	Uzbekistán
Vietnam	Vietnam
Yemen	Yemen

**Russia is geographically part of Asia*

Europe (*Europa*)

This continent is considered to be the 2nd among the smallest continent in the world, but it is one of the most populous continents. This continent is placed in the northern hemisphere. Countries in Europe experiences 4 seasons namely: Spring, summer, autumn, and winter.

Continent Europe is known to have different countries, approximately 45 countries in its domain with amazing landmarks that every people visit for their vacation.

Are you ready to discover the different countries in the European continent?
Well here they are, translated from English to Spanish, made just for you:

English	Spanish
Albania	Albania
Andorra	Andorra
Austria	Austria
Belarus	Bielorrusia
Belgium	Bélgica
Bosnia and Herzegovina	Bosnia-Herzegovina
Bulgaria	Bulgaria
Croatia	Croacia
Czech Republic	República Checa
Denmark	Dinamarca
Estonia	Estonia
Finland	Finlandia
France	Francia
Germany	Alemania
Greece	Grecia
Hungary	Hungría
Iceland	Islandia
Republic of Ireland	Irlanda
Italy	Italia
Latvia	Letonia
Liechtenstein	Liechtenstein
Lithuania	Lituania
Luxembourg	Luxemburgo
Macedonia	República de Macedonia

	Malta	Malta	
	Moldova	Moldavia	
	Monaco	Mónaco	
	Montenegro	Montenegro	
	Netherlands	Países Bajos	
	Norway	Noruega	
	Poland	Polonia	
	Portugal	Portugal	
	Romania	Rumania	
	Russia*	Rusia	
Marino	San		San
Marino			
	Serbia	Serbia	
	Slovakia	Eslovaquia	
	Slovenia	Eslovenia	
	Spain	España	
	Sweden	Suecia	
	Switzerland	Suiza	
	Ukraine	Ucrania	
	United Kingdom	Reino Unido	

**Politically Russia is part of Europe*

Africa (África)

Considered as the second-largest continent in the world and at the same time the second most populated. Also known because of its great and historical heritage that it brought to the world. It is believed that the root of civilization can be traced in Africa.

It is also known to have countries that have the hottest temperatures. Countries in Africa have desserts or savannahs. A huge percentage of wildlife thrives in the countries of Africa. Are you ready to know the countries in the African continent? Well, here they are in their English name with their equivalent name translated in Spanish:

English	Spanish
Algeria	Argelia
Angola	Angola
Benin	Benín
Botswana	Botsuana
Burkina Faso	Burkina Faso
Burundi	Burundi
Cameroon	Camerún
Cape Verde	Cabo Verde
Central African Republic	República Centroafricana
Chad	Chad
Comoros	Comoras
Côte d'Ivoire (Ivory Coast)	Costa de Marfil
Democratic Republic of the Congo Democrática del Congo	República
Djibouti	Yibuti
Egypt	Egipto
Equatorial Guinea	Guinea Ecuatorial
Eritrea	Eritrea
Ethiopia	Etiopía
Gabon	Gabón
The Gambia	Gambia
Ghana	Ghana
Guinea	Guinea

Guinea-Bissau		Guinea-Bisáu
Kenya	Kenia	
Lesotho		Lesoto
Liberia		Liberia
Libya	Libia	
Madagascar		Madagascar
Malawi		Malawi
Mali	Malí	
Mauritania		Mauritania
Mauritius		Mauricio
Morocco		Marruecos
Mozambique		Mozambique
Namibia		Namibia
Niger	Níger	
Nigeria		Nigeria
Rwanda		Ruanda
Republic of the Congo		República del Congo
São Tomé and Príncipe		Sao Tomé y Príncipe
Senegal		Senegal
Seychelles		Seychelles
Sierra Leone		Sierra Leona
Somalia		Somalia
South Africa		Sudáfrica
South Sudan		Sudán del Sur
Sudan	Sudán	
Swaziland		Suazilandia
Tanzania		Tanzania

Togo	Togo
Tunisia	Túnez
Uganda	Uganda
Zambia	Zambia
Zimbabwe	Zimbabue

North America (*Norteamérica*)

Same with the continent of Europe, North America is also located entirely in the northern hemisphere. Considered as the third-largest continent in the world and contains 23 countries in its domain.

North America is known for its rich and colorful background. Here are the different countries in their English name that is translated in Spanish:

English	Spanish
Antigua and Barbuda	Antigua y Barbuda
Bahamas	Bahamas
Barbados	Barbados
Belize	Belice
Canada	Canadá
Costa Rica	Costa Rica
Cuba	Cuba
Dominica	Dominica
Dominican Republic	República Dominicana
El Salvador	El Salvador
Grenada	Granada
Guatemala	Guatemala
Haiti	Haití
Honduras	Honduras
Jamaica	Jamaica

Mexico	México
Nicaragua	Nicaragua
Panama	Panamá
Saint Kitts and Nevis	San Cristóbal y Nieves
Saint Lucia	Santa Lucía
Saint Vincent and the Grenadines Granadinas	San Vicente y las
Trinidad and Tobago	Trinidad y Tobago
United States of America (USA)	Estados Unidos

South America (Sudamerica)

This is the continent located in the most in the southern part of the hemisphere. A subcontinent of America. The content is known to be filled by countries that speak Portuguese and Spanish.

The South American continents contains 13 countries each comprising of their own rich culture. To discover the different countries in Spanish, here are there English name and Spanish name:

English	Spanish
Argentina	Argentina
Bolivia	Bolivia
Brazil	Brasil
Chile	Chile
Colombia	Colombia
Ecuador	Ecuador
Guyana	Guyana
Paraguay	Paraguay
Peru	Perú
Suriname	Surinam
Uruguay	Uruguay

Venezuela

Venezuela

Australia and Oceania (*Australia y Oceanía*)

Considered to be the smallest continent amongst the seven because of its small land area. In this continent are the different islands in the Oceania region located in the southwest pacific. The well-known country in this continent is Australia. Greatly known for the great wonders that it brings such as exotic animals and wonderful landmarks.

There are approximately 14 countries in the continent, and here is their equivalent in the Spanish language:

English	Spanish
Australia	Australia
Fiji	Fiyi
Kiribati	Kiribati
Marshall Islands	Islas Marshall
Micronesia	Micronesia
Nauru	Nauru
New Zealand	Nueva Zelanda
Palau	Palaos
Papua New Guinea	Papúa Nueva Guinea
Samoa	Samoa
Solomon Islands	Islas Salomón
Tonga	Tonga
Tuvalu	Tuvalu
Vanuatu	Vanuatu

These are the known countries in the world that are translated into Spanish. As you can observe with the words some countries still retain the English name. Some countries may retain the same English name although

translated into the Spanish language, the variations will be manifested in the stress.

As it was stated, some countries are using the Spanish language as their official language. To give you an idea, there are approximately 20 countries in the world.

To help you furthermore in your journey in learning the Spanish language. A simple assessment has been prepared. Don't worry as this is an easy exam for you, it will help you measure your level in speaking the language.

Translate the English name of the countries into Spanish.

Practice these Conversations:

¿Qué idioma hablas en tu país?	What language do you speak in your country?
Mi compañero de cuarto quiere viajar a—	My roommate wants to go to—
Mi mayor amigo es chino.	My best friend is Chinese.
Es un país bonito	It's a nice country
¿Cómo es tu país?	How's your country?
Tú eres español	You are Spanish
¿De dónde eres?	Where are you from?
Soy de Francia	I'm from France

Take note that it is optional and not obligatory to employ the articles **las**, **los**, **la**, and **el** before most nations in Spanish unless the specific name has such an article like **El Salvador**.

Talking about your family as well as your country is vital in Spanish conversations. Take note that Spanish are naturally curious individuals and they like to know more about you and where you from. The majority of people nowadays are also well-traveled surprisingly. Therefore, they will be enthusiastic about telling you about your travels in foreign lands.

CHAPTER 13: Places in Town

Getting around a new place and asking directions might be a complicated process. One best way to begin is by learning the names of typical places in town in Spanish, as well as the way to offer basic directions in Spanish as well.

In this chapter, we will present you the vocabulary for places in Spanish through a list about activities and locations people do within the places they visit. Are you now ready? Let's get started!

Places around Town

playa	beach	hotel	hotel
banco	bank	casa	house
bar	bar	supermercado	supermarket
farmacia	pharmacy	mercado	market
hospital	hospital	centro histórico	historic center
librería	bookstore	parqueo	parking
aeropuerto	airport	parque	park
parque central	central park	galería de arte	art gallery
apartamento	apartment	centro commercial	shopping mall
tiendas	shops		

General Phrases to Practice:

Disculpe, ¿dónde está la farmacia?

Excuse me, where is the pharmacy?

Cuando llegues a la rotonda, toma la tercera salida.

Take the third exit at the roundabout.

Sigue durante diez minutos

Carry on for ten minutes

Tu mochila es muy pesada.

Your backpack is too heavy

Cuida tus cosas

Watch your things

¿Qué tan largo es el viaje?

How long is the trip?

¿Dónde está el bar de Jack's?

Where is Jack's bar?

¿Sabes algún atajo?	Do you know any shortcut?
¿Qué tan lejos de aquí está eso?	How far from here is it?
¿Cuál es el nombre de la calle?	What's the name of the street?
¿Tienes GPS en tu celular?	Do you have GPS on your phone?
¿Cuál es el horario del tren?	What's the train schedule?
¿Dónde está la parada del autobús?	Where is the bus stop?
Disculpe, ¿dónde está el museo?	Excuse me, where is the museum?
¿Tengo que bajarme aquí?	Do I have to get off here?
¿Dónde es la próxima parada?	Where is the next stop?
¿Es este el autobús para Chicago?	Is this the bus to Chicago?
¿Tendré que cambiar de autobuse?	Will I have to change buses?
¿Hacia dónde se dirige?	Where are you heading?
Perdí el tren	I missed the train
¿Está retrasado el autobús?	Is the bus delayed?
¿Puedo comprar un mapa aquí?	Can I buy a map here?
¿Me podría mostrar el itinerario, por favor?	Could you show me the route please?
Iré por un paseo	I will go for a stroll
Aquí al lado	Here behind
Tome la siguiente carretera	Take the second road.
Tome la próxima izquierda	Take the next left.
Está a diez minutos.	It's ten minutes away.
Está al final de la calle.	It's at the end of the road.
Está del otro lado de la calle.	It's on the other side of the street.
Cruce la calle	Cross the street

Dé la vuelta	Turn around
Me iré a pie	I'll go on foot
Doble la esquina	Turn the corner
Gire a la izquierda	Turn left
Siga recto	Go straight on
¿Hay algún bus que pase cerca?	Is there any bus that goes nearby?
¿Cómo llego a___?	How do I get to___?
¿Hay un restaurant cerca de aquí?	Is there a restaurant near here?
Estoy buscando el parque central	I am looking for the central park
¿Me podría enseñar en el mapa?	Could you show me on a map?
Estoy perdido	I am lost
¿Está lejos?	Is it far?
Excuse me, where is the north tower?	Disculpe, ¿dónde está la torre norte?

Asking Directions (*Preguntando por direcciones*)

detrás	behind	norte	north
rotonda, glorieta	roundabout	cruce	crossboards
enfrente	opposite	semáforo	traffic light
sube	go up	salida	exit
cerca	near	carril	lane

oeste	west	autopista	highway
este	east	atajo	shortcut
sur	south	acera	pavement
callejón	alley	bulevar, alameda	boulevard
avenida	avenue	calle	street/road
plano	street map	mapa	road map
izquierda	left	derecha	right

Talking Where to Meet

¿Dónde quedamos?	Where shall we meet?
¿Quedamos...?	Shall we meet . . . ?
delante del cine	in front of the movie theater
donde siempre	at the usual place
¿Te viene bien...?	Is . . . OK by you?
pasar por mi	coming by my place
casa	(meeting) downtown
(quedar) por el	
centro	
¿Paso por tu casa?	Shall I come by your place?
¿Te recojo en tu casa?	Shall I pick you up at your place?
Nos vemos...	See you...
allí	there
n casa de Coco	at Coco's place

Transportations (*El transporte*)

bus	el autobús, el bus, el camión, el colectivo, la guagua
long-distance (inter-city) bus	el autocar

Always bear in mind that through the Hispanic world, you will find various nouns that are utilized to translate the word “bus.” You can utilize **el colectivo** in the majority of South America, **guangua** in the Caribbean and **el camion** in Mexico.

tomar, coger	take (a train, bus
la estación del metro	subway station
el metro	subway
parar	stop
montar en bicicleta	ride a bike
la motocicleta, la moto	motorcycle
la caravana	mobile home, RV
el casco	helmet
bajar, bajarse	get off
subir	get on
el ferry, el transbordador	ferry boat
el autocar	coach
la parada de autobuses	bus stop
la estación de autobuses	bus depot
el vehículo	vehicle
la camioneta	van
el camión	truck
el transporte público	public transportation
los medios de transporte	means of transportation
el transporte	transportation
tomar el autobús, coger el autobús	take the bus

At the Beach (*En la playa*)

Do you want to speak Spanish on the beach? This section will offer you with the proper vocabulary you need. If you have been following this guide, make sure you practice the pronunciations properly.

Beach vocabulary to remember:

marea alta	high tide	quemado	sun burn
marea baja	low tide	bronceado	tan
sandalias	sandals -	helado	ice cream
nadar	swim	sombra	shadow
traje de baño	bathing suit	bikini	bikini
bronceador	bronzer	ahogar	drown
salvavidas	lifeguard	castillo	castle
sombrilla	umbrella	toalla	towel
ola	wave -	gafas de sol	sun glasses
bloqueador solar	sunblock	playa	beach

Phrases to Practice:

Me gusta tu traje de baño, está de moda.	I like your bathing suit, it's very chic
¿Es seguro nadar en el mar?	Is it safe to swim in the sea?
Comamos un helado.	Let's eat ice cream.
Hoy me quiero broncear.	I want to get a tan today.
Mi hijo quiere construir un castillo de arena.	My son wants to build a sand castle.
!La arena está caliente. ¡Ten cuidado por favor!	The sand is hot. Be careful please
¿Dónde está el salvavidas?	Where is the lifeguard?
¿Te podrías poner debajo de la sombra, por favor?	Could you get in the shade, please?
Me podrías poner un poco de bloqueador?	Could you put some sunblock on me?
A mí me gusta leer en la playa.	I like to read at the beach.
¿Trajiste un libro para leer?	Did you bring a book to read?

¿Dónde deberíamos tomar el sol?	Where should we sunbathe?
Amo la playa porque me da paz.	I love the beach because it's peaceful.
Quiero comer un helado. Está muy caluroso aquí.	I want to eat ice cream. It's too hot here.
¿Sabes si el sol está muy fuerte a esta hora?	Is the sun is very strong right now?
¿A qué hora baja la marea?	When will the tide go out?
¿Tienes mis gafas de sol?	Do you have my sunglasses?
Pon una toalla en la arena antes de que te sientes.	Put a towel on the sand before you sit.
No te vayas tan lejos porque te podrías ahogar	Don't go too far; you could drown.
¿Sabes si la marea está alta?	Do you know if the tide is high?
¿Cuánto tiempo nos quedaremos en la playa?	How long will we stay at the beach?
¿Trajiste las cervezas?	Did you bring the beer?

Always take note that if you could speak Spanish on the beach, you are less likely to be a target to thieves. What's more, it is also a wonderful chance to listen to Spanish folks who are talking without looking too obvious, and that will help your pronunciation skills massively.

Post Office (*Oficina Postal*)

If you wish to send some letters when you're in a country where Spain is the major language, understanding what to say will make sure a much simpler time with the staff. Bear in mind that the majority of postal staff won't understand English. Therefore, you need to speak their mother language to them.

The Post Office or the **Oficina de Correo Postal, Correos** is the same to stores and shops in that the workers aren't averse to talking to other customers or on the phone while they are serving you. What's more, even a

business call will involve inquiries after family members before they get to the center of the matter. Therefore, make sure you have your patience with you, as there are long waiting around.

bolígrafo,	pen	tarjeta postal	postcard
lapicero			
correo	correo	cartero	letter carrier
remitente	return address	dirección	adress
buzón	mailbox	sobre	envelope
estampilla	stamp		

Phrases to Practice:

Me podría prestar un bolígrafo, por favor?	Could you lend me a pen, please?
¿Venden tarjetas de agradecimiento?	Do you sell thank-you cards?
¿Qué tipos de tarjetas tienen?	What kind of cards do you have?
Disculpe, ¿tiene tarjetas?	Excuse me, do you have cards?
¿Me podría ayudar a llenar este formulario?	Could you help me fill out this form?
¿Dónde puedo comprar sobres?	Where can I buy envelopes?
¿Cuánto me costaría?	How much would it be?
Déjeme chequear la dirección.	Let me check the address.
¿Podría mandar esta caja?	Could I send this box?
¿Cómo puedo enviar esto más rápido?	How can I send this faster?
No sé el código postal de este país.	I don't know the zip code of this city
¿Cuánto se tardaría en llegar a España?	How long would it take to get to Spain?
¿Dónde está el buzón?	Where is the mailbox?
Me gustaría registrar esta carta	I would like to register this letter

¿Podría pesar ésta carta?	Could you weigh this letter for me?
¿Puedo enviar un giro postal desde aquí?	Can I send a money order from here?
Quiero enviarlo por correo aéreo, por favor.	I want to send it via air-mail, please.
Quiero algunas estampillas para esta carta.	I want some stamps for this letter.
¿A qué horas abren?	At what time does it open?
¿Hay correspondencia para mí?	Is there any mail for me?
¿Hay alguna oficina postal cerca de aquí?	Is there a post office nearby?

Movie Theater (*Cine*)

Are you going out for a movie? Then understanding what various words mean and how to pronounce them will surely be a good place for you. Furthermore, watching a movie in Spanish will guide you with your own pronunciation. You could try watching a movie you are familiar with in English, which is dubbed in the Spanish language to help you enhance your vocabulary. If you are having fun while you are learning, then it will sink into your mind much better:

barra de chocolate	chocolate bar	refresco	soft drink
poporopos, palomitas de maíz,	popcorn	día de descuento	discount day
sesión matinal	matinée	entrada numerada	allocated seating
acomodador	usher	butaca	seat
taquilla	ticket office	drama	drama
director	director	guionista	scriptwriter
animación	animation	sala	room
película de	drama film	ciencia ficción	science fiction

drama			
película de acción	action film	comedia	comedy
género película	genre film	estreno	premiere

Phrases to Practice

Deberíamos venir al cine más seguido.

¿Cuándo es la próxima función?

Este es un bonito cine.

Me gusta el cine independiente

Me gustó la película.

La película estuvo triste.

¿Alguna vez has conocido a un actor?

Será el cinco de septiembre.

¿Cuándo sera el estreno de la película?

Preferiría ver una película romántica

Estuvo aburrida.

¿Cómo estuvo la película?

¿A qué hora comienza?

¿Está subtítulada?

¿En qué cine será la película?

Quiero dos boletos, por favor.

¿Puedo adquirir una guía de

We should go to the movies more often.

When is the next showing?

This is a nice movie theatre.

I like independent movies.

I liked the movie.

The movie was so sad.

Have you ever met an actor?

It will be on September 5th

When is the premiere of the movie?

I would prefer to see a romantic movie.

It was boring.

How was the movie?

At what time does it start?

Is it subtitled?

What movie theater will the film be in?

I want two tickets, please

Can I get an entertainment guide?

entretenimiento?

Quiero comprar unos poporopos
(unas palomitas de maíz).

¿Dónde está la sala de la película?

Me gusto la actuación de los
actores.

¿De qué se trata?

Es una película de terror.

¿Qué clase de película es esa?

¿Cuánto tiempo dura?

¿A qué hora comienza la película?

¿Qué hay en el cine hoy?

¡Vamos al cine!

I want to buy some popcorn

Where is the movie room?

I liked the actors' performance.

What's it about?

It's a horror movie.

What kind of film is it?

How long does it last?

At what time does the film start?

What's on at the movies today?

Let's go to the movies!

At the Hotel (*En el Hotel*)

If you are one of those travelers who need to spend a night in a hotel where individuals speak in Spanish, this part will help you massively. For beginners, below are some Spanish vocabularies you can utilize for typical items, which you will see inside a hotel. You will also find some phrases you must try out.

piscina	pool	pensión	boarding house
media pensión	half board	pensión completa	full board
cama	double bed	cena	dinner
matrimonial			
almuerzo	lunch	desayuno	breakfast
recibo	receipt	cuenta	bill
bañera	bathtub	aire	air-conditioner
		acondicionado	
balcón	balcony	huésped	guest
botones	bellhop	el portero	porter

ducha	shower	servicio de cuarto	room service
el/la gerente	manager	entrada	lobby
televisión	television	almohada	pillow
cobija	blanket	llave	key
ascensor	elevator	cuarto doble	double room
toalla	toalla	cama	bed
champú	shampoo	jabón	soap
papel de baño	toilet paper	baño	bathroom

Phrases to Practice:

Disculpe, tienen hielo?

Excuse me, do you have ice?

¿Dónde está el control remote?

Where is the remote control?

¿Tienen servicio a la habitación?

Do you have room service?

¿Tienen sala de estar?

Do you have a living room?

No puedo conciliar el sueño

I can't fall asleep

¿Cuánto tiempo se van a quedar?

How long are you staying?

Esta almohada es incómoda.

This pillow is uncomfortable.

Bonita vista.

Nice view

¿Me podría levantar a las siete en punto de la mañana?

Could you wake me up at 7:00 am?

La piscine estará abierta hasta las nueve de la noche.

The pool will be open until 9:00 pm.

¿Tienen gimnasio?

Do you have gym?

¿Hay alguna piscina?

Is there a pool?

Por favor limpiar la habitación.

Please make up the room.

No molestar.

Do not disturb.

La habitación de al lado es muy ruidosa.

The room behind me is too noisy.

No hay agua caliente.

There isn't any hot water.

La llave no funciona.

The key doesn't work.

He perdido la llave de mi habitación.

I have lost my room key.

Aún no se ha limpiado mi habitación.

My room has not been made up.

¿Me podría dar una toalla, por favor?

Could I have a towel, please?

¿Me podría dar una cobija extra?

Could I have an extra blanket?

¿A qué hora necesito entregar la habitación?

What time do I need to check out?

Estaré de regreso alrededor de las diez en punto.

I'll be back around ten o'clock.

Después de media noche, necesitaré tocar el timbre.

After midnight you need to ring the bell.

¿Podría por favor llamar a un taxi?

Could you please call me a taxi?

Una de las luces no está funcionando

One of the lights isn't working.

La televisión no funciona.

The television doesn't work.

El número de mi habitación es—

My room number is—

My room number is—

Are meals included?

¿Cuánto cuesta por semana?

What's the weekly rate?

No me gusta esta habitación.

I don't like this room

¿Nos traería más papel de baño?

Could you bring us more toilet paper?

¿Dónde está nuestra habitación?

Where is our room?

No hay agua caliente.

There isn't any hot water

¿Podría ver el cuarto?

May I see the room?

Me gustaría un cuarto sencillo.

I would like a single room.

¿Cuál es el precio por noche?
¿Puede recomendarme un hotel barato?

What's the price per night?
Can you suggest a cheap hotel?

Shops and Store

This section must help you make your shopping experience much simpler in a Spanish speaking country. Shopping in Spain is absolutely fun – and it is even much fun if you could ask what you like in the Spanish language.

On a cultural note, do not be in too much of a hurry to get what you like. Take note that Spanish folks love to have a chat with one another, either on the phone or in person. It is nothing personal though. It is not because you are a traveler or a foreigner – it's simply the way it is.

The term **tienda** means “store.” However, in Spain, stores are sometimes getting the suffix **eria** along with the service they provide to make up their name. For instance, a hairdresser is **peluquería**, a baker is a **panadería**, and a bookstore is **librería**. Those derive from the nouns **peluquero/a**, **pan** and **libro** that means hairdresser, bread, and book. Take note that store names take the feminine gender at all times.

Vocabulary to Remember

combinar	match	zapatos	shoes
apretado	tight	falda	skirt
sandalias	sandals	cinturón	belt
bolso	handbag	vestido	dress
pantalónetas	shorts	devolver	return
pantalones	jeans	cambiar	change
ropa interior	underwear	roto	broken
medias	stockings	defectuoso	defective
quiosco	newsstand	cesta/canasta	basket
recibo	receipt	mejor calidad	better quality
entrada	entrance	salida	exit

zapatería shoe store

tarjeta de crédito credit card

cerrado closed

barato cheap

pagar pay

comprar buy

joyería, joyeros jewelers

cerrado por almuerzo closed for lunch

caro expensive

abierto open

comprar buy

plaza de mercado marketplace

Phrases to Practice:

¿Dónde está la sección de ropa interior?

Disculpe, ¿tiene otra talla?

Déjeme traerle uno más corto.

El vestido es muy largo. No lo usaré.

La falda es muy corta.

Los colores no coinciden.

¿Tiene cambio para veinte dólares?

¿Dónde está el departamento de ropa de hombres?

Tome el elevador

Pregúntele a la vendedora/vendedor

Por favor, ¿puede envolverlo?

¿Cuánto cobran por esto?

No me gusta nada de esto.

Esto no me queda. ¿Me podría traer uno más grande?

Regresaré más tarde.

Where is the underwear section?

Excuse me, do you have another size?

Let me get you a shorter one.

The dress is too long. I won't wear it.

The skirt is too short.

The colors don't match.

Do you have change for a twenty?

Where is the men's department?

Take the elevator

Ask the saleswomen/man

Please, can you wrap it up?

How much do you charge for this?

I don't care for any of this.

This doesn't fit. Can I get a bigger one?

I'll come back later.

Esto está en oferta

This is on sale

¿Esto tiene descuento?

Does this have a discount?

¿Dónde está la caja registradora?

Where is the cash register?

Son muy bonitos/bonitas.

They are very pretty.

¿Dónde puedo comprar—?

Where can I buy—?

Disculpe, esto está roto.

Excuse me, this is broken.

¿Podría mostrarme ese vestido?

Could you show me that dress?

Solo estoy mirando, gracias.

I'm just looking, thank you.

¿Tiene otra talla?

Do you have another size?

¿Puede atenderme?

Can you help me?

Voy a pagar con efectivo.

I'm going to pay cash.

¿Dónde están los probadores?

Where are the changing rooms?

No me gusta este color.

I don't like this color.

¿Puedo probármelo?

Can I try it on?

¿Tiene algo más barato?

Do you have anything cheaper?

Es demasiado caro.

It's too expensive.

¿Cuánto cuesta esto?

How much is this?

Take note that every time you are asking questions, it is the inflection in your voice, instead of your vocabulary, which presents the questions. In case you are planning to go shopping at the market, you are anticipated to haggle, unless you are purchasing a produce, wherein you pay the going rate. Always bear in mind that going shopping is a great way to practice your Spanish speaking skills and learn a new vocabulary. Therefore, make the most of this wonderful learning opportunity every time you can. Have a good time exploring the town!

Conclusion

To sum it up, Spanish is a great language that is worth learning. Aside from the Spanish grammars, make sure that you will also learn and understand its vocabulary. Again, ensure that you will place the *ser and estar* in your constructed Spanish sentence properly since the improper placement of nouns and adjectives can change the entire meaning of the sentence.

It is also a must for every one of us to learn at least two different languages aside from our local language. It will help us to communicate well with other people we usually encounter every day who have different cultures and languages used.

Also, keep in mind that learning and understanding the Spanish language has not a short-cut. You need to went through with various processes before you perfect the usage of Spanish adjectives when creating a sentence. I hope that after reading this article, you have learned something about Spanish.

SPANISH CONVERSATIONS

Learn Spanish for Beginners in Your Car Like Crazy.

Language Learning Lessons for travel and Everyday.

How to Speak Spanish with Vocabulary, Common
Phrases and Grammar.

VOL 2

Table of Contents

[Introduction](#)

[CHAPTER 1: Importance & Benefits of Learning Spanish](#)

[CHAPTER 2: Essential Vocabulary](#)

[CHAPTER 3: Vocabulary in Hotel](#)

[CHAPTER 4: Vocabulary in a Taxi](#)

[CHAPTER 5: Vocabulary in Eating Out](#)

[CHAPTER 6: Asking for Directions](#)

[CHAPTER 7: Traveling by Bus & Train](#)

[CHAPTER 8: Introducing & Talking about Yourself](#)

[CHAPTER 9: Useful Phrases When Shopping](#)

[CHAPTER 10: Vocabulary for Conversing with a Pharmacist or Doctor](#)

[CHAPTER 11: Learn to Deal with Business Situations and Discuss the Weather](#)

[CHAPTER 12: Practice & Revision of Your Spanish Vocabulary](#)

[Conclusion](#)

© Copyright 2019 by Language Learning School - All rights reserved.

The following Book is reproduced below with the goal of providing information that is as accurate and reliable as possible. Regardless, purchasing this Book can be seen as consent to the fact that both the publisher and the author of this book are in no way experts on the topics discussed within and that any recommendations or suggestions that are made herein are for entertainment purposes only. Professionals should be consulted as needed prior to undertaking any of the action endorsed herein.

This declaration is deemed fair and valid by both the American Bar Association and the Committee of Publishers Association and is legally binding throughout the United States.

Furthermore, the transmission, duplication, or reproduction of any of the following work including specific information will be considered an illegal act irrespective of if it is done electronically or in print. This extends to creating a secondary or tertiary copy of the work or a recorded copy and is only allowed with the express written consent from the Publisher. All additional right reserved.

The information in the following pages is broadly considered a truthful and accurate account of facts and as such, any inattention, use, or misuse of the information in question by the reader will render any resulting actions solely under their purview. There are no scenarios in which the publisher or the original author of this work can be in any fashion deemed liable for any hardship or damages that may befall them after undertaking information described herein.

Additionally, the information in the following pages is intended only for informational purposes and should thus be thought of as universal. As befitting its nature, it is presented without assurance regarding its prolonged validity or interim quality. Trademarks that are mentioned are done without written consent and can in no way be considered an endorsement from the trademark holder.

Introduction

With modern transport and communications systems bringing the whole world closer than ever before, language remains as the main way to build understanding and interact with other people and culture and is also the principal means of learning from each other.

As the British colonized various countries all over the world during the peak of their empire, the Spanish also did the same, specifically during the 13th and 17th centuries. This is why it is not a surprise that the Spanish language became firmly planted in every territory.

To this day, Spanish is among the world's most widely spoken and leading languages.

Spanish is one of the official languages of the European Union primarily spoken in Spain. It is also one of the six official languages of the United States and is predominant all over Latin America, with Brazil being the only exception. However, Mercosur, where Brazil belongs, uses Spanish as the official language.

More than 51 million people in the US speak Spanish these days, 6 million of which are Spanish language students and 45 million are Hispanics. As a result, the United States serves as the host to the biggest community in the world that speaks Spanish outside of Mexico. More people in the United States speak Spanish compared to those who speak Italian, French, and Chinese combined. About 1 out of every 7 people who live in the United States speaks Spanish, and predictions reveal that by the year 2050, around 100 million people in the US alone will be Spanish-speaking.

On a global scale, Spanish is spoken by more than 420 million, with some estimates revealing that about 500 million people probably speak Spanish. This language is often spoken in over 20 countries, landing on the second spot as the most spoken native language next to Mandarin Chinese.

More and more people whose first language is English are now starting to see and realize the importance of learning a second language or even a third one. Most bilingual and monolingual Americans, specifically those that belong to the baby boomer age, are now earnestly learning second and third languages. Spanish tops the wishlist as the second language of most monolingual Americans.

If you happen to be one of those people who also want to learn Spanish, this book will serve as your guide as you take steps into mastering one of the world's leading languages.

CHAPTER 1: Importance & Benefits of Learning Spanish

At different times, different languages enjoyed varying levels of esteem and importance.

Around 2,000 years ago, Greek and Latin, with their roots remained present to this day underneath contemporary English etymology, were their period's "lingua franca."

English rose to become the lingua franca of the present times, partly because of historical factors like the expansion of the British Empire in the 15th and 16th centuries and the influence of the American culture in the present day.

The enormous dynamism and flexibility of English are also one of the top reasons why it has become successful as a language. The combination of Germanic and Romantic or Latin languages is passed down to English, giving it the most flexible etymology that makes it ideal for the present age. English currently has more words compared to other languages.

Importance of Learning a Second Language

Most research on the acquisition of language is difficult and complicated to explain in just several lines. But, there are lots of benefits associated with it.

Experts say that there are four primary reasons for learning a second language:

- Bilingualism is health – Being able to speak a second language reduces the risks of suffering from dementia. Bilingualism

doesn't only make your brain smarter as it also makes you healthier, actively engaged, and complex.

- You can get a better understand of the perspective of different cultures – If you wish to understand a certain culture, the best thing you can do is understand and delve deeper into its traits. The best channel for this purpose is none other than the language of that culture.
- It is fun to learn a language – Sharing languages with others, finding similarities among languages, working in or traveling to another country, and watching foreign shows are just among the many things you can do if you get to learn a new language.
- There are thousands of available resources to help you learn – Thanks to the presence of the internet, there are now tons of resources that can guide you in learning a language. There are video tutorials on YouTube and thousands of visual and audio resources at your disposal.

If these reasons are not enough, being bilingual also gives you access to a better job. You can also communicate in a better way and have richer experiences every time you travel abroad. Bilingualism will also make you a more open-minded person like never before.

The Influence of Spanish Language

How did Spanish grammar come to existence? There is one famous story told during the reign of the Spanish Empire as it expands to the west to what is now known as Latin America.

According to this story, a Bishop talked to Queen Isabella of Spain then offered her a “book of Spanish Grammar Rules.” The Spanish intellectual elite had been working on it for some time.

The puzzled Queen asked the Bishop of what use the book is to her. The Bishop replied to Her Majesty that language is the empire's perfect instrument.

Upon the royal adoption of the document, Spanish became the first “modern” language with set grammar rule for its usage than other languages

just followed suit.

Why Learn Spanish?

A lot of people don't know and realize how important Spanish is. It is because, for the longest time, Spanish has been regarded as a language of extremely little importance as this is spoken mainly in developing regions. In reality, the population that speaks Spanish is constantly growing in quantity. Its cultural, social, and economic importance is also increasing like never before, particularly in the US.

This doesn't mean that the importance of language is now lost and instead, Spanish is just starting to be more widely spoken all over the world. Simply put, if you know both Spanish and English, this will give you access to the entire American continent's cultural, social, and political panorama. There are actually a lot of great reasons to change the way you view the Spanish language and start learning it today. These include the following:

- ***Spanish is a global language.***

It is estimated that there are over 567 million people in the world who speak Spanish.

- ***Spanish is among the official languages .***

Spanish is among the United Nations' official languages and is also among the official languages of most of the largest organizations of the world.

- ***There is a growing number of Spanish speakers in the US.***

Some studies revealed that there are around 37 million Spanish speakers in the US, with experts predicting that it will soon become the world's second-largest country with Spanish speakers next to Mexico.

- ***Spanish and English are essentially quite similar.***

You probably don't know it, but English and Spanish are in fact quite similar. Many words actually look like Spanish. These are known as cognates. Some of the good examples include actor, cafe, auto, area, and admirable.

- ***Spanish is a common official language.***

It is estimated that 21 countries have Spanish as their official languages such as Mexico, Spain, Colombia, Venezuela, Peru, Argentina, Guatemala, Chile, Cuba, Ecuador, Dominican Republic, Bolivia, Paraguay, Honduras, Costa Rica, Nicaragua, El Salvador, Uruguay, Puerto Rico, Panama, and Equatorial Guinea.

- ***Spanish students are growing in numbers.***

There are about 21 million Spanish students around the globe, with the United States ranking first in the number of Spanish Speakers with Brazil and France closely following.

- ***Learning Spanish will let you read and discover great writers.***

The world has been blessed with great writers who use the Spanish language in their works. They are Miguel de Cervantes, Luis de Góngora, Francisco de Quevedo, Tirso de Molina, Lope de Vega, Benito Pérez Galdós, and Miguel Hernández, just to name a few. More writers are from Latin America such as Octavio Paz, Gabriel Garcia Marquez, Jorge Luis Borges, and others.

- ***Hispanic Americans have strong purchasing power.***

Hispanic Americans have an ever-increasing purchasing power, especially in countries like Mexico, Spain, Chile, Colombia, Spain, and Argentina. The contribution to the Gross National Product or GDP is 9.2%.

- ***Latin American countries are enjoying a growth in tourism.***

The 2016 report of the World Tourism Organization mentioned that 2 of 10 most visited countries speak Spanish, namely Mexico and Spain.

- ***Spanish speakers are exceptional athletes.***

European and American professional sports leagues boast of Spanish-speaking stars including Messi, Paul Gasol, Big Papi, Alex Rodriguez, Alexis Sanchez, Cavani, James Rodriguez, Sergio Perez, and Canelo Alvarez.

- ***Latin America serves as the home to investors from around the world.***

Latin America sees the development of large startups – WishBird, CityWallet, Pig-gi, and Clip. Big companies such as Fortune 500 startups continue investing in this region.

- ***Some of the best musical genres are from Latin America.***

Salsa, Cumbia, Mariachi, Tango, Reggaeton, Mambo, and Merengue are some of the best musical genres that actually come from Latin America. Many popular singers who speak Spanish are also famous all over the world like Shakira, Ricky Martin, Enrique Iglesias, and Carlos Santana.

- ***Spanish accents are easy.***

Even though there are lots of Spanish-speaking countries with different dialects and accents, all of them share similar rules that make it easy to learn their differences.

- ***Spanish films are known for their good quality.***

More and more Spanish-speaking movies are now garnering awards around the globe.

- ***The internet can help you learn Spanish.***

It is revealed that Spanish is actually the internet's third most spoken language and is also the second most spoken language on Wikipedia, Facebook, and Twitter.

- ***There will be more Spanish-speaking people every time.***

It is predicted that by the year 2030, about 7.5% of the population of the world is going to speak Spanish and in around 20 years, this will reach about 7.8% of the global population.

Other Reasons for Learning Spanish

- ***Better understanding and access to culture***

As the number of Spanish speakers in the US and the whole world continues to grow, the ability to communicate in Spanish gives you access to the people and culture in ways that are impossible through a third party translation.

Gaining an improved understanding of other people will always lead to better relationships, with language acting as a tool that will facilitate this better understanding of other people. This can also help you hone and expand your English usage since knowing two or several languages can develop your overall ability to properly articulate your ideas, emotions, and thoughts with others.

- ***Personal development***

One of the best ways to invest in yourself is to learn a second or even a third language. Investing your energy in a talent is a great way to grow your capabilities and skills. This will also allow you to communicate better with more people.

A lot of people who don't use English as their native language and want to grow professionally and personally often go great expense and lengths to learn it. If English is your native language, an investment in learning the native language of someone else is a sign of reverence and the people who have that language as their native tongue will appreciate your efforts when you meet and talk with them or travel to their country.

- ***Better and more exciting travel experiences***

You will have more fun and enjoyable travels in Spanish-speaking countries if you can speak their language. While you can always embark on your Mexican getaway with no need to utter even one Spanish word, the ability to talk to your Mexican hosts, articulate your ideas and observations in Spanish, and share stories will bring your travel experience to a whole new level.

- ***More prospects for employment***

You will have wider employment opportunities while showcasing yourself as a more valuable employee when you can speak different languages,

particularly Spanish if you are seeking employment or employed in the US, the Caribbean, and South or Central America.

Several US companies are now instant that some senior post-holders and managers or those who aspire for promotion should be able to communicate properly in Spanish. This is more so in markets that cater to the needs of Hispanic customers as the growing or core function of the business.

- ***Better business and higher productivity***

If you have plans to retire to Mexico, or you work and live in Mexico, or are visiting Mexico on a business trip, the ability to communicate in and understand Spanish is vital if you want to have the best experiences and make the most out of your plans.

The ability to communicate in the language will also let you deliver higher productivity. You can get more things done. You can also earn the admiration of those whom you count on to help you, and you can avoid the need to have a third party to translate everything for you, a process that is something more expensive and time-consuming.

Also, communicating in Spanish can help you establish better trade relationships and links between your business and your Spanish-speaking clients, contractors, suppliers, and others who play an important role in the success of your business. This improved communication will lead to better business deals while you enjoy an edge in negotiations as you speak the local language.

- ***Learning a phonetic language is easier***

Admit it, learning then the English language can be difficult. Spanish, on the other hand, is a phonetic language. It means that you get to say whatever you see written. Just remember that “h” stays silent and vowels are pronounced just the same no matter where they appear. It makes it easy to get acquainted with the Spanish language.

Advanced grammar may take some time to master, but basic grammar is rather easy. All in all, it is much easier for native English speakers to learn Spanish than the other way around.

CHAPTER 2: Essential Vocabulary

Parrots can learn Spanish, so there is no reason for you not to!

Since you are reading this book to build up your vocabulary, now might be the best time to start asking yourself how many Spanish words you know. How many of these can you recall right away? Which words can you casually use in conversations even on a whim?

Most people are familiar with Spanish basics, but when the time comes that they actually have to use them, they are often left speechless. This is because new learners of Spanish usually make the mistake of focusing more on the grammar without paying much attention to vocabulary.

It is all good and that to know the proper grammar in Spanish, but it would be useless if your word bank isn't large enough for you to use it with. Good thing that your brain has a bigger capacity to learn words than that of a parrot's brain.

There are several strategies you could follow to increase your Spanish vocabulary. Before you learn some essential vocabulary, take note of these best-kept secrets to learn it in no time!

- ***Embrace the things you already know.***

Probably the number one step for learning something efficiently is to realize and embrace what you already know and build on it.

As you are already familiar with those words, learning their meaning is the easy way for expanding your vocabulary right away. What are Spanish words you might already know?

You might not realize that it but you are actually using and exposed to much Spanish in your day to day life. It is everywhere around you. Think of those slogans, foods, restaurants, and other Spanish you have become familiar with. Just around the corner, there might be a restaurant named *El Pollo Loco* that means “the crazy chicken” in English.

You might also have family, friends, and coworkers whose last names are of Spanish origin. You can try to see what their meanings are. For instance, Castillo is a Spanish word for “castle.” The last name Guerra, on the other hand, means “war” in English.

If you are living in the US, the names of the states are the best place to start because you are already familiar with them. For all you know, the name of your home state is of Spanish origin, and you can use for learning. For instance, the state of Nevada is translated to “snow-covered” while Colorado is “colored red” or “colored.”

As it turned out, there are lots of Spanish in your day to day life than what you have noticed.

After that, you can check the number of loan words you are familiar with. Loan words are words passed from a certain language to another with notably slight changes if there are any. *Mosquito*, *iguana*, and *llama* are just among the many loan words used in English but were in fact loaned from Spanish.

A *cafeteria* that means “coffee store” and *pronto* that means “quickly” are some other words you might be using every day. It will be a breeze for you to recall loan words the moment you identified them.

There are also cognates or words in different languages that sound and look very similar.

In Spanish, many English words that end in *-ble* and *-al* will not be different at all and many English words that end in *-tion* will just be changed into *-ción* in Spanish.

Examples:

-ble

horrible – *horrible*

terrible – *terrible*

-al

national – *nacional*

natural – *natural*

-tion

manifestation – *manifestación*

habitation – *habitación*

Although it makes things so much easier, watch out for false cognates to save yourself from potentially awkward situations. False cognates are those

words that may look the same from one language to another but happen to mean something completely different.

Examples:

asistir – to attend

molestar – to annoy

If you think that Spanish can naturally work for you, you can try adding more words to your life.

Otherwise, you can also visit Spanish restaurants where they use the language more often. Their menu will surely include things such as *carne asada* (roasted meat), *queso* (cheese), or *salsa* (sauce).

You can also look around your home. List of ingredients, advertisements, and instructions are often included on labels of many things, including foods and shampoo bottles. There are also several appliances with Spanish instructions that you can skim through.

It means that even if you might not be a big fan of reading instructions and following the rules, it may not be a bad idea to go through them for once.

- ***Prepare and use flashcards.***

Many people suggest using flashcards when trying to learn a new language. But, you probably read flashcards on the strategies and tips for learning a language only to discard it.

Flashcards may sound like too much work, too old-fashioned, and so high school. However, they are really an efficient and easy way of learning a new vocabulary.

You can prepare them the old-fashioned way with a Spanish dictionary, index cards, and your hands. But, if you feel like pencil and paper stuff are so ancestral, there are many modern tools available that can help you out.

There are apps, online programs, and software specially designed to make sure that you get the best out of the time you spent preparing and studying flashcards.

The most challenging part, though it isn't that challenging really, is trying to come up with those words you need to learn. To get the best results, think first of those English words you often use and list them down.

After that, add in several words you find relevant to your life, such as the things you discuss and see regularly. Many people believe that you will never know a certain language until you could actually think about it. Learning those words, you use most of the time can help you think in Spanish faster. For instance, you can try focusing on those things you frequently encounter at home, on your commute, while doing errands, at work, and while shopping.

Once you are done with the list, then put these words into the flashcard decks, and keep them separated by theme. It is recommended that you learn words related to one another instead of a medley of random words.

You can choose kitchenware as your topic for the first week. You will learn the right way of saying things you can find in the kitchen like *platos* (plates), *un horno* (an oven), and *cucharas* (spoons.) You can even throw in a few verbs you do in your kitchen like *cocinar* (to cook). Once you've got everything down, you can choose a different topic and continue from there.

- ***Apply the new Spanish words you learned.***

After you spent some time getting together all the words you know, the next step is to put them into action. Knowing the individual words you learned through studying can easily get lost in your brain.

You can try to learn then use several words in context. You can start to hear and read words in sentences, then form them yourself as soon as you can as this can guide you to become more fluent faster. But, there is a catch here. How can you predict which videos and texts are going to use your selected vocabulary?

You can try to choose videos and texts that are related to your vocabulary study's thematic area, but even this calls for a struck of luck.

Good thing that there are now online websites that put together the best and most authentic resources of the Spanish language on the web all in one place. These sites take real world videos such as commercials, inspiring talks, news, and commercials then turn these into Spanish-learning experiences. Some use a natural approach to help you ease both into the Spanish culture and language over time. You can learn Spanish as actual people speak it.

- ***Set your own Spanish vocabulary goals.***

Now that you have started to work with great Spanish vocabulary strategies, how will you keep things going? How can you stick with learning the Spanish vocabulary for the long term?

Just like anything else, not having a definite goal or plan will make it more difficult for you to stay committed and motivated. If you are serious in building and expanding your vocabulary bank, consider your schedule and list down a practical number of words that you can learn every week.

As you are the one who sets your goals, you will know that you are capable of doing it. It is time for you to be your personal professor. See to it that you give yourself enough time to study and give yourself a test at the end of the week.

Since you are your own professor, by all means, be a fun-loving one. Every time you do well, reward yourself with a trip to the nearest *restaurante* for a jug of sangria and a plate of nachos.

- ***Watch videos that use your vocabulary.***

There are times when it is not enough to read and repeat the words. It is also equally important to understand them during a conversation with native speakers of the language.

When you speak the language, you will eventually interact with lots of different people with different speaking speeds and styles. This is something that can take practice and time to make yourself completely familiar. You can use videos to start understanding natives. The added bonus here is that as you hone your listening skills, it will also be easier for you to remember them if you hear Spanish vocabulary words in full action.

To get started, watch your favorite film and put on its Spanish subtitles. Within hours, you will get to see thousands of Spanish words. If ever someone questions you why you have been watching it again and again, just tell that you are studying.

After this, you can then watch movies completely dubbed in Spanish, or you can also watch videos created for and by native speakers. The sky is the limit when it comes to studying.

- ***Read as many short stories as possible.***

Reading Spanish short stories is one of the best ways for beginners to learn Spanish vocabulary in context. Stories are easy to stay focused on and follow. Another good news is that there are lots of places where you can find these short stories, especially if you check online.

A great place to start is children's stories containing low-level vocabulary. You can then proceed moving up to higher levels at your own pace and leisure.

- ***Find a study buddy.***

Studying is merrier if you have someone to do it with, right? Many people love the thought of being able to speak a second language. However, there are lots of just give up even before they became fluent. A great way for you to stay on track is by looking for someone also interested in learning Spanish just like you. Quizzing each other, sharing knowledge, and performing activities can help the two of you to stay committed, motivated, and engaged in learning.

Since Spanish is a famous language all over the world that most people wish to learn, it wouldn't be that hard for you to find your study buddy. You will likely find or meet someone by asking your colleagues or friends.

It is also not a bad idea to get a penpal. Finding a native speaker you can communicate with is extremely helpful when it comes to learning a language.

Now that you already know these tips on how to learn Spanish vocabulary, it is now time for you to create a plan. With the use of these tips, Spanish words will soon pour out of your mouth naturally in no time at all.

Basic Spanish Vocabulary Phrases to Get Started

Do you have plans to travel to a Spanish-speaking country? There is a chance that you will meet a few locals who understand and speak English. However, you can make your travel experience better if you can start conversations with them in Spanish.

Being familiar with some of the most common Spanish phrases and words will let you be on the firm ground even though you might just be getting

started in your journey of learning the language.

If you make mistakes, there is no need to worry because Spanish people are known for being amiable. They will try to understand what you are trying to say, and they will highly appreciate the fact that you are making an effort to converse in their language.

Below are some of the basic phrases in Spanish to let you get started with your learning experience.

Starting a Conversation

You cannot just expect to have a small talk if you don't know any Spanish greetings. *Hola* that means “hello” or “hi” is among the most popular Spanish words. There are also Spanish expressions you can use, including the following:

- Buenas dias – Good morning
- Buenas tardes – Good afternoon
- Buenas noches – Good night or Good evening

You can keep the conversation flowing by asking, “how are you.” Below are a few basic questions in Spanish that come after greeting:

- ¿Cómo estás? — How are you? (informal)
- ¿Cómo está usted? — How are you? (formal)
- ¿Qué tal? — How are you? (informal) or What's up?
- ¿Qué haces? — What are you doing?
- ¿Cómo te va? — How's it going?
- ¿Qué pasa? — What's happening?

If you were asked any of the above questions, the following are conversational phrases in Spanish you can use:

- *Muy bien* — Very well
- *Bien, gracias* — Good, thank you

- *Como* siempre — As always
- *Así, así* — So, so

There is a fundamental follow-up question you shouldn't forget:

- *¿Y tú?* — And you?

If you think that it is time for you to switch to the English language, you can try to clarify if the person you are conversing with speaks English or not. “*¿Habla inglés?*” means “*Do you speak English?*” .

Basic Spanish Vocabulary to Show Politeness

It doesn't matter what your native language is because simple words that express politeness can go a very long way. The following Spanish phrases can come in handy during conversations to avoid offending anyone.

- *¡Gracias!* — Thank you!
- *¡Muchas gracias!* — Thank you very much!
- *Por favor* — Please (usually used at the end of a sentence)
- *¡De nada!* — You're welcome! Or No problem!
- *¡Perdon!* — Excuse me!
- *¡Lo siento!* — Sorry! (to apologize for a mistake)
- *¡Disculpe!* — Excuse me! (to apologize ahead of time for being a bit of a bother)

Spanish Question Words and How You Can Use Them in Small Talks

If you like to make your conversations more effective, you need to know how you should question in the first place. Below is a list of these Spanish question words that you should memorize as soon as you can:

- *¿Quién...?* — Who?
- *¿Qué...?* — What?

- ¿*Dónde...*? — Where?
- ¿*Cuándo...*? — When?
- ¿*Por qué...*? — Why?
- ¿*Cuál?* — Which?
- ¿*Cómo...*? — How?

If you can notice, the Spanish question words always come with an opening and accent and a closing question mark.

Imagine that you already arrived at your destination. What should you do if you ever need to ask for help all of a sudden? Or what if you wish to purchase something at the souvenir shop? During these situations, it is a must that you know some basic Spanish sentences or questions and answers to ensure that you can keep the conversation going and deal with problems if they arise.

Below are some examples of basic Spanish questions you should learn:

- ¿*De dónde viene?* — Where are you from?
- ¿*Qué hora tienes?* — What time is it?
- ¿*Dónde vives?* — Where do you live?
- ¿*Podría ayudarme?* — Can I help you?
- ¿*Puede ayudarme?* — Can you help me?
- ¿*Qué hora tienes?* — What time is it?
- ¿*Cuánto cuesta eso?* — How much does it cost?
- ¡*Puede repetirlo!* — Can you say that again?
- ¿*Entiende?* — Do you understand?
- ¿*Puedes hablar más despacio?* — Can you speak slowly?
- ¿*Qué significa [word]?* — What does [word] mean?
- ¿*Dónde está [hotel's name] hotel?* — Where is [hotel's name] hotel?

- *¿Dónde* puedo encontrar *un taxi*? — Where can I find a taxi?

Obviously, you should also know the answer to such questions:

- *Sí* — Yes
- *No* — No
- *Siempre* — Always
- *Tal vez* — Maybe
- *Nunca* — Never
- *¡Sin problema!* — *No problem!*
- *Claro* — Of course
- *Mi español es malo* — My Spanish is bad
- *No entiendo* — I don't understand!
- *No tengo ni idea* — I have no idea!
- *No (lo) sé* — I don't know!
- *No hablo español* — I don't speak Spanish
- *Estoy perdido* — I'm lost

Common Verbs in Spanish: Need, Want, Have

With a list of Spanish verbs, you can create a firm foundation to create sentences in various circumstances. Basic Spanish for travels is rooted in three simple words: *to want (querer)*, *to have (tener)*, *to need (necesitar)* .

If you need to ask if someone got something you need, you can say “*¿Tienes...?*” and follow it with a necessary noun. If you are at a hotel, you can ask the hotel receptionist:

- *¿Tienes las amenidades de baño?* — Do you have bathroom amenities?

You can also say *necesito* in case you need something. If you are at a railway station and you need to buy your ticket, say:

- *Necesito un boleto a Barcelona* — I need a ticket to Barcelona

You can say “*quiero* ” any time you want something. For instance:

- *Yo quiero un café* — I want a cup of coffee

With the use of these uncomplicated constructions, anyone will understand you easily, and you can find a way to get out of any situation. You just need to add the appropriate noun to the required verb and make sure you don’t forget the correct conjugation.

Helpful Spanish Phrases for Special Occasions

There are many Spanish expressions used for special occasions. Such phrases are ideal for events such as birthdays, dinner with friends, or party.

- *¡Feliz Cumpleaños!* — Happy Birthday!
- *¡Felicitaciones!* — Congratulations!
- *Salud!* — Cheers!
- *¡Buen provecho !* — Bon appetit!
- *¡Diviértete!* — Have fun!
- *¡Bienvenidos! / ¡Bienvenidas!* — Welcome!

Spanish Phrases for Saying Goodbye

Saying goodbye is always hard, especially when you are clueless about how you should do it the right way. Below are some common Spanish phrases for ending a conversation.

- *Chao* — Goodbye
- *Adiós* — Goodbye
- *Hasta luego* — See you later (most likely today)
- *Nos vemos* — See you (informal)
- *Hasta mañana* — See you tomorrow
- *¡Hasta luego !* — See you soon!

- *¡Cúidate mucho!* — Take care!
- *¡Tenga un buen día!* — Have a nice day!
- *¡Buen viaje!* — Have a good trip!

Basic Spanish Words and Phrases Used in Conversations

- **¿Cómo estás?**

¿Cómo estás? means *how are you?* in English. You will most probably hear this asked as part of the greeting, like right after hola or buenos días

Friend: Hola, ¿cómo estás? (*Hi, how are you?*)

You: Bien, gracias, ¿y tú? (*Good, thanks, and you?*)

¿Cómo estás? is the second-person informal singular form you can use to ask someone how they are. When used in formal contexts, the phrase would become ¿Cómo está? If we want to ask how a group of people are, we will use ¿Cómo están? which is the second person plural form of the phrase.

- **Buenos días**

Buenos días means *good morning* in English, and this is the most common way to greet someone during morning hours. In the majority of Spanish-speaking countries, you might only hear buenos, as shortened and more colloquial form of the phrase.

Friend: ¡Buenos días! ¿Quieres venir conmigo a la playa hoy? (*Good morning! Do you want to come to the beach with me today?*)

You: ¡Buenos! Sí, pero primero tengo que hacer mi tarea. (*Morning! Yes, but I have to do my homework first.*)

- **Buenas tardes**

Buenas tardes means either *good evening or good afternoon*, depending on the specific time of day you are using it. Just like buenos días, the greeting is usually heard as buenas in an informal context.

Ice Cream Man: ¡Buenas tardes! ¿Puedo ayudarles con algo? (*Good afternoon! Can I help you with something?*)

You: Sí, queremos dos helados de chocolate por favor. (*Yes, we would like two chocolate ice creams, please.*)

- **Buenas noches**

Buenas noches means *good night* that is used more as farewell instead of a greeting. You can use the phrase at night as a polite way of wishing someone farewell.

Friend: Hoy fue muy divertido. Debemos ir a la playa y comer helado más a menudo. (*Today was really fun. We should go to the beach and eat ice cream more often.*)

You: Sí, de acuerdo. Pero ahora tengo que regresar a casa. ¡Buenas noches! (*Yes, I agree. But now I have to return home. Good night!*)

- **Hasta pronto**

Hasta pronto is also a farewell that means *see you soon*. This is often used in casual settings.

Friend: Me voy a Miami. ¡Hasta pronto! (*I'm going to Miami. See you soon!*)

You: ¡Chao! (*Bye!*)

- **Hasta luego**

Just like hasta pronto, hasta luego means *see you later*. This is another common way of bidding farewell. What makes it a bit different is that hasta luego is most often used in situations where you are unsure when you will next see each other.

Shopkeeper: Gracias por tu visita. ¡Regresa pronto! (*Thanks for your visit. Come back soon!*)

You: ¡Por supuesto! ¡Hasta luego! (*Of course! See you later!*)

- **Gracias**

Gracias means *thanks* or *thank you* in English. This is used across various formal contexts by almost anyone you meet and in all Spanish-speaking countries. You are free to use this anytime you get a chance

Friend: Gracias por toda tu ayuda. No hubiera podido escalar esa montaña sin ti. (*Thanks for all your help. I couldn't have climbed that mountain without you.*)

You: ¡De nada! Debemos ir más a menudo. (*You're welcome! We should go more often*)

- **Me llamo**

Me llamo should be used together with your name when introducing yourself.

The phrase literally translates to *I call myself* , yet its more natural translation in English is *my name is* .

María: Hola, soy María. ¿Vienes aquí a menudo? No te he visto antes. (*Hi, I'm Maria. Do you come here often? I haven't seen you before.*)

Raúl: Hola, me llamo Raúl. La verdad es que es mi primera vez aquí en este café. (*Hi, my name is Raúl. The truth is that it's my first time here in this cafe.*)

- **Perdón**

Perdón is the polite way to say *pardon me or excuse me* . You can use the phrases in instances wherein you didn't hear the other person, and you have to request them to say it again politely. This is also used after you accidentally stepped on someone's foot or when you just like to grab the attention of someone to ask a question politely.

Stranger: Perdón, ¿hay una estación de tren por aquí? (*Excuse me, is there a train station around here?*)

You: Sí, hay una al lado del supermercado en la próxima esquina. (*Yes, there's one by the supermarket on the next corner.*)

Aside from perdón, disculpe is another word you can use as the polite way to say *pardon me or excuse me* . Disculpe comes from disculpar, a verb that means *to excuse or to forgive* .

- **De nada**

If you say gracias more often, the more likely that you will also hear de nada. This means *you're welcome* in English. One common

variation of *de nada* you might hear is *no hay de qué*, and these means *don't mention it, or you're welcome*.

Friend: Gracias por venir conmigo al supermercado. (*Thanks for coming with me to the supermarket.*)

You: De nada. (*You're welcome.*)

- **Por supuesto**

In English, *por supuesto* means, *of course*. This is a common way of excitedly responding to someone's request positively. You can use the phrase *claro que sí* that just means the same to add more spice to the conversation.

Classmate: Disculpe, ¿podría prestarme un lápiz? (*Excuse me, would you lend me a pencil?*)

You: ¡Por supuesto! (*Of course!*)

- ¿Cuánto cuesta?

¿Cuánto cuesta? is a helpful question, and this means “*how much is this?*”

You can use this in the marketplace or store to ask for the price of something. You can also ask, ¿Cuánto vale? or just ¿Cuánto es? are some common variations of ¿Cuánto cuesta?.

You: Me encanta esta camisa. ¿Cuánto cuesta? (*I love this shirt. How much does it cost?*)

Shopkeeper: \$20, pero le dejo dos por \$30. (*\$20, but I'll sell you two for \$30.*)

Take note, however, that if you want to ask for the price of more than one thing, you also need to use the phrase's plural form and this is ¿Cuánto cuestan? or *how much do these cost?*.

- **Feliz cumpleaños**

Make sure you check the date if your Spanish-speaking friend starts to say *feliz cumpleaños* to you because for all you know, it is already your birthday and you didn't even notice it. *Feliz cumpleaños* means *happy birthday*. This is used to wish someone a happy birthday regardless of

gender, region, or status, gender. You will be the cumpleañera (birthday girl) or cumpleañero (*birthday boy*) for the day.

Friend: ¡Feliz cumpleaños! ¿Cuántos años cumplishoy? (*Happy birthday! How old are you turning today?*)

You: Cumpló 29, ¡por la quinta vez! (*I turn 29 for the fifth time!*)

A quick trivia: cumpleaños or *birthday* is the Spanish portmanteau of Spanish words cumplir which means *to complete*, and años which means *years*.

- **No sé**

No sé is a phrase that can come in handy if you don't know, or you can't come up with an answer for someone's question. It means *I don't know*. After you admitted that you don't know something, you can just ask ¿sabes tú? to your friend. It means *do you know?* to see if they could lend you some help.

Professor: ¿Puede decirme alguien cómo solucionar esta ecuación? (*Can anyone tell me how to solve this equation?*)

Student: Es una buena pregunta. No sé. (*That's a good question. I don't know.*)

- **Te extraño**

You might want to remember the phrase te extraño if you like your spouse, family member, or friend to know how much you miss them while they are away. This means *I miss you*. On the other hand, you can also commonly hear another phrase. Alternatively, it's very common to hear the phrase echo de menos, and this is the idiomatic way of saying exactly the same thing.

Mother: No te he visto en siglos. ¡Te extraño! (*I haven't seen you in ages. I miss you!*)

You: Mamá, nos vimos ayer. (*Mom, we saw each other yesterday.*)

- **Te quiero**

Te quiero means *I love you* in English, although *I want you* is the literal translation. You can use the phrase to show affection for a significant other,

parent, or friend. *Te amo* that literally means *I love you* can also be used, but you have to take note that in some regions, this phrase carries a more romantic connotation.

Carlos: Javier, por mucho tiempo he querido decirte que... ¡te quiero!
(*Javier, for a very long time I've been wanting to tell you... I love you!*)

Javier: ¿De verdad? ¡Yo te quiero, también! (*Really? I love you too!*)

- **Buen trabajo**

Buen trabajo is the phrase you should use to congratulate someone for the job well done, and this means *good job*. *Bien hecho* or *well done* can also be used to communicate similar sentiment.

Friend: ¿Sacaste 100% en tu examen? ¡Buen trabajo! (*You got 100% on your exam? Good job!*)

You: ¡Gracias! ¡Estoy muy contenta! (*Thanks! I'm really happy.*)

- **Buena suerte**

Buena suerte means *good luck* in English that you can use in the same way. Take note that this phrase wishes someone good luck before going on stage, taking an exam, or heading out to a very important date.

Friend: ¿Hoy tienes tu examen de matemáticas, verdad? ¡Buena suerte!
(*You have your math exam today, right? Good luck!*)

You: ¡Gracias! La necesitaré. (*Thanks! I'll need it.*)

CHAPTER 3: Vocabulary in Hotel

So, you already booked your flight, reserved your hotel, and packed all of your bags for your trip to a Spanish-speaking country. What's the next thing to do? Well, this is now the time for you to learn some essential words to ensure that your hotel stay will be easier and hassle-free.

If you are headed to any Spanish-speaking nation, your hotel is probably one of the best places where you can practice Spanish. Your host or concierge will appreciate your effort and will help you how to pronounce some tricky words properly along the way.

What are Different Types of Spanish Hotels?

When visiting in a country whose primary language is Spanish, travelers tend to spend more time in their lodgings or *hospedajes* than other places.

Once you arrived in a Spanish-speaking *ubicación* or location, you have to nail down the specific type of hotel you prefer, or also referred to as *hotel* in Spanish.

If you are looking for a resort or spa, you can ask for a near *balneario* . If you wish something more deluxe, what you need is something *de lujo* . If you are searching for an inn or a motel, ask for *la pasada* or *el motel* . There are some unique kinds of accommodations or *alojamientos* like bungalows or also called *bungalow* and bed and breakfast or called *pensión*.

Reservation Desk

After you have decided on the specific type of lodging you like, the second step is to make reservations or *reservaciones* . This is the time for you to negotiate the prices or *tarifa* with the hotelkeeper or *hotelero* . It is also appropriate that you inquire about the standard *propina* or tip for the bellhop or *botones* . During checkout, you will settle the *la cuenta* or bill with the *hotelero* .

All About Your Room

What type of *habitación* or room do you like? If you prefer a suite, just ask for a suite as this is also its Spanish counterpart. How about a *habitación sencilla* or a single room? *Or would you be better off with a habitación doble* or a double room, or maybe a triple or also known as *triple*? If you like to check if your room has a bathroom, inquire about a *baño*.

As for your bed or *cama* , decide if you want a *cama de monja* or a single bed, or a *cama de matrimonio* , or a double bed.

Do you have a specific floor or *piso* you prefer? If you like to stay on the ground floor, you can request for a room at the *el piso bajo* . Ask for *el hielo* if you are looking for the location of the ice machine.

How about a *vista* or view outside your window. If visiting a beach locale, you probably wish to get an ocean or sea view or *la vista al mar*.

Some other nice amenities you might want to inquire about include room service or *el servicio en cuarto* and an in-room safe or *la caja de seguridad* ?

Hotel Features

So, you have booked your room, and you are now officially *huesped* or guest. You are now excited to explore the amenities available at the hotel. Is there a *restaurante* or a restaurant or a bar or also known as a *bar* in Spanish? What if you want to enjoy a sip of coffee in the morning? Is there an *el café* ? The *el conserje* or concierge is the perfect person who can guide you to the café's location.

Are you visiting the town for a convention or *la convención* ? Do you need help on how you can get to the convention hall or *el salón de convenciones*? If you want to go dancing after your convention, you can inquire about the direction of the *vegetarian* .

Some other great hotel amenities that will further improve your vacation experience are a swimming pool or *piscina* , workout room or *gimnasio* , and free parking or *estacionamiento* .

English Guidance

With the widespread adoption of English, especially at higher-end hotels, it can also be common to find some signages for English words that are used for describing certain services or facilities. So, it wouldn't be surprising if you see words like room service, concierge, and spa used instead of their Spanish counterparts.

Spanish Phrases for Your Hotel Stay

Making Reservations

- *¿Cuánto cuesta la noche?* - How much does one night cost?
- *¿Tiene baño privado?* - Does it have a private bathroom?
- *¿Le queda alguna habitación por la noche?* - Do you have any rooms available for tonight? —
- *¿Tiene agua caliente?* - Does it have hot water?

- *¿Cuánto cuesta un habitación individual/doble por noche?* - How much is a single/double room per night?
- *Me gustaría quedarme tres noches* - I want to stay three nights.
- *Necesito una habitación para dos.* - I need a room for two.
- *Quiero una habitación con ducha.* - I would like a room with a shower.
- *Quiero una habitación doble también.* - I would like a double room.
- *Pensamos quedarnos siete noches.* - We will be staying for seven nights.
- *Estoy arrepentido pero estamos completos.* - I'm sorry, but we are full.
- *¿Cuánto cuesta?* - What is the price?

At the Reception Desk

- *Aquí está mi tarjeta de crédito.* - Here is my credit card.
- *Hice una reservación a nombre de Smith.* - I made a reservation for Smith.
- *¿A qué hora se sirve el desayuno?* - At what time is breakfast served?
- *¿Dónde es el restaurante?* - Where is the restaurant?
- *¿Podría preguntar a alguien a llevar mis maletas a mi habitación?* - Can somebody please bring my suitcases up?
- *¿Incluye desayuno?* - Is breakfast included?
- *Aquí está la llave, es número cinco.* - Here is the key for room number five.
- *¿Hay restaurante en el hotel?* - Is there a restaurant in the hotel?

- *¿Hay ascensor en el hotel?* Is there a lift/elevator?
- *¿Hay otro hotel cerca de aquí?* - Is there another hotel near here?
- *¿A qué hora cierran la puerta de entrada?* - What time does the hotel close in the evenings?
- *¿Hay algún mensaje para mí?* - Are there any messages for me?
- *¿A qué hora es la cena?* - When is dinner served?
- *¿Dónde está la recepción por favor?* - Where is reception, please?
- *¿Me podría decir dónde se encuentra la piscina del hotel?* - Where is the swimming pool?
- *¿Dónde está la habitación de juegos?* - Where is the game room?
- *¿Dónde está la habitación de televisor?* - Where is the television room?
- *¿Me podría despertar a las siete de la mañana, por favor?* - Please wake me up at 7:00 o'clock!
- *¿A qué hora necesito desocupar la habitación?* - At what time do I need to check out of the room?

In the Hotel Room

- *No hay papel higiénico en mi habitación .* - There is no toilet paper in my room.
- *¿Me podría enviar una toalla por favor?* - I need a towel, please.
- *Quiero las toallas para la habitación número cinco, por favor .* - May I have towels for room five please?
- *El televisor no está funcionando.* - The TV is not working.

- *El aire acondicionado no funciona.* - The air conditioner isn't working.
- *El grifo gotea.* - The faucet is dripping.
- *¿Podría Ud. mandar a alguien para bajar mi equipaje.*
- *¿Podría Ud. mandar a alguien para bajar mi equipaje.* - Could you send someone to collect my bags?
- *¿Me podría dar mi llave, por favor?* - My key, please!
- *¿Puede usted llamar un taxi para mi?* - Can you call a cab for me?

Common Hotel Vocabulary and Phrases

- la cama - bed
- la manta - blanket
- el botones - bellboy
- el primer piso - first floor (above ground level)
- la planta baja - ground floor
- el desayuno gratis - free breakfast
- el huésped - guest
- el gimnasio - gymnasium
- el agua caliente - hot water
- la calefacción - heat
- la empleada - employee
- el servicio en cuarto - room service
- la caja de seguridad - safe
- la almohada - pillow
- las sábanas - sheets

- el paño para lavarse - washcloth
- el jabón – soap
- alojamiento - accommodation
- aire acondicionado - air conditioning
- el equipaje - baggage
- el bar – bar
- la bañera - bath
- un albornoz – bathrobe
- el cuarto de baño - bathroom
- la cuenta – bill
- la television por cable - cable TV
- el / la guardacoches - car park attendant or parking lot attendant
- un peine – comb
- una reclamación – complaint
- el comedor – dining room
- una cama de matrimonio - double bed
- una habitación doble - double room
- doble - double
- una habitación con cama de matrimonio - double-bedded room
- el ascensor - elevator / lift
- el secador de pelo - hair dryer
- la criada - maid
- el director – manager
- el colchón - mattress
- el ruido - noise

- ruidoso - noisy
- tranquilo - quiet
- la máquina de afeitar - razor
- la factura – receipt
- la recepción - reception
- el / la recepcionista – receptionist
- una reembolsa - refund
- una reserva - reservation or booking
- la recepción - reservation desk
- la reservación - reservation
- el restaurante - restaurant
- una habitación con baño - room with en suite bathroom
- el cuarto, la habitación - room
- el cuarto inmediato - room, adjoining
- el champú - shampoo
- una gorra de ducha - shower cap
- la ducha – shower
- la cama de monja, una cama individual – single bed
- una habitación individual – single room
- las zapatillas - slippers
- la jabonera - soap dispenser
- el jabón - soap
- las escaleras – stairs
- la maleta – suitcase
- el grifo – tap or faucet

- el telephono – telephone
- la canal - television channel
- la televisión - television
- una propina - tip
- planchar - to iron
- dar or dejar una señal - to pay a down payment or deposit
- lavar - to wash
- el papel higiénico – toilet paper
- el váter – toilet
- el cepillo de dientes - toothbrush
- la pasta dentrífica / pasta de dientes - toothpaste
- una toalla - towel
- las toallas - towels
- camas gemelas - twin beds
- una habitación con camas gemelas - twin-bedded room
- el camarero / la camarera - waiter / waitress
- el lavabo - washbasin
- la ventana - window
- la pensión - boarding house
- la entrada – lobby
- el portero – porter
- el balcón – balcony
- la bañera – bathtub
- el desayuno – breakfast
- la cena – dinner

- el almuerzo – lunch
- cuarto con desayuno - bed and breakfast
- pensión completa - full board
- media pensión - half board
- five-star - cinco estrellas
- el Parador - state-owned luxury hotel (in Spain)
- el acceso (inalámbrico) - a internet (wireless) internet access
- la playa - beach
- la piscina - swimming pool
- la terraza - (roof) terrace

Dates and Days

- el fin de semana the weekend
- ¿para cuánto tiempo? for how long?
- el veintidós de diciembre 22 December
- el uno de mayo 1 May
- a partir del quince de agosto from 15 August
- Domingo - Sunday
- Lunes - Monday
- Martes - Tuesday
- Miércoles - Wednesday
- Jueves - Thursday
- Viernes - Friday
- Sábado - Saturday
- Enero - January
- Febrero - February

- Marzo - March
- Abril - April
- Junio - June
- Julio - July
- Septiembre - September
- Octubre - October
- Noviembre - November
- para diez días - for 10 days
- para esta noche - for tonight
- el mes que viene - next month
- para dos noches - for two nights
- el invierno - winter
- la primavera - spring
- el verano - summer
- el otoño - autumn
- entre semana - during the week

Ways of Expressing Desire

- querer - to want, to love
- desear - to desire, to want
- encantar - to delight, as in "me encantaría" which means "I would love ... "
- gustar - to please, as in "me gustaría" which means "I would like ... "

Sample Conversation #1:

Guest: *Buenos días, quería reservar una habitación para este sábado.*
(Good morning, I wanted to reserve a room for this Saturday.)

Receptionist: *¿Para cuántas personas?* (For how many people?)

Guest: *Para dos, con dos camas y baño completo .* (For two, with two beds and en-suite bathroom.)

Receptionist: *Vale. ¿Le incluimos el desayuno?* (OK. Do you want breakfast included?)

Guest: *Gracias, sólo el alojamiento.* (No, thanks, just the room.)

Receptionist: *De acuerdo, a partir de las 12 tendrá su habitación lista.*
(OK, your room will be ready from 12 o'clock.)

Sample Conversation #2:

Receptionist: *Buenos días, señor. ¿En qué le puedo ayudar?* (Good morning, sir. How can I help you?)

Joaquin: *Tengo una reservación para dos. Me llamo Joaquin Salvador.*
(I have a reservation for two. My name is Joaquin Salvador.)

Receptionist: *¿Para cuándo es la reservación?* (For when is the reservation?)

Joaquin: *Para hoy, el tres de agosto .* (For today, the third of August.)

Receptionist: *Lo siento, señor. No tengo su nombre en el libro.* (I'm sorry, sir. I don't have your name in the book.)

Joaquin: *¿No está bajo del nombre de mi esposa, Carla Salvador?* (It's not under the name of my wife, Carla Salvador?)

Receptionist: *No. Lo siento, señor.* (No. I'm sorry, sir.)

Sample Conversation #3:

Guest: *¿Tiene otra habitación ?* (Do you have another room?)

Receptionist: *¿Qué necesita? ¿Una habitación para dos?* (What do you need? A room for two?)

Guest: *Sí.* (Yes.)

Receptionist: *¿Cama matrimonial?* (A double bed?)

Guest: *Sí, por favor.* (Yes, please.)

Receptionist: *No, hay, lo siento.* (There isn't one, I'm sorry.)

Guest: *Una habitación con dos camas está bien.* (A room with two beds is okay.)

Receptionist: *A ver... No hay tampoco. Hay una habitación individual.* (Let's see... There isn't one either.)

Guest: *Bueno, tomamos esa.* (Well, we'll take that one.)

Receptionist: *Es una habitación muy pequeña.* (It's a very small room.)

Guest: *No me importa.* (I don't care.)

Sample Conversation #4:

Receptionist: *¿Cómo desea pagar? ¿Por crédito, por cheque, o en efectivo?* (How would you like to pay? By credit, check, or cash?)

Guest: *Por crédito, por favor.* (By credit, please.)

Receptionist: *¿Me puede dar su tarjeta de crédito?* (Could you give me your credit card?)

Guest: *Aquí está.* (Here it is.)

Receptionist: *Ustedes estarán en la habitación número cinco. Aquí está la llave. Las puertas al edificio se cierran a las once de la noche. Después de eso hay que timbrar para entrar. Tienen que salir a las diez de la mañana.* (You will be in room number five. Here is the key. The doors to the building close at eleven o'clock at night. After that,

you'll have to ring the bell to enter. You have to leave at ten o'clock in the morning.)

Guest: *Gracias.* (Thank you.)

Receptionist: *¿Necesitan ustedes ayuda con las maletas?* (Do you need help with the suitcases?)

Guest: *No, gracias.* (No, thanks.)

Tips for Using Spanish in Hotels

Now that you have armed yourself with some useful Spanish words and phrases and learned how to use them in conversations, below are a few tips to help you communicate successfully and effectively in hotels that speak little English:

- If you don't feel too confident in using Spanish, you might find it handy to write down any questions you have before you go into the hotel. It will save you from any confusion.
- Like any other dialects around the world, expect that there will also be strong dialects in certain regions of Spain. These are strong to the extent that even the most experienced speakers of Spanish may find them hard to understand Spanish in certain parts of the country. There is no need to worry, though. You can always ask the person to write down the reply if needed.
- Take note that in Spanish, the inflection is being used to indicate as to when a question is being asked and not based on the words just like how it is in English. Thus, a sentence that uses the word *hay*, which means "there is" must be said with exaggerated inflection to express that this is not a statement but a question instead.

CHAPTER 4: Vocabulary in a Taxi

Based on the current statistics, there are over 1 million Americans who live in Mexico. There are also tens of millions of people who visit countries in Latin America every year, on top of those people who cross the Atlantic just to visit and explore Spain. In the United Kingdom, over \$70 of people who go on overseas trips go to Spanish resorts. As you can see, there are lots of traveling here, and every time you travel in any Spanish-speaking country, it is a must that you are equipped with the appropriate vocabulary.

Well, it is true that in many tourist areas, there is really little need to speak Spanish since most of the services offered to travelers cater for various languages and of course, English tops the list.

But, a mere step off the beaten track into what you call “normal people” country and you will be surprised that there are not really a lot of bilingual speakers there.

This discovery sometimes catches most people off guard. How many times have you heard of a friend or colleague you purchased a house in Spain only to receive a panicked call from them asking for Spanish vocabulary words simply because no one in the village speaks or understands English?

To assume that all people across the globe speak English doesn't make sense in the first place. English is naturally the international language for people who travel around the world, but for the majority, it is impossible to travel from one country to another. For them, it is clear that their mother tongue is the only thing they need to learn and speak.

For example, in Spain, most Spaniards just opt to spend their holidays in their own country. As a general rule, it is rare for them to travel overseas. So, even though Spain has a slightly better English level, it remains to be spoken with a heavy accent and at a low level.

So, if you will be traveling to a Spanish-speaking country, it is recommended that you at least have some basic Spanish vocabulary, especially when you travel in a taxi. After all, nothing is worse than jumping into a taxi only to find that the driver doesn't speak and understand even a single English word.

Destinations

- al aeropuerto - to the airport
- al centro - to the centre
- a la estación - to the station
- al parque - to the park
- al teatro - to the theatre
- a la catedral - to the cathedral
- al cine - to the cinema
- al restaurante - to the restaurant

Along the Way

- llego tarde - I'm late
- tengo prisa - I'm in a hurry
- la carretera - main road
- la autopista - motorway
- los semáforos - traffic lights
- el tráfico - traffic
- el camino - route
- el desvío - diversion
- el paso de cebra - zebra crossing
- coja el atajo - take the shortcut

- hay un atasco - there's a traffic jam
- el peatón - pedestrian
- el túnel - tunnel
- el puente - bridge

No Way, Of Course

- por supuesto - of course (think: certainly)
- claro - of course (think: naturally)
- desde luego - of course (think: definitely)
- en absoluto not at all (think: not in the slightest)
- ¡hombre! of course (think: don't be ridiculous!)
- ni de coña not at all (think: no bloody way)
- para nada not at all (think: no way)

Other Words, Phrases, and Sentences to Say in a Taxi

- la parada de taxi - taxi-rank
- la propina - tip
- subir al taxi, montarse en el taxi - get into the taxi
- ¿puede abrirme el maletero para guardar mi equipaje? - Could you open the boot for me to store my suitcases?
- ¿tienes el número de una compañía de taxi? - Do you have the number of a taxi firm?
- lléveme a esta dirección - Take me to this address
- ¿puede ir más despacio? - Can you drive slower?
- recójame dentro de una hora - Pick me up in an hour.

- pare/espere aquí - stop/wait here
- quédese con el cambio - keep the change
- un recibo, por favor - a receipt, please
- dijo que costaría ... - you said it would cost ...
- ¿puede ir un poco más deprisa, por favor? si no voy a perder el avión - Could you go a little faster please, if not I'm going to miss the plane.
- ¿puede poner el taxímetro, por favor? - Can you switch on the meter, please?

Examples of How to Use Spanish Phrases for Taking a Taxi

The following examples of Spanish expressions can help you as you study and learn Spanish. You can use this as a supplemental resource you can add to your materials for studying Spanish.

- Finding a taxi
 - ¿Está libre? – (Are you free?)
- Telling the taxi where you want to go
 - A la Calle Valencia, por favor – (To Valencia Street please.)
 - Queremos ir a la Calle Valencia, por favor – (We want to go to Valencia Street please.)
 - Llévenos a la Calle Valencia, por favor – (Take us to Valencia Street please.)
- Asking about the cost
 - ¿Cuánto vale, más o menos, ir a la Calle Valencia? – (How much does it cost roughly to go to Valencia Street?)
 - ¿Cuánto cobra, más o menos, para ir a la Calle Valencia? – (How much do you charge to go to Valencia Street?)
- Paying

¿Cuánto es? – (How much is it?)

¿Cuánto le debo? – (How much do I owe you?)

¿Me hace un recibo, por favor? – (Could you give me a receipt please?)

- Getting the taxi to stop

Es aquí – (It's just here)

Pare aquí, por favor – (Stop here please.)

Sample Conversations for Taking a Taxi

Sample Conversation #1:

Hotel Guard: *Perdón, señor. ¿Dónde está la parada de taxis?* (Excuse me, sir. Where is the taxi stop?)

Joaquin: *¿La parada? Está por esas puertas. Los taxis azules son los mejores. ¿Necesitan ustedes ayuda con las maletas?* (The stop? It is through those doors. The blue taxis are the best. Do you need help with the suitcases?)

Hotel Guard: *No, gracias. Estamos bien.* (No, thank you. We're fine.)

Sample Conversation #2:

Joaquin: *Vamos al Hotel Windsor en la calle Amazonas. ¿Cuánto cuesta el pasaje?* (We're going to Windsor Hotel in Amazonas Street. How much does the fare cost?)

Taxi Driver: *No, sé, señor. Depende.* (I don't know, sir. It depends.)

Joaquin: *Pero más o menos.* (But, more or less?)

Taxi Driver: *Bueno, más o menos, cuesta dos dólares.* (Well, more or less, it costs two dollars.)

Joaquin: *¿Está muy lejos?* (Is it very far away?)

Taxi Driver: *No está muy lejos, pero hay mucho tráfico.* (It's not very far away, but there is a lot of traffic.)

Joaquin: *Qué tan largo es el viaje?* (How long is the trip?)

Taxi Driver: *Unos diez minutos.* (About ten minutes.)

Sample Conversation #3:

Tourist: *Hola, ¿me lleva a la Sagrada Familia?* (Hi, could you take me to the Sagrada Familia cathedral?)

Taxi Driver: *Muy bien, pero le advierto que ahora mismo hay mucho tráfico por allí.* (Sure, but I should warn you that there's a lot of traffic around there.)

Tourist: *No se preocupe. Tengo que sacar dinero de camino, ¿podríamos parar en un cajero automático?* (Don't worry. I need to take money out on the way, could we stop at a cashpoint?)

Taxi Driver: *Por supuesto, pero admito tarjetas también. ¿Ha estado antes en la ciudad?* (Of course, but I take cards too. Have you been to the city before?)

Tourist: *No, pero coja el camino más rápido por favor.* (No, but take the quickest route, please.)

Taxi Driver: *Ya hemos llegado, son trece con sesenta y cinco. Ahora mismo le saco las maletas.* (We've arrived, it's €13.65. I'll get your cases out right away.)

CHAPTER 5: Vocabulary in Eating Out

Do you think you can eat your way to becoming fluent in Spanish? Well, maybe you can't, but the least you can do is learn about their culture in eating out, their food, and how they talk about it.

If you claim yourself as a certified food, you know that if there is a way to the heart of a culture and a person alike, it would be none other than food. Even your own hometown may have its prominent type of food, eating habits, food etiquette, and food culture that everyone loves and enjoys. These are all expressions of your place.

The same thing applies to Spanish cuisine. Food plays a big role in Spanish culture, serving as an expression of friendship and love with others.

People love to talk about food, and it is among the universal topics of small talks most people are comfortable with. Thus, understanding Spanish food culture and vocabulary can go a long way. This is why there is no yummiier way to learning Spanish than through Spanish cuisine. If you find it exciting, you are not alone.

And while food is being discussed, you might want to know that *comida* is the Spanish term for food.

The Food Culture in Spain

Spain's food habits are known far and wide for its uniqueness. Drinking and eating are very important in Spanish culture, with bars found everywhere you look. There is always the excuse to socialize at a local drinking hole or grab some small-portioned appetizers, or what they call tapas. Many bars serve as hangouts and restaurants where Spaniards can watch futbol or soccer or football in the United States together.

However, the main difference in the food culture of Spain is when and how they eat.

Spanish Eating Habits and Manners

Spain's eating habits have primarily centered on work life. Spain runs on 11-hour workday a present although this is starting to change in some regions. Their workday begins at around 9 in the morning and

finishes until 8 in the evening. For this reason, their mealtimes are significantly much farther apart compared to what other people are used to.

El Desayuno – Breakfast

Spaniards love to indulge in a light breakfast or *desayuno* in the morning before they head out to work. This is usually composed of coffee with milk or *café con leche* and a roll or pastry with jam, such as *bollos* or sweet rolls.

Due to the extremely long gap between their breakfast and *la comida*, that literally means the food but refers to lunch in this particular context, most people sometimes take a break in the middle of the morning to grab some snacks. The snack is often made up of *tapas*, such as the popular potato omelet or *tortilla de patata*.

La Comida – Lunch

Also known as *el almuerzo*, there is a strong belief among Spaniards that food must be completely enjoyed, making lunch a no-rush affair. When workers grab lunch around 2 in the afternoon, the workplace is normally shut down for 2 to 3 hours to give the employees a chance to go feast. Lunch in Spain is the day's biggest meal consists of three or even more courses. Drinking wine during lunch is also common, and this is usually a part of the price of the meal.

In Spanish culture, common foods for lunch include pasta or soup, a dish of fish or meat-filled with proteins, salad, and dessert-like *flan* or vanilla custard or just fruit. Wine, brandy, and coffee are common drinks enjoyed at lunch. You will almost always find lots of bread at all meals for wiping the plate clean.

Once the long lunch is over, it is common to take a short nap or *siesta*. There are even some parts of Spain where the law protects *siestas*. However, in larger cities such as Spain, it is no longer than common.

La Merienda – Snack

Due to the long workday, it is usual to stop to grab another snack around 5 or 6 in the afternoon. *La merienda* is similar to England's afternoon tea consists of small things like salami, bread, cheese, fruit, chocolate, and other types of small finger foods.

La Cena – Dinner or Supper

With 8 pm marking the end of the workday, Spaniards eat their dinner at around 9 or 10 in the evening. This is typically simple and small, unlike lunch, particularly because it is already so late. A common dinner meal is *arroz cubano* , which is composed of rice, tomato sauce, and a fried egg. Dinner still includes a small dessert of *flan* , cheese, or fruit and a salad.

Bocadillo de Medianoche - Midnight Snack

Average Spaniards go to bed around midnight daily, so it is common to hear about a *bocadillo de medianoche* . Churros are regularly picked up before going home after spending a night out and socializing at a bar. Some also enjoy a warm and nice cup of Spanish hot chocolate.

Sobremesa (“Over the Table”)

In Spain, eating and dashing are rude. Sobremesa is a term used to describe the conversation's flow that takes place once the meal is finished. Spaniards don't just take time savoring their food but also the company of other people.

Traditional Spanish You Shouldn't Miss

What are the most common Spanish dishes? Standard diet in Spanish Mediterranean that features a lot of vegetables, fruits, healthy fats such as olive oil, and whole grains. Spain boasts of numerous flavorful and unique dishes, but the following traditional Spanish foods deserve to top your must-try list.

Paella

Paella is among the most traditional and common Spanish dishes. This is a saffron rice dish with meat and beans. There are lots of variations and veggies, shrimp, fish, and meat can also be used for toppings. The most traditional *paella* dishes use duck, rabbit, chicken, or even nails as primary protein even though the most common one is seafood *paella*. It doesn't matter where you find this because saffron rice is the one ingredient that remains unchanged. It is commonly eaten during lunch with the beautiful city of Valencia being its place of origin.

Tortilla Española

Probably the most often eaten and popular food in Spain is *tortilla Española*, a potato omelet found anywhere you go and pretty much everyone knows how to prepare it. While it sometimes contains other ingredients, the most traditional version is the omelet with just egg and potato.

Gazpacho

This is a tomato-based soup served chilled that can make you feel refreshed during summer days. It is very popular with most people eating it every single day. It also happens that traditional gazpacho is totally free from meat that makes it the ideal option for vegetarians. This is commonly made with ripe and bright red tomatoes, cucumbers, garlic, bread, olive oil, and peppers. This delicious food originates from Andalusia, the southernmost part of Spain where it can get really hot and as expected, boiling hot soup is not an option.

Patatas Bravas

With an English translation brave potatoes, *patatas bravas* is a staple on all *tapas* menus and the usual go-to option fans of vegetarian tapas. The potatoes are fried then served with spicy sauce. Spicy foods are not popular in Spain, yet this sauce is an exception to that rule. The

sauce can vary from one region to another, but the potatoes remain the same.

Jamón Ibérico

No matter where you go, you can always see these ham legs being displayed everywhere. There are two types, namely black pigs (*jamón ibérico*) and white pigs (*jamón serrano*), with the former being more expensive. Meat is being thinly sliced from the leg and enjoyed with bread as *tapas* dish.

Albondigas

Also a staple on *tapas* menus, these Spanish meatballs are being served in rich tomato sauce. However, there are several variations. There are even some regions where they use squid for meatballs.

Chorizo

You have probably tried this in the past since it is now very popular all over the world. However, ask a Spain native, and they will surely tell you that Spain has the best *chorizos* you can ever find. It is a sweet and spicy sausage and often quite garlicky. This can be found in many other recipes to add richness and depth to the flavor.

Pisto

If France has *ratatouille*, Spain has *pisto*, an excellent vegetarian dish you can find around the country. This is made with aubergine, onions, tomatoes, bell peppers, and courgette. There are also times when this is topped with a fried egg.

Pollo al Ajillo

This one is classic comfort food for Spaniards. *Pollo al ajillo* is a garlic chicken dish cooked with thyme, rosemary, and a splash of sherry or white wine to create a comforting and rich flavor.

Chicharrón

This is the complete extravaganza of pork rind. It is a seasoned and fried pig skin dish that serves as a well-loved snack all over Latin America and different parts of Spanish.

Ceviche

It is a lemony seafood soup often served throughout the coasts of South and Central America. Every country has a unique style and flavor.

Dulce de tres leches

It is a super sweet and moist cake featuring three forms of milk, namely condensed, dried, and natural.

Churros

This is sugar-coated and crispy fried dough that no one can surely resist.

Patacone or Tostones

These fried and crisp plantain slices are a popular side dish all over Latin America.

Whether you are abroad or at home, try seeking out traditional dishes from the Spanish-speaking countries for you to better immerse in both the culture and language. Nothing beats the fun of indulging yourself while having an educational experience at the same time.

Must-Know Spanish Food Vocabulary

Does your stomach growl with the mention of food? As you have learned about the food culture and favorite meals of Spaniards, now is the time for you to start talking about them in Spanish.

Foods for Breakfast in Spanish

Breakfast is no doubt, the most vital meal of the day. Take note of the following words you can use when ordering your breakfast to fuel your

day filled with adventure abroad.

- *Desayuno* - breakfast
- *Pan* - bread
- *Tocino* - bacon
- *Mermelada* – jam
- *Mantequilla* - butter
- *Bollos* - sweet rolls
- *Avena* - oatmeal
- *Pastelería* - pastry
- *Café* - coffee
- *Con* - with
- *sin* - without
- *Leche* - milk
- *Y* - and
- *Azúcar* - sugar
- *Yogur* - yoghurt:
- *Huevos* - eggs
- *Chorizo* – sausage
- *Huevo revuelto* – scrambled eggs
- *Tortilla* – omelet

Foods for Lunch and Dinner in Spanish

- *Plato fuerte* – entree
- *Comida* - food
- *Almuerzo* - lunch
- *Cena* - dinner

- *Arroz* - rice
- *Patatas* - potatoes
- *Sopa* - soup
- *Ensalada* - salad
- *Pastas* - pasta
- *Verduras* - vegetables
- *Pimiento* - bell peppers
- *Cebolla* - onions
- *Carne* - meat
- *Cerdo* - pork
- *Res* - beef
- *Pollo* - chicken
- *Calamares* - squid
- *Pescado* - fish
- *Camarones* - shrimp
- *Mariscos* - seafood
- *Aceite de Oliva* - olive oil
- *Tomate* - tomatoes
- *Pepinos* - cucumbers
- *Frijoles* - beans
- *Ajo* - garlic
- *Zanahoria* - carrots
- *Espárragos* - asparagus
- *Sal* - salt
- *Huevo Frito* - fried egg

- *Pimienta* - pepper
- *Vino* - wine
- *Bebidas* - drinks
- *Cerveza*- beer
- *Agua*- water
- *Cola* - soda
- *Té* - tea

Dessert Foods and Snacks in Spanish

- *Postre*- dessert
- *Bocadillo* - snack
- *Chocolate a la Taza* - hot chocolate
- *Queso* - cheese
- *Flan* - vanilla custard
- *Frutas* - fruit
- *Pera* - pear
- *Manzana* - apple
- *Guindas* or *Cerezas* - cherries
- *Fresas* - strawberries
- *Naranja* - orange
- *Sandía* - watermelon
- *Limón*- lemon
- *Nueces* - nuts
- *Higos* - figs
- *Bollito* or *Galleta* - cookie
- *Tarta* – cake

- *Ensalada de frutas* – fruit salad
- *Gelatina* – gelatin or Jell-O
- *Helado* - ice cream

Drinks – Bebidos

Upon arriving at a restaurant, the waiter will ask you if you would like a drink. Improving your refreshment vocabulary will let you get straight to browsing the restaurant menu:

- *Vino tinto* - red wine
- *Vino blanco* - white wine
- *Limonad* - lemonade
- *Té helado* - iced tea
- *Batido* - smoothie or milkshake
- *Jugo* - juice

Some common flavors of smoothie or juice you might want to order include:

- *Melón* - melon
- *Sandía* - watermelon
- *Frutilla or fresa* - strawberry
- *Uva* - g rape

Seafood – Mariscos

- *Cangrejo* - crab
- *Langosta* - lobster
- *Atún* - tuna

Meats – Carne

- *Jamón* - ham
- *Lomo de cerdo* - pork tenderloin

- *Pavo* - turkey
- *Bistec* - steak
- *Codorniz* - quail

Vegetables and Fruits – *Verduras y Frutas*

- *Aguacate* - avocado
- *Acelga* - chard
- *Calabaza* - pumpkin
- *Berenjena* - eggplant
- *Espinaca* - spinach

Spanish Words Used in the Kitchen

- *Mesa* - table
- *Cocina* - kitchen
- *Horno* - oven
- *Microonda* - microwave oven
- *Estufa* - stove
- *Plato* - plate
- *Cuchillo* - knife
- *Servilleta* - napkin
- *Chucara* - spoon
- *Tenedor* - fork
- *Copa* - glass (for wine)
- *Vaso* - glass (for water)
- *Tazón or Cuenco* - bowl
- *Sartén* - frying pan
- *Olla* - pot

- *Cucharón* - ladle
- *Espátula* - spatula
- *Cubiertos* - cutlery

Verbs for Eating and Cooking in Spanish

- *Cocinar* - cook
- *Preparar* - prepare
- *Picar* - chop
- *Cortar* - cut
- *Pelar* - peel
- *Freir* - fry
- *Hervir* - boil
- *Saltear* - sauté
- *Hornear* - bake
- *Revolver* - stir
- *Batir* - whisk
- *Vertir* - pour
- *Medir* - measure
- *Cucharadita* - teaspoon
- *Cucharada* - tablespoon
- *Taza* - cup
- *Beber* - drink
- *Comer* - eat
- *Pedir* – order

Food Preparation

- *Filete* - fillet

- *A la plancha* - grilled
- *Asado* - roasted
- *Al ajillo* - in garlic sauce
- *Apanado* or *empanizado* or *empanado* or **very regional word* - breaded
- *A la parrilla* - barbecued

Spanish Words and Phrases to Use When Ordering Food in a Restaurant

- *Restaurante* - restaurant
- *Camarera* , *Camarero* – waitress, waiter
- **Quisiera ____, por favor** - I would like , please
- **¿Me pone/trae __, por favor?* - Could I have __, please
- *Tengo alergia a _____* - I'm allergic to....
- *El menú* - the menu
- *No como _____* - I don't eat...
- *La cuenta* - the bill
- *Tarjeta de Crédito* - credit card
- *Efectivo* - cash
- *¿Qué me recomiendas?* - What do you recommend?
- *No me gusta eso* - I don't like it.
- *Está riquísimo* - It's delicious.

Words and Phrases You Should Know When Dining in a Restaurant

Who can say no to eating? What is more important for you? Your happiness or your waistline? You will never regret it if you explore all

the delicious and sumptuous local foods every time you go overseas. Spending some time at Spanish restaurants can play a big role in your Spanish language learning experience and cultural immersion.

Unfortunately, when traveling, it may be a bit difficult if not completely impossible to have access to a fully-equipped kitchen, not to mention that you may prefer to allot your time for exploring the sights instead of going grocery shopping.

Before you set foot on your destination, you can arm yourself with the following phrases and words that will help you order your meal like a true native Spanish speaker.

Finding Your Table

If you picked a swanky bistro often crowded with devoted patrons, it might be a good idea to make your reservation in advance. You can reach them through the phone then greet the other person on the line with a friendly salutation. The conversation can go like this.

“Quisiera hacer una reserva para # persona(s).” (I would like to make a reservation for # people.)

“¿Bajo el nombre de quién?” (Under whose name?)

On the other hand, if you are not the type who plans ahead and time, you can just go to a full restaurant by asking for a seat at the bar.

¿Podría sentarme en el bar? (May I sit at the bar?)

It is common in Latin America to be a bit suspicious when it comes to special dietary preferences. It is important to specify it with your server and inform them of the things you cannot eat. For example:

No como X. (I don't eat X.)

Soy vegetariano, vegetariana (I am vegetarian.)

Tengo alérgia a X (I am allergic to X.)

Make sure you double-check that all your orders don't contain things you can't or don't want to eat.

Navigating the Restaurant

- *restaurante* - restaurant
- *pedir* - to order
- *quisiera* - I would like
- *el menú* - the menu
- *camarero* , *camarera* - waiter, waitress
- *mesero*, *mesera* - waiter, waitress (Latin America only)
- *mesa* - table
- *plato* - plate
- *tenedor* - fork
- *cuchara* - spoon
- *cuchillo* - knife
- *servilleta* - napkin
- *cuenta* - bill
- *Tráigame la cuenta, por favor* . - Bring me the check, please.

The hand gesture of signing paper can translate smoothly enough. Many small restaurants in Latin America don't accept *tarjetas de crédito* or credit cards, so it is best that you carry some cash or *efectivo* with you in case of emergency.

Understanding Regional Food Traditions

Every time you travel, don't hesitate to ask questions to locals. You can always ask the waiter or waitress what he or she can suggest or recommend.

¿Qué me recomienda? (What do you recommend?)

¿Cuál es la comida típica de esta región? (What is the typical food of this region?)

More Useful Spanish Phrases for Dining

After you have brushed up on your knowledge about the Spanish counterparts of common English food and menu items, it is time for you to learn additional common phrases in Spanish that can come in handy during your conversation with your waiter or waitress or other people at the table.

Check out the following common Spanish phrases your waiter might use when taking your order:

- *¿Estan listos para ordenar?* (Are you ready to order?)
- *¿Qué desea beber?* (What would you like to drink?)
- *¿Qué desea comer?* (What would you like to eat?)
- *¿Qué quiere?* (What do you want?)
- *¿Lo siento/Lamento, no tenemos _____* (Sorry, we don't have___)

You can try to use these helpful Spanish phrases to answer the above questions:

- *Estoy/Estamos listos para ordenar.* (I/We are ready to order.)
- *Un momento por favor.* (One moment please.)
- *Quisiera _____.* (I would like ____.)

Use the following Spanish words when you ask questions to your waiter or waitress:

- *¿Qué nos recomienda?* (What do you recommend?)
- *¿Cuál es el plato del dia?* (What is the dish of the day?)
- *¿Cuál trae el plato?* (What is in the dish?)

- *¿Señor/Señora, la cuenta, por favor?* (Mr./Ms. the bill, please?)
- *¿Soy alérgico a ____* (I'm allergic to____)

These Spanish phrases can be used when talking to the people you are dining with:

- *¿Qué nos recomienda?* (What do you recommend?)
- *¿Qué te gusta hacer?/¿Qué le gusta hacer?* (What do you like to do?)
- *¿Como es tu comida?* (How is your food?)
- *¿Qué libro acabas de leer ?/¿Qué libro acaba de leer?* (What book did you just finish reading?)

Tips for Proper Spanish Etiquette for Dining

Do have plans to embark on a big trip to a Spanish-speaking country? There is a chance that you will eat at different delicious restaurants during your stay. Prior to embarking on your getaway, aside from learning the useful Spanish words and phrases, it is also important to arm yourself with some etiquette tips. For all you know, the same rules for etiquette that you follow in your country might not be applicable in the country you will travel to because of cultural differences.

Remember these tips for eating out:

- Don't forget to use eating utensils. You will be provided with a spoon, a knife, and a fork that you can use as you eat. Large spoons are meant for foods like beans and soup, while smaller ones are for desserts.
- Let the host eat first. Never dive into your food if your host hasn't eaten yet. Wait until your host starts eating or says, "*¡Provecho !*" or "*¡Buen Provecho !*" (Enjoy your meal) as this signals that you can also start eating your meal.

- Never dip your bread in your Spain. Dipping bread in the soup is regarded as rude in Spain. The truth is that it is not common to dip bread in pretty much anything, with sauces included.
- Make sure your hands stay visible. You have to put your hands on any side of your plate if you are not eating. It is considered suspicious if your hands are hidden. See to it that your elbows are also kept off the table while your hands stay visible.
- Engage in conversations because Spaniards love to do so! Don't be shy to talk about your family, your hobbies, or your day. Also, never be afraid to ask the people at the table some questions about themselves.
- Call over your waiter for your bill. It is seen as rude for waiters to bring bills to the table unsolicited. If you like to get your bill, try to catch the eye of the waiter and make that hand gesture as if you are writing something in mid-air.

Remembering these helpful and useful etiquette tips and practicing the useful Spanish words and phrases will ensure that you are well prepared every time you go out to eat at Spanish restaurants.

Do you feel confident with your Spanish vocabulary for eating out? Well, it means that you are now on your way to becoming a fluent foodie in Spanish! Discovering the culture through food is one of the best ways to understand how the locals socialize. Nothing beats the comfort of being able to share your experiences over a warm and delicious meal.

CHAPTER 6: Asking for Directions

Knowing how to receive and give directions in Spanish is possibly among the most helpful things you can add to your skillset every time you travel around. Just imagine yourself getting disoriented in the middle of a strange new city, completely clueless about how you can get back to your hotel. This kind of experience can be quite disconcerting, but as long as you know how to ask directions from a local, then, it will be easy to avert such a stressful situation.

While getting lost in a strange city is one of the best ways to discover hidden gems, it is still imperative that you know how you can find your accommodation. Through memorizing directions in Spanish, you wouldn't have a hard time calling on them any time you need to.

If you ever find yourself lost amidst a Spanish-speaking country and you have no idea where the main square is or how you can get to your hotel, it is important that you know how to ask for directions or *pedir indicaciones* .

For instance, if you want to the main square or *plaza mayor* of the city you are visiting, you can ask *¿Me podría decir dónde está la plaza mayor?* (Could you tell me where the main square is?)

But this is just one example of how you can ask for directions. In this chapter, you will learn some words and phrases you can use for asking directions together with some tips on forming your own questions and a few handy vocabulary lists to help you understand the other person's response.

Don't be Afraid to Ask

It is important to remember that there is no such thing as a single right way of asking for directions in Spanish. While trying to form your question, you need to take note of several key verbs pertaining to the place or direction. For example, if you want to ask where something is, you need to use the verb *estar*. On the other hand, if you want to ask how you can get someplace, the verb *llegar* should be used. Lastly, if you don't have any idea about your current location and you want to identify where you are on a map, you need to use the verb *ubicarse*.

Take a look at the following examples of how to use the said verbs for forming your questions:

¿*Cómo llego a la calle principal?* (How do I get to the main road?)

¿*Me podría decir dónde está la estación de buses?* (Could you tell me where the bus station is?)

¿*Nos podrías ayudar a ubicarnos en el mapa?* (Could you help us locate where we are on the map?)

Pedir direcciones is another way of asking for directions in Spanish and is used interchangeably with *pedir indicaciones* .

Using Addresses

You might want to know that the structure of the street addresses often differs from one country to another. You can try to consult with a tourist guide prior to your travel for you to be more familiar with the local practices in the place you are visiting.

Most of the time, it is easier to understand addresses than what it might initially seem. For instance, among the most famous museums located in Bogotá, Colombia, is el Museo del Oro (Gold Museum) at Cra. 6 #15-88. At first, this may sound and look like a complete jumble of different characters. However, Cra. 6 means that the museum is on Carrera 6, which you may refer to in English as 6th Avenue. The 15 is the name of the street (Calle 15), while the 88 refers to the distance from the intersection of the avenue and the street.

The sad news for travelers is that addressing conventions that are easy to understand are not used and followed everywhere, and there are even some streets that are left unnamed. For instance, in Costa Rica, you may encounter addresses like "200 metros al oeste de la escuela Fernández," that indicates a location 200 meters west of Fernandez school.

Know Your Directions

Since you now know the basics of how you can ask for directions, the next step is for you to understand these directions for you to follow them to your specific direction. Check out this list of the keywords you need to memorize so you can follow the directions given to you.

- izquierda - left
- derecha - right
- derecho, recto - straight ahead
- norte - north
- sur - south
- oeste - west
- este – east
- a la derecha - to the right
- a la izquierda - to the left
- al comienzo del/de - at the beginning of
- al final del/de - at the end of
- hacia el oeste - to the west
- hacia al norte - to the north
- hacia al sur - to the south
- hacia el este - to the east
- doblar, girar - to turn
- enfrente de - across from
- detrás de - behind
- al lado de - next to
- ¿dónde está...? - where is...?
- delante del/ de - in front of

Greetings

Of course, it would be impolite to just ask for directions without any greetings first. Here is a refresher of basic Spanish greetings you can use:

- hola - hello

- buenas - hello (at any time of days)
- ¿qué tal? - how are you doing?
- buenos días - good morning
- buenas noches good evening (night)
- buenas tardes - good afternoon
- hasta luego - see you later
- adios - goodbye

Roads

- dirección - address
- la calle - street
- carretera - highway
- bulevar - boulevard
- la avenida - avenue
- la carretera - main road
- cuadra - block (of a street)
- la intersección - intersection
- calle secundaria - sidestreet
- el callejón - alley
- a la vuelta - round the corner
- la rotunda - roundabout
- el callejón sin salida - cul-de-sac, dead end
- la esquina – corner
- manzana (Spain) or cuadra (Latin America) or – city block

Places

- el pueblo - village
- el Puerto – harbor
- el país - country
- los países - countries
- barrio - neighborhood
- plaza - square
- semáforo - streetlight
- el puente - the bridge
- la plaza de toros - bullring
- la galería (de arte) - art gallery
- las tiendas - shops
- el centro commercial - shopping mall
- el parque - park
- el Mercado - market
- el casco antiguo - historic centre
- la frontera - border

Means of Transport

- a pie - on foot
- el autobus - bus
- en coche - by car
- el autocar - coach
- la moto - motorbike
- el avión – plane
- el barco - boat

Orientation and Directions

- coger - to take
- seguir - to carry on
- andar, caminar - to walk
- cruzar, atravesar - to cross
- todo recto - straight on
- lejos - far (away)
- cerca - near(by)
- bajar - go down
- subir - go up
- tirar para - head towards
- abajo - down(wards)
- arriba - up(wards)
- enfrente de - opposite
- detrás de - behind

Other Things to Say

- la pregunta - question
- pasear - to walk around, stroll
- dar una vuelta, dar un paseo - go for a walk/stroll
- deambular - to wander aimlessly
- perdido - lost
- un paseo - stroll
- correr - to run
- kilómetro - kilometer
- mile – milla
- metro – meter

- la excusa - excuse
- estamos perdidos - we are lost
- está a un paseo - it's a stroll away
- ¿voy bien por aquí para ... ? - am I going the right way for ... ?
- está a una buena caminata - it's quite a way
- este parte de la ciudad me recuerda a Slough - this part of the city reminds me of Slough

More Spanish Speaking Terms to Use During Travels

- Escríbalo, por favor. (Write it down, please.)
- Hágame el favor de hablar más despacio. (Speak more slowly, please.)
- No entiendo bien el español. (I don't understand Spanish well. —)
- ¿Hay alguien que hable inglés? (Is there anyone who speaks English?)

If you wish to know where something is, you just need to ask “Excuse me, where is the _____?” by saying, “Disculpa, donde esta el/la _____?” Pay close attention to the reply, and you will be good to go. You can also verify what you heard using hand movements.

Here are some sample questions and sentences on how you can use the vocabulary words above for forming some directions.

- Hasta donde topa. (Until the end of the street.)
- *Bajas por ahí.* (Go down that way.)
- *Gira a la izquierda/derecha.* (Turn left/right.)
- *Das vuelta a la izquierda/derecha.* (Turn left/right.)
- *En contra esquina de....* (Kitty-corner from...)
- *En la esquina.* (On the corner.)

- *A espaldas del/de la ...* (Behind the ...)
- *¿Cómo llego al/ a la ... ?* (How do I get to the ... ?)
- *Rodea el/la ...* (Go around the ...)
- *¿Qué tan lejos queda el/la ... del/de la ... ?* (How far is the ... from the ... ?)
- *¿Hay un/una ... cerca de aquí?* (Is there a ... around here?)
- *¿Dónde puedo tomar un taxi?* (Where can I take a taxi?)
- *¿Sabes si está por aquí?* (Do you know if it's around here?)
- *Creo que estoy perdido/a.* (I think I'm lost.)
- *¿Pasa por aquí el camión que va a ... ?* (Does the bus to ... pass by here?)
- *¿Dónde está...? ¿Dónde están...?* (Where is...? Where are...?)
- *¿Está lejos? ¿Está por aquí?* (Is it far away? Is it near here?)
- *¿Por dónde se va a...? or ¿Cómo puedo llegar a...?* (How do you go to...?)
- *¿Dónde estamos aquí en el mapa?* (Where are we on the map?)
- *Busco...* (I'm looking for...)
- *Estoy perdido (perdida if you are female).* (I'm lost.)
- *El bar está en frente de la catedral, a sólo cinco cuadras de la plaza mayor.* (The bar is across from the cathedral, just five blocks from the main square.)
- *Gira a la izquierda y camina por el callejón hasta que llegues a la Avenida de Las Américas .* (Turn left and walk through the alley until you come out at Avenue of the Americas.)
- *Sigue recto tres cuadras y luego dobla a la derecha.* (Continue straight for three blocks and then turn right.)
- *Avanza tres cuadras.* (Go ahead three blocks.)

- *Sigue derecho dos cuadras.* (Go straight ahead two blocks.)
- *Subes todo derecho .* (In Mexico, many people use the phrase to say “Go straight ahead” every time they talk about a direction where the land’s topography is higher.)
- Spain: *¿Dónde puedo coger un taxi (un autobús)?/* Latin America: *¿Dónde puedo tomar un taxi (un autobús)?* (Where can I catch a taxi (a bus)?)

Take note that there are others used for bus depending on the region include *bus, camión, colectivo, camioneta, guagua, góndola, micro, Pullman,* and *microbús* , You have to be careful when you use the verb *coger* in some areas of Latin America since this may have an obscene meaning.

Additional Directions and Sample Conversations

If you ever find yourself exploring the streets of San Juan, Quito, or Cartagena, you may notice that street signs are found on the buildings’ sides instead of sticking out the ground around the intersections. You may even discover that these street signs show abbreviated forms of *carretera, bulevar,* or *calle.*

In Latin America, there are several street signs that include dates. This is because most cities in Latin America use significant dates from the history of their country as names of prominent streets. So, don’t panic if the person giving you direction instructs you to turn right on *9 de Julio* .

Sample Conversation #1:

Clara: *Disculpe, señora. Estoy totalmente perdida. ¿Me podría ayudar a ubicarme en este mapa?* (Excuse me, ma’am. I’m completely lost. Could you help me figure out where I am on this map?)

Woman: *Estamos aquí, cariño, Al lado del estadio de fútbol.* (We are right here, dear. Next to the soccer stadium.)

Clara: *¡Ah, claro que sí! Necesito reunir con mis amigos en una hora para cenar. ¿Usted conoce el restaurante Buena Vista en el centro histórico? ¿Cómo llego allí?* (Ah, of course! I need to meet up with my friends for dinner in an hour. Do you know the Buena Vista restaurant in the historic city center? How do I get there?)

Woman: *Es muy fácil. Sigue esta calle cinco cuadras al sur hasta que llegues a la plaza mayor. De allí, gira a la derecha en la calle 10 de agosto y camina solo una cuadra. Allí lo verás enfrente de la estación de buses.* (It's very easy. Follow this street five blocks south until you reach the main square. Then turn right onto August 8th street and walk just one block. You will see it there in front of the bus station.)

Clara: ¡*Muchísimas gracias, señora!* (Thank you so much, ma'am!)

Sample Conversation #2:

Tourist: *Disculpe, ¿podría decirme dónde está la plaza de toros?* (Excuse me, could you tell me where the bullring is?)

Antonio: *Siga recto y coja la segunda calle a la derecha .* (Carry straight on and take the second street on the right.)

Tourist: *¿Está cerca de la catedral?* (Is it near the cathedral?)

Antonio: *No, para ir hasta allí tiene que cruzar todo el centro.* (No, to get there you'll have to go right across the centre.)

Tourist: *¿Hay algún autobús que pase por allí?* (Is there a bus that goes nearby?)

Antonio: *Sí, al doblar esta esquina tiene la parada del veintitrés, que le deja al lado.* (Yes , when you turn this corner you'll see the stop for number 23, which leaves you next to it.

Sample Conversation #3:

Katrina: *¿Cómo puedo ir al centro de la ciudad?* (How do I get to the city center?)

Juancho: *Cruce la calle, gire a la derecha, cruce de nuevo, gire a la izquierda y ya estará allí.* (Cross the street, turn on the right, cross again, turn on the left, and you'll be there.)

Katrina: ¡*Gracias!* (Thank you!)

Sample Conversation #4:

Rosa: *¿Cómo puedo ir a este barrio ?* (How do I get to this neighborhood?)

Fernando: *Siga todo recto, gire a la izquierda, cruce la calle y ya estará allí.*
(Go straight, turn on the left, cross the street and you'll be there.)

Rosa: *¡Gracias!* (Thank you!)

Even though the GPS on your smartphone can be a handy resource, you will never know when you will be left with a dead battery or with no signal at all. This is why it is a must that you know how you can ask for directions in Spanish way before you embark on your trip to a Spanish-speaking country.

Two Tips for Conversation When Asking for Directions

1. Be specific. Always stick with key terms for the places you want to go to during your conversations with other people. You might need the directions to a shopping mall (*el centro comercial*), the grocery market (*el mercado*) or general shops (*las tiendas*). While these three can all be summed up as shops, keep in mind that they differ in terms of the specific type of shop. If you wish to explore different tourist attracts, you have to detail if you want to see art historic center (*el casco antiguo*), an art gallery (*la galería de arte*), or a park (*el parque*),
2. Always be friendly. Locals are always delighted when tourists show courtesy and ask for their help with a smile. Don't forget to include some basic greetings together with the phrases you learned. You will surely score bonus points if you also use the local variations like *buen dia* that is used in several countries instead of the more common and popular *buenos dias*.

CHAPTER 7: Traveling by Bus & Train

Traveling in Spain as well as other countries and destinations that speak Spanish can become so much easier when you are familiar with several Spanish words and phrases. Knowing how to book tickets, ask for directions, and find out the times of trains and busses can make a big difference in your travel experience. This vocabulary can come in handy if you have plans to take a quick city break, go on an extended holiday with the family, or travel for business.

Traveling in Spain

As far as travel is concerned, Spain visitors can choose from three primary options, assuming that hiring a car is out of the equation. The primary forms of getting around the city are by train or bus. Another option is traveling by air as the country is dotted by lots of national and local airports alike. Although English is spoken and understood at the majority of larger airports and train or bus stations, this is not really the case at the local or smaller airports or stations. However, it doesn't need to be a problem since you only need a few words for you to arrange your journeys and book your tickets without any hassle.

In most countries, public transportation is a need, and for those who have plans to visit or travel to a Spanish-speaking country, there is always a high chance that you will need to use one form of public transportation or another. This makes it very helpful to study some of the key and common vocabulary words, phrases, and expressions.

Cultural Facts about Transportation in Spanish-Speaking Countries and Destinations

- Due to rapid growths in population and sometimes, lack of properly planned infrastructures, most towns and cities face some serious problems with transportation. Since public transportation is often insufficient or inefficient for covering transportation

needs, most of the time, the streets are crowded with too many vehicles that lead to pollution and traffic jams.

- *Carro* or car is also referred to as *coche* or *auto*.
- Bus is called *guagua* in Spain and Cuba and *camión* in Mexico.
- Transmilenio is the enormous public transportation system being used in Bogotá, Colombia.

Means of Transportation in Spain

Among the most common forms of public transportation in the majority of Spanish-speaking countries are taxis and buses. Both are often found in small and big cities but more often than not, buses transport commuters from one town to the next while taxis transport their passengers only within the limit of the city. Below is a list of Spain's common transportation vehicles:

- (el) bus, autobus - bus
- (la) buseta - small bus
- bus escolar - school bus
- (el) tren /trehn/ - train
- (el) carro - car
- (el) colectivo - shared taxi
- (el) taxi - taxi, cab
- (el) camion - truck
- (el) avión - plane
- (la) camioneta - van, pickup truck
- (la) avioneta - light aircraft
- (el) helicopter - helicopter
- (el) bote - small boat
- velero - sailboat

- (el) barco - ship
- (el) yate - yacht
- (la) canoa - canoe
- (la) motocicleta - motorcycle
- (la) bicicleta - bicycle
- (el) metro - subway
- (el) autocar - coach
- ambulancia - ambulance
- cohete – rocket

Important Basic Transportation Vocabulary and Phrases in Spanish

Travel is among the biggest reasons why people learn and master new languages. It can be quite hard to get around somewhere if you don't speak the language of the place you are going to. So, if you have plans to visit a Spanish-speaking country, you need to pay close attention to the words and phrases being used, especially in public transportation. After all, this might be your first concern the moment you arrive at your destination so you can get to the place where you want or need to go, whether it is to your hotel or anywhere else. Here is some basic vocabulary to learn to do this:

- departures – salidas
- arrivals – llegadas
- passport – el pasaporte
- money – el dinero
- suitcase – la maleta
- insurance - los seguros
- bag – el bolso

Useful Expressions and Actions

The following verbs will help you in moving around any Spanish-speaking country:

- viajar en bus - to travel by bus
- subir al bus - to get on the bus
- coger el bus - to catch the bus
- bajar del bus - to get off the bus
- pedir un taxi - ask for a cab
- ir a pie - to go on foot
- llegar - to arrive
- irse - to go
- salir - to leave, to depart
- abordar - to board
- desembarcar - to disembark
- embarcarse - to embark
- manejar, conducir - to drive (a car, a truck)
- montar - to ride (a bike, a motorcycle)
- pilotear - to fly (a plane)
- poner gasolina - to put gas

Below are some other useful expressions that may come in handy during your visit to a Spanish-speaking country:

- (la) tarjeta de viaje - travel card
- (el) pasaje de ida - one-way ticket
- (el) pasaje de ida y vuelta - round-trip ticket
- (la) estación - station
- (la) parada de bus - bus stop
- (el) trancón - traffic jam

- (la) ruta - route
- (el) viaje - trip
- el conductor - driver
- el transbordo - transfer
- pagar el boleto - pay for the ticket

Useful Transportation Phrases

- *¿Hablas Inglés?* (Do you speak English? -)
- *¿Cómo puedo ir a...?* (How can I get to...?)
- *Un boleto, por favor.* (One ticket, please.)
- *¿A qué hora sale el próximo autobús/tren para (Barcelona)?* (At what time does the next bus/train to (Barcelona) leave?)
- *¿De dónde sale el autobús/tren para (Madrid)?* (Where does the bus/train to (Madrid) leave from?)
- *¿Este autobús para en (Córdoba)?* (Does this bus stop in (Córdoba)?)
- *Me bajo en la próxima parada.* (I get off at the next stop.)

Important Public Transportation Phrases in Spanish

- estación de metro - metro station
- estación de ferrocarril - railway station
- taquillas de billetes - ticket office
- ventanilla - ticket window
- máquinas de billetes - ticket machines
- ventanilla de información - information window
- sala de espera - waiting room
- llegadas - arrivals

- salidas - departures
- vía - track
- andén - platform
- plano del metro - map of the metro
- línea de metro - metro line
- mapas de carreteras - train route map
- parada - stop
- horario - schedule / timetable

Traveling by Train in Spanish-Speaking Countries

When you buy train tickets, you have to ensure that you specify if you need a round-trip or a one-way ticket, the specific class you want to sit in and if there is a discount or a reduced rate.

- billete / boleto - ticket
- un billete / boleto de ida y vuelta - round-trip ticket
- un billete / boleto de ida solamente - one-way ticket
- la primera clase - first class
- segunda clase - second class
- tarifa reducida - reduced rate
- descuentos para estudiantes/ niños - discount for students/children
- tarifa normal - standard rate
- abonos - season tickets
- el horario - timetable
- precios - price
- el destino - destination

- el viaje – journey

Some questions you can ask when buying train tickets include:

- *¿Cuánto es un billete ?* (How much is a ticket?)
- *Quisiera un billete de ida y vuelta.* (I would like a round trip ticket.)
- *Quisiera un billete de ida.* (I would like a one-way ticket.)
- *¿Va usted a...?* (Do you go to...?)
- *¿Dónde puedo comprar un billete ?* (Where can I buy a ticket?)

Types of Train Tickets

Traveling by train in Spain is a cost-effective and quick way to discover and explore the country. There are three types of tickets available on the high speed AVE train, namely:

- preferente - business
- turista - tourist
- club - first

Prices may also vary according to your chosen time:

- llano -standard
- punta -peak
- valle -off-peak

Types of Trains

Depending on whether or not you are in a hurry, you can choose from any of the following types of trains common in Spanish-speaking countries:

- interurbano - regional express
- cercanías - commuter train or local train
- exprés - quick nighttime train
- rápido - quick daytime train

- estrellas - night trains

Once you are on the train, there are several areas that you might want to check out:

- portaequipaje - luggage rack
- coche comedor - dining car
- coches camas - sleeper or sleeping cars
- coche fumador - smoking car

Train Transportation Questions

If you are taking the train, don't forget to know the arrival and departure time. You also need to check the horario schedule, or better yet, you can also ask some questions to the station assistant.

- *¿A qué hora sale el tren?* (What time does the train leave?)
- *¿Cuándo sale el tren para ...?* (What time does the train for...leave?)
- *¿Cuándo llega el tren de ...?* (When does the train from...arrive?)
- *¿Cuánto tiempo dura el viaje?* (How long does the journey take?)
- *¿A qué hora llegará allí?* (When does it arrive there?)
- *¿Cuál es la próxima parada?* (What is the next stop?)
- *¿Cuántas paradas más hasta ...?* (How many more stops until...?)

It is also important to always be careful.

- *Por favor, no asomarse por la ventana.* (Do not lean out of the windows, please.)

Traveling by Bus in Spanish-Speaking Countries

It doesn't matter if you are a tourist who travels across the country on a luxury bus, an expat who wants to catch the local bus across town, or a backpacker who rides on one of the popular chicken buses, there are several key phrases you can use to catch the bus to make your Spanish trip easier, more fun, and more convenient.

- *¿Me puede avisar cuándo lleguemos a (...)?* (Can you tell me when we get to (...)?)
- *¿Me puede decir donde me bajo del autobús?* (Can you tell me where to get off the bus?)
- *¿Podría decirme cuando me tengo que bajar?* (Could you tell me when I have to get off?)
- *¿Ya pasó el autobús?* (Did the bus already come by?)
- *¿Me bajo aquí?* (Do I get off here?)
- *¿Tengo que cambiar de autobús?* (Do I have to change buses?)
- *¿Tengo que bajarme aquí?* (Do I have to get off here?)
- *¿Pasan autobuses los fines de semana?* (Do the buses run on weekends?)
- *¿Pasa el autobús en el fin de semana?* (Does the bus run on the weekend?)
- *¿Este autobús va al centro?* (Does this bus go downtown?)
- *¿Este autobús va a (...)?* (Does this bus go to (...)?)
- *¿Se para este autobús en (...)?* (Does this bus stop in (...)?)
- *¿Hasta qué hora pasa el autobús en la noche?* (How late does the bus run at night?)
- *¿Cuánto tarda en pasar el bus?* (How long before the bus comes?)
- *¿Cuánto cuesta el pasaje en autobús a (...)?* (How much is the bus fare to (...)?)

- *¿Cuánto es el pasaje de autobús? (How much is the bus fare?)*
- *¿Con qué frecuencia pasan los autobuses? (How often do the buses run?)*
- *Quiero bajarme en la próxima parada. (I'd like to get off at the next stop.)*
- *¿Es este el autobús a (...)? (Is this the bus to (...))?*
- *¿A qué hora tengo que tomar el autobús? (What time do I have to catch the bus?)*
- *¿A qué hora sale el último autobús? (What time does the last bus leave?)*
- *¿Cuál es la próxima parada? (What's the next stop?)*
- *¿Cuándo llega el próximo autobús? (When does the next bus arrive?)*
- *¿Cuándo pasa el próximo autobús? (When does the next bus come by?)*
- *¿Cuándo sale el próximo autobús a (...)? (When is the next bus to (...))?*
- *¿Dónde tomo el autobús a (...)? / ¿Dónde tomo el autobús a (...)? (Where do I catch the bus to go to (...))?*
- *¿De dónde sale el autobús? (Where does the bus leave from?)*
- *¿Dónde está la estación de autobuses? (Where is the bus station?)*
- *¿Dónde está la parada del autobús? (Where is the bus stop?)*
- *¿Dónde está la parada para ir a (...)? (Where is the bus stop to go to (...))?*
- *¿A qué hora es el próximo autobús a (...)? (What time is the next bus to (...))?*
- *¿Está ocupado este asiento? (Is this seat taken?)*

- *¿Cuánto dura el viaje?* (How long is the trip?)
- *¿Dónde puedo comprar un boleto?* (Where can I buy a ticket?)

Tips for Travelling by Bus, Train, and Other Public Transportations in Spain

Traveling in Spain is somewhat straightforward. The most part of preparation can be easily done from the comforts of your home before you go on your trip. For example, tickets can be bought from a travel agent or even online before you travel.

Most of the large Spanish cities and towns have their own websites complete with information about traveling around and to the area. It usually includes specific details about local trains and buses. Some bigger stations also have automatic ticket machines from which you can buy your tickets using your credit card that will let you travel to other stations around Spain.

Below are a few tips that can help you during your travel in Spain:

- Even though the names of most Spanish cities are just the same in Spanish and English, it is not unanimously the case. Make sure that you use the Spanish names for certain cities like Seville or Sevilla in Spanish.
- If you don't feel too confident about asking for and buying tickets and asking for other details in Spanish, a helpful tip is to write down your request or question. This is especially useful when time is short or in busy situations. This can also reduce the possibility that misunderstandings will occur.
- It is also useful to carry around some small maps. Every time you ask for directions, it will be easier for you to demonstrate on your map and you will also find it easier compared to listening to the directions spoken in a language you are not familiar with.
- Write down or print out important travel phrases and always have this with the rest of your travel documents. It can serve as your quick reference guide.

To get the best out of this vocabulary, it might also be better if you can review Spanish numbers and brush up on telling the time in Spanish.

Take note that transportation can differ from country to country, and as a result, some vocabulary might change as well. The bus is the perfect example here. Even though most Spanish speakers will understand autobus, locals might also use other names to refer to this means of transportation, such as guaga in some countries in Central America, colectivo in Argentina, and camion in Mexico.

Study the vocabulary in this chapter but don't forget to talk to locals for you to know the characteristic language customs and quirks of the Spanish-speaking destination you are visiting.

CHAPTER 8: Introducing & Talking about Yourself

Knowing how to start a conversation is one of the very first things you have to know for you to learn to speak Spanish. How will you even practice if you don't know how to strike a conversation in the first place? And of course, the best way to start any conversation is to introduce yourself.

Getting Started: Basic Vocabulary and Phrases Introduce Yourself in Spanish

Take a look at some of the basics of how you can introduce yourself to the Spanish speaking world:

- ¡Hola!

Wouldn't the world be boring if hello is the only word you can use to say hello to others? There are a lot of options to choose from if you want to greet other people. You can say hi, good evening, good afternoon, good morning, what's up, hey, and so much more.

When it comes to Spanish, you can also choose from more options aside from *hola* .

1. *Buenos días*. (Good morning.)
2. *Buenas tardes* . (Good afternoon/evening.)
3. *¿Qué hay?* (What's up?) (loosely translated)(This is a very informal version you can use only with family, friends, etc.)
4. *¿Qué tal?* (How's it going?) (A bit more informal)
5. *Buenas*. (Hello.) (This is something you will hear often on the streets or every time you walk into shops and others.)

- Yo me llamo...

After you say hello to someone, the next logical step is for you to tell them what your name is. There is no way that you can start a conversation with someone when you don't know that person's name or when that person doesn't know who you are. Again, you got several options here:

1. *Mi nombre es*. (This is a very practical option that means "My name is...")
2. *(Yo) me llamo...* (This is most commonly used with the literal translation "I call myself".)
3. *Soy**... (If you are a big fan of brevity, you will love this version that similar to saying "I'm...")

Getting Deeper

Even though it is a must that you know the other person's name for you to start a conversation with him or her, if this is all you have to say, you can expect that the chat is going to be a very short-lived one. What are the other things you can say about yourself, then?

- *Soy de... Vivo en...*

As mentioned earlier, *soy* is a verb that means "I am..." It is very helpful to remember that if you will follow it with the preposition *de* . This will then mean, "I am from..."

For example, *Soy de Chicago* means I am from Chicago.

But, just because you are from somewhere might not mean that you also live there. It would be wise to share this little piece of information about yourself to someone else. You can say *vivo en* that means I live in.

For example, *Soy de Chicago pero vivo en Madrid* means I am from Chicago, but I live in Madrid.

- *Soy...*

You see this verb again, and that is no surprise since this is quite important. One more thing you might want to mention about yourself is what you do or what your job is.

Soy un(a) estudiante/ profesor(a)/ dentista/ abogado(a) . (I am a student/ teacher/ dentist/ lawyer/)

Take note that there is no change in gender here.

- *Tengo X años.*

There is a bit of a difference when you say your age. Surprisingly, there is no need to use *estar* or *ser* for this one. You need to pay close attention since this is one thing that most English speakers often find themselves in trouble. You are not 20 years old in Spanish, and instead, you have 20 years.

Tengo 20 años. (I have 20 years.) This means that you are 20 years old.

- *Me gusta...*

Me gusta is also a useful expression you have to know when you want to introduce or talk about yourself. Many English speakers might find this

expression a bit tricky since its construction is somewhat different from how it is said in the English language. Its literal translation is “To me it is pleasing...”

To make it less complicated, you can just stick with using the construction with several verbs in the infinitive. You can say, “To me it is pleasing to do (insert verb here).”

Me gusta leer/ jugar al baloncesto/ ir al cin / cocinar/. (I like to read/ play basketball/ go to the movies / cook/.)

Step-by-Step Method to Introduce Yourself in Spanish

After learning some of the basic words and phrases used for introducing yourself in Spanish, below are steps you should follow to talk about yourself.

1. Hello, It’s nice to meet you.

Nice to meet you and hello are two phrases in Spanish that you must know. As stated earlier, any introduction will possibly start with any or both of these phrases.

Hola, es un placer conocerte. (Hello, it’s nice to meet you.)

2. My name is _____.

It is a simple phrase that means “my name is,” and you only need to add the phrase “Mi nombre es.” You can then say your name after it.

Mi nombre es _____. (My name is _____.)

3. I am from _____.

Where do you come from? Are you from Asia? Africa? Europe? America? Just add your country’s name to the phrase. In this example, Mexico is used.

Soy de México. (I’m from Mexico.)

4. I live in _____.

Where do you live right now? Add the name of your country or city if it is famous for the phrase. Mexico City will be used as an example because Mexico was used in the sample above.

Yo vivo en la Ciudad de México. (I live in Mexico City.)

5. I am ____ years old.

As stated earlier, the way you say your age in Spanish is different. You have to make yourself familiar with Spanish numbers for this, and these are not really difficult.

Tengo 27 años de edad. (I'm 27 years old.)

6. I am _____.

How about your position? Are you a yoga teacher? A teacher? A potato industry lawyer? Potato salesman? This is a very important question people love to ask. You just need to use *soy*, which means *I'm*, then add your specific position.

Soy maestro. (I'm a teacher.)

7. I've been learning Spanish for _____.

For how long have you been trying to learn? Have you been learning it for a year or for a month?

He estado aprendiendo español por un año. (I've been learning Spanish for a year.)

8. I'm learning Spanish at _____.

Do you learn Spanish at home or at school? It is a good line you should know and use every time you introduce yourself.

Estoy aprendiendo español en Spanish101.com. (I'm learning Spanish at Spanish101.com.)

9. One of my hobbies is _____.

This is now the time for you to move onto your hobbies or personal hobbies. You will surely need a line about your hobbies when you introduce yourself in Spanish.

Uno de mis pasatiempos es leer. (One of my hobbies is reading.)

10. I enjoy listening to music.

You can use another line to talk about your hobbies. You could use something else.

Me gusta escuchar música. (I enjoy listening to music.)

Now, you have learned the top 10 basic lines for introducing yourself in Spanish. There are still a lot more you will learn later on, but this is a simple and easy start that newbies can put to good use. After all, starting easy is what matters.

Other Methods to Introduce Yourself in Spanish

Even if you just know a little Spanish, you will find it easy to introduce yourself to a Spanish-speaking person. There are several methods of how you can go about it.

Method #1 to Introduce Yourself

Just follow these tips, and you will be well on your way to connect with someone even when the other person doesn't necessarily speak your own language.

1. To say hello or hi, just say "Hola" or "OH-la." This rhymes with "Lola" and note how Spanish has a silent letter h.
2. To introduce yourself, you can just say "Me llamo" then follow this with your name. For example, "*Hola, me llamo Rita*" means "Hi, I'm Rita."
3. To formally ask for the name of the other person, ask someone's name in a formal way, say "¿Cómo se llama usted?" This means, "What is your name?"
4. When talking to a child or in an informal setting, say "¿Cómo te llamas?" This also means, "What is your name?"
5. If the person responds, you can say "Mucho gusto." This phrase means "much pleasure" or "pleased to meet you" less literally.

Method #2 to Introduce Yourself

The second method might be a bit less common method of self introduction, but this is easier to learn and is also perfectly acceptable.

Majority of the steps here are just the same with the ones in the first method but in the second step wherein you are introducing yourself, you can "Hola"

followed by "soy" then your name. You pronounce soy just as how you do in English. "Hola, soy Rita" means "Hello, I'm Rita."

Method #3 to Introduce Yourself

This third method is also not as common in most areas, unlike the first one, but it is probably the most straightforward way for people whose first language is English.

You can use "Mi nombre es" on the second step and followed by your name. This means that if your name is Rita, you may say: "Hola, mi nombre es Rita."

No matter what specific method you choose to use, never be afraid to sound a bit silly. You will be understood if you follow these directions. This is not to mention that even the feeblest attempts of speaking Spanish will be highly honored and appreciated in almost all Spanish-speaking areas.

Vocabulary and Grammar behind These Introductions

There is no need for you to understand the exact meanings of what you are saying or what the grammatical relationships of the words are to each other when it comes to introducing yourself. However, if you are curious or if you have plans to seriously learn Spanish, you might be interested to know more about it.

Just like how you probably guessed it, hello and hola are essentially the same word. People who are familiar with etymology or the study of origins of words think that this word dates back to the 14th century at least before Spanish and English alike came to existence in their present form. Even though it is not clear how the term came about in Spanish, there is a chance that its origin can be traced back in the German language as a means of trying to get the attention of another person.

In method #1 above, *me* means "myself." It is obvious to see that it has an etymological relationship with "me" in English. *Llamo*, on the other hand, is a form of *llamar*, a verb, and this actually means "to call." So, when you say "*Me llamo Rita*," this is the direct equivalent of "I call myself Rita." *Llamar* is being used in many similar ways as "to call," like when calling a person over the phone or calling out to someone. In English and Spanish alike, verbs, where the person refers to doing something to herself or himself, are called reflexive verbs.

The main reason as to why there are two methods used with *llamar* to ask for a person's name is because Spanish sets some differences between informal and formal, or also known as familiar and formal ways of addressing people. This was also done in English before, with *thee*, *thine*, and *thou* being informal terms at a certain period. However, in contemporary English, *your* and *you* can be used in informal and formal situations alike. Despite the regional variations as to how Spanish distinguishes between these two forms, it will be safer for foreigners to use the formal form with adults and those who have authority figures.

Soy is one of the forms of *ser*, a verb, and this means "to be."

In the last method, *mi nombre es* is the word-for-word equivalent of "my name is." Similar to *soy*, *es* also comes from *ser*.

Introduce Yourself

Take a look at how you can introduce yourself in Spanish with the following common introductory questions as well as how you could answer them:

Como te llamas ? / Cuál es tu nombre? (What's your name?)

Mi nombre es.../Me llamo... (My name is...)

De dónde es usted? (Where are you from?)

Soy de... (I'm from...)

Cuantos años tienes? (How old are you?)

Tengo... años. (I'm... years old.)

Cuál es tu trabajo? (What's your job?)

Soy un/una... (I'm a/an...)

Tienes hermanos/hijos? (Do you have any siblings/children?)

Tengo... hermanos/hijos. (I have... siblings/children.)

No tengo... hermanos/hijos. (I don't have any siblings/children.)

Qué te gusta hacer? (What do you like to do?)

Me gusta... (I like...)

Sample Conversations for Self Introduction

Now that you have learned the basics, it is time for you to put everything together. Here is a couple of sample from people who are introducing themselves. Both of them are native English speakers who study or live in English. These examples are going to use the phrases mentioned above together with some additional information about themselves.

Sample Conversation #1:

Hola, me llamo Nick y soy de los Estados Unidos. Vivo en España y soy profesor de inglés. Tengo veintiséis años. Tengo una mujer que se llama Ana y un perro pequeño cuyo nombre es Joey. Llevo 8 años estudiando español, y tengo un masters en la lingüística española. Me gusta estudiar español porque siempre me han gustado las lenguas y las palabras y poder hablar con otro grupo de gente es algo que puede ser muy gratificante y beneficioso.

English Translation: Hello, my name is Nick, and I'm from the United States. I live in Spain and am an English teacher. I'm 26 years old. I have a wife named Ana and a little dog whose name is Joey. I have been studying Spanish for 8 years, and I have a Masters in Spanish Linguistics. I like studying Spanish because I have always like languages and words, and being able to speak with another group of people is something that can be very rewarding and beneficial.

Sample Conversation #2:

¡Buenos días! Soy Ana. Tengo veintisiete años. Soy de Chicago, pero ahora vivo en una ciudad de España que se llama Zamora. Soy profesora de inglés en un instituto. Al volver a los Estados Unidos, voy a seguir con mis estudios.

Me gustaría hacer un doctorado en la literatura española. Pero, por ahora, estoy contenta de vivir en España y ir mejorando mi español y aprendiendo más de este país tan maravilloso. En mi tiempo libre me gusta leer, ver la tele, y pasar tiempo con mis amigos, mi marido y mi perro.

Estudio español porque la historia del país me fascina. No es solo eso, sino también la cultura me encanta y la gente es muy amable.

English Translation: Good morning! I'm Ana. I'm 27 years old. I'm from Chicago, but now I live in a Spanish city called Zamora. I'm an English

teacher in a high school. Upon returning to the United States, I'm going to continue my studies.

I would like to get a doctorate in Spanish literature. But for now, I'm happy living in Spain and improving my Spanish and learning more about this wonderful country. In my free time, I like to read, watch TV, and spend time with my friends, my husband, and my dog.

I study Spanish because the history of the country fascinates me. It's not only this, but also I love the culture, and the people are lovely.

Introducing yourself is no doubt a very crucial aspect of taking your initial steps into learning and speaking the Spanish language. If you wish your language to get to a higher level, you have to practice how to speak it. And if you couldn't even tell someone who you are, how will you expect to engage in conversations with them?

The words, phrases, and tips mentioned above are only some of the many ways to let people know more about who you are. Since you now have a good base to get started, you can go out there and start looking for someone who can talk to. Try to practice as much as possible, and you will be well on your way to becoming a better Spanish speaker in no time at all!

CHAPTER 9: Useful Phrases When Shopping

Hand-sewn scarves made from alpaca hair, fresh ceviche, a cold cerveza, refreshing coconut water or *agua de coco* and tapas. No matter what you want and crave for, the Spanish-speaking world got you covered.

Unfortunately, money won't buy you everything you need and want. You also need the right phrases and words for you to find the best shops and get the most reasonable prices.

How disappointing it would be to spend your whole afternoon looking for handmade alpaca sheets only to end up with machine-made polyester blend instead. This kind of disaster can happen even to the most seasoned travelers.

Unless you learn and master how to go shopping like the locals and bargaining with the shopkeepers, you will always stay as a complete gringo or foreigner. Aside from that, how else will you get the perfect souvenirs to bring back home with you? The last thing you want is to be the traveler who only brings back some corny souvenir shirts.

Shop Like a Boss in Spanish – Why Is It Important?

Every time you travel to any Spanish-speaking country, it is only expected that you go shopping. That's just how things work. You will need some basic supplies like foods, toiletries, and maybe even a few medicines. You also need souvenirs and more this and that. This is the point when you wouldn't want to go on a shopping spree like an obvious foreigner or *extranjero* because your goal is to shop like a pro.

Below are some of the top reasons why you should know a few important shopping vocabularies in Spanish:

- Markets are great. Why will you bother to go abroad if you won't explore the sights, tastes, smells, and sounds of the local markets?

- You will stay oriented. Equipping yourself with this vocabulary can help you locate things. You could ask for recommendations from locals as to where you can purchase some quality items for lower prices. It will also prevent you from getting lost during your trip.
- Keep yourself safe from getting ripped off. When you are at the market, you can score better deals when you can affirm your knowledge and don't stammer or stutter over prices and vocabulary. If you sound like the foreigner as you are, people will assume you have no idea what you are doing, and they might just charge you even more.
- Always stay on your feet. As expected, markets are also among the top and most common places where foreigners can get robbed. A pickpocket can literally rob you or shopkeepers may overcharge you for products. When you speak confidently, and you sound like you really know what you are doing, you can lower the chances that you will experience such misfortunes.
- The culture of Latin America includes bargaining. It doesn't mean that people will try to take advantage of you or be cruel to you. They just want to get the best prices possible, and they do it even with their fellow countrymen. Don't expect that there won't be a small debate before your money can leave your hands. It is natural and normal, and people don't find it offensive if you try to lowball them. It is merely one aspect of buying something. Just make sure you don't try to bargain at more formal establishments such as department stores and supermarkets. Do this only with individual salespeople and at smaller marketplaces.
- Try to sound cool like locals, and do it casually. The vocabulary you will find here is important to help you become more fluent in Spanish. You can break this out as you chat with friends and recount your adventures as you shop for souvenirs in the market.

- Bargaining is also a form of skill. After you practice with Spanish street vendors, you will soon discover that you also got better as you negotiate with English-speaking vendors in other areas. Also, bargaining in Spanish is a great speaking practice. You will be able to think on your feet a sound more fluent.

Essential Spanish Words and Phrases to become a Savvy Shopper

Ir de Compras (Going Shopping)

- entrada - entrance
- salida - exit —
- horario de atención - business hours
- abierto - open
- cerrado - closed

You might see a notice that says “cerrado al mediodía” and this means closed at noon. It doesn’t mean that they will be closed exactly at noon and instead, the idea here is that the shop will be closed during lunch hour.

- (Latin America/Spain), jale (Latin America), tire - pull
- empuje – push

Such signage will ensure that you won’t look like a fool as you angrily force the doors in the exact wrong direction.

- feriado – holiday/long weekend

Las Tiendas (The Shops)

Do you need or want to know where you can buy things? If yes, you should know how to ask for the right and exact type of store.

- tienda - shop/store
- local - storefront

- tiendita - little shop (selling a plethora of little things)
- grandes almacenes - large shopping depot, storehouse
- boutique - boutique
- mercado - market
- supermercado - supermarket
- ferretería - hardware store
- centro de compras - shopping center
- mercado o feria artesanal - artesanal market (this is where you go for souvenirs or recuerdos that were handcrafted (hechos a mano).)
- centro comercial - mall
- agencia de viajes - travel agency
- carnicería - butcher
- cafetería - café, snack bar, buffet
- licorería - liquor store
- pastelería - bakery (desserts)
- panadería - bakery (bread)
- pescadería - fish stand
- farmacia - pharmacy
- peluquería - hair salon
- florería - flower shop
- joyería - jewelry store
- gasolinera - gas station (remember this word during your trip in latin america since this usually a great place to make change for your large bills, atms, and go for the bathroom.)
- juguetería - toy store

- librería - book store (this falsely sounds like “library,” but a library is called biblioteca.)
- tienda de ropa - clothing store
- papelería - paper/office supply store
- tienda de deportes - sports store
- zapatería - shoe store
- tienda de música - music store

¿Dónde comprar? (Where to Buy?)

It is not enough that you just know what you need or want to buy since you should also know where it is. Below are some sample questions you can ask:

¿Conoce un lugar donde venden _____? (Do you know where they sell _____?)

¿Conoce un lugar donde realizan _____? (Do you know a place where they make/do/perform_____?)

If you need the expert opinion of a local to help you make a decision, you can start a conversation with someone and ask:

¿Conoce algún _____ por aquí cerca? (Do you know of a _____ around here?)

You could also try to be more specific to explain the types of qualities you expect the place to have. You can use a question like:

¿Dónde queda la tienda de ropa más (cercana/chévere/económica/?) (Where is the (closest/coolest/cheapest) clothing store?)

You just need to insert one more type of store apart from *tienda de ropa*, and you can ask about pretty much anything.

If faced with some good choices, but you are unsure which is a better option, you can ask, “¿Cuál me recomienda?” (Which one do you recommend to me?)

Cositas (Little Things)

When you go shopping, you want to say all sorts of things. Whether you need restaurant and food vocabulary, soccer equipment, textile, and artisanal items, here are some words you might encounter and hear at street markets.

- artesano(a) - craftsman
- artesanías - artisanal goods
- mamacitas - affectionate term for women manufacturers of artisanal goods
- cooperativa - cooperative (It is a great term to hear in artisanal markets, since goods crafted, distributed, then sold by a cooperativa benefit a community group. These community cooperatives are required to have a Fair Trade certification.
- proyecto comunitario - community project (Crafting artisanal goods is usually a community endeavor so you might want to ask about the person or people behind the product you are buying. As much as possible, try to support local endeavors.
- Comercio Justo - Fair Trade
- organic - organic
- de la selva / jungle - from the jungle
- De la montaña / del monte (bosque) - from the mountains / from the forest
- de la playa / del mar - from the beach / from the sea
- todo natural - ,
- casero/a - homemade
- hecho/a a mano - handmade
- tallado/a - carved
- tejido/a - knitted
- cosido/a - sewn

- porcelana - porcelain
- cerámico/a - ceramic
- fibras - fibers
- uña, garra - claw
- diente de (tiburón, tigre, tigrillo) - (shark's, tiger's, large cat's) tooth
- concha - seashell
- tinte - dye
- semilla - seed

Textiles (Textiles)

Prior to discussing prices of textiles, you have to identify what you are buying in the first place. “¿Qué tipo de tela es?” (What type of fabric is this?) or “¿Qué material es?” (What material is this?). Don't forget to double-check tags.

- tela - fabric
- cuero - leather
- algodón - cotton
- franela - flannel
- lana - wool
- terciopelo - velvet
- licra - lycra
- de oveja - from sheep
- de alpaca - from alpaca

Cómo Pedir (How to Ask)

Is it necessary to be super polite? After all, the saleslady you were talking to was really nice. Spanish learners might find it a bit challenging to ask for things. When talking to older people, you might want to stay on the safe

side and stick with polite grammar and phrases in the third person. The following polite phrases can be used when interacting with vendors.

Muchas gracias, señor(a). (Thank you very much, sir/ma'am.)

Quisiera uno de esos, por favor. (I would like one of those, please.)

If you are talking to an elderly woman, you can use *doña* to show a higher level of respect. For more casual encounters, you are generally free to stick with less formal language. Less formal language is actually encountered if you want to sound more local. Below are a few common informal phrases you can use for shopping situations:

Dame uno, por favor. (Give me one, please.)

¿Me pasas eso, por favor? (Can you pass me that, please?)

There are several ways for you to explain your likes and dislikes to people. This can help them understand the items you are interested in and those that you aren't.

Este(a) no me gusta tanto. (I don't like this one so much.)

Quiero este(a)/Quiero ese(a). (I want this/that.)

Me gustan aquellos(as) de allá. (I like those over there.)

¡Me encanta este(a)! (I really like / love this one!)

Don't expect that you will always get exactly what you want. There are times when stores might run out of things you are looking for. If you are out of luck, you might hear these things?

Ya no tenemos. (We don't have that anymore.)

Se acabó. (We ran out of that.)

Calidad (Quality).

Your goal when you want to buy anything anywhere is to look for "Los Tres B's" or The Three B's, namely *bueno, bonito y barato* or good, nice, and cheap. Save this in your mind and make this your new mantra every time you visit the Mercado.

Below are several words you need to know when talking about the quality of items.

- bonito - pretty

- elegante - elegant
- barato - cheap
- economic - affordable
- feo - ugly
- lujoso - luxury
- hermoso - beautiful

If you trust the shopkeeper enough to help you choose the right items for you, you want to ensure that they know you are paying attention.

Deme los más bonitos/jugositos/maduros/, por favor. (Give me the prettiest/ juiciest/ripest ones please.)

If you end up with a lower quality or damaged item, such as one broken egg out of a dozen, return this to the vendor then say “*Cámbieme este, por favor*” (Change this one for me, please).

Tamaños y Tallas (Sizes)

Did you figure out the difference between a talla and a tamaño? Both of them mean size but you are referring to different kinds of objects here. This one is rather a sneaker. Talla is basically used for shoes and clothes while tamaño is applicable for other items.

¿Qué talla de pantalón lleva usted? (What pants size do you wear?)

¿Cuál es la talla de su camisa? (What’s your shirt size?)

¿Qué número/talla de zapatos lleva usted? (What shoe size do you wear?)

As far as sizes are concerned, make sure you translate sizes into European sizes before going shopping, or you might have to go through a few trials and errors to determine what fits. You might still need to try on several items anyway since shoes and sizes are cut different in a bit in various corners of the globe. Shoes are usually narrower and smaller in Latin America, while pants are often cut for much shorter legs.

- talla (pequeña/mediana/grande) - small/medium/large size
- no me queda (bien) - it doesn’t fit me / suit me well.

- me queda bien - it fits me / suits me well.
- me queda muy grande - it's too big on me.
- apretado/a - tight
- suelto/a - loose
- me apreta aquí - it's too tight here.
- ¿Puedo probármelo/a? - Can I try it on?

Hablar del precio (Talking About Prices)

¿Cuánto cuesta/vale? (How much is this?)

¿Cuál es el precio más bajo que me puedes dar? (What's the lowest price you can give me?)

¿A cuánto está? (How much are you asking for this?)

There are times when it can turn into a fiasco when actually buying products in small markets and shops. Unless the store is well-equipped for high volumes of tourists or shoppers, there is a big chance that no one will have any change. After you agreed on a certain price and you are ready to, ask the vendor, “*¿Me puede cambiar un billete de 20?*” (Can you give me change for a 20?). If the shopkeeper replies with a frustrated head shake or a sigh, you know you will have to embark on a journey to get some change. The person who makes the sale is often in charge of looking for a change from their nearby acquaintances and friends. They will walk around and ask “*Présteme monedas*” (Loan me some change!) or “*¿Tiene cambio/suelto?*” (Do you have any change?)

How to Bargain Smartly

This is now the time when you will have to know how you can bargain properly to get the best deals possible. This is what you have always wanted to learn, anyway. Instead of memorizing nice phrases for negotiation, there are phrases only true marketplace insiders know. These are the phrases you would want to invest on your own, or you can hear these from locals as they try to be persuasive after a long time of innocently overpaying for items or getting ripped off.

Your goal is to sound like an actual local when you go shopping. You would like to take vendors by surprise and watch their eyes gleam with respect or even amusement. There are phrases you can use to show you actually know what you are doing and you mean serious business.

For starters, there is something good shopkeepers will happily do for you, and that is, to offer you package deal to buy more things. Whether you are on your own shopping for several items or you are with your friends, try to make as many purchases as you can happen in just one place. If possible, avoid scattering your purchases across various vendors.

Look for a shopkeeper who sells most of the things you need to purchase and ask the vendor, “¿Me puede hacer un descuento si compro _____?” Insert all the products you wish to buy in the blank space. Try to sound casual as if you suddenly thought of buying two more items to save more cash. Once the shopkeeper answers with the expected “sí,” this is the time to name your price.

For example, you and two of your friends each want to purchase a beautiful alpaca scarf from a certain cart. The vendor already informed you that the price is \$10 apiece. That’s pretty expensive, right? Well, you can still get a good deal from this. Look at the vendor shrewdly and say “Dame 3 por 20” with confidence. Say it as a statement and not as a question. Don’t sound unsure, apologetic, or soft. You will still pay well at around \$7 per piece. You are not robbing the vendor. It is fair enough, and he will surely agree to the price instantly. This is better for you, yet he knows that someone else may even try for something lower.

On your next trip, you were on your own, and you want to purchase a pretty handcrafted necklace. You passed by one vendor offering a necklace for \$14 while the one you are talking to now is asking for a price almost twice than that, \$22. Will you just take this price? No, you will handle it as if you are a local.

Say “*La señora de allá me lo dejó en \$12.*” (The lady over there would give it to me for \$12) or “*Pero allá cuesta \$12*” (Over there it costs \$12). This will let the vendor know that you are comparing prices and asking around. You are aware of the prices. The vendor may even say things such as how his necklace is a better one. Or can also get a new price that is in the ballpark. Let’s say the vendor tells you “*Okay, te lo dejo en \$15.*”

You can try the following phrases to convince him to give it to you for the lowest price possible:

¿Cuál es el precio final final? (What's your final final price?) – It may sound a bit risky, but it may also work.

Bah, ¡déjame en \$12 y me lo llevo ! (Leave me at \$12, and I'll take it now!)

¡Ya para llevármelo ahorita! Para no volver... (Alright already, let me walk away with this now! So I don't have to come back...) It pretty much says that both of you know that you are just playing a game, so they better give you a good price to get it over and done with.

¿Cómo arreglamos? (How do we fix this?) It will make the vendor see you as a nice guy who just wants to find a good solution. Both of you know that some prices are much better, but you choose to purchase from the vendor.

¿Cuánto es lo último para llevármelo ahorita? (What's the lowest price if I buy it on the spot?)

Aahh, porfaaa. (Awww, please...) There are two options you can try if you want to say this phrase. You can look tired of the price bickering, and you are on the verge of walking away, or you can also put on your big sad puppy eyes.

Tome, tome (C'mon, take my money already.)

Shopping for decorations and souvenirs is a different concern since these are non-essentials. On the other hand, what if you want to shop for some delicious tropical fruits? You heard about how locals pay cheaper, and you have also seen the prices. Or maybe you have spent some time in the town and you are fed up with people who still don't offer good prices for your day to day items. Below are some go-to phrases you can use to handle such a situation.

Amigo, yo sé cómo son los precios. (Hey buddy, I know how the prices are.)

¡Vivo aquí y gano un sueldo ecuatoriano! (I live here and earn an Ecuadorian salary!) Just insert the specific country where you are bargaining in. If you don't want to spend more than one dollar for something, you will surely appreciate this phrase.

Pero la semana pasada usted me lo dejó en_____ (But last week, you gave me __[price]__.) There are times when prices of stuff in the markets fluctuate during a change of seasons or when there is poor crop. Never assume that people are just lying to you. With the use of this phrase, you are pretty much saying that you are familiar with the price and you even imply that the same person offered you the right price in the past and you are curious about what happened with the sudden price change. You can get a true answer, or you may also get a reasonably lowered price.

Finally, make sure all your transactions end with “muy amable” (thanks / you’re very kind) or “Muchas gracias,” (thanks so much).

With this knowledge, you will soon negotiate better and wiser with vendors!

CHAPTER 10: Vocabulary for Conversing with a Pharmacist or

Doctor

Whether you are traveling to Latin America or Spain on business or vacation, there are some simple medical phrases in Spanish that you will surely want to add to your current Spanish language survival kit.

It is never easy to be surrounded by a foreign language, especially when you need to navigate the local health care system or you ever find yourself face to face with a pharmacist or doctor and you have to explain your particular illness. Being equipped with some medical Spanish phrases can make the whole experience so much easier.

With a bit of luck, you shouldn't find yourself in a situation where you will need to use these medical Spanish words and phrases. However, it is still a must that you make yourself familiar with these. You might be in a situation where you need to purchase a medicine from a pharmacy, and you have to explain where you feel the pain and what your particular problem is. Or maybe you just need to get a bandage, a few sleeping pills for your long haul flight, or a bottle of cough syrup.

- Tenemos una emergencia. - It's an emergency! / We have an emergency.
- ¡Es una emergencia! - It's an emergency!

Common Medical Spanish Phrases You Can Use and Hear at the Doctor's Office

- Tengo dolor. - I have pain.
- Tengo dolor de estómago. - I have a stomach ache
- Tengo dolor de cabeza. - I have a headache.
- Tengo dolor de garganta. - I have a sore throat.
- Tengo dolor de muelas. - I have a tooth ache.
- Tengo dolor de oídos. - I have sore ears.
- No me siento bien. - I'm feeling sick.

- Estoy enfermo. - I'm sick.
- Me siento débil. - I feel weak.
- Me siento mal. - I feel unwell.

Spanish Medical Phrases to Describe Where It Hurts

These phrases can come in handy if you want to describe where it hurts.

- Me duele el brazo. - My arm hurts.
- Me duele la cabeza. - My head hurts.
- Me duele la pierna. - My leg hurts.
- Me duele la rodilla. - My knee hurts.
- Me duelen los dedos. - My fingers hurt.
- Me duele el pie. - My foot hurts.
- Me duele el tobillo. - My ankle hurts.
- Me duele el hombro.- My shoulder hurts.
- Me duele el ojo. - My eye hurts.
- Me duele la muñeca. - My wrist hurts.
- Me duele la espalda. - My back hurts.

Spanish Medical Phrases Doctors Use When Asking about Symptoms

Once you visit a doctor, the professional will ask you about the symptoms you are feeling:

- ¿Tiene dolor? - Do you have pain?
- ¿Que tipo de síntomas tiene? - What kind of symptoms do you have?
- ¿Donde le duele? - Where does it hurt (you)?

- ¿Tiene fiebre? - Do you have fever?

Illnesses

These are some of the common conditions and illnesses in Spanish.

- la alergia - allergy
- la diabetes - diabetes
- el resfrío - cold
- la gripe - flu
- la artritis - arthritis
- la picadura de abeja/avispa - bee/wasp sting
- la insolación - sunstroke
- la herida - injury
- la fractura – fracture

People

- El doctor/La doctora/ La médica/ El médico/ - The [doctor](#)
- La enfermera/El enfermero - The nurse
- La cirujana/El cirujano - The surgeon
- La/El dentista - The dentist
- La oculista/El oculista - The eye doctor
- La paramédica/El paramédico/ - The paramedic
- La otorrinolaringóloga/El otorrinolaringólogo - The ear, nose and throat doctor

Spanish Medical Phrases to Use at the Pharmacy

Symptoms

- estoy enfermo - I'm ill
- me encuentro mal - I don't feel good
- me duele la cabeza - I've a headache
- me duele ... - my ... hurts
- el dolor - pain
- el escozor - stinging
- el sarpullido - rash
- la inflamación, la irritación - inflammation
- el picor - irritation
- el resfriado - cold
- estoy constipado - I'm bunged up (with a cold)
- estoy resfriado - I have a cold
- la tos - cough
- vomitar - to vomit
- toser - to cough
- desmayar - to faint
- la fiebre - fever
- la gripe - flu
- el esguince - sprain
- el corte - cut
- el calambre - cramp
- la rotura, la fractura – break, fracture
- me he roto ... - I've broken my ...
- me he cortado - I've cut myself

Anatomy.

- el ojo - eye
- la cabeza - head
- el cuello - neck
- la espalda - back
- la garganta - throat
- la mano - hand
- el brazo - arm
- el dedo - finger, toe
- la pierna - leg
- el estómago - stomach
- el pulmón – lung
- la barriga – belly, tummy

Treatments

- la medicina - medicine
- el comprimido - tablet
- la pastilla - pill
- el jarabe - syrup
- la pomada – cream, ointment
- el antibiótico - antibiotic
- el antiinflamatorio - anti-inflammatory
- el antihistamínico - antihistamine
- el inhalador - inhaler
- el paracetamol - paracetamol
- el colirio - eyedrops

Other Things to Say

- el accidente - accident
- el hospital - hospital
- urgencias - accident and emergency
- la farmacia - chemist
- la ambulancia - ambulance
- la farmacia de guardia - out-of-hours pharmacy
- ¡pobrecito! - poor thing!
- ¿cómo te encuentras? - How do you feel?
- llama una ambulancia - call an ambulance
- tengo que ir al hospital - I need to go to the hospital

Sample Conversations

Sample Conversation #1:

Doctor: *Tengo entendido que le duele el estómago.* (I understand that your stomach has been hurting.)

Maria: *Sí.* (Yes.)

Doctor: *¿El dolor es constante, o viene y se va?* (Is the pain constant, or does it come and go?)

Maria: *Viene y se va.* (It comes and goes.)

Doctor: *¿Está libre de dolor a veces?* (Are there times when you are free of pain?)

Maria: *Sí.* (Yes.)

Doctor: *¿El dolor le viaja a otra parte del cuerpo?* (Does the pain travel to another part of your body?)

Maria: *No.* (No.)

Doctor: *¿Se pone peor cuando come?* (Does eating make it worse?)

Maria: *Sí.* (Yes.)

Doctor: *¿Eructa o expulsa gases?* (Are you burping or passing gas?)

Maria: *Sí, las dos cosas.* (Yes, both.)

Doctor: *Le voy a examinar el vientre .* (I'm going to examine your abdomen.)

Sample Conversation #2:

Rosa: *Buenas tardes. Creo que he comido algo en mal estado .* (Good afternoon. I think I've eaten something that was off.)

Pharmacist: *¿Cuáles son los síntomas?* (What are the symptoms?)

Rosa: *Tengo náuseas, dolor de estómago, y me ha salido un sarpullido.* (I've got nausea, a stomach ache and I've come out in a rash.)

Pharmacist: *Desde luego, parece una intoxicación alimentaria.* (It definitely sounds like food poisoning.)

Rosa: *¿Y tiene algún remedio?* (Have you got something for it?)

Pharmacist: *Tome estas pastillas, y si mañana no se encuentra mejor, vaya al médico.* (Take these tablets, and if you don't feel better tomorrow, go to the doctor.)

CHAPTER 11: Learn to Deal with Business Situations and Discuss the Weather

Business and weather are two important things that you also need to learn if you wish to study the Spanish language. Spanish is no doubt, one of the most widely spoken languages all over the world. A big chunk of the population not just uses Spanish as their mother tongue as they also bring it with them if when they move to nations such as the United States, the United Kingdom, and elsewhere.

With the popularity of Spanish, it is obvious that this is something that you should know. Spanish is also extremely useful when doing business as it can open up doors of opportunities for you that English-only speakers will never get to enjoy. If you have decided to take that leap and learn Spanish, there are several business-related phrases to help you get by whatever your situation or level is.

Spanish Phrases to Use in Business Situations

1. La reunión es a las... (The meeting is at...)

Reuniones (meetings) play a big role in all business environments, and it is a key phrase you should know when your schedule is filled with meeting after meeting.

2. Necesito ayuda, por favor. (I need help, please.)

Although there are times when you have to endure it until you can, there will also come a time when it is an absolute necessity to ask for help. Be very polite about it by adding por favor at the end, and you will never regret your decision at all.

3. Estoy en ello. (I'm on it.)

Everyone knows how today the business world has become a cutthroat and fast-paced environment, so see to it that you also let your Spanish-speaking colleagues that you are on top of everything even if you are not.

4. Enviar un correo electrónico. (Send an e-mail.)

Most correspondence and communication both inside and outside the world of business takes place online. Although technically Enviar un correo electrónico is the right way of saying Send an email. You can also get rid of the word electrónico for you to sound more like a native speaker.

5. La sala de juntas. (The meeting room.)

It is almost impossible to work in an office without hearing la sala de juntas every now and then. Many of your reunions may even take place there.

6. Perder el tiempo. (Waste time.)

While it is always possible to waste time in meetings, you can try to reduce gossips so that people won't assume that you are intentionally wasting time in the first place.

7. Tiene experiencia en estas cosas. (He/she has experience with these things.)

It can come in handy if you know the specialties and skills of your colleagues. After all, if you ever need help in the future, it just makes sense to look for the most experienced person.

8. Estoy trabajando a tope. (I'm working full-out.)

It is a good phrase to have handy if you feel overwhelmed with all the work piling in front of you. This is the polite way of saying that you have enough already.

9. ¿Puede decirle al jefe que estoy enfermo y que no podré venir hoy? (Can you tell the boss I'm sick and can't come in today?)

Everyone needs personal or sick days, and you will need a great phrase to tell your boss if you feel a bit under the weather. You may even impress your Spanish-speaking employer if you inform them about it using their native language.

10. Me pongo en ello ahora. (I'll get to it right now.)

Do you have an impending deadline that requires you to set aside everything else. This is the phrase that will let your colleagues know that task at hand is your priority. This can also be a way to get someone off back if they continue to ask you to do something else.

11. Contrato fijo/indefinido. (Permanent work contract.)

All jobs need a good amount of negotiation, and it is good if you know how you can get exactly what you want. Contrato fijo/indefinido is permanent and contrato temporal means you will be on board on temporary basis.

12. La comercialización es de alta prioridad. (Marketing is a top priority.)

It might be a bit odd to say this if you just have basic Spanish knowledge, but if you are at the conversational level, this phrase is perfect for the workplace. Using this will make you sound knowledgeable.

Spanish Weather Vocabulary

Talking about the weather is undoubtedly the most interesting conversation, the smallest of small talks, and the ultimate icebreaker no matter where you go.

The weather is one thing everyone knows about. It is also something everyone has an opinion on, making this a great topic for conversations if you are just getting started in learning Spanish.

Do you want to be genial at the market? Does the silence in the elevator make you feel awkward? Why not discuss the weather?

Spanish expressions related to water can be broadly broken down into three primary categories. These are times when the weather is, times when there is some kind of weather, and times when the weather does.

Times When the Weather "Is"

In these weather conditions, you have to use *estar* instead. You probably recall this as the verb that means to be, and this is used to discuss a non-permanent state. It fits here because the weather is definitely something not permanent in this world.

- Está despejado - It is clear
- Está nublado - It is cloudy
- Está soleado - It is sunny
- Está tormentoso - It is stormy
- Está lloviendo - It is raining

- Está ventoso - It is windy
- Está nevando - It is snowing

Times When the Weather "Does"

There are weather phrases where you will use hacer, a verb that means to make or to do. In this case, this is used for describing what the weather does.

- Hace frío - It is cold
- Hace calor - It is hot
- Hace fresco - It is cool

There are times when you can also sum up everything with these expressions:

- Hace mal tiempo - The weather is bad
- Hace buen tiempo - The weather is nice

Times When "There is" Some Weather

Finally, there are cases when you use verb form hay in order to imply that there is some sort of exciting weather.

- Hay niebla - It is foggy (literally "there is fog")
- Hay viento - It's windy (literally "there is wind")

Hay, hace, está? What is the rule here?

Hace is typically used for describing the weather's general feel like it is cold or warm or windy. Está and hay are more specific in general.

You can spend lots of time trying to understand and figure out certain situations, but it is just best that you remember every delicious piece of weather vocabulary as a phrase. This will keep you from getting stuck on whether you should use hay or hace.

Exciting Weather Expressions in Spanish

There are several pretty colorful English expressions about the weather, such as raining cats and dogs. The same also applies in Spanish.

Tuck up the following expressions up your sleeve when it is raining really hard:

- ¡Llueve a cántaros! - It's raining pitchers/buckets!
- ¡Llueve a mares! - It's raining oceans!

If all the rain gets you down or if someone you know is having some difficulties in life, this rain-phrase also means "this too will pass":

- Siempre que llovió, paró - Whenever it rained, it stopped.

These phrases are used when it is cold enough to freeze off everything:

- ¡Hace un frío que pela! - It's so cold it burns your skin!
- ¡Me estoy congelando! - I'm freezing!

When the weather becomes a bit warmer:

- ¡Ay, qué calor! - What heat!
- ¡Es un horno! - It's an oven!

CHAPTER 12: Practice & Revision of Your Spanish Vocabulary

Spain is an amazing place, a country rich in history dotted with snow-capped mountains, sophisticated cities, vast monuments, and stone castles. And if you feel like you are now ready to explore the country yourself, you could now start practicing and revising your Spanish vocabulary before you pack your bags and go.

Everyone will surely remember and treasure those days as they walk through the lovely streets and greet the smiling faces of locals. Sadly, a lot of people often ruin these first impressions by going on their Spanish trip without even trying to improve or practice their Spanish vocabulary at all.

Once they set foot on the country, the experience is not as rich and pleasant as they expected it to be, and they might even encounter some translation

problems. After a few years, these stories of cute and innocent mistakes may sound funny, and you might get a good laugh as you remember them.

But, if it is actually happening in the present, you may feel a horrible sense of shame about how you were so careless to the point that you will wish that you took the time and made an effort to actually practice Spanish.

Read on some helpful tips on how you can practice your grammar and speaking skills before you go on your Spain trip or any trip to other Spanish-speaking countries. These will help you avoid getting into embarrassing situations and just have a great and memorable time during your stay!

Start by Practicing and Honing Your Spanish Grammar

Can you say that you know and are familiar with Spanish grammar? Yes, pretty much everyone has heard about how Spanish is among the easiest to learn languages in the world, but it wouldn't hurt if you double-check all the rules you already know.

Most students who apply to Spanish schools such as universities and colleges just think that it will be easy to do their admission essay and that they don't need any grammar once they are done with it. They assume that others will understand them. Well, don't go down this wrong route of thinking. Practice your grammar and your Spanish as a whole because you will need this every single day.

Below are several ways on how you can practice your Spanish grammar to make the process easier:

- Consistent approach – Try to spend 10 to 15 minutes a day to master your Spanish grammar. You can start one to two months before you travel. This doesn't sound that scary, right? You just need 15 minutes every day, and you will become better once the day of your trip finally arrives. You can also use any type of educational material, including online resources and textbooks. You can also look for a teacher who can explain to you everything you will need.

- Books – Reading can also help you memorize and recall grammatical structures. Books give you an image or context related to grammatical patterns. It will help you get a better understanding of what you want to learn while letting you remember the basic rules. Go for books originally written in Spanish since this can provide you a better grip in practicing Spanish grammar.
- Magazines, newspapers, and blogs – It is a specific type of reading. Some resources make use of specialized language. Media, on the other hand, is among the few sources that will let you practice the new language you will face abroad. It will surely help you take your Spanish grammar to the next level.

Pay Attention to Your Pronunciation

There are several things you should and shouldn't do when practicing and revising your Spanish vocabulary. There are a few improper recommendations that can mislead people who want to learn Spanish productive and consistently.

Dos

- Podcasts, video blogs, radio, and others – Sources with chatting will be enough here, including sports or music radio with interview breaks, interesting programs, or beauty, lifestyle, and how-to video blogs. These courses often have conversations with the simple everyday language you will speak soon. You will be better off if you choose an entertaining source as this can help you practice Spanish as you actually speak it.
- Visit Spanish Speaking Clubs. Don't say no when the opportunity to practice Spanish comes knocking at your door. Speaking with native Spanish speakers in your country can also help. They can give you advice, or they can also correct you if you request them to do so. You can also ask them questions about their country.

Don'ts

- Don't watch or listen to news programs at all if you are just a beginner. You shouldn't also do it too much if you already have some knowledge. It is a common trap people fall into while trying to practice and revise their Spanish vocabulary. The main purpose of these programs is to provide too much information within a short span of time. This is why these programs use lots of specific sentence structures and vocabulary.

Practice Your Vocabulary

Learning words and revising them is among the most crucial things when you want to practice your Spanish. This doesn't mean that you should always take a dictionary with you and revise every single word with translations. You can use special apps to help you practice Spanish and let you organize the process of word learning.

This type of app works as the reminder for repeating words you learned the day before yesterday or yesterday. These apps determine how quickly you flip index cards and decide when to send a notification the next time it uses the information.

Be Patient

You have to keep in mind that when practicing Spanish, you won't be able to master the language overnight. You should remember that it needs lots of patience and efforts if you wish to get good and positive results.

If you ever find yourself stuck in a rut while learning Spanish, you can try to take a step back and review those things you already know. Maybe you missed something, and this is why you are having some problems right now.

Stay Motivated

Always remind yourself why you are doing what you are doing and what your ultimate goal is for all the work you have already done so far. You can also try praising yourself for the results you made but make sure you do not go overboard here. Such praises can ensure that you stay on the right track as you practice Spanish.

Don't Worry About Mistakes

Everyone makes mistakes, so never be afraid if you are wrong at times. These mistakes will help you learn how to do things right along the way.

It is not an easy walk in the park to learn a new language. But sooner or later, you will see your hard work's results and hear your first compliments, and you will be more proud of yourself like never before!

Conclusion

¡Bien hecho! After reading this book, you have finally armed yourself with several useful words, phrases, and sentences that you can carry with you every time, whether you are going on a trip to a Spanish-speaking country where you have to engage in conversations with the locals or even if you are just attending your Spanish class.

Now, you have the right and basic Spanish vocabulary and phrases that can help you kickstart your journey in the Spanish language. With the things you learned here, you will soon find yourself engaging in your first ever conversation with the native Spanish speaker you know or just met.

As always, the best way to master these words and phrases is through regular practice.

Ask any non-native Spanish speaker, and they will surely take account of the experiences they went through as they stare blankly at someone who spoke to them in Spanish, but they don't have any idea what was said.

At first, your brain will try to play catch up as it tries to understand and process every Spanish word said to you. The reason why comprehension tends to be a bit difficult from the start is that you parse out the language as phrases and not as words.

With enough practice, commitment, and dedication, you will soon find yourself engaged in great conversations in Spanish without any trouble at all!

¡Buena suerte!

SPANISH COMMON PHRASES

Learn Spanish for Beginners in Your Car Like Crazy.

Language Learning Lessons for travel and Everyday.

How to speak Spanish with Vocabulary,
Conversations and Grammar.

VOL 1

Table of Contents

[Introduction](#)

[CHAPTER 1: Presentation / Greetings](#)

[CHAPTER 2: Knowing People/Nationality/Job](#)

[CHAPTER 3: Family](#)

[CHAPTER 4: Hours / Days / Months / Seasons](#)

[CHAPTER 5: Weather](#)

[CHAPTER 6: Food](#)

[CHAPTER 7: Home](#)

[CHAPTER 8: Animals](#)

[CHAPTER 9: Asking For Information and Help with the Language](#)

[CHAPTER 10: To Go Shopping](#)

[CHAPTER 11: Coffee/Restaurant](#)

[CHAPTER 12: Finding the Way / Directions](#)

[CHAPTER 13: Travel / How to Book / How to Buy Ticket](#)

[CHAPTER 14: Means of Transportation](#)

[CHAPTER 15: Hotels & Accommodations](#)

[CHAPTER 16: At the Museum](#)

[CHAPTER 17: Body / Doctor / Medical Emergency](#)

[CHAPTER 18: Entertainment](#)

[CHAPTER 19: Sports & Activities](#)

[CHAPTER 20: Complaints & Problems](#)

[Exercises](#)

[Answers to Exercises](#)

[Glossary](#)

© Copyright 2019 by Language Learning School - All rights reserved.

The following Book is reproduced below with the goal of providing information that is as accurate and reliable as possible. Regardless, purchasing this Book can be seen as consent to the fact that both the publisher and the author of this book are in no way experts on the topics discussed within and that any recommendations or suggestions that are made herein are for entertainment purposes only. Professionals should be consulted as needed prior to undertaking any of the action endorsed herein.

This declaration is deemed fair and valid by both the American Bar Association and the Committee of Publishers Association and is legally binding throughout the United States.

Furthermore, the transmission, duplication, or reproduction of any of the following work including specific information will be considered an illegal act irrespective of if it is done electronically or in print. This extends to creating a secondary or tertiary copy of the work or a recorded copy and is only allowed with the express written consent from the Publisher. All additional right reserved.

The information in the following pages is broadly considered a truthful and accurate account of facts and as such, any inattention, use, or misuse of the information in question by the reader will

render any resulting actions solely under their purview. There are no scenarios in which the publisher or the original author of this work can be in any fashion deemed liable for any hardship or damages that may befall them after undertaking information described herein.

Additionally, the information in the following pages is intended only for informational purposes and should thus be thought of as universal. As befitting its nature, it is presented without assurance regarding its prolonged validity or interim quality. Trademarks that are mentioned are done without written consent and can in no way be considered an endorsement from the trademark holder.

This book is divided into 20 chapters. Each chapter will help teach you how to begin speaking the Spanish language as quickly as possible. The book starts by presenting some rules on how to speak the language. You will be presented some brief differences between the English and Spanish, which you must be aware of as you begin the learning process. The following chapters will present you how to speak Spanish in various scenarios.

All of the chapters combined to offer you with a foundation and guide to start your Spanish-speaking endeavor with much confidence. The exercises and guide in this book will present you the capability to begin utilizing the Spanish language in your daily life. This book will serve as your teacher as well as your reference guide in the future.

Introduction

Are you one of those people who have been considering learning a new language? Is Spanish the one you are considering to learn?

In case you didn't know yet, Spanish is one of the most widely spoken languages in the world. More than five hundred million individuals are native Spanish speakers. Therefore, by that figure, it is considered as the second most sought-after language following Mandarin Chinese. Apart from that, a study has shown that it's the most romantic of all languages. No matter if you wish to learn the language simply to widen your knowledge or you simply want to learn it because you're traveling a Spanish-speaking destination, you will require a guide to make your whole learning process much simpler and stress-free.

This book is suitable for you, especially if you're not trying to pass a Spanish class. That's because it will get you speaking the language quick. In any scenario, you don't need to be a language professor just to speak the language. This book will surely teach you how to speak the language with the help of simple and practical examples. It will also walk you through discussions to help you get your point across whenever you are meeting new individuals, finding directions, going shopping, traveling, eating in a restaurant, and so much more. In short, this book will guide you on how to speak Spanish virtually in any sort of situation.

The good thing here is that you won't find boring grammar lessons and rules you wouldn't bother with anyway. As an alternative, you will explore many practical examples as well as notes, which will guide you on how to understand better how to speak. While the Spanish language isn't as complex to learn as English is, the language does have its quirks, you must be familiar.

You will find many reasons for desiring to learn the Spanish language. First, because being bilanguage will make you desirable in the job marketplace. It will also provide you a higher sense of self-confidence if you could step in and assist individuals who are having a difficult time with the language barrier out in public. Have you ever thought of how many instances you've seen somebody speaking the language and having trouble to communicate with other people? You wish you could help them but you can't. Today, you don't need just to stand there. You could finally step in and help both people.

Learning a new language like Spanish is advantageous to your self-value and resume as well. What's more, it is a wonderful way to keep your brain exercising. Some people don't stop learning. Therefore, learning a new language could be your initial step to continuing education.

As you now go on along with the learning journey, you'll discover different vital tips, which make will understanding and speaking the language much simple. Using this book, you could be talking Spanish in no time at all. Best of luck and buen viaje!

A. Method of Learning a New Language

Efficient language learners have a positive response when faced with the unfamiliar. Therefore, instead of letting yourself to feel pissed, confused, and frustrated every time listening to Spanish, why don't you try to keep a positive point of view? Start working to know anything you could. It could help you think of speaking in Spanish as a puzzle to be solved, or it could be an interesting challenge to be reached. Every time you hear spoken Spanish, you must concentrate on what is being told. Do not get distracted by your negative ideas. Listen for cognates that are words, which are similar or almost the same in two languages. Take note that English and Spanish share many cognates. Some of these are much / **mucho** ; culture / **cultura** ; aspect / **aspecto** ; important / **importante** ; professor / **professor** ; introductory / **introductorio** ; and course / **curso** .

B. The Spanish Language

The Spanish language is also called as **castellano** or **español**. This language was established in the Iberian Peninsula in the region of Castile. Spanish is considered as the third most spoken language in the world, according to the United Nations. Approximately, at least half a billion of folks speak the language. It is spoken on four continents and is the official language of twenty nations.

Aside from that, the language is also spoken more every year in the mainland of the U.S. In fact, approximately forty million individuals in the U.S. speak the language at home. That makes up over twelve percent of the population of the country. A 2015 report conducted by a government organization in Spain

sowed that there are more Spanish speakers in the U.S. compared there to Spain.

You will find three major differences, which determine how this language is spoken in one region versus another. This includes grammar, accent, and vocabulary. The differences in vocabulary lead in various words utilized in various locations to refer to a similar thing. For instance, the word “the computer” in Latin America is **la computadora** . Meanwhile, you will say it in Spain as **el ordenador** .

When we talk about the accent, you will find some variances among regions. You will also find differences between regions in a similar country. The most evident difference in accent among those Spanish speaker connects to the way to say the letter **z** , the letter **c** then followed by **e** or **i** .

Another example is in Latin America, the letter **z**, **as well as the letter**, mixes **ci** and **ce** are spoken along with an **s** sound. On the other hand, in central and northern Spain, it was spoken along with **th** sound. For instance, the term for “shoe” is **zapato** . In Latin America, it is uttered as **sapato**. In Madrid, it is spoken as **thapato**.

You might not notice many grammatical differences among regions. However, there are some, which deal with the plural form of “you.” In both Latin America and Spain, the term **ustedes** is the formal and plural way to talk “you.” Meanwhile in Spain, you will find an informal and plural way to utter “you.” **Vosotras** in the feminine while **vosotros** in the masculine. However, **vosotras** and **vosotros** aren’t utilized in Latin America. As an alternative, **ustedes** is utilized for the plural “you” in every scenario.

Regardless of such differences in grammar, accent as well as vocabulary, thousands of Spanish speakers converse efficiently across every region where the language is pronounced. Even those speakers of Spanish from various countries understand one another totally well.

C. How to Pronounce the Vowels

Speaking words in Spanish is easier than it is in the English language. That’s mainly because if you see a letter in Spanish, you will understand how to speak the sound of that particular letter. The only difficult part of the pronunciation of the Spanish language is that you will find sounds in the

language, which do not exist, in the English language. All of them could be hard to speak at first.

Every vowel – **a, e, i, o, u** – make only one sound in Spanish. It is only a quick sound, which remains the same from start to finish,

Here's a detailed example:

- The vowel **A** seen in the typical Spanish term **casa** is the simplest vowel sound to create. The other four vowel sounds concentrate on maintaining the vowel sound brief and constant.
- The vowel **E** creates the sound spoken in the English word “ta ke.” You see, it is not pronounced “eyyyy.” You do not end it off at the end as we mostly do in the English language.
- The vowel **I** create the sound spoken in the word “fee .” It is not “iyyy.”
- The vowel **B** creates the sound spoken in “to il.” It is not “owww.”
- The vowel **U** creates the sound spoken in “ru le.” It is not “uwww.”

D. Pronunciation

Pronunciation is vital in any type of language. Therefore, get the hang of this before you try to talk to someone. Nowadays, it is much simpler, simply because you will find countless videos online that will aid you. In this section, you will learn how to utter individual letters by fitting them into typical, easily spoken Spanish words.

One benefits of Spanish over the English language is that with the majority of words, the pronunciation is phonetic. You see, the words sound as if they're spelled. You will also find some homophones that will puzzle you. Some of those words include “they're,” “their,” and “there” that sound the same; however, have different spellings and meanings. Below is a brief guide to Spanish pronunciation.

The Vowels

In the Spanish language, you will find five vowels and one sound for every vowel.

- [a] ah The ‘a’ is spoken as if you were gargling. Simply open your mouth wide and say as saw and father. Try **mapa, agua**.

[e]	eh	The 'e' sound isn't totally existent in English. The nearest pronunciation might be 'eh' as red and met. You must not say the 'e' as in English. You can try saying enero , verde .
[i]	ee	The 'i' sound is somewhat similar to 'ee' as bee and feet. You see, the 'i' sound is much different compared to the English pronunciation. For instance, mi, fino .
[o]	oh	The letter 'o' is uttered as 'oh.' However, it has a shorter sound as know and boat. You can try roto, coco .
[u]	oo	This is pronounced as 'oo' like in do or boot. Try saying muro , futuro .

The Diphthongs

In case you didn't know yet, a diphthong is a sound that was made by a mix of two (2) vowels in a single syllable. A sound starts as one vowel and moves to another.

a + i	ai, ay	The 'ai' and 'ay' sound is like ay and why. You can try speaking mayo, aire .
a + u	au	The 'au' sounds like the expression auch. You can try speaking aula, aunque .
e + u	eu	You will not find a sound for this in the English language. That was something like ew however, with the use of the 'e' sound as bed and the 'u' as do. You can try saying deudor, Europa .
e + i	ey, ei	The pronunciation of 'ey' and 'ei' is near to say and hey. Try saying buy, reina .
i + a	ia	The 'ia' will sounds like tiara and yah. Try saying anciano, piano .
i + e	ie	The 'ie' sounds similar to yes. Try saying fiera, tierra .
i + o	io	The 'io' is uttered as John or yo-yo. Try saying rio, radio .
i + u	iu	The 'iu' is uttered as you. You can try saying viuda, ciudad .
o + i	oy, oi	The 'oy' and 'oi' sounds similar to boy and toy. Try

		saying heroico, hoy.
[u + a	ua	The ‘ua’ sound is similar to water. You can try saying aduanas, actuar.
[u + e	ue	The ‘ue’ sounds similar to wet. Try saying sueño and Huevo .
u + i	ui	The ‘ui’ sounds is similar to wheat and we. Try saying huir, arruinar.
[u + o	uo	The ‘uo’ sounds similar to continuous and quote. Try saying cuota, individuo.

The Consonants

A series of Spanish consonants are pronounced differently from their English counterparts. If you could, you can try to listen to a local speaker and hear how they deal with them.

[b]	beh	The letter ‘b’ is uttered after n, m, or l. The sound of this letter is similar to bear and Venice, even though the lips should not touch. For example, bonito.
[c]	ceh	The letter ‘c’ sounds like cereal before i or e. Or else, it might sound like ‘k’ as computer. For example, computadora as ‘k’ and cereza as ‘c.’
[ch]	ch eh	For example, chico, chocolate.
[d]	deh	For example, dos, dust.
[f]	effe	The letter ‘f’ sounds similar in the English fountain or Eiffel. For example, familia.
[g]	geh	The ‘g’ sounds is similar to her before i or e. Or else, it sounds like get or got. For example, guante as ‘get,’ gesto as ‘her.’
[h]	hache	The letter ‘h’ in Spanish is silent. For example, hilo.
[j]	hotah	The letter ‘j’ sounds harsh or horse. But never as jump or jar. For example, jirafa.
[k]	kah	The letter ‘k’ sounds similar as in the English language. It is pronounced as key or car. For example, koala.
[l]	ele	The letter ‘l’ is uttered as like or lord. For example, lobo.

[ll]	double ele, elle	The double 'l' is spoken as the 'y' in yesterday. For example, calle .
[m]	emeh	The letter 'm' is similar as in the English man or mother. For example, modo .
[n]	eneh	The letter 'n' sounds similar as in the English note and no. For example, nosotros .
[ñ]	enyeh	The 'ñ' isn't another letter 'n'. This letter sounds as canyon, onion or lasagna. For example, niña .
[p]	peh	The letter 'p' is similar to the sound in the English paste or pet. For example, pelo .
[q]	koo	The letter 'q' is spoken as curious. If it is written with 'ue' and 'ui' the letter 'u' is silent. For instance, '¿quién?' is spoken as <i>kien</i> . What's more, the '¿qué?' as <i>ke</i> (using the Spanish 'e'). For example, qué, quién .
[r]	ere	The letter 'r' sounds like brr at the start of a word. Or else, it sounds like brown or break. For example, raton as 'brr,' crear as 'break.'
[rr]	erre	The double 'r' sounds like 'r' at the start of a word. Its sound is much vibrated, as the sound of a vehicle accelerating. For example, perro .
[s]	ese	The letter 's' sounds similarly as in the English language sea or sorry. For example, solo .
[sh]	esse / hache	The 'sh' sounds as show or shampoo. For example, show .
[t]	teh	The 't' sound is pronounced as in English, even though the tongue needs to touch the back of your teeth like test and tea. For example, tela .
[v]	veh	The 'v' sounds are pronounced as the letter 'b.' However, your lips are touched slightly as voice or various. For example, vecino .
[w]	doble veh	The 'w' sounds have a similar pronunciation as in the English language wine and whiskey. For example, kiwi .

- [x] equis The ‘x’ sound is spoken as ‘gs’ or ‘ks’ like in excited or explosion. For example, **xilófono** .
- [y] i griega / The letter ‘y’ is the same as the double ‘l.’ However, it
ye has a slight difference as yellow and crayon. For example,
yegua.
- [z] setah The letter ‘z’ is uttered as ‘th’ not as in zero or zip. For
example, **zorro**.

Are you now looking for ways to make it simpler for you to say these letters as a native Spanish speaker? Then there’s no need for you to worry. You could look online for an audio file and listen to it to make sure you get it all right.

We suggest that you stay away from any translation software when learning how to pronounce any word in the Spanish language. The reason behind this is that such applications do not have the required accent to make you pronounce each word accurately.

Make sure you look for real individuals speaking in the native Spanish language on different video platforms. These people tend to speak authentic Spanish, meaning you could learn more from them and much quicker.

E. Where to Go From Here

The best thing about this book is that you don’t need to read them every chapter from the start to the end. Every chapter stands on its own, and it does not oblige you to finish any other of the chapters within the book. That setup saves you sufficient time if you have mastered particular topics but feel somewhat insecure about the others.

Therefore, make sure you leap right in. Now is a perfect time that you get your feet wet. If you not certain exactly where to start, you can look at the Table of Contents. Choose the topic, which appears to best suit your requirements and capabilities. If you are getting concerned that your existing background might not be strong enough, you could begin at the very start. From them, you could work way throughout the book.

Just bear in mind that learning the Spanish language is not a sort of competition. You must work at a pace, which fits your needs. Do not pause to read a chapter a second, third, or even fifth time many days later. Take note

that you could adapt this book easily into your learning skills. You need to take note that you should have a positive and confident outlook towards this.

Indeed, you will make some mistakes. Everybody does – in fact; most native Spanish speakers always do. Your goal here is to speak and write. If you could make yourself understood, you have won the greatest part of the war.

F. The Stress Rules

You are already aware that Spanish words are stressed on the *last syllable* when they end in a consonant other than s or n. For example, **Gibraltar, Santander, El Escorial, Valladolid.**

You see, they are stressed on the *syllable before last* when they end in s or n or a vowel. For example, **Valdepeñas, Toledo, Granada.**

When a particular word breaks either of such rules, an accent is written to highlight where the stress falls. For example, **civilización, José, Gifón, kilómetro, Cádiz, Málaga.** Every word ending in –ion bears that accent. Therefore, if you notice a written accent, you should stress the syllable where the accent is located. The only other usage of accents you must understand is that it is situated on *si* to distinguish **si** (yes) from **si** (if).

CHAPTER 1: Presentation / Greetings

Politeness starts upon meeting another person. You meet them, you greet them. The question is, how? The answer will depend on the person you are

meeting. When there is small or no chance of ever seeing the person again, you are safe and enough with the **Buenos días... hasta luego** formula. If you believe the person might know in your future life, or when the meeting is the outcome of an introduction, you are anticipated to go beyond that.

From a second encounter onward, except in the situation of frequent encounters along with employees, you must normally use a more personal greeting than simply “goodnight” or “good day.”

Always remember that greetings establish a vital component of any conversation, in any form of language. In this chapter, we will discuss all greetings, polite words, wishing other people holidays, among others. What’s more, you will also learn the proper vocabulary for basic conversations and questions, as well as how to utilize informal and formal modes of address.

Among the very typical greetings in Spanish is **hola** (hello); **¿Qué tal?** (How is it going?); as well as **¿Cómo estás?** and **¿Cómo está usted?** (How are you?). **¿Cómo estás?** is considered as the informal way to ask “How are you?” to somebody. On the other hand, **¿Cómo está usted?** also asks “How are you?” however it is mainly utilized along with somebody you address formally.

A. Saying Hello

Hola!	Hi! / Hello!
¿Cómo estás?	How are you?
¿Cómo estás?	How are you?
¿Qué tal (estás)?	How is it going?
¿Cómo andas?	What’s up? / What’s new?
¿Qué hay? Hombre!	Well hello! Hey! <i>(This is utilized when you run into or hear from somebody surprisingly. Hombre here is an expression of surprise, and it is utilized along with both women and men.</i>
¿Cómo lo llevas?	How are you doing? / How is it going?
¿Qué pasa?	What’s happening? / What’s up?
¡Buenos días!	Good morning!

B. If It is Been a While

¿Qué tal todo?	How is everything?
¿Cómo te va (la vida)?	How is life? / How's it going?
¿Qué es de tu vida?	What have you been up to? / How's life?
¿Cuánto tiempo!	Long time no see! / It's been a while!
¡Hace siglos que no nos vemos!	It's been ages!
A ver si quedamos pronto.	Let's get together soon.
A ver si nos vemos pronto.	Let's get together soon.
A ver cuando nos vemos.	Let's get together sometime.
Vamos a ponernos al día.	Let's catch up.
Pensé que habías desaparecido del mapa.	I thought you'd fallen off the face of the Earth.

C. Responding

Greeting: Response :

¿Cómo Muy buen.
estás?

Buen typically means *good*. However, if you utilize it along with the verb **estar** (as opposed to **ser**) and when you are referring to an individual, that denotes he or she is hot (physically attractive). For talking how you are, you must utilize the adverb **bien**.

(muy) bien.	(Really) good.
Estupendamente.	Great.
Genial.	Great.
Fenomenal.	Fantastic.
Fantástica	Fabulous.
No me puedo quejar.	I can't complain.
Tirando.	Not much. / No news. / Not much happening.
Regular.	Not so great.

Así, así.	So-so.
(Muy) mal.	Not great.
Jodida.	Lousy. (<i>literally means fucked; vulgar, but very typical.</i>)
Pésima	Terrible.
Fatal.	Awful.

D. Asking About a Mutual Friend

¿Cómo está (Coco)?	How's (Coco)?
¿Qué tal está (Roberto)?	How's (Roberto)?
¿Qué sabes de (Sylvia)?	Any news of (Sylvia)?
¿Sabes algo de (Luis)?	Any news of (Luis)?
Hace tiempo que no lo/la veo.	It has been a while since I saw him / her.
Hace tiempo que no sé nada de él/ella.	It's been a while since we've been in touch.
Mándale/Dale saludos de mi parte.	Tell him/her I said hello.
Mándale/Dale recuerdos de mi parte	Give him/her my regards.
Mándale/Dale un beso de mi parte.	Send him/her my love.

E. Saying Good-Bye

Adiós.	Good-bye.
Chao.	Bye for now.
Nos vemos.	See you.
Hasta luego.	See you. /Bye. (<i>this is the most typical of the hasta expressions.</i>)
Hasta pronto.	See you soon.
Hasta otra.	See you. / Bye. (<i>when it is someone you do not know very well, and you do not</i>

	<i>know when you will see him or her again)</i>
Hasta la próxima.	See you. (<i>has the notion of “until we meet again”</i>)
Hasta la vista.	See you. / Bye. (<i>the same to hasta otra</i>)
Hasta ahora.	See you in a bit. (<i>if you are coming right back</i>)
Hasta entonces.	See you then. (<i>if you have already referred to the time you will see one another</i>)
Hasta (el Viernes).	See you (on Friday).
Hasta mañana.	See you tomorrow.
¡Buenas noches!	Good night!
Estamos en contacto.	Let’s be in touch.
Hablamos pronto.	Let’s talk soon.

On taking the leave of an individual or place, **Adios!** is typically utilized if you’re not going back or when you plan to be away for some time. If you will be back on the other day, the standard phrase is **Hasta mañana** even though you could also say **Buenas noches!**

Adios is often utilized to greet someone you bump into the street but aren’t going to stop to have a talk. When you see the other person in question frequently, you say **Hasta pronto** if you’re taking the leave. Meanwhile, **Hasta luego** is utilized when you are certain you will be seeing that individual again the same day. Therefore, do not utilize it when you are saying good-bye for the day or for good.

Hasta la vista is not utilized about as much as TV films, and movies about Latins would have you known. However, **Hasta la próxima** is typical when leaving any interrupted or regularly scheduled event at which individuals get together for a particular purpose, like a choir practice or a meeting.

Nos vemos is utilized familiarly only. However, it is good, standard sort of good bye, as it does not tell anything except that you or the other individual is leaving. You could also utilize that in response to an individual who says goodbye to prevent speaking the same thing the other individual says.

When you are leaving a social event, any of the above is okay to utilize on acquaintances and friends. If you are taking your leave from someone you only met on a not-so-formal event and you did not get an opportunity to get too friendly with, you need to a bit much formal. You could say something such as **Ha sido un placer** (*It has been a pleasure*) or maybe **Tuve mucho gusto en conocerlo** (*I was glad to meet you*).

Other Extras You Might Want to Learn:

- ¡Que te sea leve! Take it easy. / Do not sweat it! (*this means “May it be light for you.”*)
- ¡Que te vaya bien! Best of luck! / Wish you well!
- ¡Que descanses! Get some rest!
- ¡Que te diviertas! Enjoy yourself! / Have fun!
- ¡Que lo pases bien! Have a good time!
- ¡Que tengas suerte! Good luck!
- ¡Que tengas buen viaje! Have a good trip!

CHAPTER 2: Knowing People/Nationality/Job

Every name of things in Spanish is either feminine or masculine, not simply the obvious ones such as boy or girl, man or women. That different is called as the gender of the word. You could tell a gender of the word from its ending. For instance, nearly all word ending in **-o** are mescaline. Those that end in **-a**

are feminine. Gender is vital, as it influences the other words in your sentence. There is more in this in this chapter. Fret not if this is a new concept that looks strange to you. In practice, it causes no massive struggle in Spanish.

A. Knowing People

Soy de Francia.	I'm from France.
¿De dónde eres?	Where are you from?
Tú eres español	You are Spanish.
¿Cómo es tu país?	How's your country?
Es un país bonito	It's a nice country.
Mi major amiga es chino.	My best friend is Chinese.
Mi compañero de cuarto quiere viajar a—	My roommate wants to go to —
Qué idioma hablas en tu país?	What language do you speak in your country?

Take note that it is optional to utilize the articles **las**, **los**, **la**, and **el** before most countries in Spanish unless the specific name has such an article. For example, El Salvador.

Talking about your family and your country is vital in Spanish conversations. That's because the Spanish are curious about people. They love to know all about you and the place where you are from. The majority of Spanish folks nowadays are also well-traveled. Therefore, they will be enthusiastic about telling you about their adventures in foreign lands.

Me llamo (My name is)

One way of identifying yourself and the other person is to utilize **me llamo** (*I am called, or my name is*), and **se llama** (*he/she is called, you are called*). If you want to ask the name of someone, you can utilize the word **¿Cómo?** at the start of the question:

¿Cómo? se llama?	What is his/her/its name? / What is he/he/it called?
¿Cómo? se llama Ud.?	What is your name? / What are you called?

You will have noticed that question words or also know as “interrogatives,” such as **¿quién?** *who?* and **¿cómo?** *how?* have an accent. That isn’t to indicate where the stress falls, however, to present that the word is being utilized in a question, not a statement. You will also find them utilized without accents in statements.

Using Estos (*These*)

Estos is utilized along with plural words that talk about various masculine individuals or to a mixed group of people or things. For example, **estos señores** that means *these men* or *these men and women*.

How to Make a Question

In Spanish, it is very simple to create a question. One way to is to include **¿no?** to the end of your statement. Make sure that you increase your voice a bit to offer a questioning tone at the end of your sentence. That has a similar impact a using *aren’t you, isn’t it* and more in the English language.

Vd. es Isabel. You are Isabel.

Vd. es Isabel, Are you Isabel?
¿no?

Another way is to turn **Vd. es, Vds. Son** round:

¿Es Vd. Isabel? Are you Isabel?
¿Son Vds. Lo Sres. Are you Mr. and Mrs. Herrero?
Herrero?

You will notice that in written Spanish, there are two question marks utilized to determine a question. You will find an inverted one at the start and the standard question mark at the end. When only part of the sentence is the question, the question marks will go round that part. For example, **Vd. es. Isabel ¿no?** The exclamation marks work the similar way:

Coco, ¡es Coco, it’s you!
Vd.!

Formal ‘You’

Usted refers to *you*. It is utilized except when talking to other people you know well or to kids (God or animals). When you write, it is sometimes abbreviated to **Vd.** (plural **Vds.**)

Using the Negative

If you prefer to tell something is **not** the case, you can just place **no** before the word. That will tell you what is happening (the verb).

Below are some conversations you need to know if you want to get to know someone:

¿Donde trabajas?	Where do you work?
Trabajo en un restaurante.	I work at a restaurant.
¿Cuáles son tus aficiones?	What are your hobbies?
Me gusta leer libros y ver películas.	I like to read books and watch movies.
¿De donde eres?	Where are you from?
Soy de Irlanda.	I'm from Ireland.
¿Cuál es tu película favorita?	What's your favorite movie?
Me encanta Star Wars.	I love Star Wars.
¿Desde cuándo aprendes español?	How long have you been learning Spanish?
Aprendo español desde hace tres meses.	I've been learning Spanish for three months.
¿Cuál es tu color favorito?	What is your favorite color?
Me gusta el verde.	I like green.
¿Hablas otros idiomas?	Do you speak other languages?
Sí, hablo inglés y francés	Yes, I speak English and French.

B. Nationality (*Nacionalidad*)

In Spanish, some adjectives of nationality along with a masculine form which ends in a consonant add **-a** to create the feminine. The adjectives **inglés** (as well as other adjectives of nationality, which ends in **-és**) and **aleman** remove the accent on their last vowel. That is to keep their original stresses:

Masculine Feminine Meaning

Español	Español	Spanish
Inglés	Inglesa	English
Alemán	Alemana	German

You will also find several adjectives along with a masculine form that ends in **-or** and **-a** to create the feminine form.

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
trabajador	trabajadora	employee
hablador	habladora	Chatty / talkative

To say your nationality or someone else's, you need to utilize the words **son, somos, es, soy** as you did to determine individuals. You could also include the nationality description: **soy inglés, es español/española** . Take note that the ending of the nationality word should change based on the gender of the person described. It also transforms if you're speaking about more than one individual: **somos Americanos, son franceses**.

Below are some examples along with the masculine, feminine and plural forms:

<i>Country</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Plural</i>
América	americano	americana	americanos
Australia	australiano	australiana	australianos
Italia	italiano	italiana	italianos
Francia	francés	francesca	franceses
Escocia	escocés	escocesa	escoceses
Irlanda	irlandés	irlandesa	irlandeses
Alemania	alemán	alemana	alemanes

Such nationality words are the ones you utilize when you wish to tell *a Frenchman, a Spanish woman, etc.* **Un francés** refers to *a Frenchman*.

Take note that not every Spanish people will tell **soy español/a**. For instance, might insist **soy catalán, soy catalana, soy de Cataluña, somos**

catalanes, somos de Cataluña when they are from the north-east of Barcelona or Spain.

Some individuals from the country of Basque tend to consider themselves as Basques instead of Spaniards. They will tell **soy vasco, soy vasca, soy de Euzkadi, somos vascos, somos de Euzkadi**. You see, **Euzkadi** is the Basque term for the region of Basque.

It is vital that you are informed of the strong region, or some would say national, sensibilities throughout Spain, especially in those regions that still utilize their own individual languages like the Cataluña as well as the Basque region.

What's more, the Basque language is somewhat different from Spanish. It's an old language and extremely hard to learn. Catalán as well is another language from Spanish. You need to learn individually. However, compared to Basque, it is connected to Spanish because it is derived from the Spanish language. Often, the Spanish language is also called as **castellano** or 'Castillan.' A man from Barcelona (which is the capital of Cataluña) could tell **soy Barcelona. Soy barcelonés. Soy catalán y también español. Hablo (I speak) catalán y también castellano**.

Take note that every Spaniards are connected to their home region. That's true even if they have relocated away from it. It is in recognition of that regional loyalty that Spanish is separated into **autonomias** or regions along with a huge deal of local self-government. Local pride is also apparent in the attachment and loyalty of the people to their home city or town. Compared to English, where you only have some words such as *Mancunian* or *Londoner*, Spanish has a term for the inhabitants of every town of any size. For instance, a man from Seville would describe himself as **un sevillano**.

C. Job (Trabajo)

You will find two simple ways of asking what work someone does. One way is to ask him or her **¿Qué hace Vd.?** (*What do you do?*) The majority of the responses might sound the same to English. However, in the Spanish language, the majority of them have a feminine and masculine form.

Below are some of the examples of what an individual might tell when you ask them **¿Qué hace Vd.?**

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
so	actor	actriz	actor/actress
y			
so	professor	profesora	teacher
y			
so	administrador	administradora	administrator
y			
so	camerero	camarera	waiter/waitress
y			
so	director de empresa	directora de empresa	company director
y			
so	enfemero	enfermera	nurse
y			

You will find some terms for occupations are similar whether they talk about a man or a woman. Those have ending in **-ista** or **-e**, like the following:

un/una taxista a taxi driver
 un/una artista an artist
 un/una periodista a journalist
 un/una contable an accountant
 un/una intérprete an interpreter
 un/una estudiante a student

The other way to ask about a job of a person is to say **¿Dónde trabaja Vd.?** (*Where do you work?* Below are different potential answers to this question:

Trabajo en una oficina I work in an office.
 Trabajo en una agencia de turismo I work in a tourist office/agency.
 Trabajo en un colegio. I work in a school.
 Trabajo en un hospital. I work in a hospital.
 Trabajo en casa. I work at home.

Take note that **¿Dónde?** and **¿Qué?** are two examples of words, which require accents when they are utilized to ask a question.

Try to practice the following conversations:

¿Cuál es su profesión? Soy consultor.

What do you do? I am a consultant.

¿Cuál es su profesión? Soy autónomo.

What company do you work for? I am self-employed.

¡Qué interesante! ¿Y cuál es su profesión?

How's interesting And what is your profession?

Soy dentista. Mi herma es dentista también.

I am a dentist. My sister is a dentist too.

‘I work, I live...’

Trabajo and **vivo** denotes *I work*, and *I live*. If you like to say ‘I’ do something, you need to find the term that ends in **–o**, as in many examples you might already know: **entiend, me llamo, hablo**. You will find a few exceptions to this rule, one of which is the word for *I am* – **soy**.

‘Where do you live?’ (¿Dónde vive?)

Depending on your context, you might require to offer only a vague response like **vivo en Londres** or **vivo en Madrid**. On some cases, however, you might require to present your own address, and for visiting Spanish friends or places, you will need to know when someone tells you theirs.

Below is a standard address (**la dirección**).

La dirección de Isabel is:

Señorita Ysabel Ballester Garcia

Almagrao 14, 6ºA

28010 Madrid

España

You might notice that you don’t need to utilize the word **calle**, even though other words like **paseo, plaza, avenida** are typically not omitted. The number 6ºA stands for sexton A., i.e. sixty floor, flat A. The 28010 is the code for Madrid (28) and the district (010).

CHAPTER 3: Family

Always remember that “family first” is a crucial concept in the Hispanic culture. Asking the health of the family members is one effective way to show that you know and value this.

If you spend any time at all in Spain or any Spanish-speaking nation, it won't be long before you realize just how vital the family, as well as the family life, is. You can go to the beach on a Sunday in summer, and you tend to notice tables distributed under the shade of the palm trees with many generations of the family enjoy the company of one another and good food. When you are talking with the Spanish folks, they are bound to ask more about your **familia** (family). Therefore, you need to have your vocabulary ready!

The Spanish equivalents of dad and mom are **papá** and **mamá** . The male plural could refer to both sexes. For instance, **niños** (*boys and children*), **padres** (parents and fathers), **abuelos** (*grandparents and grandfathers*), **tíos** (*uncle, aunt and uncles*), **hermanos** (*siblings and brothers*) and so much more.

Mi hermana se casará.	My sister will get married.
Mis padres se divorciarán.	My parents will get divorced.
Mi tía es viuda.	My aunt is a widow.
No me agrada mi madrastra.	I don't like my stepmother.
Mi primo es una buena persona.	My cousin is a nice person.
Mi suegra me odia.	My mother-in-law hates me.
Mi padrastro no se lleva bien conmigo.	My stepfather does not get along with me.
Amo a mi mejor amigo.	I love my best friend
¿Cuándo se divorciarán?	When will they get divorced?
Quién sabe.	Who knows.
Mi tía Lila siempre me manda dinero.	Aunt Lila always sends me money. The babysitter will take care of my
La niñera cuidará de mi hijo hoy.	son today.
Mi hermano se dio cuenta que es adoptado.	My brother realized he is adopted. My uncle's wife died.

La esposa de mi tío murió My grandfather will travel with me.
Mi abuelo viajará conmigo.

You can use the following formula to ask about one individual:

¿Cómo está su mamá? How is your mother?

You only need to replace any of the following words to ask about others:

papá father
esposo husband
esposa wife
hermana sister
hermano brother
hijo son
hija daughter
r

If you want to inquire about more than one individual at a time, you could add **s** to **su** , and another **s** to make the word in the plural form. Add letter **n** to **est** á.

¿Cómo están sus papas? How are your parents?

Hijos Children
Hijas Daughter
s
Hermanos brothers
hermanas sisters

The words, which denote who someone or something, belong to are very simple to employ in Spanish. **Mi** *my* is utilized along with both feminine and masculine words (**mi madre, mi padre**). It has an **-s** added when employed with plural words (**mi padres**). The words **su** and **sus** are specifically helpful because they are the same to a few English words. **Su** is utilized along with

singular words, and it means *his/her/it/your/their* depending on the context. Meanwhile, **sus** words in a similar way along with plural words. Like **sus**, **sus**, **mi**, and **mis** aren't influenced by gender. For instance:

Mi nieto	My grandson
Mis nietas	My granddaughters
Su hermano	His/her/your/their brother
Su hermana	His/her/your/their sister
Sus abuelos	His/her/your/their sister grandparents
Sus tías	His/her/your/their aunts

Read the phrases below different times:

¿Tiene usted hermanos?	Do you have any brothers? (<i>formal</i>)
¿Tienes hermanos?	Do you have any brothers? (<i>informal</i>)
Éste es mi marido?	This is my husband.
Ésa es mi mujer.	That's my wife.
¿Es ésa su hermana?	Is that your sister? (<i>formal</i>)
¿Es ésa tu hermana?	Is that your sister? (<i>informal</i>)
Tengo cuatro niños.	I have four children.
Tengo dos hijastras y un hijastro.	I have two stepdaughters and a stepson.
Éston son mis padres.	These are my parents.
¿Tiene usted niños?	Do you have any children?
¿Tiene usted niñas?	Yes, I have two daughters.
Éstas son mis hijas. ¿Y usted?	These are my daughters. And you?

A Tip : Spanish people always ask a question by raising the pitch of their voice at the end of the statement. For example, **¿Quieres un poco de vino?** (*Do you want a little wine?*) You might already notice in the previous chapters the upside-down question mark (¿) written at the start of the question. You might also notice an upside-down exclamation mark, like in **¡Hola!** (*Hello!*).

CHAPTER 4: Hours / Days / Months / Seasons

Understanding how to understand, talk, and write time-related phrases and words is necessary for anyone who is learning a foreign language and planning to put such studies to use (for instance, traveling in the future.)

A. Time (*Un momento*)

When you hear ¿Qué hora es? (What time is it?), somebody wishes to determine the time. You must begin by replying with the following:

Es la una + 1 o'clock hour or **Son** has + any time after 1.

To say the time after the hour (up to and including half past the hour), you can utilize **y** (and) as well as the number of the minutes. Utilize **menos** (less) + the number of the following hours to say the time before the next hour (after half past the hour).

You could also say the time numerically:

Es la una y media. It's 1:30.

Son las cinco menos veinte. It's 4:40.

Son las cuatro y cuarenta. Its 4:40.

If you like to talk about at what time a specific event will take place, you can utilize a question - **¿A qué hora...?** Or answer with **A la una** or **A las** + any time after 1.

¿A qué hora vienen? At what time are they coming?

A la una. At 1:00.

A las tres y cuarto. At 3:15.

The chart below presents how to speak time after and before the hour:

<i>Spanish</i>	<i>Time</i>
la una	1:00
las dos y cinco	2:05
las tres y diez	3:10

las cuatro y quince	4:15
las seis y veinte	5:20
las siete y media or las syiete y treinta	7:30
las ocho menos veinticinco or las siete y trieinta y cinco	7:35
las nueve menos veinte or las ocho y cuarenta	8:40
las diez menoc cuatro or las nueve y cuarenta y cinco	9:45
las once menos diez or las diez y cincuenta	10:50
las doce menos cinco or las once y cincuenta y cinco	11:55
el mediodía	noon
la medianoche	midnight

Every time you are talking about time, the expressions and words you present in the following table might come convenient for you:

<i>Spanish</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Spanish</i>	<i>English</i>
un segundo	a second	en una hora	in an hour
un minute	a minute	dentro de uno rato	in a while
un cuatro de hora	a quarter of an hour	hasta las diez	until ten o'clock
una hora	an hour	antes de las nueve	before nine o'clock
media hora	a half hour	después de las siete	after seven o'clock
por la mañana	in the morning (a.m.)	¿desde qué hora?	since what time?
por la tarde	in the afternoon	desde las ocho	since eight

	(p.m.)		o'clock
por la noche	in the evening	hace una hora	an hour ago
	(p.m.)		
¿a qué hora?	at what time?	temprano	early
a las nueve en punto	at exactly nine o'clock	tarde	late
a eso de las dos	at about 2o'clock	de retraso	late (in arriving)

Take note that Spanish numbers are direct and logical. It's worth your effort to understand them well. Numbers are crucial when traveling in a Spanish-speaking nation, for traveling times, shopping, dates and so much more.

Below are some useful phrases you should practice:

¿Qué hora es?	What time is it?
¿A que hora quiere el desayuno?	What time do you want breakfast?
La reunión es a mediodía.	The meeting is at noon.

The verb **ser** is always utilized to express time. *What time is it?* is **¿Qué hora es?**, and the response to that question always starts with **son las** (for example **son las dos** is "It's two o'clock"). **Y** is utilized to say about minutes after an hour. **Menos** is utilized to show minutes before an hour, (for example, **son las tres y diez** is "It's ten minutes after three").

Cuatro means *quarter* and **media** means *half*. Therefore, *It's quarter to eleven* is **son las once menos cuarto**. *It's five-thirty* is **son las cinco y media**. **Es** is utilized rather than **son** if it is one o'clock, midnight or noon (for example, **es la una; es mediodie; es medianoche**). If you want to say *at a certain time*, you can use **a las** or **a la** (for example, **la clase termina a las cuatro** is "The class ends at four o'clock.")

Whenever you are talking about the time of a day in general, **por** is used. However, if you are talking about a particular time, **de** is utilized (for example, "We study in the afternoon" is **Estudiamos por la tarde**. "They eat at eight-thirty in the morning" is **Comen a las ocho y media de la mañana**).

B. Days (*Diás*)

Dates are vital parts of daily life. To write out dates in Spanish, you need to practice the days of the week too!

If you hear **¿Qué día es hoy?** (*What day is it?*), you must respond the other person with **Hoy es...** (*Today is...*) and then provide the name of the days that are listed below:

Spanish English

lunes Monday

martes Tuesday

miércoles Wednesday

jueves Thursday

viernes Friday

sábado Saturday

domingo Sunday

Compared to the English calendar, the Spanish calendar begins with Monday. You will find two guidelines for discussing days of the week in the Spanish language:

- Unless you utilize them at the start of the sentence, you do not capitalize the days of the week in Spanish.

Lunes y martes son días de vacaciones. (*Monday and Tuesday are my vacation days.*)

- You utilize **el** to tell *on* when talking to a specific day of the week and **los** to talk *on* when the action takes place repeatedly.

No trabajo el sábado . (*I'm not working on Saturday.*)

No trabajo los sábados. (*I don't work on Saturdays.*)

In the Spanish calendar, Sunday is placed in the extreme right-hand column, placing the weekend days together. The majority of workers anticipate a one-free day a week and not essentially on the weekend. That day is often called by workers as **mi día** (*my day*).

To indicate a day in the future, you could add **el** before the name of the day:

Esté aquí el lunes.

Be here on Monday.

If you want to indicate *always on that day*, add **los** before the name of the day:

Venga los lunes. Come on Mondays.

Venga todos los días. Come every day.

No venga los domingos. Don't come on Sundays.

Practice the following phrases and then test yourself:

La reunión no es el martes. The meeting isn't on Tuesday.

Trabajo los domingos. I work on Sundays.

C. Months (*Meses*)

When you hear **¿En qué mes...?** (*In what month...*), someone is asking you in what month a particular event occurs. Below you will be provided with the names of the months in Spanish:

Spanish English

enero January

febrero February

marzo March

abril April

junio June

julio July

agosto August

septiembre / setiembre September

octubre October

noviembre November

diciembre December

You are already aware that the *das* of the week aren't capitalized. Neither are the months. What's more, when you are providing the date in abbreviated form in Spanish, it is the opposite from English. Therefore, 07/11/19 in

English would be July 11, 2019. In Spanish, it would be July 11, 219. Take a further look how such dates are written and spoken.

Junio y julio son meses agradables. June and July are nice months.

¿Cuál es la fecha? What's the date?

Es el primero de enero? It's the first of January.

After “the first” day, the dates are presented in cardinal numbers. For example, *the three of January, the two of January* and so forth. Below are some examples that utilize all of the months and the number up to 31.

Es el dos de enero. It's the second of January.

el tres de febrero the third of February

el cuatro de marzo the fourth of March

el cinco de abril the fifth of April

el seis de mayo the sixth of May

el siete de junio the seventh of June

el ocho de julio the eighth of July

el nueve de agosto the ninth of August

el diez de septiembre the tenth of September

el once de octubre the eleventh of October

el doce de noviembre the twelfth of November

noviembre

el trece de diciembre the thirteenth of December

el catorce the fourteenth

el quince the fifteenth

el dieciséis the sixteenth

el diecisiete the seventeenth

el dieciocho the eighteenth

el diecinueve the nineteenth

el veinte the twentieth

the twenty-first el veintiuno

el veintidós the twenty-second
el veintitrés the twenty-third
el veinticuatro the twenty-fourth
el veinticinco the twenty-fifth
el veintiséis the twenty-sixth
el veintisiete the twenty-seventh
el veintiocho the twenty-eighth
el veintinueve the twenty-ninth
el treinta the thirtieth
el treinta y uno the thirty-first

Practice the following:

Nuestro aniversario es en julio. Our anniversary is in July.
julio.

Navidad es en diciembre. Christmas is in December.

Mis hijos están de vacaciones en agosto. My children are on vacation in August.
en agosto.

Mi cumpleaños es en junio. My birthday is in June.

Even though the names of places and people are capitalized in Spanish, days of the week, months of the year, the names of languages, nationalities, and names of religions aren't capitalized in Spanish.

What is today's date? is **¿Cuál es la fecha de hoy?**. The answer to that question is **Es el veintidós de marzo** that is translated to "It's March twenty-second. As mentioned earlier, Spanish utilizes cardinal numbers for the date (for example, **Es el tres de noviembre; Es el primero de junio**). If you are saying the date today, the definite article **el** is not required (for example, "Today is the seventeenth of May" is **Hoy es diecisiete de mayo**).

Below are the general phrases regarding time, days, months, and seasons. Make sure you practice speaking all of them:

la semana *week*

el mes *month*

hoy	<i>today</i>
ayer	<i>yesterday</i>
(por) la tarde	<i>(in) the afternoon/evening</i>
esta mañana	<i>this morning</i>
esta noche	<i>tonight</i>
ayer por la tarde	<i>yesterday afternoon/evening</i>
el lunes	<i>on Monday</i>
todos los miércoles	<i>every Wednesday</i>
a principios de marzo	<i>at the beginning of march</i>
a finales de septiembre	<i>at the end of September</i>
el día	<i>day</i>
quince días	<i>fortnight</i>
el año	<i>year</i>
mañana	<i>tomorrow</i>
(por) la mañana	<i>(in) the morning</i>
(por) la noche	<i>(at) night</i>
esta tarde	<i>this afternoon/evening</i>
mañana por la mañana	<i>tomorrow morning</i>
anoche	<i>last night</i>
los martes	<i>on Tuesdays</i>
en agosto/primavera	<i>in August/spring</i>
a mediados de junio	<i>in the middle of June</i>

D. Seasons (*Estaciones*)

Along with the months, you might also wish to talk about the seasons of the year. In Spanish, the seasons are masculine except for the **la primavera** (*the spring*)

la estación the season

la the spring

primavera

el verano the summer

el otoño the autumn fall
el invierno the winter

If instead we said **El clima está caliente en mi ciudad** , it would mean that it is hot right now, but it might change soon.

Mostly, sentences to tell the seasons in Spanish will follow the structure **El/La** + season + **ser** + (adjective). Below are some samples:

La primavera es hermosa. The spring is beautiful.
El verano es una estación muy caliente. The summer is a very hot season.
El otoño es colorido. Autumn is colorful.

When you ask someone you about his or her favorite season in Spanish, how would you start the conversation? For you to do that, you could say, **¿Cuál es tu estación favorita?** (*What is your favorite season?*) and **¿Cuál es la estación que te gusta más?** (*Which season do you like best?*).

You could also answer with “**Mi estación favorita es...**” (*My favorite season is...*) and “**La estación que más me gusta es...**” (*The season I like the most is...*). Tell what you like a season in Spanish along with the **porque** (*because*) and a simple description of the weather like **Mi estación favorita es el invierno porque cae nieve** (*My favorite season is winter because snow falls*). You could also utilize **Me gusta** (*I like it*) to show your likes in Spanish.

CHAPTER 5: Weather

Frequently, talking about the weather is more than only a pleasantry – the season and the weather could impact the work planned for the day. Below are some of the common weather phrases and expressions you could try.

¿Qué tiempo hace? How's the weather?

Hace buen tiempo. It's fine.

Hace calor. It's hot.

Hace frío. It's cold.

Está lloviendo. It's raining.

Está nevando. It's snowing.

Hace viento. It's windy.

Hace sol. It's sunny.

Está nublado. It's cloudy.

Hay una tormenta. There's a storm.

Hace buen tiempo. It's a good weather.

Hace mal tiempo. It's a bad weather.

Está a veinticinco
grados

Truena. It's thundering.

Está despejado. It's clear (cloudless).

Hay niebla. It's foggy.

Llovizna. It's drizzling.

Hay hielo. It's icy.

la temperatura. Temperature

Los grados Degrees

El huracán Hurricane

La precipitación Precipitation

Both **ser** and **estar** are very critical for discussing the season and the weather in Spanish. Take note that the verb **estar** will be employed to say what the weather is like at a particular time. It is only temporary weather conditions:

El clima está caliente

The weather was hot.

On the other hand, ser will be used in a more expressive and general way. For example:

El clima es caliente en mi ciudad *The weather is hot in my city*

An excellent way to start a conversation in Spanish along with the local is to ask a question about the weather or to talk about something you talk about with people you know very well or total strangers. That makes it a wonderful topic area to learn in Spanish to chat with anyone you meet.

What a great day!

How hot it is!

Do you know if it's going to rain tomorrow?

You see, the key tenses you must understand are present, future, and perhaps past. In this chapter, we will take a look at some of the crucial key phrases you need to understand so you could utilize it on your next travel to Spanish-speaking country.

A. Hace (It Does)

Hace sol It's sunny.

Hace calor It's hot

Hace frío It's cold

Hace fresco It's chilly.

Hace viento It' windy

Hace buen It's good weather
tiempo

Hace mal tiempo It's a bad weather

You could add **mucho** if you want to say "very." For example, **Hace mucho calor** (*It's very hot*). Or you could also add **tanto** to say "so..." **Hace tanto frio** (*It's so cold*).

B. When "there is" (Hay)

Hay niebla. It's foggy. /There is a fog.

Hay tormenta. There's a storm.

C. When the Weather “is” (*Está*)

Está nevando It is cloudy

Está lloviendo It's clear

Está soleado It's sunny

Está It's raining

despejado

Está nublado It's snowing

It's suggested that you learn better the weather vocabulary in Spanish as a phrase instead of isolated words. Doing this will allow you to recall which verb to utilize with which type of weather. Take note that there's no exact rule as to whether to use **hay**, **es t á** or **hace**.

You need to bear in mind that **hace** is normally utilized to express the general “feel” of the weather such as windy, cold, or warm. Meanwhile, **hay** and **es t á** are more generally particulars. You could spend lots of time attempting to understand the particular scenarios. However, it would be best if you recall every piece of weather vocabulary as phrase.

D. Using Past Tenses with the Weather

Hubo una tormenta There was a storm last night.
anoche.

Estuvo soleado el It was sunny on Sunday.
domingo.

Hizo mucho frío ayer. It was really cold yesterday.

If you do not tell a particular time, you must not employ the imperfect tense. For example:

Estaba nublado. It was cloudy.

Llovía mucho cuando salí de It was raining a lot when I left home.
casa.

Hacía mucho calor. It was really hot.

E. Using Future Tense along with the Weather

You can use **va a** + verb *It is going to...*

¿Crees que va a llover? Do you think it's going to rain?

Va a haber una tormenta. There is going to be a storm.

Va a estar nublado. It is going to be cloudy.

Va a hacer sol. It is going to be sunny.

Va a llover. It is going to rain.

Below are more Spanish weather expressions you must try. We've got here some wonderful expressions in English that concerns the weather and the same is true in Spanish.

¡Llueve a mares! It's raining oceans!

¡Llueve a cántaros! It's raining buckets/pitchers!

If someone is just having a difficult time in their life, that rain expression means "that too will pass."

Siempre que llovió, paró Whenever it rained, it stopped.

A couple of expressions when it is cold enough to freeze the balls off a brass monkey:

¡Me estoy I'm freezing!

congelando!

¡Ay, qué calor! What heat!

CHAPTER 6: Food

Food and cooking play a crucial part in life the Spanish. Standard Spanish cuisines are basic but tasty enough, along with some quality ingredients mixed to create a hearty meal. You must exercise your Spanish by purchasing vegetables and fruit at the street markets – you will be given with many samples, as the Spanish are so proud of their own produce! You could also try your hand at cooking some authentic Spanish dishes too. Reading a recipe in Spanish is an excellent way to widen your vocabulary and fill your tummy at the same time!

The most sought-after Spanish food is the **paella** (saffron rice with chicken or seafood). This dish originated in the location of Valencia. Other traditional dishes include gazpacho (a tomato, cucumber and pepper soup served cold); **pollo al ajillo** (chicken in garlic sauce); **cocido** (a chickpea-based stew with ingredients available according to the region); **bacalo a la vizcaína** (salted cod in tomato sauce – a speciality in Basque); **fabada asturiana** (butter bean stew along with pork and chorizo); and so much more. **Tortilla** is also a typical mealtime staple. A mouth-watering omelette that is made with fried potatoes and green peppers or onions).

Spain provides a wide array of regional dishes. Lots of olive oil and garlic are a feature of most standard recipes. Restaurants don't normally provide a vegetarian menu. However, you will find hundreds of Spanish dishes which don't include any meat. You could ask your waiter for advice.

Cultural Tip: If you want to order something, all you have to do is to name it. Say 'please,' adding 'for me,' 'for her' or 'for

him' if you are ordering a few people to show who wants that.

- In bars, you need to pay for your drinks and so on once you leave, though in the bigger, busy bars, you need to pay for every round. It's standard to leave a bit of change as a tip. It costs more to sit at a table than standing up at the bar, particularly on a pavement or terrace outside a café or bar. In restaurants, the bill will say if service is added; otherwise, a tip of ten percent is normal.
- The meal periods in Spain are later than in Britain, even though restaurants in tourist locations might open a bit earlier. Lunchtime is around two o'clock in the afternoon, and the supper is not before 8:30. Spaniards often have their own **tapas** (*bar snacks*) earlier in the evening.
- Bars are more likely to open early in the morning for breakfast. They stay open until early the following morning. There are no age restrictions in these establishments.
- Snack bars often serve **platos combinados** (*combined dishes*) that are set dishes of things such as chips, chicken, eggs, or ham. These are displayed on the menu and are always numbered. You only need to ask for the number you like. Several snack bars are self-service.
- Coffee is normally the espresso-type, and it is served strong in small cups. You could have **café solo** (*black coffee*), **café con leche** (*white coffee*), or **café cortado** (*with a dash of milk*) . If you prefer a bigger cup, you could add the word **doble** .

- Tea (*made with tea bags*) comes on its own – you have to ask for lemon or milk. Herbal teas (*e.g., mint or chamomile*) are also accessible.
- A refreshing Spanish drink you could try is the **horchata de chufas**. This is a milky-looking drink that is groundnuts.
- Sherry comes from the Jerez area of southwest Spain. **Fino** is dry and pale and is the most widely drunk form. **Manzanilla** is the same, but it comes from the Sanlúcar de Barrameda down instead of Jerez. Just take note that **manzanilla** refers to chamomile tea. You need to make it clear which drink you prefer.
- As mentioned earlier, **tortilla** is the classic Spanish omelet that is made with potatoes. It has a bit of onion and lots of eggs. When we talk about its size, it looks like a big cake. It is normally served cold, and it's cut into wedges. The thin type of this food is known as **tortilla francesa** (*French omelette*). Spanish tortilla bears no resemblance to the Mexican tortilla.
- **Gazpacho andaluz** is a cold soup that is made of cucumber, vinegar, olive oil, green peppers, and tomatoes. You will find different types of gazpacho that have various ingredients.
- **Paella valenciana** is the classic, and it is made of rice colored with peas, red peppers, seafood, and saffron. It might also include chicken and meats. **Paellas** from other locations might have different ingredients.

- **Churros** are a famous Spanish snack either for breakfast and at the end of the night out. They are also featured at carnivals and festivals. Churros are sticks or loops of deep-fried batter, and they are sometimes consumed with a cup of hot chocolate. You could get them at stalls, in bars or shops known as **churrerías**.
- **Bocadillos** (*sandwiches*) are normally made with chunks of French bread. **Un sandwich** is a toasted sandwich that is made of sliced white bread. Common fillings for sandwiches include **jamón** (*ham*), **tortilla** (*omelet*), **chorizo** (*spicy sausage*), and **queso** (*cheese*). With ham, you will need to specify whether you prefer a **jamón serrano** (*Spanish cured ham*) or **jamón York** (*boiled ham*).

A. Breakfast (*Desayuno*)

El desayuno (*breakfast*) is a light meal. This is normally composed of coffee and maybe a pastry to eat, **churros** or **croissant** or a **pan** (*bread*). Coffee is either **solo** or **con leche**. **Un cortado** is a small cup of coffee with milk. In hotels, breakfast is normally served at 7:30 to 9:30 in the morning.

Check out these sample conversation below:

Buenos días, María. Good morning, María

Buenos días, David, ¿cómo estás?
Good morning, David, how are you?

Muy bien gracias Very well thank you.

Bien, ¿qué quieres tomar? Good. What would you like?

Un café, por favor. A coffee, please.

¿Un café con leche, Cortado, or sólo?

cortado o solo?	
Con leche por favor	With milk, please.
¿Quieres algo para comer?	Do you want something to eat?
Sí, ¿qué tienes?	Yes, what do you have?
Tenemos churros, croissants, bollos variados	We have churros, croissants, various pastries.
¿Tienes pan?	Do you have bread?
Sí, ¿con mantequilla y mermelada o con tomate y aceite?	Yes. With butter and jam or with tomato and oil?
Con tomate y aceite, por favor.	With tomato and oil, please.
Muy bien.	Very good.

General Words

Below are the common foods you must know:

Panceto / Tocino	Bacon
Jamón	Ham
Frijoles	Bacon

- Volteados
- Refried

Queso	Cheese
Pan	Bread
Pan tostado	Toast
Jalea / Mermelada	Jam

Mantequilla	Butter
Miel	Milk
Yogur	Yogurt
Leche fría	Milk (cold)
Té	Tea
Café	Coffee

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Descafeinado• Negro• Con leche | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Decaffeinated• Black• With milk |
|--|---|

Jugo de fruta	Fruit juice
---------------	-------------

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Jugo de tomate• Jugo de toronja• Jugo de manzana• Jugo de naranja | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Tomato juice• Grapefruit juice• Apple juice• Orange juice |
|--|--|

Huevos	Eggs
--------	------

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Fritos• Revueltos• Tibio• Duro | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Fried• Scrambled• Soft boiled• Hard boiled |
|---|---|

General Phrases

Yo como mi desayuno.	I eat my breakfast.
¿Has desayunado?	Did you eat breakfast?
Desayuné.	I had breakfast.
Yo como hue para el desayuno.	I eat eggs for breakfast.
El come el desayuno.	He eats breakfast
¿Que desayunaste?	What do you have for breakfast?
Preparar el desayuno.	Make breakfast.
Yo desayuno por la mañana.	I eat breakfast in the morning.

B. Lunch (*La Comida*)

Lunch is normally served at two or 3 p.m. It is normally the major meal of the day. In a restaurant, you might be given **el menu** (*set menu, the chef's meal*) or **la carta** (*to choose á la carte*). **La merienda** is a type of mid-afternoon snack at around five in the afternoon when kids are given a **bocadillo** (*big roll*) along with ham, cheese and a piece of chocolate, while parents have a pastry or coffee.

Below are the traditional lunch meals in Spain:

- **El cocido** is a stew that is made with sausage, veggies, chickpeas, and other add-ons the cook might pick.
- **Huevo rotos** is composed of fried eggs with ham and potatoes. You will find this lunch meal with ham.
- **Salmorejo y gazpacho** is a cold soup with onion, garlic, peppers, and tomatoes.
- **Pisto manchego** is a traditional Spanish plate that is easy and fast to create. It is composed of tomato, egg pants,

onions, and zucchini.

- **Migas** is a dish eaten by the shepherds of Spain. This is made of breadcrumbs along with sausage, bacon, and peppers.

General Phrases:

Almorzar	Eat lunch / Have lunch
Para el almuerzo	For lunch
almorcé	I ate lunch. / I had lunch.
Pausa para almorzar.	Lunch break
Almuerzo a mediodía.	I eat lunch at noon.
Almuerzo con mi familia los domingos.	I eat lunch with my family on Sundays.
Estoy almorzando.	I am eating lunch.
¿Qué comes en el almuerzo?	What do you eat for lunch?
Quisiera mi filete bien hecho.	I'd like my steak well done.
Soy vegetariano/-a.	I am a vegetarian. (m/f).
Soy alérgico/-a a los frutos secos.	I am allergic to nuts. (m/f).

C. Dinner (*La Cena*)

The Spanish dinner table is considered the heart of the social world. Expect that will do lots of socializing around the table, enjoying wine and food. In general, you should remain polite to older people.

Cultural Tip: Dinner in Spain might be late, however, as with tapas; it is surely worth waiting for. Dinner is normally lighter than it would be in the United States or Britain. When eaten inside the home, a Spanish dinner is composed of a salad, a plate of cured ham, aged cheese or sausages, or a simple yogurt and a fruit.

Bar dinners and restaurant are other aspects. While there are some foods you won't find on dinner menus such as lamb, lentils, rice and pasta, Spain has a wide array of dinner options. For instance, **huevos** (*eggs*) are a dinner food in the country. Probably the crown jewel of their dinners is the **tortilla de patata** (*Spanish omelet*). Other sought-after dinner dishes are composed of **huevos rotos** (*fried potatoes topped with the fried-sunny side up eggs*), **croquetas** (*lightly battered and fried béchamel combined with cheese, mushrooms, and diced ham*).

General Phrases:

Cenar	Eat dinner
Despues de la cena	After dinner
Hacer la cena	Cook dinner
¿Qué hay para cenar?	What's for dinner?
Ceno con mi familia.	I eat dinner with my family.
Mesa del comedor	Dinner table
Fiesta de cena	Dinner party
Serviste una Buena cena.	You served a good dinner.
Gracias por la cena.	Thank you for the dinner.

CHAPTER 7: Home

The majority of city-dwellers live in an **edificios** (*apartment blocks*). However, in rural regions, the houses are more likely to be a **chalet** (*single-family*). The term **casa** could be utilized to denote *home*, whether the home is a flat or house. For instance:

Me voy a casa. I'm going home.
Coco no está en Coco is not at home.
casa.

It could also express an establishment containing flats, for instance:

Es una casa moderna de diez plantas. It's a modern ten-story block.

Or it could be a house in the average sense; for instance, a two or three-story building with single occupancy. A modern detached house in the region or on the coast is normally **un chalet** and a semi-detached house **un chalet adosado**. As you have seen, **apartamento** is utilized for a small flat. The fashionable word for a one-room flat is **un studio**, which corresponds to the English studio flat.

Below is the list of common phrases that are connected to **casa**:

el dormitorio bedroom
el salón sitting room
el comedor dining room
el cuarto de estar living room
el cuarto de baño bathroom
baño

la cocina kitchen
la habitación room
el techo ceiling
el ático attic

Cultural Tip: You rarely find a Spanish home without shutters at each window. Those are closed at night and sometimes during the heat of the day in the summer. Curtains, where they exist at all, are more likely to be more for a decoration. Carpets aren't that famous in Spanish homes; parquet floor and ceramic tiles with rugs are a more typical flooring solution.

A. Rooms in the House (*Habitaciones en la Casa*)

If you are planning to rent a vacation house or villa in Spain, the most typical choice is to take it for a full month, or if not, for a **quincena** , the first or last fifteen days of the month. You will require checking in advance whether the price of utilities is added in the rent. The majority of the vacation homes doesn't have a telephone.

La cocina no funciona The stove is broken.

No me gustan las cortinas. I don't like the curtains.

¿Está incluida la
electricidad? Is electricity included?

¡Qué azulejos más bonitos! What beautiful tiles!

Y aquí está la lavadora. And here's the washing machine.

Here are the phrases of common rooms of a house in Spanish. A comparatively tricky case is that the Spanish term for *bedroom* is different depending on the Spanish-speaking location.

el trastero	the junk room, the boxroom
el salón	the living room
el recibidor	the hallway
el portal	the porch
el pasillo	the passageway
el lavadero	the laundry room/ the washroom
el garaje, la cochera	the garage
el estudio	the study
la entrada	the entrance, hallway
el desayunador	the breakfast area
la/mi/nuestra recámara	the/my/our bedroom (<i>mexico</i>)
el/mi/nuestroa dormitorio	the/my/our bedroom
el cuarto de visitas	the guest room
el cuarto de servicio	the utility room, the washroom
el cuarta de lavado	the washroom
mi cuarto	my (bed)room
el comedor	the dining room
la cocina	the kitchen
el (cuarto de) baño	the bathroom
están en...	they're in
está en...	he's/she's/it's in...

General Phrases:

Hay tres puertas en la casa. There are three doors in the

	house.
Hay una ventana en la sala.	There is a window in the living room.
Hay un sótano en la casa.	There is a basement in the house.
Hay habitaciones en el Segundo piso.	There are rooms on the second floor.
Yo tengo un casa grande.	I have a big house.
La casa tiene garaje.	The house has a garage.
La cocina tiene una ventana.	The house has a window.
La sala tiene mucho espacio.	The living room has a lot of space.
La casa tiene un jardín bonito.	The house has a beautiful garden.
La sala tiene muchos objetos.	The living room has many objects.
Tengo unas cuantas lámparas en mi casa.	I have a few lamps in my house.
Me gusta mucho tu cocina.	I like your kitchen a lot.
El gabinete de la cocina necesita algo de pintura.	The cabinet in the kitchen needs some paint.

B. Sections and Floors of the House (*Secciones y Pisos de la Casa*)

Some of the parts of the house, which are not quite “rooms:”

en la escalera	on the stairs
en el descanso	on the landing
en el jardín	in the garden

en el patio on the patio
(en) el piscine (in) the swimming pool
(en) la alberca (in) the swimming pool (*mexico*)
en la terraza/azotea in the roof garden, on the roof

This is how you will speak what floor of the house or building things are on:

subir to go upstairs
bajar to go downstairs
(en la planta de) arriba upstairs
(en la plante de) abajo downstairs
en el mezanine on the mezzanine
en el pisco catorce on the fourteenth floor (us:
fifteenth)
en el cuarto/quinto/sexton piso on the fourth/fifth/sixth floor
en el tercer piso on the third floor
en el primer piso on the first floor
en el segundo piso on the second floor
en le planta baja downstairs, on the ground floor
en el entretecho in the attic/loft
en el desván in the loft/attic (*latin america*)
en el sotanó in the cellar/basement

General Phrases:

El comedor está en el piso The dining room is on the floor
de abajo. below this one.

El balcón está en el segundo The balcony is on the second

the roof

General Phrases:

Las escaleras son incomodas.	The stairs are comfortable.
Las paredes de esta habitación son rosadas.	The walls of this room are pink.
El cielo raso de esta casa es blanco.	The ceiling of this house is white.
El techo es de Buena calidad.	The roof is of good quality.
El pasillo es angosto.	The hallway is narrow.
Me gusta esa mesa de café.	I like that coffee table.

Always take note to check the vocabulary for parts of the house and rooms in Spanish again. Most essentially, always remember the structures, which are often utilized when talking about those objects.

CHAPTER 8: Animals

A lot of Spanish families have their own pets – dogs are particularly sought after – and veterinary services are generally good. You could request your vet about the needed paperwork if you are planning traveling to Spain along with your pet.

el gato cat

el conejo rabbit

el pájaro bird

el pez fish

el perro dog

el hamster

hamster

Learn these phrases and test yourself:

¿Es bueno el perro? Is this dog friendly?

¿Puedo llevar el perro? Can I bring my dog?

Me dan miedo los I am afraid of cats.
gatos.

Mi perro no muerde. My dog does not bite.

Mi perro no está bien. My dog is not well.

Cultural Trip : A lot of dogs in Spain are working or guard dogs. You might see them roaming free or tethered. Approach rural homes and farms with specific care. Make sure you look for warning notices like **¡Cuidado con el perro!** (*Beware of dog!*).

Read this simple conversation aloud:

¿Es suyo este perro? Is this your dog?

Sí, se llama Sandy. Yes, his name is Sandy.

Me dan miedo los perros. I'm afraid of dogs.

No se preocupe. Es Don't worry. He's friendly
bueno.

Well who does not love animals? Even if you are one of those people who never had a pet, you have possibly watched different documentaries here and there. Animals are somewhat a universal subject of conversation. In this chapter, we will provide you with helpful Spanish phrases that will prepare you for a conversation with any animal or pet lover.

A. The Gender of Animals

Did you know that Spanish is a gender-specific language? That simply denotes it allocates a gender (masculine and feminine) for all single nouns. Often, the gender will be apparent, like if you talk about a man (*he*) or a woman (*she*). However, quite often, particularly when speaking about animals, stuff isn't so clear.

Two Regular Gender Forms

You will find two regular gender forms for animals in the Spanish language. A huge number of animals have two types of in Spanish. One for the feminine and one for the masculine. Such two forms could be regular or irregular.

If you begin learning the names of the animals in Spanish, you might typically begin with the regular subgroup. That specific group is composed of animals having a feminine form ending in –**a**, and a masculine form ending in –**o**.

Look at these examples:

zorro / zorra fox /vixen
perro / perra male / female dog
pavo / pava drake / duck
oso / osa male bear / she-bear
mono / mona male / female donkey
lobo / loba male wolf / she-wolf
gato / gata male / female cat
elefante / elefanta male / female elephant
conejo / coneja male / female rabbit
ciervo / cierva stag / doe
cerdo / cerda male / female pig
camello / camella male / female camel
burro / burra male / female donkey

You might have already seen the various animals in English that determine males from females with the use of the two words. We also have that in the Spanish language. Later on, you'll know them.

Take note that there are more animals with regular names. However, these mentioned above offer you the concept that will get you started in establishing your Spanish animal vocabulary.

Most of the time, you could utilize the masculine word for a male animal as well as the feminine word for a female animal. However, what happens when you are not aware of the gender of a specific animal?

The only thing you need to bear in mind is that the masculine form of a noun could be utilized as a default. For example:

¡Qué gato tan bonito! What a beautiful cat!

No estoy seguro, pero creo I'm not sure, but I think it's a doe.

que es una cierva.

¿Es aquello un ciervo, o Is that a stag or a doe?
una cierva?

Es una gata. Se lla Cookie. She is a female cat. Her name is
Cookie.

Two Irregular Gender Forms

On the other hand, you will also find the “irregular group.” Similar to the English language, a few animals have various words for the feminine and masculine forms. There’s no way for you to determine what such forms will look like. Therefore, it’s suggested that you understand the pairs of animals by heart and soul.

toro / vaca bull / cow

tigre / tigresa tiger / tigress

león / leona lion / lioness

jabalí/ jabalina wildboar / soar

gallo / gallina rooster / hen

chivo / cabra billy goat / nanny

carnero / oveja ram / ewe

caballo / stallion / mare

yegua

You have already learned a few names of animals. Make sure that you study one of them and ensure they are categorized like this. After you understand the two forms of animals in the Spanish language, it’s time for you to learn about the animals in one form only.

There are two crucial words you need to learn if you like to identify between a male and a female are **macho** (*male*) and **hembra** (*female*). If you are learning such, you need to study the animal word as well its article. You only require to add **hembra** and **macho** as necessary as a sentence.

Bear in mind that even this group of animals has a similar word for both genders; such words could be either feminine or masculine. You still need to learn every animal along with that article.

You might also find that there's a massive group of animals in the Spanish language, which have one name for both females and males. Below are some of them:

el pájaro bird

el hipopótamo the hippopotamus

el sapo toad

el topo mole

el mosquito mosquito

el cuervo crow

el cocodrilo crocodile

el canguro kangaroo

la tortuga turtle

la rana frog

la pantera panther

la mosca fly

la mariposa butterfly

la hormiga ant

la jirafa giraffe

la cebra zebra

la ballena whale

la ardilla squirrel

General Phrases:

Below, you will find a list of sentences connected to such animals in Spanish. Many of those sentences are the thing you'd hear local people say about pets in Spanish.

Los caballos son muy rápidos.	Horses are very fast.
¿Crees que tengan lagartillas en la tienda?	Do you think they have lizards in the store?
Debes alimentar la serpiente hoy.	You must feed the snake today.
Hay muchos en la tienda de mascotas.	There are many rabbits in the pet store.
Ira, ese hamster está muy gordito.	Look, that hamster is very chubby!
Una rata sería la mascot perfecta para ti.	A rat would be the perfect pet for you.
No me gustan los sapos.	I do not like toads.
Tengo una pecera con 3 peces. Son fáciles de cuidar.	I have a fish tank with 3 fish. They are easy to take care of.
Oye, mira qué bonita esa tortuguita.	Hey, look how pretty that little turtle is.
Mi mascota favorite es el perro.	My favorite pet is a dog.
Tu gato es muy cariñoso y divertido.	Your cat is very affectionate and funny.

El perico es muy parlanchín. The parakeet is very talkative. He
Habla todo el día. talks all day.

CHAPTER 9: Asking For Information and Help with the Language

Have you ever tried to talk to someone in a foreign language but the response to you is in English? It could be somewhat discouraging to talk to someone in your best Spanish and get a reply in English. You might even start to doubt your capability to learn the language. Maybe you'll start to think that your level of Spanish is not sufficient for a decent conversation.

Culture Tip: Did you know that there are three types of natives in Spanish? Irrespective of where you live, the Spanish speakers you engage with fall in one of such categories:

1. ***Bilingual friends*** . You've communicated these people in English at all times. They feel awkward about speaking with you in the Spanish language. They will, later on, say a bit of sentence if you push them enough. But later on, they will quickly switch back to speaking in English.

2. ***Random locals who speak English*** . Often, these people will respond to you in English, as they think they are doing you a favor. Some of them are only showing off their English skills.
3. ***Random locals who do not know English***. These people aren't very proud of their English. They are more than glad to speak the mother tongue with you, irrespective of your level.

These type of people could be a massive support to you in your road-building efforts. When a local response to you in English, and you think you never said anything wrong, it denotes you have a blind spot.

Rather than thinking about the reaction of other people, you must concentrate on the aspects you have total control over. You could ask them directly what you said wrong. If the person switches to speaking English if you are speaking Spanish, you can reply by saying:

**¿Lo he dicho mal en *Did I say wrong in Spanish?*
español?**

If you really made a mistake there, you will have an opportunity of fixing it. If not, they might start speaking to Spanish again.

If you're the kind of person who is not that confident to your Spanish skills, here's how you could ask some help.

Me apetece hablar un I feel (like) talking a bit in
poco en español. ¿Me Spanish. (Do/Can) you help me?
ayudas?

Ah, claro. Cuéntame. Ah, (clear, of course). Tell me.

The sentences below cover topics such as identifying if the other individual can speak English, expressing you need help, telling them you have an emergency and more.

Check out these examples of questions related to speaking the language:

- | | |
|--|--|
| ¿Hablas inglés? | Do you speak English? |
| ¿Que significa esta palabra? | What does this word mean? |
| ¿Hablas español? | Does he speak Spanish? |
| ¿Me pueden ayudar a traducir esto en inglés? | Can you help me translate this in English? |
| ¿Hay alguien qui que habla inglés? | Does anyone here speak English? |
| No hablo español. | I don't speak Spanish. |
| ¡Nesecito ayuda! | I need help! |
| Puedes hablar mas despacio por favor. | Can you speak more slowly, please. |
| Comprendo un puco. | I understand a little. |
| Puedes ayudarme por gavor. | Can you help me, please. |
| ¿Me puedes dar una mano? | Can you give a hand? |
| No hablo bien español. ¿Me puedes ayudar? | I don't speak Spanish well. Can you help me? |
| Lo siento. No hablo español. | Sorry. I don't speak Spanish. |

CHAPTER 10: To Go Shopping

Small, conventional shops are still very typical in Spain. However, you could also notice giant supermarkets and shopping centers on the outskirts of cities. Local markets selling local and fresh produce could be seen everywhere. You could request which day is a market day at the **oficina de información turística** (*tourist office*).

Cultural Tip : If you wish to a daily bar of soap or maybe a tube of toothpaste, you must go to a **droguería** (*drugstore*) instead of going to a **farmacia** (*pharmacy*). Take note that the **estanco** (*tobacconist*) is the location for all types of tobacco stamps and products. **Paperlerías** cater to each of your stationery requirements. The majority of Spanish shops today provide a free gift-wrapping service. You only need to say **¿Me lo envuelve para regalo?”** (*May I have it gift-wrapped?*).

el ultramarinos grocery
la tintoría dry-cleaner
la zapatería shoe store
la oficina de post office
correos
la verdulería greengrocer
la peluquería hairdresser
la ferretería hardware store

General Phrases:

¿Puedo hacer un pedido? Can I place an order?

¿Me pone dos de éstos? May I have two of those?
¿Tiene tarjetas telefónicas? Do you sell phone cards?
Sólo estoy mirando, I'm just looking, thank you.
gracias.
¿Dónde se paga? Where do I pay?
¿Dónde está la peluquería? Where is the hairdresser?

A. At the Market (*En el Mercado*)

Spain utilizes the metric system of measures and weights. Therefore, you need to request for produce in grams or kilograms. You will find some bigger items, such as pineapples or melons, that are more likely to be sold by **la pieza** (*as single items*). Some products like lettuce might be sold in twos or threes.

los pimientos peppers
los guisantes peas
las alcachofas artichokes
los pepinos cucumbers
las uvas grapes
los mushrooms
champiñones
las judías beans
los tomates tomatoes

General Phrases:

Quisiera tomates. Quisiera tomates.
¿De los grandes o de los The large ones or the small ones?
pequeños?

Dos kilos de los pequeños, Two kilos of the small ones,
por favor. please.

Spain utilizes the typical European currency. They use Euro that is categorized into 100 **centimos**. Other Spanish-speaking nations in South and Central America have their own currencies to. Mexico, Colombia, Uruguay, Chile, and Argentina refer their currency as peso that is categorized into 100 **centavos**.

General Phrases:

Esa salchicha es demasiado cara. That sausage is too expensive.

¿A cuánto está esa? How much is that one?

Eso es todo. That's all.

¿Algo más, señorita? Anything else, miss?

Eso es todo, gracias. That's all, thank you. How much?

¿Cuánto es?

Tres cincuenta. Three-fifty.

Una botella de vino blanco, por favor. A bottle of white wine, please.

Cien gramos de aceitunas, por favor. A hundred grams of olive, please.

Un trozo de queso, por favor. A piece of cheese, please.

Un litro de agua, por favor. A liter of water, please.

B. At the Supermarket (En el Supermercado)

Prices in supermarkets are normally lower than in smaller shops. They provide all types of products, along with bigger out-of-town

himpermercados that carries lawn furniture, home improvement items, clothes and household items.

los congelados frozen foods

la verdure vegetables

los productos lácteos dairy products

los productos de belleza beauty products

los platos preparados prepared meals

las bebidas drinks

la fruta fruit

los productos del hogar household products

You will find that it's not feasible to bring unweighted vegetables and fruits sold by the kilo straight to the supermarket checkout. You will find a separate counter or self-service weighing-machine there.

General Phrases:

¿Me da una bolsa, por favor? May I have a bag, please?

¿Dónde están las bebidas? Where are the drinks?

¿Dónde está la caja, por favor? Where is the checkout, please?

Por favor, meta su PIN. Please type in your PIN.

C. Clothes and Shoes (*Ropa y Calzado*)

Clothes and shoes are measured in metric sizes from 36 and above. Even letting for the conversion of sizes, the Spanish clothes are

more likely to cut smaller compared to American ones. Take note that clothe sizes is **la talla** but the shoe size is **el número**.

los zapatos shoes

los zapatos pantyhose

la falda skirt

el pantalón pants

la manga sleeve

el bolsillo pocket

la jacket

chaqueta

la corbata tie

la camisa shirt

General Phrases:

¿Tiene una talla más grande? Do you have a larger size?

No es lo que quiero It's not what I want.

Me quedo con el rosa. I'll take the pink one

Los zapatos son demasiados caros. The shoes are too expensive.

Necesito una cama más blanda. I need a softer bed.

No me gusta el color. I don't like the color.

Quiero una falda/una camisa. I want a skirt/a shirt.

Mi tala es la cuarenta. My size is 40.

Es demasiado grande. It's too big.

¿Puede medirme Can you measure me?

Quiero unas sandalias. I want some sandals.

¿Lo tienen en otros colores? Do you have it in other colors?

¿Puedo probármelo? Can I try it on?

Es demasiado grandes. It's too small.

¿Tiene una talla mas
perqueña? Have you got a smaller size?

Me gusta. I like it.

¿Hay en espejo? Is there a mirror?

Phrases to Try:

CHAPTER 11: Coffee/Restaurant

Well, who doesn't like to eat? Feel free to discover local foods while you are abroad! Your tummy won't be sorry about that.

You see, spending some of your time at cafés and restaurants could factor into your overall cultural immersion as well as your Spanish language learning experience. Take your time to talk along with the locals, discover where the local hot spots are and discover which the best cuisines in the region are. You see, lots of people love to talk about food as much as they like to eat it!

A. In the Café (En la cafetería)

In a Spanish café, you could get pastries and bread with your coffee in the mornings. **Churros** (fried dough sticks) are a standard Spanish snack. Either you could sit at the counter, or you could have a waiter service at a table. It is normal to tip the waiter, often a few coins are sufficient.

la tostada con mantequilla toast with butter

la mermelada jam

el cortado espresso with a bit of milk

el café descafeinado decaffeinated coffee

el té con limón tea with lemon

Buenos días. Me pone un café Hello. I'll have coffee with
con leche milk, please.

¿Eso es todo? Is that all?

¿Tiene churros? Do you have any churros?

Me pone un café. I'll have a black coffee

¿Cuánto es? How much is that?

Un café solo, por favor. A black coffee, please.

Una naranjada, por favor. A fizzy orange, please.

Dos cafés con leche, por favor. Two White coffees, please.

¿Qué zumos tiene? What fruit juices do you have?

Un té con leche/limón. A tea with milk/lemon.

B. In the Restaurant (En el Restaurante)

You will find a wide array of various types of eating-places in Spain. In a **tasca** or bar, you could find various **tapas** or snacks. Lunch is their major meal; however, if you are not that hungry, most restaurants there provide tapas at the bar. That makes it a very cost-efficient way to have a light meal.

Hola. Una mesa para cuatro, Hello. A table for four, please
por favor.

¿Tiene una reserva? Do you have a reservation?

Sí, a nombre de Cortés Yes, in the name of Cortés.

¿Fumadores o no fumadores? Smoking or nonsmoking

No fumadores, por favor. Nonsmoking, please

Sígueme, por favor Follow me, please.

C. Finding Your Table

Do you prefer a swanky bistro? If yes, you need to bear in mind that this type of restaurant is loaded with lots of customers. You might need to book your reservation earlier. You could call them through your phone and be certain to greet them with a friendly tone. Tell them, **Quisiera hacer una reserva para # persona(s)** (*I*

would like to make a reservation for # people). Then, they will ask you, **¿Bajo el nombre de quién?** (*Under whose name?*).

If you are one of those people who fail to book well ahead of time, you could simply go to the café by requesting a seat. Just say **¿Podría sentarme en el bar?** (*May I sit at the bar?*).

You might also find that exclusive dietary preferences are often perceived with a suspicious eye in Latin America. Therefore, make sure that you were specific with your waiter what it is that you can't eat. You can simply say the following:

Soy vegetariano, vegetariana I am vegetarian

Tengo alérgia a... I am allergic to

No como... I don't eat...

Make sure that you always check with your waiter the food your ordered. For sure you don't want to be disappointed after your waiter served the food you don't like.

Uamesa para cuatro, por favor. A table for four, please.

¿Tiene platos vegetarianos? Do you have vegetarian dishes?

¿Tiene un menu? Do you have a set menu?

El plato combinado número. Set dish number three, please.

La carta, por favor. The menu, please.

D. Navigating the Restaurant

Practice some of the common phrases when going to a restaurant:

Tráigame la cuenta, por favor Bring me the check, please

mesero , mesera waiter, waitress

e l menú the menu

p edir to order
c uenta bill

Quiero reservar una mesa para I want to reerve a table for two
dos personas. people.

Para mañana as las diez y For tommorw at half past ten.
media.

He reservado une mesa. I have booked a table.

Para las nueve. For nine o'clock.

A nobre e... The name is...

While you are traveling the country, make sure you always ask the locals. Some questions you could ask them are the following:

¿Qué me recomienda? What do you recommend?

¿Cuál es la comida típica de What is the typical food of this
esta región? region?

¿Hay algunos restaurantes no Are there any inexpensive
muy caros por aquí? restaurants around here?

E. Drinks (*Bebidas*)

If you are seat at the restaurant, the very first thing you the waiter will ask you is would you like some drink. Make sure you know some refreshment vocabulary so you could get straight to reading the menu.

vino blanco white wine

vino tinto red wine

café coffee

té helado iced tea

cola soda
limonada lemonade
jugo juice
batido smoothie or milkshake

Un (vaso de vino) tinto, por favor. A glass of red wine, please.

Dos cañas, por favor. Two draught, por favor.

Un gin tonic, por favor. A gin and tonic, please.

Una cerveza, por favor. A beer, please.

Aqua mineral, por favor. Mineral water, please.

F. Seafood (*Mariscos*)

If you're a seafood lover, ensure you are aware of the Spanish translation of these foods:

atun tuna
calamares squid
pescado fish
langosta lobster
cangrejo crab
camarones shrimp
mariscos seafood, shellfish

¿Tiene platos vegetarianos? Do you have vegetarian dishes?

Soap de pescado, por favor. Fish soup, please.

Pez espada, por favor. Swordfish, please.

Una ración de calamares, por favor. A (large) portion of fried squid, please.

Ésta muy Bueno. It's very good.

G. Meats (Carne)

codorniz quail

pavo turkey

bistec steak

lomo **de cerdo** pork tenderloin

jamón ham

chorizo sausage

Perdone, ¿Dónde ésta mi filete? Excuse me, where is my steak?

Chuleta de cerdo, por favor. Porkchop, please.

Esto ésta quemado. This is burnt.

Esto no ésta hecho. This is burnt.

Ésta my rico. It's really delicious.

H.

Food Preparation

a la parrilla barbecued

empanado or **empanizado** or breaded

apanado

asado roasted

a la pancha grilled

filete fillet

I. Dessert (*Postre*)

gelatina gelatin

ensalada de frutas fruit salad

torta / tarta cake

¿Tiene helados? Do you have ice creams?

¿Qué sabores tiene? What flavors do you have?

Uno de chocolate/vainilla, por favor. A chocolate/vanilla one, please.

Un polo (de naranja), por favor. An (orange) ice-lolly, please.

Flan, por favor. Crème caramel, please.

General Phrases:

¿Tiene...? Do you have...?

¿Qué hay para comer? What is there to eat?

¿Qué hay de postre? What is there for dessert?

¿Qué me aconseja? What do you recommend?

¿Tiene algunos platos típicos de aquí? Do you have any typical local dishes?

Más..., por favor. More... please.

Un/Una... por favor. A (one)... please.

Esto, por favor. This, please.

¿Qué es esto? What is this?

Dos de éstos, por favor. Two of these, please.

¿Cómo se come esto. How do you eat this?

La cuenta, por favor.	The bill, please.
¡Salud!	Cheers!
¿Qué aproveche!	Enjoy your meal!
Nada más, gracias!	Nothing else, thanks!
¿Dónde están los servicios?	Where are the toilets?
Para mí.	For me.
Más... por favor.	More... please.
¿Qué me aconseja?	What do you recommend?
¿Qué hay de postre?	What is there for dessert?
Con hielo.	With ice.
¿Qué tapas tiene?	What bar snacks do you have?
Unas patatas fritas, por favor.	Some crisps, please.
¿Esta incluida la verdura?	Are vegetables included?
Media botella de vino blanco.	Half a bottle of white wine.

CHAPTER 12: Finding the Way / Directions

You will often be able to see a **plano de la ciudad** (*town map*) in the downtown area. These are commonly close the town hall or tourist office. In the older regions of Spanish towns, you will find narrow streets. This is where you will see a one-way in operation. Parking is normally restricted there.

la segunda a la izquierda Second left.

la primera a la derecho First right

¿Cómo se va a la piscina? How do i get to the
swimming pool?

Todo recto. Straight on.

Tuerza a la izquierda/derecho. Turn left/right.

¿Hay un restaurante en la Is there a restaurant in town?
cuidad?

Sí, cerca de la estación. Yes, near the station.

¿Cómo se va a la estación? How do I get to the station?

Me he perdido. I'm lost.

¿Dondé estamos? Where are we?

Take note that some general maps are accessible from the Spanish National Tourist Office. A wide array of road maps, as well as some more specialized maps like maps for walkers, is available from specialist map sellers and bookshops.

In Spain, the Spanish *Instituto Geográfico Nacional* publishes several maps at various scales. However, they aren't always simple

to get. Often, they could be not reliable too. Local tourist offices could present regional maps and town plans as well.

If you need to ask the way somewhere, the simplest thing is to name the location you are searching for. Add the word **¿Granada, por favor?** (Please?). Or you could begin with **¿donde ésta..?** (Where is...?).

The question “*Where is the nearest (bank/petrol station)?* ” is rather complex in Spanish. Therefore, you could ask, “*Is there (a petrol station/bank) around here ?*” **¿Hay (una gasolinera/un baco) por aqui?**

If you are searching for a specific address, you could have written it down. In Spain, the addresses are written along with the street name first, and the number afterward. For example, **Calle de Cervantes, 73**. An address for a flat might also have the number of the floor and the flat. For example, **Calle de Cervantes, 73, 2º-4** (2º means 2nd – second floor and the number **4** is the number of the flat.)

If you are presented with directions, you must always listen for the vital bits, whether you turn right or left. Then try you repeat every bit to ensure you have understood it properly. If you cannot understand anything, ask the person to say it again slowly. You can prompt it with **Otra vez** (*Again*) if needed.

¿Puede Vd. decirme...? Could you tell me...?

correos the post office

ya lo veo oh yes, i sen it (*i already see*)

en el mismo lado on the same side

al otro lado on the other side

a la derecho/izquierda to/on the right/left

tomar	to take
cruzar	to cross
la esquina	corner
el tercero	the third (one)
frente a	opposite
la iglesia	church
doblar	to turn
Todo recto	Straight on.
la primera a la derecha	first right
la segunda a la izquierda	second left

A. Asking Particular Places

You can ask **¿Dónde ésta...?** if you are looking for particular places. For those less specific places, say **¿Dónde hay...?**

For example, if you are searching for the Museum of National History or a much specific street, you would utilize **ésta** because you are searching for a particular place.

¿Dónde está la Avenida San Martín? Where is San Martin Avenue?

¿Dónde está el Museo de Ciencias Naturales? Where is the Museum of Natural History?

However, if you are searching for a pharmacy or a drug store, you would utilize the word **hay**. You are not searching for a particular one.

¿Dónde hay una farmacia? Where is a pharmacy/drug store

Below are some of the prepositions and locations you might hear when you are asking for such directions. Make sure that you pay attention carefully to the words given by the other person.

En la esquina	On the corner
Entre la farmacia y el correo	Between the pharmacy and the post office
Detrás del teatro	Behind the theater
Al lado de la gasolinera	Next to the gas station
En frente de la plaza	Across from the park
Es la tercera	It's the third one
Es la segunda	It's the second one
Es la primera	It's the first one
Es la próxima	It's the next one
A diez minutos	Ten minutes (from here)
A dos cuadras	Two blocks (from here)

General Phrases:

Disculpe, estoy perdida. ¿Me puedes ayudar?	Excuse me, I'm lost. Can you help me?
Estoy perdido/a.	I'm lost.
Dónde está...	Where is...
¿Dónde está el parque de Retiro?	Where is Retiro Park?
Estoy buscando...	I'm looking for...
Estoy buscando la calle Flores.	I'm looking for Flower Street.
¿Hay un/una _____ por aquí?	Is there a(n) _____ around

here?
Hay un buen restaurante por Is there a good restaurant
aquí? around here?
¿Está lejos la avenida 9 de Is July 9th Avenue far away?
Julio?

B. Giving Directions

Let's say you are currently staying in a Spanish-speaking nation, and someone stops you in the middle of the street to ask you for some directions.

You could simply say **por allí** (*over there*) and call it a day. However, what this individual really requires is to keep going straight. Go to the other part of the park, make it right and take the second one on the left.

Sigue recto. Continue straight.

Sigue recto hasta el semáforo. Continue straight until the
stoplight.

Of course, you could also change **calle** for other the same words such as **punto** (*bridge*), **callejón** (*alleyway*), **carretera** (*highway*) and **avenida** (*avenue*). Always bear in mind that in the Spanish language, compared to the English, words such as those come before the street name, instead of after.

For instance, when a street was referred to as Chile Street in the English language, it would be referred to as **calle Chile** in the Spanish language.

Follow Spain Avenue. Sigue la avenida de España.

Gira/dobla a la Turn left/right.

derecha/izquierda.

Cuando llegues al parque, gira a la derecha. When you arrive at the park, turn right.

Ve/camina/conduce hasta... Go/walk/drive until the..._____

Toma la primera derecha/izquierda. Take the first right/left.

Certain, you could also change **primera** (*first*) for **segunda** (*second*) or **tercera** for *third* based on your requirements. For example:

Sigue recto, y toma la segunda izquierda. Continue straight and take the second left.

Está a la derecha/izquierda. It's on the right/left.

El banco está en la calle principal. Esté a la derecha. The bank is on Main Street. It's on the right.

Take note that “**está** + a preposition + a place” is the formula you could employ to describe the location of something relative to another place.

Mi casa está en frente de la escuela. My house is across from the school.

Está a... minutos. It's ... minutes away.

Está a diez minutos caminando. It's not far. It's ten minutes away.

tendrás que conducir al restaurante. Está a cinco kilómetros de aquí. You'll have to drive to the restaurant. It's five kilometers from here.

C. Estimating Time

No, son diez minutos andando.	No, it's ten minutes (walking /
Llegas enseguida	on foot). You arrive in no time
¿Y se tarda mucho? Porque voy un poco mal de tiempo	And does one take a lot (to get there)? (I ask) because I'm (going/doing) a bit bad (of/on) time.

For timeframes, you could include:

De tiempo: vamos muy bien de tiempo	We're doing great on time.
vas un poco mal de tiempo	you're doing a bit badly on time

For trajectories, add **por** + approximate location:

voy bien por ahí	I'm on the right way (through there)
vamos mal por aquí	we are on the wrong way (through here)

General Phrases:

CHAPTER 13: Travel / How to Book / How to Buy Ticket

In Spain, the commuter trains are very clean, efficient, and economical. Long-distance trains still provide non-smoking and smoking carriages, and the costs differ depending on what day you travel. Take note that blue days are the most affordable.

el descuento discount
de segunda second class
de primera first-class
de ida y vuelta round-trip
de ida one-way
el billete ticket
la terminal (bus) station
la estación (train) station

Dos billetes para Bilbao, por favor. Two tickets to Bilbao, please.

¿De ida y vuelta? Round-trip?

Si. ¿Necesito reservar asiento? Yes. Do I need to reserve seats?

A. Train Travel (*Viaje en Tren*)

Train tickets could be purchased in person at **ventanillas** (*ticket windows*) at train stations or at the official train website of Renfe. No matter how you prefer to purchase your tickets for a train journey, here is some crucial vocabulary you must understand:

billete ticket

localizador reference number
todas (estaciones) all (stations)

You will notice that the term **todas** after some city names such as Madrid (**todas**). That choice is normally preferable, allowing you to notice choices for every train going to Madrid, and not only to a particular station in Madrid.

City names are not translated on the website, so you need to enter **Sevilla** rather than Seville.

salida departure city
llegada arrival city

The seat classes accessible on trains vary on the route. However, they are typically:

turista 2nd class
turista plus 2nd class with a more comfy
seat
preference 1st class

You will also notice different **tarifas** (*fare rates*) for every route and class. That enables for various choices concerning ticket selection, refunds, and exchanges. Once you picked on the site, they adjust the conditions of your ticket.

Below are some important conditions you must learn:

elección de asiento choice of seat
sin elección de asiento without seat choice
cambios changes
anulaciones cancellations

indemnización por retraso refund in case of delay

If you are buying from a ticket window, you can forget the **yo quisiera** (I would like) that you might have learned from the past chapters. The easiest way for you to purchase something is to provide the name of the thing and tack on a **por favor** at the end.

Always take that Spanish individuals are more likely to communicate that fashion themselves.

Un billete para Madrid, por favor. A ticket to Madrid, please.

el próximo tren the next train

ida y vuelta ticket with return

vuelta return journey

ida outbound journey

Voy a pagar con tarjeta de crédito. I'm going to pay with a credit card.

Gracias. Thank you.

Always remember that foreign credit cards and American cards might not properly work at Spanish train stations. Nonetheless, you'll be able to get a cash machine at the majority of bigger stations.

General Phrases:

¿Cuánto cuesta un billete para Madrid? How much is a ticket to Madrid?

¿Puedo pagar con tarjeta de crédito? Can I pay by credit card?

¿Tengo que cambiar? Do I have to change trains?

¿De qué andén sale el tren? Which platform does the train leave from?
¿Hay algún descuento? Are there any discounts?
¿A qué hora sale el tren para Gijón? What time does the train to Gijón leave?

Ida y vuelta. Return.
Quiero reservar billetes para el ferry para Mahón. I want to book tickets for the ferry to Mahón.
Para un coche y dos pasajeros. For a car and two passengers.
Quier reservar un camarote. I want to book a cabin.
Para una persona. For one person.
Para dos personas. For two people.
¿Cuánto es? How much is it?

B. Bus Travel (*Viaje en autobus*)

Uno/dos para el centro, por favor? One/two to the center, please.
¿Dónde puedo comprar un bonobús? Where can I buy a multiple tickets?
Un bonobús, por favor? A multiple ticket, please.
¿Cuanto es? How much is it?

C. Ferries and Boats (*Ferry y Barcos*)

¿Dónde puedo comprar los billetes? Where can I buy tickets?

Cuatro billetes para Formentera, por favor.	Four tickets to Formentera, please.
Cuatro billetes para Formentera, por favor.	Four tickets to Formentera, please.
Dos adultos y dos niños.	Two adults and two children.
Ida solamente.	Single.
Queiero reservar un camarote.	I want to book a cabin.

CHAPTER 14: Means of Transportation

Possibly, you are getting prepared to spend your one-week holidays in Mexico, or perhaps you are visiting your old-time pal in Madrid. A few of you might only be trying to learn a few words for your exam in the following month.

No matter the reason you are here, you're in the perfect place. In this chapter, we will talk about the words that are related to means of transportation.

A. Taxis (*Taxi*)

You could hail taxis in the street, or you could see them at a taxi-rank. Just search for a sign with a white T on a dark blue background. Free taxis have the sign **LIBRE**. In Catalunya, you will notice the Catalan word **LLIURE**.

Wherever you go, taxis will have their own meters. Still, it is a wonderful idea to ask the driver what the fare will be roughly, particularly if you're going a long distance. Extras for luggage, pick-up, and airport among others might not be shown on the meter. A tip of ten percent or so is normal.

Before you ride a taxi, write down the address of your destination clearly if it is at all complicated. Doing that enables your driver to know where it is. In the past chapter, you are already aware that addresses are written along with the street name first, then the number afterward. For example, **Calle de Cervantes, 73**.

General Phrases:

¿Hay una parada de taxis por aquí?	Is there a taxi around here?
Necesito un taxi.	I need a taxi.
¿Puede pedirme un taxi, por favor?	Can you order me a taxi?
Ahora mismo.	Immediately.
Para mañana a las nueve.	For tomorrow at nine o'clock.
Para ir al aeropuerto.	To go to the airport.
Al aeropuerto, por favor.	To the airport, please.
A la estación por favor.	To the station, please.
Al Hotel Victoria, por favor.	To the Hotel Victoria, please.
¿Puede esperar, (unos minutos), por favor?	Can you wait (a few minutes), please?

¿Cuánto es?	How much is it?
Hay un error.	There's a mistake.
A esta dirección, por favor.	To this address, please.
¿Está lejos?	Is it far?
¿Cuánto va a costar?	How much will it cost?
Pare aquí, por favor.	Stop here, please.
Por mil pesetas.	For 1000 pesetas.
Tengo prisa.	I am in a hurry.
Está bien.	That's all right.
¿Puede darme en recibo?	Can you give me a receipt?

B. Air Travel (*Viaje Aéreo*)

Spain has more than thirty airports served by international and domestic flights. You will also find regular shuttle services between Barcelona and Spain.

At airlines and airports offices, you will normally discover someone who speaks English. However, be ready to speak several things in the Spanish language.

Approximate flight periods from Madrid to other major cities:

- Canary Islands – 2 ½ hours
- Palma de Mallorca – 1 hour
- Valencia – 45 minutes
- Seville – 50 minutes
- Bilbao – 50 minutes
- Barcelona – 55 minutes

Approximate distances form the major airports to the city centers:

- Tenerife Sur – 61 km
- Tenerife Norte – 13 km
- Palma de Mallorca – 9 km
- Valencia – 10 km
- Seville – 12 km
- Malaga – 8 km
- Bilbao – 9 km
- Barcelona – 10 km
- Madrid – 16 km

General Phrases:

¿Hay algún vuelo (de Madrid) a Bilbao? Is there a flight (from) Madrid?

Hoy Today

Est a m mañana/tarde. This morning/afternoon

Mañana (por la mañana/tarde) Tomorrow morning/afternoon

¿Tiene n horario de vuelos para Barcelona? Do you have a timetable of flights to Barcelona?

¿A qué hora sale el primer vuelo para Barcelona? What time is the first flight to Barcelona?

El próximo vuelo. The next flight.

El ultimo vuelo. The last flight.

¿A qué hora llega (a Barcelona)? What time does it arrive (at Barcelona)?

Un billete/Dos billetes para Sevilla, por favor? A ticket/Two tickets to Seville, please.

En primera clase/En clase 1st class/Business class.

preference	
En clase económica	Economy class
Para el vuelo de las once	For the eleven o'clock flight.
Quiero cambiar/anular mi reserve.	I want to change/cancel my reservation.
¿Cuál es el número del vuelo?	What is the number of flight?
¿A qué hora hay que hacer la facturación?	What time do I/we have to check-in?
¿Qué puerta es?	Which gate is it?
¿Hay alguna demora?	Is there a delay?
¿Dónde está el equipaje del vuelo de Londres?	Where is the luggage from the flight from London?
Mi equipaje no está.	My luggage is not here.
¿Hay un autobús al centro de la ciudad?	Is there a bus to the center of town?

C. Train (*Tren*)

The Spanish State railway company is RENFE. It has a network of approximately 13,000 kilometers of track. You will find different RENFE offices in each city where you could get details and book tickets. You could also obtain information and tickets in different travel agencies.

You will find various non-RENFE lines in different regions of the nation. For example, you might find the narrow gauge FEVE network located in the north.

You will find different types of trains. Some of these are the following:

- **Expreso** – long-distance night trains
- **Rápido** – express, stopping at main stations
- **Talgo, Intercity, Electrotrén, and TER** – fast, inter-city trains

You will also notice different types of more local, slow stopping trains. Some of these are tranvía, omnibus, and automotor among others. You will notice such listed on timetable boards; however, you do not need to name them when you are purchasing tickets.

You will also find different luxury excursion trains as well. This includes the **Al-Andalus Expreso** that tours Al-Andalucia. You will also find **Transcantábrico** that transports through Northern Spain.

On a few of those long-distance routes, you will find an Auto-expreso service. That enables you to bring your vehicle on the train. Prices differ based on the length of the vehicle. You might also see a **Motoexpreso** service for motorbikes. You could bring bikes on trains, but only when there is a luggage van.

Rail travel is comparatively affordable, even though fares differ from the type of train. You see, the faster trains are more expensive. Kids under four years old can travel without charge. And for half-fare from ages four to twelve. Fares are cheap on **Días Azules** (Blue Days), and some discounts are the following:

- **Tarjeta Joven** (Youth Card) – This is accessible to individuals who are under 26 years old. It entitles the holder to lowered fares.
- **Tarjeta Turística** (Tourist Card) – This is accessible only to people to visit Spain. It offers unlimited travel over a time of 8,15 and 22 days.

We recommend that you buy your tickets ahead of time for long-distance trains. When you do that, you also need to book a sleeper a seat, or a couchette on a particular train. Do not depend too much on the printed timetables or information boards. When you ask, you can guarantee you are arriving on the proper train.

Work out ahead of time what you are going to ask for (1st , 2nd , class, return or single, child or adult tickets, specific trains, reservations and so much more). When you ask for ‘a ticket’ (**un billete**), it will be thought that you prefer a single, otherwise, you specific ‘return’ (**ida y vuelta**).

General Phrases:

¿Hay un tren para Málaga?	Is there a train to Malaga?
¿Tiene un horario de trenes para Algeciras?	Do you have a timetable of trains to Algeciras?
¿A qué hora...?	What time...?
¿A qué hora sale el tren para Ronda?	What time is the train to Ronda?
¿A qué hora sale el primer tren para Vigo?	What time is the first train to Vigo?
El próximo tren	The next train
El ultimo tren	The last train
¿A qué hora llega (a Vigo)?	What time does it arrive (at Vigo)?
¿A qué hora llega el tren de Irún?	What time does the train from Irun arrive?
¿El tren para Valencia, por favor?	The train to Valencia, please?
¿De qué andén sale el tren para	Which platform does the train

Valencia? to Valencia leave from?
¿Este tren va a Tarragona? Does this train go to
Tarragona?
¿Hay que cambiar de tren? Do I/we have to change trains?
¿Dónde? Where?

Left Luggage:

¿Puedo dejar esto? Can I leave this?
¿Puedo dejar estas dos maletas? Can I leave these two suitcases?
Hasta las tres Until three o'clock
¿A qué hora cierran? What time do you close?

On the Train:

He reservado un asiento. I have reserved a seat.
He reservado una cama/litera. I have reserved a
sleeper/courette.
¿Está ocupado este asiento? Is this seat taken?
¿Le importa si abro la ventana? Do you mind if I open the
window?
¿Dónde está el coche-restaurante? Where is the restaurant car?
¿Dónde está el coche-cama? Where is the sleeping-car?
Perdone, ¿pueda pasar? Excuse me, may I get by?
¿Le importa si fumo? Do you mind if I smoke?
¿Dónde estamos? Where are we?
¿Estamos en Ronda? Are we at Ronda?

¿Cuánto tiempo para el tren How long does the train stop
aquí? here?

¿Puede avisarme cuando Can you tell me when we get to
lleguemos a Aranjuez? Aranjuez?

D. Coaches and Buses (*Autocars y Autobuses*)

Similar to city bus and town bus services, you will find a lot of buses between villages and towns. In the majority of cases, you pay the driver as you get on, even though tickets for some long-distance services could be purchased at bus station ticket offices.

If you plan to utilize the buses in most city or town, you could purchase **un bonobús** – a multiple-journey ticket that you could purchase at newspaper stands or bus company offices or kiosk.

You will also find one-fixed fare in cities and towns. Kids under four travel free of charge. There are no half-fares, though.

Vocabulary:

Autocar	Coach
Coche de línea	Long-distance coach
Entrada por la puerta delantera	Enter by yhr front door
Estación de autobuses	Bus station
Lleve el importe preparado	Have the correct money ready
No fumar	No smoking
No hablar con el conductor	Do not talk to the driver
Parade (de autobús)	Bus stop
Parada discrecional	Request shop
Salida por la puerta central	Exit by the center door
Salida (de emergencia)	(Emergency) exit

Asking Information:

¿Dónde está la parada del autobús?	Where is the bus stop?
¿Dónde está la estación de autobuses?	Where is the bus station?
¿Hay un autobus para la playa?	Is there a bus to the beach?
¿Qué numero es el autobus para la estación?	What number is the bus to the station?
¿Salen con frecunecia?	Do they go often?
A qué hora sale el autobus para Marbella?	What time is the bus to Marbella?
A qué hora sale el primer autobus para Cuenca?	What time is the first bus to Cuenca?
El próximo autobús	The next bus
El ultimo autobus	The last bus
¿A qué hora llega?	What time does it arrive?
¿Puede avisarme dónde bajar?	Can you tell me where to get off?
La próxima parada, por favor.	The next stop, please.

E. Ferries and Boats (*Ferry y Barcos*)

You will also find long-distance ferry and sort of hovercraft services between mainland Spain and the Balearic Islands, North Africa, and the Canary Islands. You will also find inter-island ferry services.

transbordador ferry

salvavidas lifebelt
puerto port, harbor
paseos por la habia trips round the bay
muelle quay
hidroplano hydrofoil
ferry car ferry
embarcadero pier
camarotes cabins
bote salvavidas lifeboat
barcos boats
aerodeslizador hovercraft

General Phrases:

CHAPTER 15: Hotels & Accommodations

Want to travel to Spain? Got some business in Spain? Hotel reserved? Bags packed? The very first thing you need to learn is how you can communicate well, and this is learning the language in Spain, Spanish. You need to learn the few essential words that you can use in your stay in a hotel in Spain. Thus, this will help you to have an easier stay in their hotels. Whether you need to have a phone call on reserving your hotel or if you already got to your hotel, the following will help you with your vocabulary in a hotel in Spain. Let's go, Vamos!

You will find a wide array of guest houses and hotels in Spain. The majority have a blue plaque at the door along with an initial for the kind of establishment and its grade.

Hotels (Hotel – H) are graded from one to five stars based on the facilities. These are referred to as **hotel residencia (HR)**. They are also graded but doesn't offer a restaurant.

The pension (P) and **hostals (Hs)** are much modest guest houses or boarding houses. An **hostal residencia (HsR)** normally offers a room only (without meals or breakfast).

Affordable still are called as fonda (F) and casa de huéspedes (CH), and you'll often notice signs in bars or outside houses advertising rooms (habitaciones) or beds (camas). Youth hostels are called as albergues de juventud.

A. Booking In and Out

He reservado una habitación.	I've reserved a room.
Con baño/ducha.	With a bath/shower.
¿Puedo ver la habitación?	Can I see the room?
He reservado una plaza.	I've reserved a place/space.
Me llamo...	My name is...
¿Tiene una habitación?	Do you have a room?
Una habitación individual.	A single room.
Una habitación doble.	A double room.
Para una noche.	For one night.
Para dos noches.	For two nights.
¿Puedo ver la habitación?	Can I see the room?

¿Tiene sitio para una tienda?	Do you have space for a tent?
¿Tiene sitio para una caravan?	Do you have a space for a caravan?
¿Hay alguna tarifa reducida para los niños.	Is there a reduction for children?
¿Cuánto cuesta una habitación por noche?	How much one room cost per night?
¿Hay alguna promoción en tu hotel?	Are there any promos in your hotel?
¿Cuánto cuesta una pensión completa?	How much it cost for a full board?
¿Cuánto cuesta media pensión?	How much does it cost for a half board?
Lo siento, ¿puedes volver a hablar o puedes hablar más despacio?	I'm sorry can you speak it again or can you please talk more slowly.
¿Puedo tener la llave de la habitación 231?	Can I have the key for room 231?

B.

At Hotels (*En los Hoteles*)

¿Hay espacio disponible para el día 25 de diciembre?	Is there any available room for the 25th day of December?
Quiero tener habitaciones triples por cinco noches.	I want to have triple rooms for five nights.
¿Dónde se puede aparcar?	Where can I/we park?
¿Tiene una cuna para el bebé?	Do you have a cot for the baby?
Quiero dejar un saludo para la Sra. Smith.	I want to leave a greeting for Ms. Smith.
¿Hay algún mensaje o correo electrónico para mí?	Are there any messages or emails for me?
Me encanta tener mi suite en el ático.	I love to have my penthouse suite.
¿Su hotel ofrece excelentes vistas maravillosas que me pueden relajar?	Does your hotel offer great wonderful views that can make me relax?
¿Hay establecimientos o entretenimientos ubicados cerca del hotel?	Are there any located establishments or entertainments near at the hotel?

¿Puedes limpiar mis zapatos, por favor?	Can you make my shoes clean, please?
¿Puedes por favor ir a mi habitación y lavar mi camisa por completo luego de plancharla?	Can you please go to my room and get my shirt completely wash then after pleasing iron it?
¿Dónde está el estacionamiento aquí o puedes estacionar mi auto?	Where is the parking lot here or can you park my car?
Cuide mi equipaje y puede llevarlo al maletero o al maletero de mi automóvil.	Take care or my luggage, and you can get it on the trunk or boot o my car.
Tengo algunas reservas en este hotel esta noche.	I get some reservations in this hotel tonight.
Alojarse en su hotel, ¿hay alguna posibilidad de que el desayuno esté incluido?	Staying in your hotel, is there any chance that breakfast is included?
¿Pueden preparar mi factura porque tengo prisa?	Can you please get ready my bill because I'm in a hurry?
Tengo que irme mañana por la noche o por la tarde.	I have to leave tomorrow night or afternoon.
Tengo que irme mañana por la mañana.	I have to leave tomorrow morning.
¿Para qué es este cargo?	What is this charge for?
¿Aceptan tarjetas de crédito en los métodos de pago?	Do you accept credit cards in payment methods?
¿Por qué hay una llamada de alarma?	Why is there an alarm call?
¿Puedes despertarme cuando ya son las siete de la mañana?	Can you please wake me when it is already seven in the morning?
¿Puedo conversar en tu bar porque necesito algo que preguntar?	Can I get some conversation at your bar because I need something to ask?
El aire acondicionado y el grifo no funcionan.	The aircon and the faucet are not working.
¿Tienes habitaciones dobles para mañana por la noche?	Do you have any double rooms for tomorrow night?
El televisor de la habitación tiene	The room's television is having some

algunos problemas o no funciona por completo.	problems, or it does not completely function.
¿Puedes darme el cepillo de dientes en la habitación 204?	Can you give my toothbrush in room 204?
¿Está informado cuando el restaurante abre o cierra?	Are you informed when the restaurant opens or closes?
¿Cuándo puedes servir mi desayuno?	When do you get to serve my breakfast?
¿Cuáles son las comidas para el almuerzo?	What are the meals for lunch?
¿Hay vino para la cena?	Is there any wine for dinner?
La habitación aún no está completamente limpia.	The room is not yet completely clean.
Por favor tráigame una botella de vino en el balcón.	Please bring me a bottle of wine on the balcony.
Necesito sellos y sobres o papel.	I need stamps and envelopes or paper.
Por favor, no quiero que me molesten por dos horas.	Please, I don't want to get disturbed for two hours.
¿Dónde puedo escapar cuando hay un incendio?	Where can I scape when there is a fire?
¿Dónde está la salida de incendios en el hotel?	Where is the fire exit in the hotel?
Tengo algunas quejas sobre el servicio del hotel.	I have some complaints about the hotel service.
¿Puedo hablar con su gerente, por favor?	Can I talk to your manager, please?

C. Celebrating a Birthday in a Hotel

When you want to have a reservation for any months where it can help you:

Enero es mi mes de nacimiento y quiero celebrarlo con mi familia. ¿Tienes	January is my birth month, and I want to celebrate it with my family. Do you
---	--

habitaciones para un gran número?	have any rooms for a great number?
Mi esposo y yo queremos hacer una reserva en su hotel en febrero.	My husband and I want to have a reservation at your hotel in February.
Necesito una buena habitación con mi amigo en marzo, ¿tienes algo?	I need some nice room with my friend in March, do you have some?
Me encanta tener excelentes vistas durante mi estancia en un hotel en abril.	I love to have great views while staying in a hotel in April.
¿Tienes habitaciones dobles este mayo?	Do you have any double rooms this May?
¿Tienes alguna promoción en junio? Quiero aprovecharme	Do you have any promos in June? I want to avail myself.
Mi amigo quiere tener una excelente estadía en su hotel en julio y le recomiendo que el hotel pueda proporcionarla	My friend wants to have a great stay in your hotel in July and I recommend that the hotel can provide that.
¿Podrían proporcionarme las excelentes comodidades de su hotel para agosto?	Can you please provide me the great amenities of your hotel for August?
¿Cuáles son las mejores comidas que ofrece su hotel en septiembre?	What are the best meals that your hotel offers in September?
Me gustaría relajarme en los hoteles españoles en octubre.	I'd like to make some relaxation in staying at Spanish hotels in October.
Me llamaron para diseñar una fiesta de Halloween y necesito solo una habitación individual en un hotel en noviembre.	I was called to design a Halloween party, and I need just a single room in a hotel in November.
Esta temporada de Navidad hemos decidido viajar a España y tener una excelente estadía en su hotel.	This Christmas season we have decided to travel to Spain and have a great stay in their hotel.

D. At Campsites (*En los Campings*)

¿Hay un camping por aquí?	Is there a campsite around here?
¿Se puede acampar aquí?	Can I/we camp here?
¿Dónde se puede aparcar?	Where can I/we park here?

¿Dónde están las duchas.	Where are the showers?
¿Dónde están los servicios?	Where are the toilets?
¿Dónde están los cubos de la basura?	Where are the dustbins?
¿Es el agua potable?	Is the water drinkable?
¿Dónde está la lavandería?	Where is the laundry room?
¿Dónde hay un enchufe?	Where is there an electric point?

E. Self-Catering Accommodation (*Alojamiento con cocina*)

He alquilado una casa.	I have rented a villa.
Se llama Casa Pilar.	It's called Casa Pilar.
He alquilado un apartamento.	I have rented an apartment.
Estamos en el número once.	We're in number 11.
Me llamo...	My name is...
¿Cuál es la dirección?	What is the address?
¿Cómo se llega allí?	How do I/we get there?
¿Puede darme la llave?	Can you give me the key?
¿Dónde está la caja de fusibles?	Where is the fusebox?
¿Cómo funciona la cocina?	How does the cooker work?
¿Cómo funciona el calentador de agua?	How does the water-heater work?
¿Hay aire acondicionado?	Is there air conditioning?
¿Hay otra bombona de gas?	Is there a spare gas bottle?
¿Hay más ropa de cama?	Is there any spare bedding?
¿Qué día viene a limpiar?	What day do they come to clean?

F. Communicating with the Staffs

Buenos días, ¿tiene alguna comida como en mi país?	Good morning, do you have any meals like in my country?
Gracias por tu gran servicio.	Thank you for your great service
Tengo algo de qué quejarme en mi habitación.	I have something to complain about in my room.
¿Puedo usar el teléfono?	Can I use the telephone?
Olvidé mis llaves dentro de mi	I forgot my keys inside my room, and I

habitación y necesito ayuda para conseguir las. need help to get it.

¡Hola! Tuve una gran estadía en su hotel y seguramente volveré. Hello! I had a great stay in your hotel, and I will surely come back.

Learning of this some words and phrases are beneficial not just for you but also for someone you like to talk to in Spain. No wonder that having better communication with other people in other countries like in Spain is through learning their language. Maybe you found out that Spanish words are hard to understand, yet as time goes by and you have practiced it well then you can talk to people in the hotel easily. Never doubt yourself to try this when you have a stay in Spanish hotels!

CHAPTER 16: At the Museum

You could get information about all the destinations about every sight worth visiting from the Spanish National Tourist Office and from the local tourist offices. The latter could also provide the information you need about the various sightseeing tours by coach accessible in different cities as well as tourist areas. Some of them have their own English-speaking tour guides.

The opening hours differ for galleries, museums, historic buildings, and so on. However, most close for several hours in the afternoon. Many of them shut on Mondays. Spain has a series of nature reserves and national parks. Access to different areas might be permitted only through a local guide.

Some of the things you might see are:

visitas con guía	guided tours
privado	private
prohibida la entrada	no entry
no tocar	do not touch
no pisar el césped	keep off the grass
horario de visitas	visiting hours
cerrado (por restauraciones)	closed (for restoration)

abierto open

A. Opening Times

- ¿Cuándo está abierto el museo? When is the museum open?
¿A qué hora se abra el alcázar? What time does the castle open?
¿A qué hora se cierra el palacio? What time does the palace close?
¿Está abierto los domingos? Is it open on Sundays?
¿Se puede visitar el monasterio? Can I/we visit the monastery?
¿Está abierto al público? Is it open to the public?

B. Visiting Places

- Uno/Dos, por favor. One/Two, please.
Dos adultos y un niño. Two adults and a child.
¿Hay tarifas reducidas para niños? Are there reductions for children?
Para estudiantes For students
Para jubilados For pensioners
Para minusválidos For the disabled
Para groups For groups
¿Hay visitas con guía (en inglés)? Are there guided tours (in English)?
¿Se puede hacer fotos? Can I/we take photos?
¿Me hace el favor de hacer una foto de mí/nosotros? Would you mind taking a photo of me/us, please?
¿Cuándo se construyó esto? When was this built?
¿Quién pintó ese cuadro? Who painted that picture?

C. Inside the Museum

- ¿Hay excursiones organizadas para ver los museos? Are there organized tours for seeing the museums?
¿Se ofrecen excursiones para ver Xochimilco? Are there tours of Xochimilco?
¿Cuánto cuesta la entrada? How much is the entrance fee?
¿Ofrecen descuentos para grupos/niños? Do you offer group/child discount?
¿Podemos salir y volver sin pagar de Can we leave and come back

Nuevo?	without having to pay again?
¿Cuáles son las horas del museo?	What are the museum's hours?
¿Estan abiertos todos los dias de semana y los fines de semana?	Are you open weekdays and weekends?
¿A qué hora se abre/se cierra el museo?	What time does the museum open/close?
¿Tienen ascensores?	Do you have elevators?
¿Dónde está la entrada/salida mas cercana?	Where is the nearest entrance/exit?
¿Hay un restaurant o cafeteria en el museo?	Is there a restaurant or café in the museum?
Busco la collección de la época colonial?	I'm looking for the colonial period collection.
Me gustaría ver el retrato de Sor Juana?	I'd like to see the portrait of Sor Juana.
¿Dónde está la coleccion de arte Azteca/precolombina?	Where is the Aztec/pre-Columbian collection?
¿Hay alguna exhibición especial ahora?	Is/Are there any special exhibit/s now?
¿Hasta cuándo va a estar esta exhibición?	How long will this exhibit be here?
¿Tienen un tour para niños?	Do you have a children's tour?
¿Dónde está la tienda de regalos?	Where is the gift shop?
¿Tienen un libro sobre la collección de...?	Do you have a book about the... collection?
Quisiera comprar una reproducción de...?	I'd like to buy a copy of...

CHAPTER 17: Body / Doctor / Medical Emergency

Your local Department of Health could offer information about medical care abroad. With thin the EC; you could get the local equivalent of NHS treatment by generating the needed form. You will perhaps need to pay first and regain the payment if you go back to your country. The treatment at first aid posts is free of charge.

Doctors could often provide medical assistance and first aid. They might offer medicines too, without any prescription. If you require an ambulance, you could call either the la Cruz Roja (Spanish Red Cross) or the police.

To tell where the pain is, you could just point and tell **me duele aqui** (*it hurts here*). Or else, you will need to search for Spanish for the particular part of your body.

You might see:

¡Veneno!	Poison!
Urgencias	Casualty department
Sólo para uso externo	For external use only
Servicio permanente de ambulancias	Ambulance station
Servicio de urgencias	Emergency services
Puesto de Socorro	First aid post
Modo de empleo	Instructions for use
Médico	Doctor
Hospital	Hospital
Dentista	Dentist
Consulta	Surgery hours
Clinica	Clinic, hospital
Casa de Socorro	First aid post, casualty hospital/hospital
Agítese antes de usar	Shake before use

A. At the Doctor's (*En el casa Doctor*)

Necesito un médico.	I need a doctor.
Por favor, llame a un médico.	Please call a doctor.
Rápido.	Faster.
¿Hay alguien que hable ingles?	Is there someone who speaks English?
¿Puedo hacer una cita?	Can I make an appointment?
Es mi marido.	It's my husband.
Es mi mujer.	It's my wife.

Es mi hijo. It's my son.
Es mi hija. It's my daughter.
¿Cuano costara? How much will it cost?

B. Your Symptoms (*Sus Sintumas*)

Mi siento mal. I feel unwell.
Me duele aqui. It hurts here.
Me duele el/la... My...hurts.
Me duele el estomago. My stomach hurts.
Me duele la espalda. My back hurts.
Me duelen los pies. My feet hurt.
Tengo dolor pe garganta. I have a sore throat.
Me duelen los/las... My... hurt
Tengo fiebre. I have a temperature.
Tengo diarrea. I have a diarrhea.
Me siento mereado/mareada. I feel dizzy/sick.
He vomitado. I have been sick.
No puerdo dormer. I can't sleep.
No puedo respirar. I can't breathe.
No puerdo mover el/la... I can't move my...
El/La...sanga. My... is bleeding
Es el/la... It's my...
Es el brazo It's my arm.
Es la muñeca. It's my wrist.
Creo que.. I think that...
Está roto/rota It's broken
Está torcido/torcida. It's sprained.
Me he cortado. I have cut myself.
Me he quemado. I have burnt myself.
Me ha picado un insecto. I have been stung by an insect.
M ha mordido un perro. I have bitten by a dog.

C. Other Person's Symptoms

Se siente mal. He/She feels unwell.
 Está inconsciente. He/She is unconscious.
 Le duele... His/Her... hurts
 Le duele aqui. It hurts here.
 Le duele el estomago. His/Her stomach hurts.
 Le duele la espalda. His/Her back hurts.
 Le duelen los ojos. His/Her eye hurts.
 Le duelen los pies. His/Her feet hurt.
 Tiene dolor de garganta. He/She has a sore throat.
 Tiene fiebre. He/She has a fever.
 Tiene diarrea. He/She has diarrhea.
 Si siene mareado/mareada. He/She feels dizzy/sick.
 Ha vomitado. He/She has been sick.
 Está sangrando He/She is bleeding
 Es el/la... It's his/her...
 Es el tobillo. It's his/her ankle.

You might hear the following. Pay attention very closely to what the doctor or hospital or clinic staff are saying:

¿Qué le pasa? What is the matter?
 ¿Dónde le duele? Where does it hurt?
 ¿Le duele aqui? Does it hurt here?
 ¿Mucho? ¿Poco? A lot? A little?
 ¿Cuanto tiempo hace que se siente asi? How long have you been feeling like this?
 ¿Cuanto años tiene? How old are you? How old is he/she?
 Abra la boca, por favor. Open your mouth, please.
 Acuestese ahi, por favor. Lie down over there, please.
 Desvistase, por favor. Get undressed, please.
 ¿Está tomando algun medicamento. Are you taking any medicines?
 ¿Está alergico a algun medicamento? Are you allergic to medicines?
 ¿Está vacunado/a contra el tétano. Have you been vaccinated against tetanus?

¿Qué ha comido (hoy)?	What have you eaten (today)?
Hay una infección/Esta infectado?	There's an infection. It's infected.
Tiene una intoxicación.	You have food poisoning.
Es un infarto.	It's a heart attack.
Tengo que ponerle una inyección.	I have to give you an injection.
Tengo que hacer una radiografía.	It is necessary to do an X-ray.
Necesita una muestra de sangre/orina.	I need a blood/urine sample.
Le voy a dar una receta.	I am going to give you a prescription.
Tome una pildora tres veces al día.	Take one tablet three times a day.
Antes/Después de las comidas.	Before/After meals.
Al acostarse.	At bedtime.
Tiene que descansar.	You must rest.
Tiene que estar tres días en la cama.	You must stay in bed for three days.
Tiene que volver dentro de cinco días.	You must come back in five day's time.
Tiene que beber muchos líquidos.	You must drink plenty of liquids.
Tendrá que ir al hospital	You will have to go to hospital.

D. At the Dentist's (*En casa el Dentista*)

Necesito un dentista.	I need a dentist.
Tengo dolor de muelas.	I have a toothache.
Me duele este diente.	This tooth hurts.
Me he roto un diente.	I have a broken tooth.
He perdido un empaste.	I have a lost filling.
He perdido una corona/funda.	I have lost a crown/cap.
Tiene dolor de muclas.	He/She has a toothache.
Se ha roto un diente.	He/She has a broken tooth.
Ha perdido un empaste.	He/She has a lost filling.
Ha perdido una corona/funda.	He/She has a lost crown/cap.
¿Puede arreglarlo temporalmente?	Can you fix it temporarily?
¿Puede ponerme una inyección?	Can you give me an injection?
¿Puede ponerle una inyección?	Can you give him/her an injection?
¿Está dentadura está rota.	This denture is broken.

¿Puede repararla? Can you repair it?

¿Cuanto costar? How much will it cost?

Necesito un dentista. I need a dentist.

Tengo dolor de muelas. I have a toothache.

Me duele este diente. This tooth hurts.

Me he roto un diente. I have a broken tooth.

He perdido un empaste. I have lost a filling.

He perdido una corona/funda. I have lost a crown/cap.

Tiene dolor de muclas. He/She has a toothache.

Se ha roto un diente. He/She has a broken tooth.

Ha perdido un empaste. He/She lost a filling.

Ha perdido un empaste. He/She have lost a filling.

¿Puede arreglarolo temporalmente? Can you fix it temporarily?

E. Body Parts (Partes del Cuerpo)

ENGLISH SPANISH

ankle el tobillo

arm el brazo

back la espalda

beard la barba

breast el seno

buttocks las nalgas

calf la pantorrilla

cheek la mejilla, el cachete

chest el pecho

chin la barbilla, el mentón

ear el oído, la oreja

elbow el codo

eye el ojo

eyebrows las cejas

eyelashes las pestañas

face	la cara
finger	el dedo
foot	el pie
forehead	la frente
hair	el pelo
hand	la mano
head	la cabeza
heel	el talón
hip	la cadera
human body	el cuerpo humano
knee	la rodilla
leg	la pierna
lips	los labios
mustache	el bigote, el mostacho
mouth	la boca
navel/belly button	el ombligo
neck	el cuello
nose	la nariz
shoulder	el hombro
skin	la piel
stomach (abdomen)	el vientre
thigh	el muslo
throat	la garganta
thumb	el pulgar
toe	el dedo del pie
tongue	la lengua
tooth/teeth	el diente, la muela/los dientes
waist	la cintura
wrist	la muñeca

Internal Organs:

el cerebro, el seso brain
 el pulmón/los pulmones lung/lungs

el corazón	heart
los órganos internos	internal organs
el riñón/los riñones	kidney/kidneys
el intestino grueso	large intestine
el hígado	liver
el músculo	muscle
el intestino delgado	small intestine
el estómago	stomach
las amígdalas	tonsils

Skeleton:

el hueso	bone
la clavícula	clavicle
el fémur	femur
la fíbula	fibula
el húmero	humerus
la mandíbula	jawbone
la rótula	patella
el radio	radius
las costillas	ribs
el omóplato	scapula
el esqueleto	skeleton
el cráneo	skull
la columna vertebral, la espina dorsal	spinal column
el esternón	sternum
la tibia	tibia
la vértebra	vertebra

General Phrases:

Understanding each of the body parts in Spanish is very helpful. However, for you to get the most of those words, you must be familiar with some phrases to utilize along with them:

Cepíllate los dientes. Brush your teeth.

Me rompí [body part]. (Ex. Me rompí el brazo.)	I broke my [body part]. (Ex. I broke my arm.)
Me corto el dedo.	I cut my finger.
Tengo dolor de [body part]. (Ex. Tengo dolor de cabeza.)	I have a pain/ache of [body part]. (Ex. I have a headache.)**
Tengo el pelo negro/rubio/castaño/rojo/gris.	I have black/blond/brown/red/gray hair.
Me torcí el tobillo.	I sprained my ankle.
Golpeé el dedo del pie.	I stubbed my toe.
Me duele [singular body part]. (Ex. Me duele el brazo.)	My [singular body part] hurts. (Ex. My arm hurts.)**
Me duelen [plural body part]. (Ex. Me duelen los pies.)	My [plural body part] hurt. (Ex. My feet hurt.)**
¡Abre los ojos!	Open your eyes!
Lávate las manos.	Wash your hands.

CHAPTER 18: Entertainment

The most sought-after spectator sports in Spain are bullfighting and football. **Pelota** is considered the national game in the Basque Country. The majority of the sports fixtures occurred on Sundays.

If you are planning to buy tickets for a bullfight, you will find an option for **sombra** or **sol**. These are seats in the shades or in the sun. **Sombra** seats are more likely to cost more. You could also rent cushions for the hard concrete stands.

On the other hand, evening performances at musical events, cinemas, and theatres often begin late. It could start between 10:30 or 11 p.m. It is normal to offer a small tip to cinema and theater ushers.

Films are categorized as ideal for general viewing. Some of these might be categorized as not recommended for those individuals under 13 or 18 years old. A lot of British and American movies are shown in Spanish theaters. The majority of them are dubbed, but some are already subtitled.

Salas rocieras are restaurants or bars along with **sevillana** music and dancing or flamenco. **Sevillans** are the same as flamenco. However, it has a particular pattern of steps instead of the improvise dancing of the entire flamenco. What's more, the music in **salas rocieras** might be recorded or live. Some patrons participate in the dancing of **sevillanas**.

A. Entertainment (*Entretenimiento*)

Agotado	Sold out
Anfiteatro	Balcony
Cine	Cinema
Circo	Circus
Fila	Row
Gradas	Standard
Guardarrop	Cloakroom
Patio de butacas	Stalls
Principal	Balcony
Sala rociera	Restaurant or bar with flamenco dancing and music
Salon de baile	Dance hall
No se permite la entrada una vez comenzado el espectáculo	No entry once the performance has begun
Puerta	Door
Version original subtitulada	Original language version with subtitles
Venta anticipada	Advance booking
Tribuna	Stand, grandstand
Teatro	Theater
Tablao flamenco	Flamenco show
Sesion numerada	Separate performance
Sesion de tarde	Matinee

General Phrases:

- ¿Qué se puede hacer por las noches? What is there to do in the evenings?
- ¿Hay una discoteca por aqui? Is there a disco around here?

¿Hay alguna diversion para niños?	Is there any entertainment for children?
¿Qué ponen esta noche?	What's on tonight?
¿Qué ponen mañana?	What's on tomorrow?
En el cine	At the cinema
En el teatro	At the theater
¿Quién toca?	Who is playing? (music)
¿Quién canta?	Who is singing?
¿Quién baila?	Who is dancing?
¿La pelicula está doblada o subtitulada?	Is the film dubbed or subtitled?
¿Hay algun partido de futbol el domingo?	Is there a football match on Sunday?
¿Quiénes juegan?	Who are playing?
¿A qué hora empieza el espectaculo?	What time does the show start?
¿A qué hora empieza el concierto?	What time does the concert start?
¿Cuanto dura la representacion?	How long does the performance last?
¿A qué hora termina?	When does it end?

B. Buying Tickets (*Comprando Boletos*)

¿Dónde se puede conseguir las entradas?	Where can I/we get tickets?
¿Puede conseguirem entradas para la corrida de toros?	Can you get me tickets for the bullfight?
Para el partido de futbol.	For the football match.
Para el teatro.	For the theater.
Dos, por favor.	Two, please.
Dos para esta noche, por favor.	Two for tonight, please.
Dos para la session de las once, por faavor.	Two for the eleven o'clock screening, please.
¿Quédan localidades pa el sabado?	Are there any seats left for Saturday?
Quiero reservar un palco para cuatro personas.	I want to book a box for four people.

Quiero reservar dos localidades.	I want to book two seats.
Para el Viernes.	For Friday.
Butacas de patio.	In the stalls
De anfiteatro/De entresuelo.	In the balcony.
De sombra.	In the shade.
De sol.	In the sun.
¿Cuanto cuestan las localidades?	How much are the seats?
¿Tiene algo mas barata?	Do you have anything cheaper?
¿Está bien/Vale.	That's fine.

C. At the Game/Show (*En el Juego / Espectáculo*)

¿Dónde está esto, por favor?	Where is this, please?
¿Dónde está el guardarropa?	Where is the cloakroom?
¿Dónde está el bar?	Where is the bar?
¿Dónde están los servicios?	Where are the toilets?
Un programa, por favor.	A program, please.
¿Dónde se puede conseguir, un programa?	Where can I get a program?
Una almohadilla, por favor.	A cushion, please.
¿Hay Descanso.	Is there an interval.

You might hear the following:

Se puede conseguir entradas aqui en el hotel?	You could get tickets here in the hotel.
En la plaza de toros.	At the bullring.
En el estadio.	At the stadium.
Empieza a las siete.	It begins at seven o'clock.
Dura dos horas y cuarto.	It lasts two and a quarter hours.
Termina a las nueve y media.	It ends at half-past ten.
Hay un Descanso de quince minutos.	There is a fifteen-minute interval.
¿Para cuando las quiere?	When would you like them?
¿De sol o de sombra?	In the sun or in the shade.
¿Butacas de patio, de anfiteatro, de	In the stalls, in the balcony?

entresuelo?

Hay dos aquí, butacas de patio. There are two here, in the stalls.

Lo siento, las localidades están agotadas. I'm sorry, the seats are sold out.

¿Puedo ver su entrada? May I see your ticket?

CHAPTER 19: Sports & Activities

You will find a lot of decent facilities in different regions of Spain ideal for watersports, tennis, golf, and skiing. All information concerning these could be found at the Spanish National Tourist Office or travel agents. Spain has numerous mountain regions for climbing and walking. You will also find a lot of **refugios** (mountain shelters) in different places. River fishing is also the most typical one, but you could also go underwater or deep-sea fishing. In every situation, you will require a permit, achievable from an office of the national conservation agency.

At the beach, you will also see a red flag flying. That simply denotes it is risky to swim to that area. A yellow flag, on the other hand, indicates it is allowed for swimming. A green flag ultimately means it is safe.

Some of the things you might see include:

Pista de tenis. Tennis court.

Pista. Ski-run

Piscina (cubierta) (Indoor) swimming pool

Peligro de alludes Danger of avalanches

Peligro Danger

Escuela de esqui Ski school

Coto de caza Hunting reserve.

Coto (privado) (Private) reserve

Campo de golf Golf course

Campo de futbol Football pitch

Alquiller de tablas Sailboards for hire

Alquiler de esquís Ski hire

Alquiler de barcos Boat hire

General Phrases:

¿Su puede...?	Can I/we...?
¿Su puede alquilar bicicletas?	Can I hire bikes?
¿Su puede pescar?	Can I go fishing?
¿Su puede montar a caballo?	Can I go horse riding?
¿Dónde se puede...?	Where can i/we...?
¿Dónde se puede jugar al tenis?	Where can I play tennis?
¿Dónde se puede hacer alpinismo?	Where can I go climbing?
No sé...	I don't know how to...
¿Dan clases?	Do you give lessons?
Soy principiante.	I'm a beginner.
Soy bastante expert/expert.	I'm quite experienced.
¿Cuanto es por hora?	How much is it per hour?
¿Cuanto es por el día entero?	How much is it for the whole day?
¿Cuanto es por juego?	How much is it per game?
¿Hay algún descuento para niños?	Is there a reduction for children?
¿Se puede alquilar el equipo?	Can I hire equipment?
¿Se puede alquilar raquetas?	Can I hire rackets?
¿Se puede alquilar los palos?	Can I hire clubs?
¿Se requiere un permiso?	Do I need a license?
¿Dónde se puede conseguir uno?	Where can I get one?
¿Hace falta ser socio?	Is it necessary to be a member?

A. Pool and Beach (*Piscina y Playa*)

¿Cuando hay marea alta? When is high tide?

¿Es seguro para los niños?
Is it safe for children?

¿Es peligroso? Is it dangerous?

¿Se puede nadar en el río? Can I swim in the river?

¿Se puede nadar aquí? Can I swim here?

B. Skiing (*Esquí*)

¿Hay una pista para principiantes? Is there a ski-run for beginners?

¿Es larga la pista? Is the ski-run wide?

¿Cómo está la nieve? What is the snow like?

¿A qué hora es el último? What time is the last ascent?

Por semana Per week

Por día Per day

¿Cuanto vale un pase para el telesquí? How much is the lift pass?

You might hear the following:

Son dos mil pesetas por hora? It's 2000 pesetas per hour.

¿Sabe usted hacer windsurf? Do you know how to windsurf?

¿Sabe usted esquiar? Do you know how to ski?

¿Es usted principiante? Are you a beginner?

Hay que pagar un depósito de mil pesetas? You have to pay a deposit of 1000 pesetas.

Tendrá que volver más tarde. You will have to come back later.

Lo siento, está completo. I'm sorry, we're booked up.

Hay poca nieve. There isn't much snow.

La nieve está blanda. The snow is soft.

La nieve está dura/helada. The snow is heavy/icy.

Hace falta una foto. You need a photo.

¿Qué tipo de esquís quiere? What type of skis do you want?

¿Cuál es su talla? What size are you?

CHAPTER 20: Complaints & Problems

You will discover three kinds of police in Spain, each of them is armed. This is composed of **La Policía Municipal** who come under the local authority at the town hall. They are accountable for the order and law within the local community region, as well as traffic control. These officers wear blue uniforms.

La Guardia Civil is accountable for order and law within the rural regions, as well as for the traffic control on major roads and in cities. These officers wear green uniforms.

La Policia Nacional is the police officers who are accountable for order and law at the national level. These officers wear dark blue uniforms.

If you are one of those people whose vehicle is towed away, you need to get in touch with the Policia Municipal who will provide you the information on where to go to collect your car.

In a hotel, when all else fails, and you cannot obtain a complaint sorted out to your gratification, feel free to ask for the complaints books. Hotels are obliged by law to have one. So make sure you jot down your problems or complaints so it will be given to the Spanish Ministry of Tourism.

You might see...

Servicio al cliente Customer services
Libro de reclamaciones Complaints book
No funciona Out of order
Comisaria Police station

General Phrases:

¿Puede ayudarme? Can you help me?
¿Puede arreglarlo? Can you fix it (immediately?)
¿Cuándo puede arreglarlo? When can you fix it?
Hay un problema con... There's a problem with...
No hay... There isn't/haven't...
Necesito... I need...
El/La... no funciona. The.... doesn't work.
El...está roto/La...está rota. The... is broken.
No puedo... I can't...
No ha sido mi culpa It wasn't my fault.
He olvidado el/la... I have forgotten my...
He perdido el/la.. I have lost my...
Hemos perdido los/has... We have lost our...
Me han robado el/la... Someone has stolen my...

Mi... no está My...isn't here.
Flata algo Something is missing
Falta el/la... The... is missing.
Esto no es mio. This isn't mine.

A. Where You're Staying (*Dónde te estás Quedando*)

No hay agua (caliente). There isn't any (hot) water.
No hay papel higienico. There isn't any toilet paper.
No hay luz There isn't any electricity.
No hay tollas. There aren't any towels.
Necesito otra manto I need another blanket.
La luz no funciona The light doesn't work.
La ducha no funciona. The shower doesn't work.
La cerradura está rota. The lock is broken
El intrruptor de la lampara está roto The switch on the lamp is broken
No puedo abrir la ventana I can't open the window
No puede cerrar el grifo I can't turn the tap off
La cisterna no funciona The toilet doesn't flush
El lavabo está atascado The wash-basin is blocked
El lavabo está sucio The wash-basin is dirty
La habitacion es... The room is...
La habitacion es demasiado pequeña The room is too small
La habitacion es demasiado calor en Its too hot in the room
la habitacion
La cama es muy incómoda The bed is very uncomfortable
Hay mucho ruido There's a lot of noise
Huele a gas There's a smell of gas

B. In Bars & Restaurants (*En bares y restaurantes*)

Esto no está hecho This isn't cooked
Esto está quemado This is burnt
Esto está frio This is cold
No pedi esto, pedi... I dint order this, I ordered...

Este vaso está roto This glass is cracked
Esto está sucio This is dirty
Esto huele mal This smells bad
Esto tiene un sabor raro This tastes strange
Hay un error en la cuenta There is a mistake on the bill

C. In Shops (*En tiendas*)

Compré esto aquí (ayer) I bought this here (yesterday)
¿Puede cambiarme esto? Can you change this for me?
Quiero devolver esto. I want to return this
¿Puede devolverme el dinero? Can you refund me the money?
Aquí está el recibo Here is the receipt
Tiene un defecto It has a flaw
Tiene un agujero It has a hole
Hay una mancha There is a stain/mark
Esto está pasado This is off/rotten
Esto no está fresco This is fresh
Falta la tapa The lid is missing

D. Losing Things, Forgetting and Theft

He olvidado el billete I have forgotten my ticket
He olvidado la llave I have forgotten the key
He perdido la cartera I have lost my wallet
He perdido el carné de conducir I have lost my driving license
Hemos perdido las mochilas We have lost our rucksacks
¿Dónde está la oficina de objetos perdidos? Where is the lost property office?
¿Dónde está la comisaria? Where is the police station?
Me han robado el bolso Someone has stolen my bag
Me han robado el coche Someone has stolen the car
Me han robado el dinero Someone has stolen my money

E. If Someone is Bothering You

Por favor, dejeme en paz Please leave me alone

Vayase, o llamo a la policia Go away, or I'll call the police

Hay alguien que me está molestando There is someone bothering me

Hay alguien que me está siguiendo There is someone following me

Exercises

Exercise 1

See how well you remembered your new Spanish words from this lesson and the words from this book:

1. The English word for **con** is _____.
2. The English word for **hombre** is _____.
3. The English word for **mujer** is _____.
4. The English words for **tiene** are _____.
5. The English word for **nuevo** is _____.
6. The English words for **quiero** are _____.
7. The English word for **sombra** is _____.
8. The English word for **un / una** is _____.
9. The English word for **el centro** is _____.
10. The English words for **hay** are
_____.
11. The English words for **necesito** are
_____.
12. The English words for **tengo**
are _____.

Exercise 2

Write the English on the lines or if you prefer you can translate in your mind and check your answers with the answers on the next page.

1. Una mujer

2. Hay un guitarrista en el restaurante.

3. Quiero un sombrero.

4. Un restaurante con sombra.

5. Hay signos de recuperación.

6. Tiene una reservación.

7. Un nuevo hotel en el centro.

8. Hay un hombre en el hotel.

9. Un hombre con carisma.

10. Quiero café con crema.

11. Hay turistas en el centro.

12. Hay un restaurante en el hotel.

13. Hay una mujer en el hospital.

14. La doctora es una mujer.

15. Hay un nuevo hotel en el centro.

16. Tiene un nuevo dentista.

17. Hay un rumor.

18. Tiene indigestión.

19. Un hombre

20. Tengo un nuevo doctor.

21. Un ejercicio en diplomacia.

22. Tiene un problema con su pasaporte.

23. Tengo una lista de los hoteles en el centro..

24. Nueva España

Exercise 3

Write the Spanish words on the line:

1. I have _____
2. you have _____
3. there is _____
4. I need _____
5. I want _____
6. downtown _____
7. a / an _____
8. shade _____
9. with _____
10. new _____
11. man _____
12. woman _____

Exercise 4

Translate into Spanish:

un Sombrero = a hat

1. Do you have a hat?

2. I have a hat.

3. I want a hat.

4. Do you have shade?

5. I need shade.

6. I need a hat.

7. Is there shade (in) downtown?

8. Is there a hospital?

9. Is there a hotel (in) downtown?

10. You have a hat.

11. Do you have shade?

12. There is shade in downtown

13. There is a hotel (in) downtown.

14. I need a doctor.

Exercise 5

See how well you remembered your new Spanish words. Write the English words on the line

1. The English word for **por** is _____
2. The English word for **y** is _____
3. The English word for **es** is _____
4. The English word for **su** is _____
5. The English word for **mi** is _____
6. The English word for **casa** is _____

Exercise 6

Write the English on the lines or translate in your mind and check the answers on the next page.

1. Tengo una invitación.

2. Necesito una reservación.

3. Hay una cancelación.

4. Tengo un nuevo profesor.

5. Quiero un nuevo doctor.

6. Maximo de tres minutos.

7. Hay dos chimeneas y un balcón en mi casa.

8. Una colección de gols clasicos.

9. Tengo una reservación.

10. David y Goliat

11. Hay una nueva exhibición en el centro.

12. Hay un hombre y una mujer.

13. Su casa esta en el centro.

14. Mi casa esta en la zona historica.

15. Hay una celebración en el centro.

16. La situación es caótica.

17. Tengo mi visa en mi pasaporte.

18. Hay una promoción de dos por uno

19. Hay una celebración de graduación.

Exercise 7

Write the English translation on the line.

1. The English word for **casa** is

2. The English word for **explicación** is

3. The English word for **traducción** is

4. The English word for **contaminación** is

5. The English word for **su** is

6. The English word for **población** is

7. The English word for **decepción** is

8. The English word for **habitación** is

9. The English word for **mi** is

10. The English word for **es** is

11. The English word for **por** is

12. The English word for **y** is

Exercise 8

Translate this into Spanish.

1. The man

2. A woman with a man

3. Is there a celebration (in) downtown?

4. The translation

5. I want an explanation.

6. A woman

7. A man

8. A reservation

9. There is a cancellation.

10. The man with a woman.

11. I need a room.

12. I have the conformation

13. A disappointment

14. I need the hat

15. Do you have the confirmation of the reservation? _____

16. The population

17. Do you have a room?

18. I have a house.

19. There is a television in the room.

20. I have a mansion .

Exercise 9

Translate these family names into English.

1. la hermana (lah airmanah)

2. el abuelo (el abweloh)

3. el padre (el pahdray)

4. el hermano (el airmanoh)

5. la abuela (lah abwelah)

6. la hija (lah ee-hah)

7. la madre (lah mahdray)

8. el hijo (el ee-hoh)

Exercise 10

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of tener (to have) or ser (to be). Check to see if you have remembered the Spanish correctly

1. Yo ____ americana.
2. Nosotros ____ cuatro niños.
3. Yo no ____ feliz.
4. ¿ ____ tú coche?
5. Él ____ mi marido.
6. Yo no ____ teléfono móvil.
7. Tú no ____ español.
8. ¿ ____ usted hijos?

Exercise 11

You arrive at a restaurant. Join in the conversation, replying in Spanish following the English prompts.

1. **Buenas tardes señora, señor.** (Ask for a table for six.)
2. **¿Fumadores o no fumadores?** (Say: nonsmoking.)
3. **Síganme, por favor.** (Ask for the menu.)
4. **¿Quiere la carta de vinos?** (Say: No. Sparkling water, please.)
5. **Muy bien.** (Say you don't have a glass.)

Exercise 12

Translate these into Spanish:

1. What time is it?

2. What time do you want breakfast?

3. The meeting is at noon.

Exercise 13

Translate these into Spanish:

1. How much is a ticket to Madrid?

2. Can I pay by credit card?

3. Do I have to change trains?

4. Which platform does the train leave from?

5. Are there any discounts?

6. What time does the train to Gijón leave?

Exercise 14

Practice these phrases and then test yourself.

1. Quisiera un taxi para ir al Prado. (*keesyairah oon taksee parah eer al prado*)
2. ¿Cuándo sale el próximo autobús? (*kwandoh salay el prokseemoh aootoboos*)
3. ¿Cómo se va al museo? (*komoh say bah al moosayoh*)
4. ¿Cuánto dura el viaje? (*kwantoh doorah el beehay*)
5. Espéreme, por favor. (*esperemay, por fabor*)

Exercise 15

A. You're buying tickets at a train station. Follow the conversation, replying in Spanish and respond with English prompts.

1. ¿Qué desea? (*I'd like two tickets to Sevilla.*)
2. ¿De ida o de ida y vuelta? (*Round-trip, please.*)
3. Muy bien. Cincuenta euros, por favor. (*What time does the train leave?*)
4. A las tres y diez. (*What platform does the train leave from?*)
5. Andén número siete. (*Thank you very much. Goodbye.*)

B. Ask the questions that match these answers.

1. El autobús sale a las ocho.
2. El café es un euro cincuenta
3. No, no quiero vino
4. El tren sale del andén cinco
5. Nosotros vamos a León
6. El próximo tren es dentro de quince minutos

Answers to Exercises

Answers to Exercise 1

1. with
2. man
3. woman
4. you have
5. new
6. I want
7. shade
8. one or a/an
9. downtown
10. there is
11. I need
12. I have

Answers to Exercise 2

1. A woman
2. There is a guitarist in the restaurant.
3. I want a hat
4. A restaurant with shade.
5. There are signs of recuperation.
6. You have a reservation.
7. A new hotel (in the) downtown.
8. There is a man in the hotel.
9. A man with charisma.
10. I want coffee with cream.
11. There are tourists (in the) downtown.
12. There is a restaurant in the hotel.
13. There is a woman in the hospital.
14. The doctor is a woman.
15. There is a new hotel (in the) downtown

16. You have a new dentist.
17. There is a rumor.
18. You have indigestion.
19. A man
20. I have a new doctor.
21. An exercise in diplomacy.
22. You have a problem with your passport.
23. I have a list of the hotels (in the) downtown.
24. New Spain

Answers to Exercise 3

1. tengo
2. tiene
3. hay
4. necesito
5. quiero
6. el centro
7. un or una/uno
8. sombra
9. con
10. nuevo
11. hombre
12. mujer

Answers to Exercise 4

1. Tiene un sombrero?
2. Tengo un sombrero
3. Quiero un sombrero
4. Tiene sombra?
5. Necesito sombra
6. Necesito un sombrero

7. Hay sombra en el centro?

NOTE: In english we normally just say: There is shade downtown but in Spanish it is always say en el centro (in the downtown).

8. Hay un hospital?

9. Hay un hotel en el centro?

10. Tiene un sombrero

11. Tiene sombra?

12. Hay sombra en el centro

13. Hay un hotel en el centro

14. Necesito un doctor.

Answers to Exercise 5

1. for
2. and
3. is
4. your
5. my
6. house

Answers to Exercise 6

1. I have an invitation
2. I need a reservation.
3. There is a cancellation.
4. I have a new teacher (professor).
5. I want a new doctor.
6. Maximum of three minutes.
7. There are two chimneys and a balcony in my house.
8. A collection of classic goals.
9. I have a reservation.

10. David and Goliath.
11. There is a new exhibition (in the) downtown.
12. There is a man and a woman.
13. Your house is (in the) downtown.
14. My house is in an historic zone.
15. There is a celebration (in the) downtown.
16. The situation is chaotic.
17. I have my visa in my passport.
18. There is a two for one promotion (of two for one).
19. There is a celebration of the graduation (graduation celebration).

Answers to Exercise 7

1. house
2. explanation
3. translation
4. pollution
5. your
6. population
7. disappointment
8. room
9. my
10. is
11. for
12. and

Answers to Exercise 8

1. El hombre.

2. Una mujer con un hombre.
3. Hay una celebración en el centro?
4. La traducción.
5. Quiero una explicación.
6. Una mujer.
7. Un hombre.
8. Una reservación
9. Hay una cancelación.
 10. El hombre con una mujer.
 11. Necesito una habitación.
 12. Tengo la confirmación.
 13. Una decepción.
 14. Necesito el sombrero.
 15. Tiene la confirmación de la reservación?
 16. La población
 17. Tiene una habitación?
 18. Tengo una casa
 19. Hay una televisión en la habitación
 20. Tengo una mansión.

Answers to Exercise 9

1. Sister
2. Grandfather
3. Father
4. Brother
5. Grandmother
6. Daughter
7. Mother
8. Son

Answers to Exercise 10

1. soy *soy*
2. tenemos *tenaymos*
3. soy *soy*
4. tienes *tyenes*
5. es *es*
6. tengo *tengoh*
7. eres *eh -res*
8. tiene *tyenay*

Answers to Exercise 11

1. Buenas tardes, quisiera una mesa para seis. (*bwenas tardes, keesyairah oonah mesah parah seys*)
2. No fumadores. (*noh foomadores*)
3. La carta, por favor. (*lah kartah, por fabor*)
4. No. Agua con gas, por favor. (*noh. ahgwah kon gas, por fabor*)
5. No tengo copa. (*noh tengoh kopah*)

Answers to Exercise 12

1. ¿Qué hora es? (*kay orah es*)
2. ¿A qué hora quiere el desayuno? (*ah kay orah kyairay el desah-yoonoh*)
3. La reunión es a mediodía. (*lah reh-oonyon es ah maydyodee-ah*)

Answers to Exercise 13

1. ¿Cuánto cuesta un billete para Madrid? (*kwantoh kwaystah oon beeyetay parah madreed*)
2. ¿Puedo pagar con tarjeta de crédito? (*pwedoh pagar kon tarhetah day kredeetoh*)
3. ¿Tengo que cambiar? (*tengoh kay kambee-ar*)
4. ¿De qué andén sale el tren? (*day kay anden salay el tren*)
5. ¿Hay algún descuento? (*ah-ee algoon deskwentoh*)
6. ¿A qué hora sale el tren para Gijón? (*ah kay orah salay el tren parah geehon*)

Answers to Exercise 14

1. I'd like a taxi to go to the Prado.
2. When is the next bus?
3. How do you get to the museum?
4. How long is the trip?
5. Please wait for me.

Answers to Exercise 15

A.

1. *Quisiera dos billetes para Sevilla.* (*keesyairah dos beeyetes parah sebeeyah*)
2. *De ida y vuelta, por favor.* (*day eedah ee bweltah, por fabor*)
3. ¿A qué hora sale el tren? (*ah kay orah salay el tren*)
4. ¿De qué andén sale el tren? (*day kay anden salay el tren*)
5. *Muchas gracias. Adiós.* (*moochas grathyas. addy-os*)

B.

Glossary

SPANISH COMMON PHRASES

Learn Spanish for Beginners in Your Car Like Crazy.

Language Learning Lessons for travel and Everyday.

How to speak Spanish with Vocabulary,

Conversations and Grammar.

VOL 2

Table of Contents

[INTRODUCTION](#)

[CHAPTER 1: Basic Vocabulary](#)

[CHAPTER 2: Common Context](#)

[CHAPTER 3: Business](#)

[CHAPTER 4: Hobbies & Study Situations](#)

[CHAPTER 5: Basic Vocabulary](#)

[CHAPTER 6: Idioms, Sayings, Modisms & Proverbs](#)

[CHAPTER 7: 272 Easy Spanish Phrases](#)

© Copyright 2019 by Language Learning School - All rights reserved.

The following Book is reproduced below with the goal of providing information that is as accurate and reliable as possible. Regardless, purchasing this Book can be seen as consent to the fact that both the publisher and the author of this book are in no way experts on the topics discussed within and that any recommendations or suggestions that are made herein are for entertainment purposes only. Professionals should be consulted as needed prior to undertaking any of the action endorsed herein.

This declaration is deemed fair and valid by both the American Bar Association and the Committee of Publishers Association and is legally binding throughout the United States.

Furthermore, the transmission, duplication, or reproduction of any of the following work including specific information will be considered an illegal act irrespective of if it is done electronically or in print. This extends to creating a secondary or tertiary copy of the work or a recorded copy and is only allowed with the express written consent from the Publisher. All additional right reserved.

The information in the following pages is broadly considered a truthful and accurate account of facts and as such, any inattention, use, or misuse of the information in question by the reader will

render any resulting actions solely under their purview. There are no scenarios in which the publisher or the original author of this work can be in any fashion deemed liable for any hardship or damages that may befall them after undertaking information described herein.

Additionally, the information in the following pages is intended only for informational purposes and should thus be thought of as universal. As befitting its nature, it is presented without assurance regarding its prolonged validity or interim quality. Trademarks that are mentioned are done without written consent and can in no way be considered an endorsement from the trademark holder.

INTRODUCTION

This book is designed to provide practice with the vocabulary and structures that are usually used in common types of informal conversations. This consists of seven chapters, each one written to teach you common phrases that you can use for your Spanish living.

Note that certain expressions are mentioned as well in other chapters so that you can be more familiar with them as they occur in various contexts. There will be some sets of exercises following every discussion section so to help you evaluate yourself and for better understanding of this material. The exercises also give you a chance to practice using new vocabulary and structures so that you will be able to use them in your own personal conversations.

The way to be familiar with a book is to apply it in your daily life. Continue to practice your Spanish in conversations with your Spanish-speaking comrades and continue to learn and enjoy this beautiful and rich language.

CHAPTER 1: Basic Vocabulary

Los Saludos! (Greetings)

Let us admit it. There is something truly eccentric whenever a person tries to start a conversation with a Spanish greeting. It gives that classic vibe that makes one want to tag along. Have you ever heard of **¡Buenos días!** ?

Well, that person wishes you a good morning. It makes you smile, right? To have somebody greeting you with Spanish is really cute.

When answering people, say *Sí* for Yes and say *No* for No. You can say *Por favor* for Please.

(Muchas) Gracias – Thank you (very much)

De nada. – You are welcome.

Perdón/ Discúlpeme. – Excuse me.

Lo siento. – Sorry.

Spanish people are often very casual in the way they interact with others. Using both formal and informal expressions is acceptable in every situation.

Hola – Hello/Hi

Buenos días! – Good morning!

Buenas tardes. – Good afternoon.

Buenas noches. – Good evening.

Hasta luego. – See you later.

Adiós. – Goodbye.

¿Qué tal? - How are you?

Bien, gracias. – Fine, thanks.

¿Cómo se llama Usted? – What is your name?

Me llamo . . . – My name is . . .

Quisiera presentarte a . . . – I'd like to introduce you to a . . .

Mucho gusto. – I am pleased to meet you.

There are also Spanish-specific greetings for every occasion including birthdays, weddings and holidays.

BIRTHDAYS

Do you plan to greet your Spanish friend in his native language? Well, here is how:

¡Feliz cumpleaños! - Happy birthday!

¡Que todos tus deseos se hagan realidad! - May all your wishes come true!

¡Felicidades! - Congratulations!

¡Que cumplas muchos años más - May you enjoy many more years!

¡Que tengas un maravilloso día! - Have a wonderful day!

Mis mejores deseos en este día tan especial para ti. - Wishing you the best on your special day.

WEDDINGS

Are you worried about how you can greet your favourite couple on their wedding anniversary? No worries, because you are just about to know how to articulate in Spanish!

¡Feliz aniversario! - Happy anniversary!

¡Felicidades por su aniversario número . . .! - Happy _th anniversary!

¡Felicidades por sus bodas de . . .! - Congratulations on your ____ wedding anniversary!

... de plata (25) - silver (25th)

... de oro (50) - golden (50th)

... de diamante (60) - diamond (60th)

BEREAVEMENT/SHOWING SYMPATHY

Sending your condolences does not happen easily. You have to show that you are sincere and care about the bereaved. Here are some basic Spanish phrases to help you out.

Estamos con ustedes. - We are with you.

Mis condolencias para la familia. - My condolences for the family.

Mi más sentido pésame. - My deepest condolences.

Lo siento. - I'm sorry.

Que encuentren pronta resignación. - I hope you recover promptly from your grief.

Lamentamos su pérdida. - We are sorry for your loss.

CHRISTMAS AND NEW YEAR GREETINGS

It is the most wonderful time of the year. With the grandiosity, it brings, who wouldn't be one to be hooked up with knowing how to greet the celebration with different languages. If you want you can Surely check out these phrases and give that Spanish vibe to your loved ones!

¡Feliz navidad! - Merry Christmas!

¡Feliz año nuevo! - Happy New Year!

¡Que este año que llega esté lleno de bendiciones! - May the coming New Year bring you blessings!

¡Felices Fiestas! - Happy Holidays!

¡Feliz navidad y próspero año nuevo! - Merry Christmas and a Happy New Year!

CONGRATULATIONS

Whenever you need to commend somebody for a job well done, do not forget the following phrases. Get that congratulation going, in the Spanish version of course!

¡Felicidades! - Congratulations!

Bien hecho. - Well done.

Sabíamos que lo lograrías. - We knew you could do it.

Estamos orgullosos de ti. - We are so proud of you!

¡Lo hiciste excelente! - You did an excellent job!

Te quiero felicitar. - I want to congratulate you.

CONGRATULATIONS (NEW BABY VERSION)

Yay for a new baby arriving! Here is to congratulate the arrival of another blessing in the family. By the way, do not get too noisy or the baby might cry.

¡Felicidades por el nuevo integrante de la familia! - Congratulations on the new arrival in your family!

¡Felicidades por el nacimiento de su niño/niña! - Congratulations on the arrival of your baby boy/girl!

¡Qué gusto saber que ya nació! - We are delighted to hear that he/she has already born!

CONGRATULATIONS (FOR DOING WELL ACADEMICALLY!)

Did somebody make it big in getting exam scores? Or just graduated in college? This is right in time for you are practicing your Spanish vocabulary as well. Congratulate them with the following phrases!

¡Felicidades por tu graduación! - Congratulations on your graduation!

¡Buen trabajo! - Good job!

¡Felicidades por tus buenas calificaciones! - Congratulations on your good grades!

¡Felicidades por tu maestría! - Congratulations on getting your Master's degree!

¡Felicidades por entrar a la universidad! - Well done on getting into University!

¡Felicidades por pasar el examen! - Congratulations on passing your exam!

WEDDING AND ENGAGEMENTS

It is arguably one of the highlights of a person's life - to finally have the person you will be with for better or for worse, for richer or for poorer, in

sickness and in health. Of course, you can be able to greet them in the most extra way by saying your prepared Spanish greeting!

¡Felicidades a los futuros esposos! - Congratulations to the future spouses!

¡Felicidades a los novios! - Congratulations to the groom and bride!

¡Salud por los novios! - Cheers to the newlyweds!

Espero que sean muy felices. - I hope you will be very happy.

¿Ya tienen fecha para la boda? - Have you set the date of the big day?

¡Felicidades por esta nueva etapa! - Congratulations on this new stage!

¡Mis mejores deseos para los dos! - Best wishes to you both!

¡Felicidades por su boda! - Congratulations on the wedding!

CONGRATULATIONS (WORK-RELATED)

Celebrate with somebody as they take another step in the corporate ladder or if they got hired in the job that they have been dreaming for a long time.

Drop them the Spanish, and here is what you should say:

¡Felicidades por tu nuevo empleo! - Congratulations on your new job!

¡Felicidades por tu ascenso! - Congratulations on the promotion!

¡La mejor de las suertes en tu nueva etapa! - We wish you the best of luck on your new stage!

¡Éxito! - We wish you success!

¡Suerte en tu nuevo trabajo! - Good luck with your new job!

¡Suerte en tu primer día de trabajo! - Good luck on your first day at work!

GET WELL WISHES

Having Spanish-speaking comrades who deserve to be shown some tender love and care? Wish them to get well soon and here is how you drive their sickness away in Spanish.

Recupérate pronto. - Wish you a speedy recovery.

¡Que te mejores! - Get well!

Alíciate pronto. - Get well soon.

Espero que te sientas mejor. - I hope you feel better.

GENERAL THANKS

Once in a while, it would not hurt to send your thanks and make the other party feel the appreciation they deserve. Here is how to say thank you in

Spanish.

Gracias. - Thank you.

Muchas gracias. - Many thanks.

Se agradece. - It's appreciated.

Mil gracias. - Thanks a thousand times.

No sé como podría agradecertelo. - I don't know how to thank you.

Estamos muy agradecidos. - We are very grateful.

Que amable de su parte. - It is really nice of you.

Gracias desde el fondo de mi corazón. - Thank you from the bottom of my heart.

DAYS OF THE WEEKS, MONTHS, AND SEASONS

LOS DÍAS DE LA SEMANA (DAYS OF THE WEEK)

In order to refer to a day of the week in the English language, we usually say **Monday** or **on Monday** . However, in Spanish, the article **el** is used with the name of the day to express the noun. Days of the week do not start with a capital letter in Spanish.

el lunes – Monday, on Monday

el martes – Tuesday, on Tuesday

el miércoles – Wednesday, on Wednesday

el jueves – Thursday, on Thursday

el viernes – Friday, on Friday

el sábado – Saturday, on Saturday

el domingo – Sunday, on Sunday

How do I form the plural of the days of the week?

Well, comrade, if you are planning to form the plural of the days of the week, el changes to los and –s is added exclusively to el sábado and el domingo only. The names of the days of the week from el lunes to el viernes already end in –s.

Consider the following:

los lunes – Mondays, on Mondays

los martes – Tuesdays, on Tuesdays

los miércoles – Wednesdays, on Wednesdays

los jueves – Thursdays, on Thursdays

los viernes – Fridays, on Fridays

los sábados – Saturdays, on Saturdays

los domingos – Sundays, on Sundays

Hay clase los lunes. – There is class on Mondays.

¿Hay fiestas los Viernes? – Are there parties on Fridays?

¿Dónde está John Melan los domingos? – Where is John Melan on Sundays?

El martes es el día de acción de gracias. – Tuesday is Thanksgiving Day.

El jueves es el día del amor y la amistad. – Thursday is St. Valentine's Day.

Estamos en clase los miércoles. – We are in class on Wensdays.

¿Dónde estás los viernes? – Where are you on Fridays?

LOS MESES (THE MONTHS)

Enero – January

Febrero – February

Marzo – March

Abril – April

Mayo – May

Junio – June

Julio – July

Agosto – August

Septiembre – September

Octubre – October

Noviembre – November

Diciembre – December

LAS ESTACIONES (THE SEASONS)

el verano – the summer

el otoño – the autumn / the fall

el invierno – the winter

la primavera – the spring(time)

PARTES DEL DÍA (PARTS OF THE DAY)

la mañana – the morning

la tarde – the afternoon

la noche – the night, the evening

EXERCISE!

Translate the following Spanish sentences into English.

1. ¿Dónde están los estudiantes los lunes?
2. El sábado y el domingo son días de fiesta.
3. En la primavera, hay flores bellas en los parques.
4. En el otoño, hay hojas amarillas y rojas en los árboles.
5. ¿Qué día es hoy? Hoy es miércoles. ¿Qué mes es? Es septiembre.
6. ¿Cuántos días hay en junio? ¿Cuántos días hay en un año?
7. Las calles de México son estrechas. Las casas son bajas y bonitas.
8. ¿Por qué están los periódicos y las revistas en el piso?

9. Hay clase, pero los estudiantes están en la playa donde hay una piscina también. El profesor está enojado pero los estudiantes están alegres.
10. Los edificios de las ciudades grandes son altos.
11. Los niños están en la playa porque es el verano.
12.
Mucha gente está en los restaurantes porque es el invierno.

NUMBERS, DATES, AND TIME

Numbers are an essential part of everyday life. In fact, we can measure how important things are and explain them better by quantifying them. Somebody tells you their cellphone number, and it booms into a spectacular love affair. In fact, they say money makes the world go round but they're wrong. Money is just a number, and thereby, numbers make the world go round.

CARDINAL NUMBER

A cardinal number is any number that expresses an amount like one, two, three but not 143 because that is another way of saying, "I love you." Well, it could be, right?

Here are the Spanish cardinal numbers up to 100.

- 0 – cero
- 1 – uno
- 2 – dos
- 3 – tres
- 4 – cuatro
- 5 – cinco
- 6 – seis
- 7 – siete
- 8 – ocho
- 9 – nueve

10 – diez
11 – once
12 – doce
13 – trece
14 – catorce
15 – quince
16 – dieciséis
17 – diecisiete
18 – dieciocho
19 – diecinueve
20 – veinte
21 – veintiuno
22 – veintidós
23 – veintitrés
24 – veinticuatro
25 – veinticinco
26 – veintiséis
27 – veintisiete
28 – veintiocho
29 – veintinueve
30 – treinta
31 – treinta y uno
32 – treinta y dos
33 – treinta y tres
34 – treinta y cuatro
35 – treinta y cinco
36 – treinta y seis
37 – treinta y siete

38 – treinta y otso
39 – treinta y nueve
40 – cuarenta
50 – cincuenta
60 – sesenta
70 – setenta
80 – ochenta
90 – noventa

Remember the following rules for the use of cardinal numbers in Spanish:

- Numbers after 15, quince, are formed by combining numbers: 10 + 6 = 16, diez y seis so dieciséis
- The numbers from 16 to 19 and from 21 to 29 are expressed as one word: 22, veinte y dos > veintidós
- Numbers after 30, treinta, end in –a and do not combine with the next number. They are expressed as individual words: 34, treinta y cuatro, for example. This is true for the numbers 31 to 90, treinta y uno to noventa y nueve.
- In English, we say **one hundred and ten**. However, in Spanish, y is not used to connect hundreds and following number: 110, **ciento diez** ; 220, **doscientos veinte** ; 315, **trescientos quince** .
- When a masculine noun follows the number 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, 71, 81, or 91, the –o is dropped from **uno** .

veintiún años – 21 years
treinta y un libros – 31 books
cincuenta y un gatos – 51 cats
sesenta y un hombres – 61 men
noventa y un amigos – 91 friends

- When a feminine noun follows a number ending in **uno** (English of one), the feminine form is **una** .

cuarenta y una mujeres – 41 women
setente y una muchachas – 71 girls
ochenta y una amigas – 81 friends

- The number 100 in Spanish utilizes the following pattern:

cien – 100

ciento uno – 101

ciento cincuenta – 150

ciento noventa y ocho – 198

Cien becomes ciento if and only if it is followed by any number that is less than itself. Before all, nouns, whether masculine or feminine, it remains cien.

cien libros – 100 books

cien casas – 100 houses

cien hombres – 100 men

cien mujeres – 100 women

- The numbers 200 to 900 agree with the noun that they are adjacent to.

200 – doscientos

200 women - doscientas mujeres

200 doors – docientas puertas

300 – trescientos

300 cats – trescientos gatos

300 stores – trescientas tiendas

400 – cuatrocientos

400 trains – cuatrocientos trenes

400 lights – cuatorcientas luces

500 – quinientos

500 animals – quinientas animales

500 flowers – quinientas flores

600 – seiscientos

600 trees – seiscientos árboles

600 parties – seiscientas fiestas

700 – setecientos

700 boats – setecientas plantas

800 – ochocientos

800 dreams – ochocientos sueños

800 tables – ochosientas mesas

900 – novecientos

900 mirrors – novecientos espejos

900 naps – novecientos siestas

- Spanish numbers beginning with 1000, mil, are not counted in hundreds.

1 000 – mil

1 000 years – mil años

2 000 years – dos mil años

1 000 000 – un millón (de)

a million dollars – un millón de dólares

2 000 000 – dos millones (de)

2 000 000 questions – dos millones de preguntas

Mil does not change even if the quantifiable word does (dos mil, tres mil, cinco mil), nor does it need the article un (English a) in front of it.

Take note also that Spanish does not count in hundreds after 1, 000. The number 1992 is formed by combining 1000 + 900 + 92, so it will be stated like **mil novecientos noventa y dos** . The number 2006 is **dos mil seis** .

The plural **miles** is used only to refer to a large but inexact amount, the way English makes use of tons: **Hay miles de personas en el restaurante. (There are tons of people in this restaurant)**

- In Spanish, the period is used to separate thousands; the comma is to indicate decimals. Take, for example this: \$90,25 is **noventa dólares y veinticinco centavos** .

LET'S EXERCISE!

Complete the following sentences by writing in the Spanish numbers in words.

1. En febrero, hay ____ (29) días; cada ____ (4) años, hay ____ (30) días.
2. ¿En qué meses hay ____ (28) días?
3. Hay ____ (75) lá pices en la tienda y ____ (45) plumas.
4. Hay ____ (25) muchachas en el baño, pero hay solamente ____ (1) espejo,
5. Hay ____ (7) días en una semana; ____ (52) semanas en un año.
6. Hay ____ (265) libros de español en la librería.
7. En la biblioteca, hay ____ (3 769) libros.
8. ____ (89) y ____ (542) son ____ (799).
9. ____ (654) menos ____ (17) son ____ (545).
10. Hay ____ (452) camisas rojas en la tienda y hay ____ (85) pantalones.
11. Hay ____ (15) capítulos en el libro; hay ____ (266) páginas.
12. Hay ____ (22345) restaurants en la ciudad.

ORDINAL NUMBERS

Ordinal numbers expression position in a series like when you rank something. First, he takes an interest in you. Second, he tries to be close to you. Third, he just vanishes. Fourth, years later, you have seen each other, and now you understood why he had to leave.

Kidding aside, an ordinal show which of which comes first.

primero – first

segundo – second

tercero – third

cuatro – fourth

quinto – fifth

sexton – sixth

séptimo – seventh

octavo – eighth

novena – ninth

décimo – tenth

Here are the following rules for the use of ordinal numbers in Spanish.

- Ordinal numbers in Spanish come first before the noun and agree in gender with the noun it is describing.
- When dealing with a masculine noun, primero and tercero drop the –o. For example, el primer piso, el tercer piso

primero – first

el primer hombre – the first man

la primera mujer – the first woman

segundo – second

el segundo mes – the second month

la segunda parte – the second part

tercero – third

el tercer día – the third day

la tercera semana – the third week

cuatro – fourth

el cuatro piso – the fourth floor

la cuarta lección – the fourth lesson

quinto – fifth

el quinto mes – the fifth month

la quinta avenida – the fifth avenue

sexton – sixth

el sexton tren – the sixth train

la sexta calle – the sixth street

séptimo – seventh

el séptimo capítulo – the seventh chapter

la séptima página – the seventh page

octavo – eighth

el octavo libro – the eighth book

la octava pregunta – the eighth question

novena – ninth

el noveno presidente – the ninth president

la novena fiesta – the ninth party

décimo – tenth

el décimo sueño – the tenth dream

la décima razón – the tenth reason

¿Dónde está la quinta avenida? – Where is Fifth avenue?

Hay una librería en la sexta calle. – There is a bookstore on Sixth Street.

El tercer capítulo es interesante. – The third chapter is interesting.

La oficina del doctor está en el sexto piso. – The office of the doctor is on the sixth floor.

Maria y Rica son las primeras estudiantes en la clase. – Maria and Rica are the first students in the class.

- Ordinal numbers are used for monarchy like kings, queens and even in popes and centuries. In this case, they follow the noun they are describing:

el siglo segundo - the second century

Carlos Quinto – Charles the Fifth

- Beginning with the ordinal number eleventh, you have to state the noun first then the cardinal number. Thus Eleventh street is said as la calle once. In literal definition, the street eleven.

el piso catorce – the fourteenth floor

la calle once – the eleventh street

la lección veintitrés – the twenty-third lesson

el piso ciento tres – the one hundred and third floor

LET'S EXERCISE!

Complete the following sentences with the Spanish equivalent in words of each phrase.

EXAMPLE: Hay una feria en la tercera avenida . (Third avenue)

1. Hay una biblioteca en _____. (72nd street)
2. El trabajo de Lola está en _____. (the 56th floor)
3. Hay un restaurant en _____. (146th street)
4. _____ (the 76th chapter) es interesante.
5. _____ (the sixth lesson) es horrible.
6. Mayo es _____ (the fifth month) del año.

THE DATE

In Spanish, the cardinal numbers 2 to 31 are used to indicate all days of the month except the first.

¿Cuál es la fecha de hoy? – What is today's date?

Hoy es el cinco de mayo. – Today is May 5.

Mañana es el seis de mayo. – Tomorrow is May 6.

Es el veintiocho de febrero. – It is February 28.

Es el treinta y uno de octubre. – It is October 31.

The concept of ordinal number is applied only to indicate the first of the month like **el primero del mes** .

Hoy es el primero de junio. – Today is June 1.

Mañana es el primero de octubre. – Today is the first of October.

LET'S EXERCISE!

Complete the following sentences with the Spanish term or number. Always write numbers as words.

1. Hoy es _____ (Wednesday) el _____ (12th of April).

2. ¿Por qué estamos en clase ____ (on Sundays)?
3. Hay ____ (99) personas en el restaurant nuevo.
4. La fecha del nacimiento de Sandra es ____ (November 17, 1978).
5. Es el ____ (15th) de diciembre del ____ (2009).
6. ¿Quién es el ____ (second) hombre y la ____ (third) mujer?

TIME

In the sense of telling time, time is expressed in Spanish by **la hora** .

¿Que hora es? (What hour is it?) (What time is it?)

Time is told in Spanish by using the third person singular or plural of ser. Begin by learning the expressions for telling the exact time on the hour, from one o'clock to twelve o'clock. **La** represent **la hora** and **las** stand for **las horas** .

Es la una. – It is one o'clock.

Son las dos. - It is two o'clock.

Son las tres. – It is three o'clock.

Son las cuatro. – It is four o'clock.

Son las cinco. – It is five o'clock.

Son las seis.- It is six o'clock.

Son las siete. – It is seven o'clock.

Son las ocho. – It is eight o'clock.

Son las nueve. – It is nine o'clock.

Son las diez. – It is ten o'clock.

Son las once. – It is eleven o'clock.

Son las doce. – It is twelve o'clock.

The part of the day is states as follows:

de la mañana – (of the) morning, A.M.

de la tarde – (of the) afternoon, P.M.

de la noche – (of the) night, P.M.

Son las dos de la mañana – It is two o'clock in the morning.

Es las dos de la tarde. – It is two o'clock in the afternoon.

Son las ocho de la noche. – It is eight o'clock at night.

*To indicate the specific hour or “sharp,” Spanish uses **exactamente** or **en punto** .*

Son las cinco exactamente. – It is exactly five o'clock.

Son las diez en punto. – It is ten o'clock sharp.

*To indicate an approximate time, Spanish uses **a eso de** + the hour or the hour + **más o menos** .*

Es a eso de la una. – It is about one o'clock.

Es la una, más o menos. – It is one o'clock, more or less.

*To express a time after the hour, state the hour + **y** (English and plus) + the number of minutes. This adds minutes to the hour.*

Es la una y veinte. – It is 1:20

Son las cinco y diez. – It is 5:10.

Son las dos y cinco. – It is 2:05.

*When it is a quarter after the hour, Spanish uses **quince** (the English of fifteen) or **cuarto** (the English for quarter).*

Son las tres y quince. – It is 3:15.

Son las seis y cuatro. – It is 6:15.

*When it is half past the hour, Spanish uses **treinta** (English is thirty) or **media** (English is half).*

Son las nueve y treinta. – It is 9:30.

Son las ocho y media. – It is 8:30.

*To express a time before the hour, just state the hour plus **menos** (the English is minus) + the number of minutes. This subtracts the minutes from the hour.*

Son las tres menos diez. – It is 2:50.

Son las once menos cinco. – It is 10:55.

Son las nueve menos cuatro. – It is 8:45.

Son las doce menos quince. – It is 11:45.

*There is another way of expressing time before the hour. State the number of minutes + **para** + the hour. This expression, which closely follows English syntax, is only a fragment.*

Cinco para las tres. – Five minutes to three o'clock.

Veinticinco para las dos. – Twenty-five minutes to two o'clock.

Quince para las seis. – Fifteen minutes to six o'clock.

To show that something is happening *at* a certain time, Spanish uses an expression with the preposition **a** (English *at*). The expression for *after* the hour (the hour + **y** + the number of minutes) and *before* the hour (the hour + **menos** + the number of minutes) remain the same after **a**.

A las cuatro y diez. – At 4:10.

A las cinco y cuarto. – At 5:15.

A las seis y cinco. – At 6:05.

A las siete y tres. – At 7:03.

A las ocho y media. – At 8:30.

A las nueve menos quince. – At 8:45.

A las diez menos veinte. – At 9:40.

A las once menos veinticinco. – At 10:35.

A la una menos diez. – At 12:50.

LET'S EXERCISE!

Complete the following sentence with the appropriate Spanish time, include **de la mañana**, **de la tarde**, or **de la noche**, and always write numbers as words.

1. El programa es ____ (at 7 P.M)
2. ____ (at 9 A.M.) estoy en casa.
3. ____ (at 1 P.M.) estamos en la oficina.
4. ____ (at 6:20 P.M.) estamos en un restaurant.
5. ____ (It is 10 P.M.) ¿Dónde están los niños?

CHAPTER 2: Common Context

LA FAMILIA (FAMILY)

Like in any other language, there are different ways of addressing a family member. It is very crucial for the Spanish people to respect hierarchy in the family. Comparing to US and Canadian societies, Spain is far different. The latter believes that the individual is the basic unit of the society while the former believes that family is. They believe that addressing people properly is important in keeping family ties.

Here are phrases showing how to properly address a member of the family depending on who he/she is or what role he/she is playing:

la familia – family

el pariente – relative

los padres – parents

la madre – mother

la mamá – mom

mami – mommy

padre – father

papá – dad

papi – daddy

el esposo – husband

la esposa – wife

el hijo – son

la hija – daughter

el hermano – brother

la hermana – sister

el abuelo – grandfather

la abuela – grandmother
la abuelita – granny
el tío – uncle
la tía – aunt
el primo – male cousin
la prima – female cousin
el sobrino – nephew
la sobrina – niece
el nieto – grandson
la nieta – granddaughter
el nombre – name
el apellido – last name
materno – maternal
paterno – paternal
la suegra – mother-in-law
el suegro – father-in-law
la cuñada – sister-in-law
el cuñado – brother-in-law
la nuera – daughter-in-law
el yerno – son-in-law
la madrastra – stepmother
el padrastro – stepfather
la hijastra – stepdaughter
el hijastro – stepson
la hermanastra – stepsister
el hermanastro – stepbrother

el medio hermano – half brother

la media hermana – half sister

el bisabuelo – great-grandfather

la bisabuela – great-grandmother

In Spain is very specific with the titles of their respective family member. You may refer to the situation below:

RC is visiting a family at their home for the first time.

JM: Mire, le invito a que conozca mi casa. (Look, I'm inviting you to see my house.)

RC: Por favor, no quiero molestarle. (Please, I don't want to bother you.)

JM: No es ninguna molestia, y así le presento mi familia. (It's no bother, and this way I can introduce you to my family.)

RC: Pues si no le parece un abuso . . . (Well, if you don't think I'm abusing [your hospitality] . . .)

JM: No, para nada, le insisto . . . (Not at all, I insist . . .)

When you are invited to somebody's house, it is normal to be asked about some of your family backgrounds. It is a basic etiquette that when you are invited to somebody's house, you invite them back to yours. Some of the frequently asked questions are, "Where do you live?" or "Where do you work?"

RC has been invited into a beautiful, middle-class family house.

JM: Bueno, ya llegamos a la casa de mis padres. (Well, we're at my parents' house.)

RC: ¡Qué bella casa! Parece muy antigua. (What a beautiful house! It seems very old.)

JM: Sí, es una casa del siglo diecisiete. (Yes, it's a seventeenth-century house.)

RC: ¡Qué patio tan bello! (What a beautiful patio!)

JM: Sí, el patio es muy tradicional. (Yes, it's very traditional.)

It was mentioned awhile ago that it is part of the Spanish tradition that when they visit your house, you will invite them to visit yours.

Family Member: ¿Dónde vives? (Where do you live?)

RC: Busco un departamento pequeño. (I'm looking for a small apartment.)

Family Member: A la vuelta, arriendan un departamentito. (Around the corner, they rent a little apartment.)

RC: Bueno, voy a verlo. (Good, I'm going to see it.)

Family Member: Te va a gustar. (You'll like it.)

RC: Bueno, no quiero molestar más, tengo que irme. (Well, I don't want to bother you any more, I have to go.)

Family Member: Aquí tienes tu casa. (This is your home.)

RC: Muchas gracias. (Thank you very much.)

Family Member: Te invito a que vengas mañana a tomar el tecito con nosotros. (I invite you to come tomorrow for [a small] tea [with us].)

RC: Lo haré con mucho gusto. (I'd love to.)

In Spanish, when you are addressing somebody smaller than you are, just add a few letters to the noun, which is called a suffix. This means just have to add something to the word. With that suffix, you create a language variant, and people know that you are referring to something or somebody small.

- The suffixes you add to the words are -ito (ee-toh) or -ita (ee-tah). A niño (nee-nyoh) (boy/child) turns little when you add the suffix niño (nee-nyee-toh) (little boy/child).

Consider the situation below:

RC chats about kids with her hosts.

Candy: Dime RC, ¿tienes hijos? (Tell me Shirley, do you have children?)

RC: Tengo un hijo. Aquí está su foto. (I have a son. Here's his photo.)

Candy: A ver . . . Un muchacho muy buen mozo. (Let's see . . . A good-looking boy.)

RC: Sí. ¿Y tú? (Yes. And you?)

Candy: Yo tengo una hija y un hijo. (I have a daughter and a son.)

RC: ¿Cuántos años tienen? (How old are they?)

Candy: Mi hija tiene seis años y mi hijo tres. Allí viene mi hija. (My daughter is six and my son three. There comes my daughter.)

RC: Hola, ¿cómo te llamas? (Hello, what's your name?)

Phia: Me llamo Phia. (My name is Phia.)

RC: ¡Qué bello nombre, me gusta mucho! (What a beautiful name, I like it very much!)

LET'S EXERCISE!

Translate the following English family words into Spanish.

1. Mother
2. Father
3. Great grandfather
4. Aunt
5. Stepmother

EL RESTAURANTE (RESTAURANT)

Just as how rich Spain is with their cuisines, Spain is also rich in etiquette when in restaurants. Restaurant staff made it a tradition to pleasantly greet their guests in the most special way they can.

Whenever you visit a Spanish restaurant and since you are only a beginner, it is normal to know a little only on the greetings. However, as you are

checking this book, you will know more about how they say warm greetings, the basics of checking their guests and allowing them to sit.

The following sections will either be introductory or a refresher for you whenever you visit a Spanish-speaking restaurant.

MASTERING THE MEET AND GREET

Whenever you arrive at a Spanish restaurant, staff usually welcome you with a big smile showing that they are genuinely happy to see you. They usually shift to an informal way when their guests arrive, and they show that they are willing to see the fun side of the restaurant staff.

Normally, they would let the guests greet them verbally. This is their way of checking if the guest understands Spanish. They do not easily assume no matter if the guest looks Hispanic very much. However, if they greet you first in English, you may choose to greet back and tell them your situation.

You may deliver it through this:

Yo hablo un poco español. ¿Preferiría que yo hable en español? (I speak a little Spanish. Would you prefer I speak in Spanish?)

If you are a person concerned with being economic, here is how you ask about the cheapest restaurant:

¿Cuál restaurante es el más barato? (Which restaurant is the cheapest?)

ASKING A FEW QUESTIONS

Prior to the greeting part, staff usually give questions to their guest to determine if there are still arriving guests or if the guest went solo. You will often hear these questions:

¿Está solo/a o hay otros con usted? (Are you alone or with others?)

¿Cuántos hay en su grupo? (How many people are in your group?)

¿Tiene una reservación? (Do you have a reservation?)

¿Qué apellido dieron para la reservación? (What name did you give for the reservation?)

¿Cuántas habitaciones necesita? (How many rooms do you need?)

¿Preferiría una habitación/mesa de fumar o no fumar? (Would you prefer a smoking or nonsmoking room/table?)

Unfortunately for some guests, they may not be able to provide service if all their rooms are booked or reservations are taken. In such cases, they will usually explain what's going on in this manner:

Lo siento, pero todas las habitaciones están ocupadas. (I'm sorry, but all our rooms are occupied.)

Lo siento, es necesario reservar una habitación de antemano. (I'm sorry, you need to make a reservation in advance.)

SHOWING GUESTS TO THE TABLE

After the preliminaries, of asking whether you made a reservation or not, you will be shown to your table.

Por favor, sígame. (Please follow me.)

[Name] lo(s)/la(s) llevará a su mesa/habitación. ([Name] will take you to your table/room.)

When talking about restaurants, there are usually a lot of questions. Here are more restaurant-related queries:

¿Dónde hay restaurantes? (Where can I find restaurants?)

¿Conoces algún buen restaurante? (Do you know a good restaurant?)

¿Puede recomendar un restaurante? (Can you recommend a restaurant?)

¿Hay un restaurante (vegetariano) por aquí? (Is there a (vegetarian) restaurant near here?)

PIDIENDO COMIDA (ORDERING FOOD)

When ordering food, here are some of the most common phrases:

Soy vegetariano/a. (I'm vegetarian.)

¿Tienen comida halal/kosher? (Do you have halal/kosher food?)

No como carne roja. (I don't eat red meat.)

¿Esta cocinado en/con mantequilla? (Is it cooked in/with butter?)

¿Me puede preparar una comida sin huevo? (Could you prepare a meal without eggs?)

¿Me puede preparar una comida sin caldo de carne? (Could you prepare a meal without meat stock?)

REGÍMENES ESPECIALES & ALERGIAS (SPECIAL DIET AND ALLERGIES)

Estoy a régimen especial. (I'm on a special diet.)

Soy alérgico a ... (I'm allergic to ...)

Soy alérgico a los productos lácteos. (I'm allergic to dairy produce.)

Soy alérgica a los productos lácteos. (I'm allergic to dairy produce.)

Soy alérgico al glutamato monosódico. (I'm allergic to MSG.)

Soy alérgico a las nueces. (I'm allergic to nuts.)

Soy alérgico a los mariscos. (I'm allergic to seafood.)

Soy alérgica a los crustáceos. (I'm allergic to shellfish.)

LET'S EXERCISE!

Translate the following English sentences related to dealing with restaurants to Spanish.

1. I'm allergic to MSG.
2. Which restaurant is the cheapest?
3. What name did you give for the reservation?
4. Do you have halal/kosher food?
5. Would you prefer a smoking or nonsmoking room/table?
6. Can you recommend a restaurant?
7. How many rooms do you need?

8. (Name) will take you to your table/room.
9. I speak a little Spanish. Would you prefer I speak in Spanish?
10. Could you prepare a meal without eggs?

EL CUERPO (BODY)

There is one way of communicating about body parts that transcend any language – by pointing. However, this method can be misinterpreted and confusing at the same time especially when talking about internal organs. There is a more efficient way of communicating about body parts. It is to actually learn Spanish anatomy terminology.

HEAD AND NECK WORDS

la mejilla - cheek

la barba - chin

el cráneo - cranium

la ore - ear

el ojo - eye

el globo - eyeball

el rostro - face

la frente - forehead

el pelo - hair

la cabeza - head

la mandíbula - jaw

el labio - lip

la boca - mouth

el cuello - neck

la nariz - nose

la lengua - tongue

las amígdalas - tonsil

ARM AND HAND WORDS

el brazo - arm

el codo - elbow

el dedo - finger

el dedo índice - finger (forefinger)

el dedo meñique - finger (little)

el dedo del medio - finger (middle)

el dedo anular - finger (ring)

el puño - fist

el antebrazo - forearm

la mano - hand

la palma de la mano - palm of the hand

el hombro - shoulder

el pulgar - thumb

la muñeca – wrist

LEG AND FOOT WORDS

el tobillo - ankle

la pantorrilla - calf

el pie - foot

el talon - heel

la rodilla - knee

la pierna - leg

la uña - nail

la planta del pie - sole of the foot

el muslo - thigh

el dedo del pie – toe

INTERNAL ORGANS AND OTHER STUFF

la vejiga - bladder

la sangre - blood

el hueso - bone

el intestine - ovel; intestine; gut

el cerebro - brain

la vesícula - gallbladder

el corazón - heart

la articulación - joint

el riñón - kidney

el hígado - liver

el pulmón - lung

el músculo - muscle

el nervio - nerve

el pancreas - pancreas

la piel - skin

el vientre - spleen

el estómago - stomach

el útero – uterus

PATIENT EXAMINATION

The patient examination will involve checking the vital signs and the doctor's conducting of a physical examination. In the next sections, you will be taught how they usually talk with patients through a standard physical examination, such as taking the blood pressure and temperature as well as requesting a urine sample or blood sample and order of x-ray results.

BLOOD PRESSURE AND TEMPERATURE

When taking a patient's blood pressure and temperature, the nurse or medical assistant assists the patient in a room specified for examination. This is where blood pressure and temperature are checked. They will usually introduce to the patient what they are doing and what the patient needs to do.

Here is a situation similar to the situation above:

The medical assistant Rea weighs Mrs. Cerdia and takes her temperature and blood pressure while keeping Mrs. Cerdia informed of what she's doing.

Rea: Buenas tardes, Sra. Cerdia. (Good afternoon, Mrs. Cerdia.)

Mrs. Cerdia: Buenas tardes. (Good afternoon.)

Rea: Por favor suba a la báscula. Necesito averiguar cuanto pesa. (Please step up on the scale. I need to get your weight.)

Mrs. Cerdia: Bien. (Fine.)

Rea jots down Mrs. Cerdia's weight, and Mrs. Cerdia steps off the scale.

Rea: Vamos a la tercera sala a la derecha. (We're going to the third room on the right.)

After arriving in the examination room:

Rea: Por favor siéntese en esta mesa. (Please take a seat on this table.)

Necesito tomar su temperatura. I need to take your temperature.

Por favor ponga este termómetro en la boca. (Please put this thermometer in your mouth.)

After getting her temperature:

Rea: Ahora necesito tomar su presión de la sangre. (Now I need to take your blood pressure.)

Por favor remánguese la camisa. (Please roll up your shirt sleeve.)

After getting her blood pressure:

Rea: Gracias. El médico llegará pronto. (Thanks. The doctor will be here soon.)

Sra. Cerdia: Gracias. (Thanks.)

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

Whenever a physical exam is conducted, patients are usually given an overall inspection in order to check for any obvious physical signs of illness. The patient's ears, nose, and throat are examined. The doctors listen to her heart as well as breathing, and further have a closer look at the patient's body parts that show evidence of trauma or whenever reports pain on certain parts.

Voy a examinarlo. (I am going to examine you.)

Por favor, siéntese en la mesa. (Please sit up on the bed.)

Siéntese derecho. (Sit upright.)

Levante la cabeza. (Lift your head.)

Baje la cabeza. (Lower your head.)

Voltee la cabeza hacia la izquierda. (Turn your head to the left.)

Voltee la cabeza hacia la derecha. (Turn your head to the right.)

Voy a examinar sus orejas. (I am going to examine your ears.)

Voy a examinar su nariz. (I am going to examine your nose.)

Abra la boca. (Open your mouth.)

Diga "aaa." (Say "aah.")

Cierre la boca. (Close your mouth.)

Saque la lengua. (Stick out your tongue.)

Levante su brazo. (Lift your arm.)

Doble el codo. (Bend your elbow.)

Dígame si duele. (Tell me if it hurts.)

Haz un puño. (Make a fist.)

Agarre mi dedo. (Hold my finger.)

¡Apriete! (Tighten!)

Levante la pierna. (Lift your leg.)

Dóblela. (Bend it.)

Estírela. (Extend it.)

Mueva su pierna. (Move your leg.)

Adelante. (Forward.)

Atrás. (Backward.)

Levante el pie. (Lift your foot.)

Haga fuerza, empuje. (Push hard.)

Doble los dedos. (Bend your toes.)

Ahora, voy a examinar su pecho. (Now I am going to examine your chest.)

Voy a escuchar el corazón. (I am going to listen to your heart.)

No hable. (Don't talk.)

Respire profundamente. (Take a deep breath.)

Deténgalo. (Hold it.)

Exhale. (Let it out.)

Descanse. (Relax.)

Voy a escuchar los pulmones. (I am going to listen to your lungs.)

Respire con la boca abierta. (Breathe through your mouth.)

Otra vez. (Again.)

Respire. (Breathe.)

Respire normalmente. (Breathe regularly.)

¿Le duele respirar? (Does it hurt to breathe?)

¡Tosa! (Cough!)

Acuéstese, por favor. (Please lie down.)

Voltéese de lado. (Turn onto your side.)

Ahora, voy a examinar su abdomen/vientre. (Now I am going to examine your abdomen.)

Voy a examinar los genitales. (I am going to examine your genitalia.)

Terminé la examinación. (I have finished the exam.)

¿Tiene alguna pregunta? (Do you have any questions?)

EXPLAINING THE DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT

After you have been examined as a patient, your diagnosis and treatment plan will be delivered. There is also a possibility for you to be referred to another specialist. This section will cover how the news is usually relayed in Spanish. Moreover, this also includes illnesses and treatments.

DELIVERING YOUR DIAGNOSIS

When your diagnosis is being delivered, understanding it will be easy if you know the Spanish equivalent of it. Refer to the list of illnesses below.

Tiene. . . (You have. . .)

Padece de. . . (You suffer from. . .)

COMMON ILLNESSES AND CONDITIONS

la abrasion - abrasion

la SIDA - AIDS

la anemia - anemia

la artritis - arthritis

la infección bacteriana - bacterial infection

la infección de la vejiga - bladder infection

la fractura de un hueso - bone fracture

el botulismo - botulism

la bronquitis - bronchitis
el moretón – bruise
el cancer - cancer
la celulitis - cellulitis
la parálisis cerebral - cerebral palsy
la varicella - chicken pox
cólera - cholera el
la cirrosis - cirrhosis
el catarro (el resfriado) - cold
la concusión - concussion
la fibrosis cística - cystic fibrosis
la dermatitis - dermatitis
la diabetes - diabetes
la difteria - diphtheria
la disentería - dysentery
el enfisema - emphysema
la encefalitis - encephalitis
la epilepsia - epilepsy
la fiebre - fever
los cálculos en la vesícula - gallstones
la enfermedad del corazón - heart disease
la hemofilia - hemophilia
la hepatitis A, B, C - hepatitis A, B, C
la alta presión sanguínea - high blood pressure
el colesterol alto - high cholesterol
HIV VIH

el hipertiroidismo - hyperthyroidism
la hipoglicemia - hypoglycemia
la infección - infection
la influenza - influenza
los cálculos en los riñones - kidney stones
la laceración - laceration (cut)
la leucemia - leukemia
el lupus - lupus
la enfermedad de Lyme - Lyme disease
la malnutrición - malnutrition
el sarampión - measles
la meningitis - meningitis
la esclerosis múltiple - multiple sclerosis
las paperas - mumps
la distrofia muscular - muscular dystrophy
la osteoporosis - osteoporosis
la pulmonía - pneumonia
la polio - polio
el embarazo - pregnancy
la soriasis - psoriasis
la fiebre reumática - rheumatic fever
la escarlatina - scarlet fever
la viruela – smallpox
las enfermedades venéreas - STDs
el tétano - tetanus
la trombosis - thrombosis

la amigdalitis - tonsillitis

la tuberculosis - tuberculosis

la tifoidea - typhoid

las úlceras - ulcers

el vertigo - vertigo

la infección viral - viral infection

el virus del Nilo Occidental - West Nile virus

la tos ferina, la tos convulsiva - whooping cough

RECOMMENDING TREATMENTS

Considering that treatments vary depending on the illness, there will be a different one per scenario. However, here is some list of statements that you can refer to survive to survive common scenarios.

Yo escribiré una receta para la medicación que usted necesita. (I'll write you a prescription for the medication you need.)

Aquí está la receta para la medicación que usted necesita. (Here is the prescription for the medication you need.)

Yo necesito darle una vacunación/inyección. (I need to give you a vaccination/shot.)

Aplique este ungüento tres veces al día. (Apply this ointment three times a day.)

Mantenga esta área limpia y seca. (Keep this area clean and dry.)

Mantenga su pierna elevada cuando sea posible. (Keep your leg elevated when possible.)

Descanse bastante. (Get plenty of rest.)

Manténgase fuera de sus pies. (Stay off your feet.)

LET'S EXERCISE!

Translate the following bodily terms to Spanish.

1. Head
2. Toe
3. Shoulders
4. Hand
5. Viral Infection
6. Tuberculosis
7. Now I am going to examine your abdomen.
8. Cough!
9. Lift your head.
10. I am going to examine you.

LA EMOCIÓN (EMOTION)

When it comes to emotions, it is with no doubt that Spanish are very expressive. Spanish is referred as the romance language and they have a very colourful culture when it comes to emotions. They have varied way of talking emotions. Here is some smooth headstart for emotions:

- Exhausto (m) /Exhausta (f) - Exhausted
- Apasionado (m) /Apasionada (f) - Passionate
- Fascinado (m) / Fascinada (f) - Fascinated
- Ansioso (m)/Ansiosa (f) - Anxious
- Amargado (m) /Amargada (f) - Grumpy
- Nervioso (m) /Nerviosa (f) - Nervous
- Emocionado (m) /Emocionada (f) - Excited
- Enamorado (m) /Enamorada (f) - In love
- Desesperado (m) /Desesperada (f) - Desperate
- Cansado (m) /Cansada (f) - Tired
- Malhumorado (m) /Malhumorada (f) - Moody/ Bad-tempered
- Penoso (m)/ Penosa (f) or Tímido (m)/Tímida (f) - Shy
- Triste – Sad
- Confundido (m)/Confundida (f) – Confused
- Deprimido (m) /Deprimida (f) - Depressed
- Sorprendido (m) /Sorprendida (f) - Surprised
- Molesto (m) /Molesta (f) - Angry

Feliz or Contento (m)/ Contenta (f) - Happy
Asustado (m)/ Asustada (f) - Scared
Preocupado (m) /Preocupada (f) - Worried
Avergonzado (m) / Avergonzada (f) - Embarrassed

TALKING ABOUT EMOTIONS

There will be times that you want to ask somebody how she is feeling or you get asked. Here are some Spanish phrases for checking up somebody's feelings:

¿Estás asustado(a)? (Are you scared?)
¿Te sientes cansado? (How are you doing?)
¿Cómo estás? (How are you?)
¿Qué te pasa? ¿Qué te sucede? (What's wrong?)
Me siento mal (I feel bad)
¿Cómo te sientes? (How do you feel?)
¿Cómo andas? (Do you feel tired?)
No me pasa nada (Nothing is wrong)

Consider the following exchange of lines:

Melan: ¿Estás enojado(a)? (Are you angry?)
Mari: Sí, si estoy molesto - Yes, I am angry.

EXPRESSING FEELINGS

In expressing feelings, the word *sentir* is always used. It is a term that means, "feel . . ." in Spanish.

me siento frustrado - I feel frustrated
me siento triste - I feel sad
me siento preocupado - I am worried
me siento feliz - I feel happy
me siento cansado - I feel tired

IMPERSONAL OPINION

Whenever you want to express an opinion but do not necessarily intend to tie the opinion to you, you can utilize the subjunctive to express an impersonal opinion. Here are some expressions that show emotion, uncertainty, or unreality.

- es fantástico (it's fantastic)
- es importante (it's important)
- es imposible (it's impossible)
- es increíble (it's incredible)
- es (una) lástima (it's a shame)
- es mejor (it's better)
- es necesario (it's necessary)
- es posible (it's possible)
- es probable (it's probable)
- es preferible (it's preferable)
- es ridículo (it's ridiculous)
- es terrible (it's terrible)
- ojalá (I hope; God willing)
- puede ser (it may be)

LET'S EXERCISE!

Complete the following sentences with the appropriate Spanish word. The choices are displayed on the table.

enamorado	enojado	nervioso	aburrido	frustrado	cansado	feli z
-----------	---------	----------	----------	-----------	---------	-----------

1. Luis Cortés trabaja muchas horas en su trabajo. Él siempre [always] _____.
2. Cecilia tiene que [has to] preparar un informe financiero [financial report] en quince minutos [minutes]. Ella _____ muy _____.
3. Juana está divorciada [divorced]. Él y su ex-esposo [ex-husband] no _____.
4. Mariana es muy pequeña y siempre toma los juguetes [toys] de Diana cuando están en el parque. Diana _____.

5. Hay un examen en la clase a las 8:00. Los estudiantes _____
_____.
6. Erica está embarazada [pregnant]. Ella y su esposo _____
muy _____.
7. Alberto, un hombre de treinta y cinco años [years], vive en la casa de sus
padres y tiene [has] pocos amigos. Él _____.
8. Alberto también es egoísta y no ayuda a sus padres a limpiar [to clean] la
casa. Sus padres _____ con él.
9. Generalmente [Generally], ¿cómo estás en una fiesta [party]?
_____.

INDICACIONES (DIRECTIONS)

Whenever you go to a new place, “Let’s go!” is the most common phrase that you will ever hear. However, when you are going to explore, you have to have an answer to these two things – where you are going and how you actually go there. There is only one way to figure out the answers, just need to ask, “Where?”

In this juncture, you will know what ¿Dónde? means as well as other Spanish words and phrases related to knowing where you will go and how to get there. You will also learn about the answers people provide.

¿DÓNDE? (WHERE)

In its most basic sense, using “Where?” aids you in determining where something is. When somebody is lost, you probably wonder, “Where am I?” When you are looking for a restaurant, you probably ask, “Where is the restaurant?” When you misplace something, like your wallet, you ask, “Where is my wallet?”

Here are sample sentences that use ¿dónde? and estar:

- ¿Dónde está el Museo de Larco? (Where is the Larco Museum?)
- ¿Dónde estamos ahora? (Where are we now?)
- ¿Dónde está el Hotel del Camino? (Where is the Hotel del Camino?)
- ¿Dónde estuviste anoche? (Where were you last night?)

And here is a sentence for the person who wants to know everything:

¡Quiero saber el cómo, el cuándo, y el dónde! (I want to know the how, the when, and the where!)

You can use another line to express your determination to find that special place:

¡Dondequiera que esté, lo encontraremos! (Wherever it is, we'll find it!)

USING YOURSELF AS A REFERENCE POINT

You can identify places around you in six notable points:

delante (deh-lahn-teh) (in front):

Patrice camina delante de Antonia. (Paula walks in front of Clara.)

detrás (deh-trahs) (behind):

Antonia va detrás de Patrice. (Clara goes behind Paula.)

a la derecha (to the right):

A la derecha de Mary está John. (To the right of Paula is Felipe.)

a la izquierda (ah lah ees-keeehr-dah) (to the left):

Terry se pone a la izquierda de Jake. (Terry sits [Literally: he puts himself] to the left of Jake.)

debajo (deh-bvah-Hoh) (beneath; under):

Hay pasto debajo de los pies de Johnnie. (There's grass under Johnnie feet.)

encima (ehn-see-mah) (above):

La rama está encima de la cabeza de Patrice (The branch is above Patrice's head.)

Before continuing, you have to understand that though almost similar, derecho is different from derecha. The former means straight while the latter means right.

derecho (deh-reh-choh) (straight; straight ahead):

Siga derecho por esta calle. (Keep going straight on this street.)

derecha (deh-reh-chah) (right):

En la esquina doble a la derecha. (At the corner, turn to the right.)

LET'S EXERCISE!

Complete the following sentences with the appropriate Spanish word.

After checking in at her hotel, Catalina asks the hotel receptionist for directions to the restaurant and the pool.

Catalina: (Where) ____ está el restaurante?

Receptionist: Está arriba, en el ____ (second floor).

Catalina: ¿En qué piso está la piscina?

Receptionist: Está en el (second floor). Puede tomar el ascensor.

Catalina: ¿Y cómo llego al ascensor?

Receptionist: El ascensor está ahí, ____ (to the left).

CHAPTER 3: Business

SALIENDO A COMER (EATING OUT)

When it comes to food, every culture always has something to showcase. It has become an important element of every culture. When it comes to tasting the food, restaurant hopping and trying new dishes, Latin America has the most diverse offerings. For specifics, deep-dried fish, mountain-cured ham and a variety of other treats are waiting for you in Spain.

In this chapter, you will be introduced to having the table talk so you can be able to order food on your own at the recommended restaurants and shop for food at the market, with the confidence that you will get exactly what you want.

First off, here are some meal terminologies:

desayuno (m) - breakfast

comida (f) - lunch

cena (f) - dinner

tentempié (m) - snack

comer - eat

beber - drink

Por favor. - Please.

Quisiera ... - I'd like ...

¡Estoy hambriento/a! (m/f) - I'm starving!

tengo sed - I'm thirsty

TABLE TERMS

When you are planning a meal, here are some of the statements that you need to understand.

¡A poner la mesa! (Set the table!)

Aquí están los platos y los vasos. (Here are the dishes and glasses.)

¿Qué cubiertos? (What cutlery?)

Cuchara, cuchillo, tenedor, y cucharita. (Spoon, knife, fork, and coffee or demitasse spoon.)

Aquí están las servilletas. (Here are the napkins.)

Más sal en el salero. (More salt in the salt shaker.)

During situations involving giving or receiving foods and beverages, here are some phrases you will most probably be told or may speak yourself:

¡Buen provecho! (Enjoy your meal! — the equivalent of the French Bon appetit!)

¿Con qué está servido? (What does it come with?)

Está caliente. (It's hot [temperature].)

Está frío. (It's cold.)

Está picante. (It's hot [flavor/spice].)

Es sabroso. (It's tasty.)

Lamento, no tenemos . . . (Sorry, we don't have . . .)

¿Qué ingredientes tiene? (What are the ingredients?)

¿Qué más trae el plato? (What else is in the dish?)

These are your go-to words whenever you are ordering something to drink:

Escoger un vino. (Choose a wine.)

¡Salud! (Cheers!)

Tomar un refresco. (Drink a soda pop.)

Tomar un trago. (Have a drink [alcoholic].)

Un vaso de agua. (A glass of water.)

Un vaso de leche. (A glass of milk.)

THREE VERBS YOU SHOULD KNOW WHEN EATING OR DRINKING!

In Spanish, there are two verbs for drinking. One is tomar (toh-mahr); the other is beber (bveh-bvehr).

TAKE AND DRINK WITH TOMAR

Tomar literally means and often means exactly that, but when talking about drinking a soda, tomar un refresco, not literally drinking one and tomar is usually followed by what kind of drinking you are drinking.

Tomar is a regular verb of the -ar (ahr) group. The root of the verb is tom- (tohm), as you can see from the table that follows:

Conjugation

yo tomo

tú tomas

él, ella, ello, uno, usted

toma

nosotros tomamos

vosotros tomáis

ellos, ellas, ustedes toman

DRINKING UP WITH BEBER

With beber, you are sure that this verb is only applied to drinking.

Beber (bveh-bvehr) is also a regular verb; it's from the -er (ehr) group. The root of the verb is: beb- (bvehbv), as you can see in the following table:

Conjugation

yo bebo

tú bebes

él, ella, ello,

uno, usted bebe

nosotros

bebemos

vosotros

bebéis

ellos, ellas,
ustedes beben

MUNCHING UP WITH COMER

Comer literally means to eat. A regular verb from the -er (ehr) group, the root of this verb is com (kohm), as the following table shows:

Conjugation

yo como

tú comes

él, ella, ello, uno, usted
come

nosotros comemos

vosotros coméis

ellos, ellas, ustedes comen

TRYING THE EXOTIC CUISINE

When a menu is written in a foreign language, it can be overwhelming to be approached. However, what is a little try when you know you would be trying out tasty and exotic foods! You do not want to miss them, so be familiar with the following:

- Agua, though in Mexico, meaning water which is also its exact translation, can also mean a drink made with sugar, fruit, and water. All fruits and vegetables make really refreshing aguas.
- In Chile, aguita (little water) can be an herb tea served after a meal.
- Empanada means exactly bread. However, in Mexico, an empanada is often characterized by folded and stuffed corn tortillas. You can have empanadas made out of wheat dough,

always folded and stuffed, in Argentine and Chile. Argentines like their empanadas small while it is the other way around for Chileans. Whichever way, empanadas are really delicious!

- A tortilla in Spain is a potato, onion, and egg omelette that is often served at room temperature.
- In Mexico, elote is the name of tender corn, the kind you eat from the cob. The same thing in Argentina, Chile, Peru, and Bolivia is called choclo.
- Ejotes is a term for green beans in Mexico. Porotos verdes or porotitos is their terms when you find yourself in South America. In most of Spanish-speaking America, when beans are dry, they are called porotos. In Mexico they are known as frijoles. In a Peruvian market, there is a great variety of beans. They come in different colors, shapes, and sizes that will surely make your mouth water. You should try them all.
- The cut of beef called sirloin in the United States is termed filete in Chile. In Argentina, lomo is the term for the same cut of beef.
- Bife con papas y ensalada, which means grilled steak with potatoes and salad is the basic Argentinian meal. On a setting of an Argentinean grill, you are likely to find a number of meats that are familiar to you along with others that you probably never have eaten. Chinchulín, which is braided and grilled beef bowels, are among the exotic delicacies. Molleja, which is the thyroid gland of a cow is another delicacy. Delicioso!
- In Mexico, molleja is the term for chicken gizzard. In Chile, the same chicken gizzard is called contre.

- Pana refers to the liver that you eat in Chile while in most places of Latin America, the liver is called hígado.
- In Spain, jamón serrano, salt cured ham typical of the mountain regions, is a great delicacy.
- If you love fish and seafood, the places to go are Chile and Peru. The best fish in the world swim in the Humboldt Current, coming from Antarctica.
- You find delights such as loco, a truly gigantic scallop, and congrio, or conger eel, a type of fish.
- You can also find albacora (swordfish), cangrejo (giant crab), jaiba (small crab), langosta (lobster); langostino (prawn), camarón (shrimp), and other delights to crowd your sopa marinera (fish soup).
- In Peru, they make ceviche out of raw fish or raw seafood. Ceviches come in many varieties. One commonality is that Latinos like their ceviche very hot. In ceviche, raw fish or seafood is marinated in lemon juice, salt, and hot peppers. The fish or seafood is still raw after this treatment, but it looks less transparent, as though it were cooked. Sensational!
- You also may want to order some of these specialties:
 - Called aguacate in Mexico and palta in Argentina, Uruguay, and Chile, it's still the same avocado.
 - In the south of Mexico, when you say pan meaning bread, people usually think of something that the baker made to taste sweet. In South America, pan is closer to what you eat in the States.

- Torta in Mexico is a sandwich in a bun but most everywhere else in Latin America, torta means cake, and sandwich means sandwich no matter how it's served.
- Memelas in Mexico are tortillas that are pinched on the side to form a hollow, which is filled with pastes and delicacies.
- Gazpacho, is a chilled vegetable soup from Spain flavored with olive oil, garlic, and vinegar.
- In Spain, paella is a favorite dish made of seafood and saffron rice.

How do you like your salsa?

Some people say that what's truly special about Latin American foods is the sauce. This statement is especially true of the sauces served in Mexico, which have an infinite variety of flavors and textures.

MOLE: TRULY HOT SAUCES

- Mole is a word used that means sauce in Mexico. They are often served hot with meats and chicken:
- Mole negro (black mole) looks black — naturally! — and is made with all toasted ingredients: cocoa, chilies, almonds, onions, garlic, and bread. It can be very spicy or less so.
- Mole colorado (red mole) looks red and is made with chilies. It's spicy hot! The sauce is also called coloradito.
- Mole amarillo (yellow mole) is orangy yellow. You make it with almonds and raisins, among other ingredients. Generally, it's only mildly spicy.

- Mole verde (green mole) is made with green tomatoes, green chilies (hot peppers), and coriander (cilantro) and looks green. It can be very spicy or mildly hot.
- Mexicans don't eat moles every day. These delicacies are served only on special occasions. Tourists are luckier — they can find them all the time.

CHILLED HOT SAUCES

To add more spices in their food, Mexicans bring some cold sauces.

- Pico de gallo, which translates as rooster's beak is made totally with vegetables. It looks red, green, and white because it's made with tomatoes, jalapeño peppers, coriander, and onions. Hot!
- Guacamole needs no translation. It's the dip made with avocado, chili "hot pepper," coriander (cilantro), lemon, and salt. It's sometimes spicy hot.
- Salsa verde green sauce is made with green tomatoes, chilies, and coriander. Hot!
- Salsa roja red sauce is made with red tomatoes and chilies. Hot!

MAKING A RESTAURANT RESERVATION

The following dialogue shows how a restaurant reservation is usually made. Note, however, that a vast majority of restaurants in Latin America do not necessarily need reservations.

Señor Jesal wants to take his wife to a nice restaurant on her birthday. Listen in as he calls the restaurant to make reservations.

Señor Jesal: Quiero reservar una mesa para dos personas. (I want to reserve a table for two people.)

Waiter: ¡Cómo no! ¿Para qué hora será? (Of course! At what time?)

Señor: Para las ocho de la noche. (At eight o'clock in the evening.)

Waiter: ¿A nombre de quién? (Under what name?)

Señor: El señor Jesal. (Mr. Jesal)

Waiter: Bien, les esperamos. (Good, we'll look forward to seeing you.)

Señor Jesal: Muchas gracias. (Many thanks.)

ORDERING UP SOME FOOD WITH THE VERB QUERER

To convey a want or a wish, use the verb “querer.”

Querer is an irregular verb. Notice that the root quer- is transformed into quier- with most subject pronouns.

Conjugation	Pronunciation
yo quiero	yoh keeeh-roh
tú quieres	too keeeh-rehs
él, ella, ello, uno, usted	ehl, eh-yah, eh-yoh, oo-noh, oos-tehd keeeh- quiere reh
nosotros queremos	noh-soh-trohs keh-reh-mohs
vosotros queréis	bvoh-soh-trohs keh-rehees
ellos, ellas, ustedes quieren	eh-yohs, eh-yahs, oos-teh-dehs keeeh-rehn

The following dialogue shows you querer in action.

Calling a waiter

A waiter in Argentina is a mozo (moh-soh) or a young man. However, it is offensive in Chile to call somebody mozo. In Chile, they derived their term for a young man from a French word similiary pronounced and spelled as garcon. Thus, they say it as garzón when referring to a young man.

It is better to call the waiter joven, which means young and even if he is not that young anymore in order to get his attention. Calling the waiter by the terms above will only cause him no reaction.

Moreover, in Spain, a waiter is a camarero

When a woman is serving you, call her simply señorita. This means Miss, no matter where you are.

ORDERING A BEVERAGE

If you want to order a beverage to drink with your food, you may participate in a conversation similar to this one.

Waiter: ¿Quieren algo para beber? (Do you want anything to drink?)

¿Se sirven un agua de frutas? (Would you like a diluted fruit juice?)

Señora Rica: No, yo quiero un vaso de vino tinto. (No, I want a glass of red wine.)

Waiter: Muy bien, ¿y usted? (Very well, and you?)

Señor Jesal: Yo quiero una cerveza. (I want a beer.)

Waiter: ¿Lager o negra? (Lager or dark?)

Señor Jesal: Prefiero negra. (I prefer dark.)

MAKING A RESTAURANT ORDER

The following conversation is a typical setting for a restaurant order exchange.

Now for great eating! You can use the following conversation as an example to order some soup or salad.

Waiter: ¿Están listos para ordenar? (Are you ready to order?)

Señora Rica: Yo quiero una ensalada mixta. (I want a mixed [several vegetables] salad.)

Señor Jesal: Y para mí una sopa de mariscos. (And for me, seafood soup.)

Waiter: ¿Y de plato fuerte? (And as the main course?)

Señor Jesal: ¿Qué nos recomienda? (What do you suggest?)

Waiter: Tenemos dos platos especiales: mole amarillo con carne de res y huachinango a la veracruzana. (We have two specials: yellow mole with beef and red snapper Veracruz style.)

Señora Rica: ¿Qué es el huachinango a la veracruzana? (What is red snapper Veracruz style?)

Waiter: Es pescado con tomates, chile, cilantro, y cebolla. (It's fish with tomatoes, hot peppers, coriander (cilantro), and onions.)

Señora Rica: Yo quiero pollo frito. (I want fried chicken.)

Waiter: No tenemos pollo frito. Tenemos pollo asado en salsa de mango. (We don't have fried chicken. We have broiled chicken with mango sauce.)

Señora Rica: ¿Con qué está acompañado? (What does it come with?)

Waiter: Con elotes frescos, y calabazas entomatadas. (With fresh corn, and zucchini in tomato sauce.)

Señora Rica: Bueno, voy a probar el pollo con mango. (Good, I'll try the chicken with mango.)

PAYING THE BILL

Whenever settling the bill, one usually states it with *la cuenta*, which means to check. The upcoming conversation shows the same scenario and also leaving a tip.

You will most probably say a thing like this when you pay the bill.

Señor Jesal: Joven, ¿nos trae la cuenta por favor? (Waiter, will you bring us the check please?)

Waiter: Ya vuelvo con la cuenta. (I'll be back with the check.)

Señor Jesal: ¿Aceptan tarjetas de crédito? (Do you accept credit cards?)

Waiter: No, lo lamento mucho, aquí no aceptamos tarjetas de crédito. (No, I'm very sorry; we don't take credit cards.)

A bit later:

Señora Rica: ¿Ya pagamos la cuenta? (We paid the check already?)

Señor Jesal: Ya la pagué. (I paid it already.)

Señora Rica: ¿Dejamos propina? (Did we leave a tip?)

Señor Jesal: Sí dejé propina. Yes, I left a tip.

TAKING A BATHROOM BREAK

Whenever going out, you will have to wash your hands, freshen your make-up, or do something else that requires using the powder room. Like in States and Canada, bathrooms in Latin America show elegance as the exclusivity of the restaurant becomes more apparent. The more expensive the restaurant is, the more elegant the bathroom will be. The following phrases will help you find the room you need.

¿Dónde están los baños? (Where are the bathrooms?)

Los baños están al fondo, a la derecha. (The bathrooms are at the back, to the right.)

¿Es este el baño? (Is this the bathroom?)

No, este no es el baño. Es ese. (No, this isn't the bathroom. It's that one.)

Here are more food-related one-liners:

¿Puede recomendar un bar? (Can you recommend a bar?)

¿Puede recomendar un café? (Can you recommend a cafe?)

¿Puede recomendar un restaurante? (Can you recommend a restaurant?)

¿Siguen sirviendo comida? (Are you still serving food?)

¿Cuánto hay que esperar? (How long is the wait?)
¿Adónde se va para ...? (Where would you go for (a) ...?)
celebrar (celebration)
comer barato (cheap meal)
comer comida típica (local specialities)
Quisiera reservar una mesa para ... (I'd like to reserve a table for ...)
(dos) personas ((two) people)
las (ocho) ((eight) o'clock)
Lo siento, hemos cerrado. (Sorry, we're closed.)
No tenemos mesa. (We have no tables.)
Un momento. (One moment.)
Quisiera una mesa para (dos), por favor. (I'd like a table for (two), please.)
Quisiera la lista de bebidas, por favor. (I'd like the drink list, please.)
Quisiera el menú, por favor. (I'd like the menu, please.)
¿Tienen ... ? (Do you have ...?)
comidas para niños (children's meals)
un menú en inglés (a menu in English)

AT THE RESTAURANT

¿Es de autoservicio? (Is it self-serve?)
¿La cuenta incluye servicio? (Is service included in the bill?)
¿Qué recomienda? (What would you recommend?)
Tomaré lo mismo que ellos. (I'll have what they're having.)
¿Tarda mucho en prepararse? (Does it take long to prepare?)
¿Que lleva ese plato? (What's in that dish?)
¿Éstos son gratis? (Are these complimentary?)
Sólo queremos tomar algo. (We're just having drinks.)

Quisiera un plato típico. (I'd like a local speciality.)

Reservado (Reserved)

Por favor nos trae ... (Please bring ...)

un vaso (a glass)

una servilleta (a serviette)

una copa de vino (a wineglass)

Do you like ...? (listen for ...)

¿Le gusta ...? (¿Le gusta ...?)

Recomiendo ... (I suggest the ...)

How would you like that cooked? (¿Cómo lo quiere preparado?)

APERITIVOS (APPETISERS)

Caldos (Soups)

Cervezas (Beers)

De Entrada (Entrees)

Digestivos (Digestifs)

Ensaladas (Salads)

Licores (Spirits)

Desserts (Postres)

Refrescos (Soft Drinks)

SEGUNDOS PLATOS (MAIN COURSES)

Vinos Blancos (White Wines)

Vinos Dulces (Dessert Wines)

Vinos Espumosos (Sparkling Wines)

Vinos Tintos (Red Wines)

HABLANDO DE COMIDA (TALKING FOOD)

Me encanta este plato. (I love this dish.)

Nos encanta la comida típica de la zona. (We love the local cuisine.)

¡Estaba buenísimo! (That was delicious!)

Mi enhorabuena al cocinero. (My compliments to the chef.)

Estoy lleno/a. m/f (I'm full.)

Esto está ... (This is ...)

quemado (burnt)

(too) cold ((muy) frío)

exquisito (superb)

LAS COMIDAS (BREAKFAST)

¿Cómo es un típico (desayuno) español? (What's a typical Spanish (breakfast)?)

Tortilla (omelette)

Muesli (muesli)

Toast (tostadas)

LA BEBIDA (DRINK)

LAS BEBIDAS NO ALCOHÓLICAS (NON-ALCOHOLIC DRINKS)

No bebo alcohol. (I don't drink alcohol.)

Quisiera un café. (I'd like a cup of coffee.)

Quisiera un té. (I'd like a cup of tea.)

con leche (with milk)

sin azúcar (without sugar)

refrescos (soft drink)

zumos (de naranja) ((orange) juice)

agua hervida (boiled water)

agua mineral (mineral water)

con gas (sparkling)

LAS BEBIDAS ALCOHÓLICAS (ALCOHOLIC DRINKS)

cerveza (f) (beer)

coñac (brandy)

champán (champagne)
combinado (cocktail)
sangria (red-wine punch)
un chupito m de (güisqui) (a shot of (whisky))
gin (ginebra)
ron (rum)
tequila (tequila)
vodka (vodka)

A BIG FAN OF THE MINI

A lot of Spanish bars provide massive plastic beakers of beer to cater to young revellers. It's cut with water and average tasting – but cheap and free flowing! These fountains of froth are called minis.

Here are some helpful phrases if you are going to order a brew:

cerveza f... (... beer)
de barril (draught)
negra (dark)
rubia (light)
sin alcohol (nonalcoholic)
botellín (small bottle of beer (250 ml))
jarra (jug)
litrona (litre bottle of beer)
mediana (bottle of beer (300 ml))
pinta (pint)
una botella de vino tinto (a bottle of red wine)
una copa de vino tinto (a glass of red wine)
una botella de vino blanco (a bottle of white wine)
una copa de vino blanco (a glass of white wine)
vino ... (... wine)

dulce (dessert)

rosado (rose)

espumoso (sparkling)

una botella de cerveza (a bottle of beer)

una caña de cerveza (a glass of beer)

¿UNA DE MÁS? (ONE TOO MANY?)

salud (cheers)

Lo siento, pero no me apetece. (Thanks, but I don't feel like it.)

Me lo estoy pasando muy bien. (This is hitting the spot.)

Estoy cansado/a, mejor me voy a casa. m/f (I'm tired, I'd better go home.)

¿Dónde está el lavabo? (Where's the toilet?)

Esto me está subiendo mucho. (I'm feeling drunk.)

¡Me siento fenomenal! (I feel fantastic!)

SPANISH CELEBRATIONS

Shaped in the pre-Columbian times and myths brought from Africa, Spain has formed holidays and feasts that always call for celebration. Christian myths and religion have brought new and peculiar celebrations that have shaped the face of holidays. The list includes the following:

Año Nuevo: In other culture, this is most commonly called the New Year's Eve Party. However, in the bubble of Spain, people celebrate the Fiesta de Año Nuevo. During the night of December 31, wherever you go there will be party-goers and revellers just moving around. Moreover, this continues until the morning of January 1. These party-goers often cheer for the New Year in Spanish. They usually sing and shout **¡Salud!, ¡Feliz Año Nuevo!** which means *Cheers, Happy New Year!*

La Fiesta de Reyes: This is the most awaited holiday by children in Spain and most of Latin America. Dated on January 6, La Fiesta de Reyes is a

celebration for giving presents to the children. It is called “Three Kings” in places outside of Latin America. In Spain, moreover, this is famously called **la epifanía** which celebrates the visit of the Three Kings to Bethlehem. Because the Kings brought present to the baby Jesus, children have a role in this holiday which is getting their own presents. During this holiday, all business and normal endeavors stop and families do spend the day with their children. It is nice to be a child in this Reyes. However, adults do not get gifts.

Paradura del Niño: Since Spain is a center for religion, they also have the longest festivity for the birth of Jesus. It starts at Christmas and continues until the beginning of February. In Venezuela, specifically the Andean Region, people have their own way of enjoying the time of celebrating *The Hosting, Stealing, and Searching for the Child* or **La Paradura, Robo, y Búsqueda del Niño**. The figure of Jesus as a child is “stolen” from the manger representation in somebody’s house, which instigates a search. The person who does the act of stealing the Child is a neighbour, and the ploy is like hide-and-seek. Thus, the Child is hidden somewhere. Whoever will find the Child will host the party on the second of February which is called the **Fiesta de la Candelaria** and **Fiesta de la Purificación**.

Carnaval: In the Spanish-speaking world, like Bolivia, Oruro, Cartagena, Colombia, Veracruz, Mexico, Ciudad Real, and Santa Cruz de Tenerife, Carnaval or most famously known Mardi Gras before the arrival of Lent. Mardi Gras is a feast of dancing, singing, and excess before the time of moderation and fasting.

Viernes Santo: Most commonly known as Good Friday, this day, many Spanish-speaking countries display exceptional ceremonies and events. This is a remembrance of the crucifixion of Jesus and is incorporated by real enactments of the event. The Biblical story is re-enacted in one large

play participated by whole communities. For the role of Jesus, one person is crucified while the other village actors recite the New Testament texts.

Día de la Madre: In English term, this is Mother's Day. This is celebrated anywhere just like the way it is celebrated in Mexico on May 10. Even across the world, people travel to come home because they put this day on a pedestal. Who wouldn't be when it is their mothers' day? For Mexicans, this day will be shown abundantly. Mothers are celebrated, toasted and showered with presents. Even people outside the family joins the celebration by greeting every woman who is also a mother that they come across the street. Families gather on this day like how families in the United States and Canada gather for Christmas.

Día de los Muertos: On November 2, people celebrate El Día de los Muertos which is their way of honouring their dead relatives. People in Andean countries and Mexico believe that on this day, the departed visits their home. They welcome these people with offers of the things the one who left used to love. They would often prepare flowers, favourite candies and even favourite food of the departed. This remembering of the dead is a celebration of the harvests and of plenty.

VIAJAR (TRAVEL)

GRASPING SPATIAL DIRECTIONS

When going somewhere, it is essential that you completely understand directions, especially when you are being used as the reference or something else. Here are some terms to describe relationships:

al lado (beside, next to, at the side of)

al frente (in front of)

dentro (inside)

adentro (inside; because dentro also means inside, adentro may express movement, as when someone or something moves toward an interior)

fuera (outside)

afuera (outside; can express movement, as in the case of adentro — the fourth bullet point in this list)

bajo (under; below)

debajo (underneath)

arriba (ah-ree-bvah) (above)

Practicing these directions comes in handy. The sentences that follow use spatial-direction terms:

La pastelería está al lado del banco. (The pastry shop is next to the bank.)

Al frente del banco hay una zapatería. (In front of the bank there is a shoe store.)

Las mesas del café están afuera. (The tables of the cafe are outside.)

Cuando llueve ponen las mesas adentro. (When it rains they put the tables inside.)

Arriba hay cielo despejado. (Above, the sky is clear.)

Hay agua bajo los pies de Carlos. (There's water under Carlos's feet.)

Debajo de la calle corre el tren subterráneo. (The subway runs under the street.)

Este ascensor va arriba. (This elevator goes up.)

Hay un gato dentro de la caja. (There's a cat inside the box.)

ESENCIALES (SAFE TRAVEL ESSENTIALS)

In travelling, although some things are already planned, you still come across a spur of spontaneous events. It is always better to know how to ask help when the unexpected happens.

¡Socorro! (Help!)

¡Pare! (Stop!)

¡Váyase! (Go away!)

¡Ladrón! (Thief!)

¡Fuego! (Fire!)

¡Cuidado! (Watch out!)

Es una emergencia. (It's an emergency.)

¡Llame a la policía! (Call the police!)

¡Llame a un médico! (Call a doctor!)

¡Llame a una ambulancia! (Call an ambulance!)

Estoy enfermo/a. (I'm ill.)

Mi amigo/a está enfermo/a. (My friend is ill.)

¿Me puede ayudar, por favor? (Could you help me, please?)

Necesito usar el teléfono. (I have to use the telephone.)

Estoy perdido/a. (I'm lost.)

¿Dónde están los servicios? (Where are the toilets?)

¡Déjame en paz! (Leave me alone!)

LA POLICIA (THE POLICE)

While we do not wish for anything unfortunate to happen, it is always better to know where to run, what to say and how to say it in times of emergency. Here are some phrases that can guide you:

¿Dónde está la comisaría? (Where's the police station?)

Quiero denunciar un delito. (I want to report an offence.)

Tengo seguro. (I have insurance.)

Él/Ella intentó asaltarme. (He/She tried to assault me.)

Él/Ella intentó robarme. (He/She tried to rob me.)

Me han robado. (I've been robbed.)

He sido violado/a. (I've been raped.)

He perdido mis maletas. (I've lost my bags.)

He perdido mi dinero. (I've lost my money.)

He perdido mi pasaporte. (I've lost my passport.)

Lo siento. (I apologise.)

No sabía que estaba haciendo algo mal. (I didn't realise I was doing anything wrong.)

Soy inocente. (I'm innocent.)

Quiero ponerme en contacto con mi consulado (I want to contact my consulate.)

Quiero ponerme en contacto con mi embajada. (I want to contact my embassy.)

¿Puedo llamar a un abogado? (Can I call a lawyer?)

Necesito un abogado que hable inglés. (I need a lawyer who speaks English.)

¿Podemos pagar una multa al contado? (Can I pay an on-the-spot fine?)

Esta droga es para uso personal. (This drug is for personal use.)

Tengo receta para esta droga. (I have a prescription for this drug.)

¿De qué me acusan? (What am I accused of?)

There is a possibility for the police to say:

El plazo de tu visado se ha pasado. (You have overstayed your visa.)

Será acusado/a de ... m/f (You'll be charged with ...)

Él/Ella será acusado/a de ... (He'll/She'll be charged with ...)

asalto (assault)

posesión (de sustancias ilegales) (possession (of illegal substances))

ratería (shoplifting)

exceso de velocidad (speeding)

REFERRING TO A MAP

When all else fails, you should be able to know how to refer to a map. The following terminologies will help you know directions that will deliver you to the right place:

el norte (the north)

el sur (the south)

el este (the east)

el oriente (the east [Literally: where the sun originates])

el oeste (the west)

el poniente (the west [Literally: where the sun sets])

Maps are basically your guide to getting around a foreign place. The first thing that you should do upon arriving is buying a map or requesting the car rental office to provide you with a map. You can get around with more ease if you know how to interpret a map or if there is a local guide to do it for you. Here are some mapping phrases that you can absolutely check out:

La avenida Venus está al este de aquí. (Venus Avenue is east of here.)

Al oeste se encuentra la calle Las Violetas. (To the west is Violetas Street.)

El parque está al norte. (The park is to the north.)

Al sur se va hacia el río. (To the south is the river. [Literally: To the south, one goes toward the river.])

El oriente es donde el sol se levanta. (The east is where the sun rises.)

El poniente es donde el sol se pone. (The west is where the sun sets.)

Jordania está en el Cercano Oriente. (Jordan is in the Near East.)

China está en el Lejano Oriente. (China is in the Far East.)

América está al oriente del Océano Pacífico. (America is east of the Pacific Ocean.)

Asia está al poniente del océano. (Asia is west of the ocean.)

The following phrases are helpful when asking or giving general directions:

la calle (the street)

la avenida (the avenue)

el bulevar (the boulevard)

el río (the river)

la plaza (the square)

el parque (the park)
el jardín (the garden; sometimes a small park)
el barrio (the neighborhood)
la cuadra (the block)
la manzana (the block)
izquierda (left)
derecha (right)
derecho (straight)
doblar (to turn)
seguir (to follow)

Asking for directions can be confusing. For locals, they usually forget the idea that you are foreign to the city and the answer is not that obvious to you – however the best way to deal with this is to listen intently and understand the concept of what they are saying. More so, here are some phrases you should start practicing.

En el barrio hay una avenida ancha. (In the neighborhood, there is a wide avenue.)

Nuestra calle va de norte a sur. (Our street runs north to south.)

Mi tía vive en la Cerrada del Olivo. (My aunt lives at the Cerrada [street with no exit] del Olivo [olive tree].)

Junto al río hay un gran parque. (On the riverside there is a large park.)

La plaza está en el centro de la ciudad. (The square is in the center of the city.)

En el jardín hay juegos para niños. (In the small park, they have a children's playground.)

El Zócalo de México es una plaza enorme. (The Zocalo in Mexico is an immense square.)

Esa avenida se llama La Alameda. (The name of that avenue is La Alameda.)

The situation below is an example of how to ask directions when touring the city:

Ella is an artist who's anxious to visit the Graphics Museum. She plans to walk there from her hotel so she can avoid the heavy traffic.

Ella: Disculpe, ¿cómo llego al Museo de la Estampa? (Excuse me, how do I get to the Graphics Museum?)

Receptionist: Muy fácil. Está muy cerca. (Very easy. It's very close.)

Sal del hotel. (You go out of the hotel.)

Ella: ¿Dónde está la salida? (Where is the exit?)

Receptionist: La salida está a la derecha. (The exit is to the right.)

Al salir va hacia la izquierda (As you get out, you go to the left)

camina hasta la segunda calle (walk to the second street)

da vuelta a la derecha, una cuadra (turn to the right, go one block)

y llega al museo. (and you arrive at the museum.)

Ella: Gracias por su ayuda. (Thanks for your help.)

HERE, THERE AND EVERYWHERE

Here and there is indicated in two ways for the Spanish people. Native Spanish speakers interchange here and there often, with no distinction between the two words. Here and there are adverbs; they always work in the vicinity of a verb and words that talk about space:

allá (there)

allí (there)

acá (here)

aquí (here)

Here are some sentences showing the use of the words above:

Allí, en la esquina, está el banco. (There, on the corner, is the bank.)

Allá van los turistas. (There go the tourists.)

Aquí se come muy bien. (Here one eats very well.)

Acá está el museo. (Here is the museum.)

¡Ven acá! (Come here!)

¡Corre allá! (Run there!)

MORE TRAVEL-RELATED WORDS!

viajar – to travel

el mundo – world

la región – region

el kilómetro – kilometer

los Estados Unidos – United States

la cultura – culture

la lengua – language

el español – Spanish language

el castellano – Spanish language

la nación – nation

la libertad – liberty, freedom

el norte – north

el oeste – west

el sur – south

el este – east

explorar – to explore

el presidente – president

la situación – situation

el líder – leader

la reunión – meeting

el país – country

la capital – capital city

la inmigración – immigration

legal – legal

ilegal – illegal

traducir – to translate

visitar – to visit

el intercambio – exchange

EL TRANSPORTE / TRANSPORTATION

In Spain, there are different means of transportation. Some go by cab. Some go by train. Others like to immerse in the city by walking. Whichever your preference is, here are some transportation-related statements that you can refer to.

Van a la capital en tren. (They're going to the capital by train.)

¿Se puede ir en transporte público? (Can we get there by public transport?)

¿Se puede ir en bici? (Can we get there by bike?)

Prefiero ir a pie. (I'd prefer to walk there.)

MORE TRANSPORT WORDS!

a pie – by foot

caminar – to walk

andar – to walk, to go

la bicicleta – bicycle

montar – to ride

montar en bicicleta – to ride

a bicycle el carro – car

el coche – car el

automóvil – car

conducir – to drive

manejar – to drive

el taxi – taxi

el autobús – bus

el metro – subway

el tren – train

el barco – boat

el avión – airplane

volar (o à ue) – to fly

EL AVIÓN (TAKING THE PLANE)

¿Cuándo sale el próximo vuelo para ...? (When's the next flight to ...?)

¿A qué hora tengo que facturar mi equipaje? (What time do I have to check in?)

EL AUTOBÚS (BUS)

¿Qué autobús/autocar va a ...? (Which city/intercity bus goes to ...?)

Éste/Ése. (This/That one.)

El autobús número ... (Bus number ...)

¿Puede avisarme cuando lleguemos a ...? (Please tell me when we get to ...)

EL TREN (TRAIN)

¿Cuál es esta estación? (What station is this?)

¿Cuál es la próxima estación? (What's the next station?)

¿Para el tren en (Madrid)? (Does this train stop at (Madrid)?)

¿Tengo que cambiar de tren? (Do I need to change trains?)

¿Cuál es el coche ...? (Which carriage is ...?)

de primera clase (1st class)

para (Madrid) (for (Madrid))

comedor (for dining)

EL BARCO (BOAT)

¿Hay chalecos salvavidas? (Are there life jackets?)

¿Cómo está el mar hoy? (What's the sea like today?)

Estoy mareado. (I feel seasick.)

EL TAXI (TAXI)

Quisiera un taxi. (I'd like a taxi.)

Quisiera un taxi a (las nueve de la mañana). (I'd like a taxi at (9am).)

Quisiera un taxi mañana. (I'd like a taxi tomorrow.)

¿Está libre este taxi? (Is this taxi available?)

¿Cuánto cuesta ir a ...? (How much is it to ...?)

Por favor, ponga el taxímetro. (Please put the meter on.)

Por favor, lléveme a (esta dirección). (Please take me to (this address).)

Voy con mucho retraso. (I'm really late.)

¿Cuánto es en total? (How much is the final fare?)

Por favor vaya más despacio. (Please slow down.)

Por favor espere aquí. (Please wait here.)

Por favor pare aquí. (Please stop here.)

SHOPPING

Shopping savvies can still find themselves enjoying at new stores to shop at and imploring new ways to shop. Imagine having to shop beyond the borders of the United States. It is very entertaining plus you can find great deals. However, whether shopping is an easy-peasy or something that stresses you out, you will find that in this chapter you will be taught how to shop the Latin way!

Going in a foreign place will not be complete if you do not check out their open-air market or small boutiques. This is one way of knowing a country. In larger cities across the world, people really do check out department stores as much as they do in the United States. When you are in a foreign land, try to schedule a shopping trip to a major department store. This is one way to witness how and where locals get their clothes and other necessities. In department stores, you will also find prices that are clearly posted and labeled. Moreover, you will find items that have local touches in it. However, if you are the one who wants to find exotic items sold in an old-fashioned way, a department store is not the ideal place for you. Exotic

clothes and objects are sold in markets where the shopping experience will surely be of a different vibe.

In this chapter, you will find out how to make the most of your shopping experience by knowing what exactly to say in shopping scenarios.

For some pointers, not every country has that of the shopping situation in Canada or the States. Often times, there are merchandises that do not have all the information you need. There is a need to communicate with the salesperson still. However, this information can be a little bit fuzzy. In situations like this, you have to trust your senses as well as your experience.

¿Dónde está la entrada? (Where's the entrance?)

¿Dónde está la salida? (Where's the exit?)

empuje (push)

tire (pull)

jale (pull [in Mexico])

el ascensor (the elevator)

la escalera mecánica (the escalator)

el vendedor or la vendedora (the salesperson [male and female])

la caja (the check out stand)

If you are planning your day and you want to know about the store hours, you may try the following statements:

¿A qué hora abren? (At what time do you [formal] open?)

¿A qué hora cierran? (At what time do you [formal] close?)

It is already in Spain's shopping culture that salespeople love to be as involved as they can in the customer's shopping experience. They like to make their customers feel like a royalty or be pampered. However, if you only want to browse, just be firm on how you want to have your shopping experience.

Here's how to tell a salesperson that you want just to browse around the store.

Salesperson: ¿Busca algo en especial? (Looking for something special?)

Olivia: Quiero mirar, no más. (I just want to look.)

Salesperson: Me llama cuando me necesita. (Call me when you need me.)

Olivia: Sí, le voy a llamar, gracias. (Yes, I'll call you, thank you.)

PROBAR (TO TRY)

The verb probar means to try and may be used quite a lot when you are shopping. Now that you know what probar is, you may ask to try on anything before you buy it. People have varied body types, and not all have a body like that of the regulars in Latin.

The dialogue below will show how to find the department store that you need.

Olivia: ¿Dónde están los vestidos de señora? (Where are the ladies' clothes?)

Salesperson: En el quinto piso. (On the fifth floor.)

Olivia: ¿Dónde está la ropa de hombre? (Where are the men's clothes?)

Salesperson: En el cuarto piso. (On the fourth floor.)

Olivia: ¿Dónde encuentro artículos de tocador? (Where do I find toiletries?)

Salesperson: Al fondo, a la izquierda. (At the back, to the left.)

Olivia: Busco la sección de ropa blanca. (I'm looking for sheets and towels.)

Salesperson: Un piso más arriba. (One floor up.)

Olivia: ¿Venden electrodomésticos? (Do you sell appliances?)

Salesperson: Sí, en el último piso. (Yes, on the top floor.)

The next dialogue shows an approach on how to ask a salesperson for help. Olivia accidentally split her skirt bending down to pick up some boxes at work. She needs a new one quick — one with pockets to hold the art supplies she needs as a graphic designer. She asks a salesperson for help:

Olivia: ¿Me ayuda por favor? (Will you help me, please?)
Busco una falda con bolsillos. (I'm looking for a skirt with pockets.)
Salesperson: ¿Qué talla tiene? (What's your size?)
Olivia: Talla doce americana. (Size twelve, American.)
Salesperson: ¿Me permite medirla, para estar seguras? (May I take your measurements to be sure?)
Ah, su talla es treinta y ocho. (Ah, your size is 38.)
¿Qué color busca? (What color are you looking for?)
Olivia: Rojo. (Red.)
Salesperson: ¿La quiere con flores? (Do you want it with flowers?)
Olivia: No, lisa, por favor. (No, plain, please.)

SHOPPING FOR CLOTHES

A friendly reminder: Like in the United States and Canada, the sizes of men's shirts are the same, even in Spanish-speaking countries. However, checking the fit remains to be a good idea. It is better to be sure than sorry. In some areas where people are smaller, sizes vary. The medium can be a small size based on what you have grown up with. Truly, the best way to find out is to try the shirt before leaving the store. The following dialogue presents a sample fitting room conversation.

Here is an example of how you may ask to try on a pair of pants:

Claudio: ¿Puedo probarme este pantalón? (May I try on these trousers?)
Salesperson: Cómo no, por aquí. (Of course, this way.)
Claudio: Me queda grande. (They are too big. (Literally: It fits me large.))
Salesperson: Le busco otro. (I'll find you another.)
Claudio: Este aprieta aquí. (This one is tight here.)

Salesperson: A ver este. (Let's see this one.)

Claudio: ¿Lo tiene en verde? (Do you have it in green?)

Salesperson: Este, ¿a ver? (This one, let's see?)

Claudio: Queda muy bien. (It fits very well.)

FIBER AND FABRIC TALK

Whenever you are out shopping, you may notice that some regions which perform less economically produce fabrics that are made of artificial fibers. One thing to note is that the price of these fibers actually equals the natural fibers. These words will help you inquire about the fibers of which the garments are made out of:

pura (pure)

la lana (the wool)

el algodón (the cotton)

la fibra (the fiber)

por ciento (percent; percentage)

Here are some of the questions you may raise when getting to know the fabrics:

¿Este pantalón es de pura lana? (Are these pants made of pure wool?)

No, es de lana con nylon. (No, they are made of wool and nylon.)

¿La camisa es de puro algodón? (Is the shirt made of pure cotton?)

No, es de algodón con poliéster. (No, it's made of cotton and polyester.)

¿Cuánto algodón tiene esta tela? (How much cotton is there in this fabric?)

Tiene cuarenta por ciento. (It has forty percent.)

Busco ropa de fibras naturales. (I'm looking for natural fiber clothes.)

También tenemos. (We have them also.)

LLEVAR - TAKE THAT!

Whenever you are out shopping in a Spanish-speaking country, be sure that you know the meaning of the verb *llevar*.

In Spanish to wear and to take with you are the same verb — *llevar*.

Chec the following examples to help you keep track of this dressing and tracking verb:

Me llevo esta camisa. (I'll take this shirt.)

El vestido que llevas es bellissimo. (The dress you have on is very beautiful.)

Llevo un regalo para ti. (I'm taking a present for you.)

Los llevo a la escuela todos los días. (I take them to school every day.)

Siempre llevo un uniforme en mi trabajo. (I always wear a uniform at my job.)

La llevo. (I'll take it.)

Another way to say to wear is *vestir*, which means to dress and which comes from *vestido* (dress).

In the conversation below, a customer tries on clothing with a salesperson helping.

The skirt is the right color, so Olivia wants to try it on to be on the safe side before she makes a final decision.

Salesperson: Pase al probador, por favor. (Please go into the fitting room.)

Olivia: ¿Dónde está? (Where is it?)

Salesperson: Por aquí. (This way.)

¿Le quedó bien? (Did it fit?)

Olivia: No, está muy apretada. (No, it's very tight.)

¿Puede traer una de talla más grande? (Can you bring a larger size?)

GETTING DISCOUNT!

When a price is getting a hit on your pocket, it will not hurt to ask for some bargain. Consider the statements below:

Es muy caro. (That's too expensive.)

Puede bajar el precio? (Can you lower the price?)

Te daré ... (I'll give you ...)

MORE SHOPPING TERMS!

ayudar (to help)

probar (to try)

medir (to measure)

más (more)

menos (less)

liso (plain; flat)

apretado (tight)

suelto (loose)

grande (large)

pequeño (small)

la talla (the size)

el probador (the fitting room)

EL DINERO (MONEY)

Wherever you go, and whenever you go, the money will always be included in your journey. You want to go shopping, you need money. You want to go eating out, you need money. You need a cab, you need money. It is practical to say that money is what makes everything work.

When doing transactions in Spain, here are some of the statements that you have to remember.

¿Dónde hay un cajero automático? (Where's an ATM?)

¿Puedo usar mi tarjeta de crédito para sacar dinero? (Can I use my credit card to withdraw money?)

¿Cuál es el tipo de cambio? (What's the exchange rate?)
¿Cuánto hay que pagar por eso? (What's the charge for that?)
¿Cuánto cuesta esto? (How much is this?)
Cuesta demasiado. (The price is too high.)
¿Podría bajar un poco el precio? (Can you lower the price?)
Me gustaría cambiar ... (I'd like to change ...)
dinero (money)
un cheque de viajero (a travellers cheque)
¿Aceptan ...? (Do you accept ...?)
tarjetas de crédito (credit cards)
tarjetas de débito (debit cards)
cheques de viajero (travellers cheques)
¿Necesito pagar por adelantado? (Do I need to pay up front?)
¿Podría darme un recibo por favor? (Could I have a receipt please?)
Quisiera que me devuelva el dinero. (I'd like my money back.)

MORE MONEY-RELATED WORDS!

el dinero – money
el dinero en efectivo – cash
el dólar – dollar
el cajero automático – automated teller machine
el cheque – check gratis – free, at no cost
cambiar – to change, to exchange
el préstamo – loan
depositar – to deposit
retirar – to withdraw
la tarjeta de crédito – credit card
la tarjeta de débito – debit card
la transacción bancaria – bank transaction

EL TRABAJO (WORK, JOB)

One of the most common workplaces in Spain is the office. Here are some common office-related tasks:

limpiar - clean

archivar - file documents

administrar el dinero - manage money

dirigir a los demás - manage others

organizar proyectos - organize projects

manejar una computadora - operate a computer

programar computadoras - do computer programming

entrar datos - do data entry

manejar una base de datos - manage a database

usar un programa de presentación - use a presentation program

crear una hoja de cálculo - create a spreadsheet

escribir a máquina - type

manejar el procesamiento de textos - do word processing

Here is a list of common office positions:

el/la asistente/a - the assistant

el/la patrón/a - the boss

el/la cajero/a - the cashier

el/la limpiador/a - the cleaner

el/la oficinista - the clerk

el/la procesador/a de datos - the data processor

el/la conductor/a - the driver

el/la inspector/a - the inspector

el/la conserje - the janitor

el/la operador/a - the operator

el/la programador/a - programmer

el/la recepcionista - receptionist
el/la vendedor/a - salesperson
el/la secretario/a - secretary
el/la técnico/a - technician
el/la temporero/a obrero – temporary worker

CHAPTER 4: Hobbies & Study

Situations

HOBBIES

When it comes to the talk about hobbies, it is what you usually do, and you find time for it. It is easy to express it in English when it is your foreign language, but since you are a Spanish learner now, it is safe to say that it is also easy to express when you love doing something.

The verb “gustar” is often used to express likes and dislikes. It is usually accompanied by a direct object pronoun and sometimes by a prepositional phrase like “A mí . . .” These two aid us when you are expressing what activity you like in Spanish.

Say you want to express you liking for football. In Spanish, you say it as . . .

“A mí gusta el futbol.”

Here are more Spanish words for activities that you might like:

Visitar/ir a lugares (going to places)

Usar la computadora (using the computer)

Tomar y editar fotos (taking and editing pictures)

Leer (saying you like reading in your free time)

Dibujar y pintar (saying somebody like drawing and painting)

Cantar (singing)

Bailar (dancing)

Tocar piano/guitarra/violin (play musical instruments)

Escuchar música (listen to music)

Practicar deportes (play sports)

Jugar videojuegos (play videogames)

Ver videos películas (watch movies)

Here are sentences on how you express your liking for something. There is a vast arena for hobbies, and the ones listed are only among the common. Nonetheless, you can use the examples below as a template when you are talking about your hobbies.

A ella le gusta leer libros de misterio. (She likes reading mystery books.)

Me gusta leer el periódico todos los días. (I like reading the newspaper every day)

Nos gusta tocar guitarra. (We like playing guitar)

A mí me gusta bailar ¿y a ti? (I like dancing, what about you?)

A mí me gusta mucho el dibujo. (I like drawing a lot)

Me gusta relajarme escuchando música. (I like relaxing by listening to music.)

Parece que te gusta la pintura. (It seems you like painting.)

ASKING ABOUT HOBBIES

When you are aiming for a two-way interaction about hobbies, here are some simple guides for you:

Gervy: ¿Te gusta nadar? (Do you like swimming?)

JV: Si (Yes)

Gervy: ¿Te gusta cantar baladas? (Do you like singing romantic music?)

JV: A veces (Sometimes)

Gervy: ¿A ustedes les gusta tomar fotos? (Do you like taking pictures?)

JV: A nosotros sí. (We do)

STUDIES SITUATIONS

Whenever a teacher communicates with a student, he is usually in an informal tone. He uses the tú (informal of you) whenever laying out commands and to show that the student can also communicate with him. While the teacher chooses to be informal, a student has to be formal. He uses usted, a formal form of you when speaking to a teacher to show respect for authority.

INTERACTING IN THE CLASSROOM

You have to be able to be familiar with classroom instructions as not all teachers are very fluent in English. You can get by by familiarizing these words and not get surprised or confused of about that it means when you hear a teacher speaking it. Being immersed in some common commands and expressions will help you get by and maintain order and manage standard interactions:

Silencio. (Be quiet.)

¡Compórtate! (Behave!)

Trae tu libro a la clase todos los días. (Bring your book to class every day.)

Cierra tu libro. (Close your book.)

Haz las correcciones a tu tarea. (Correct your assignment.)

Vete a la oficina del director/de la directora. (Go to the principal's office.)

¡Buen trabajo! (Great job!)

Dame la tarea. (Hand me your assignment.)

Pide a tus padres a firmar este papel y devuélvemelo. (Ask your parents to sign this paper and return it to me.)

No molesta a los demás. (Don't bother others.)

Vete de la clase. (Leave the classroom.)

No se permite el chicle. (No chewing gum.)

No habla. (No talking.)

Presta atención. (Pay attention.)

Por favor siéntate. (Please be seated.)

Guárdalo, ahora mismo. (Put that away, right now.)

Habla más alto. (Speak up.)

Mañana, hay un examen sobre esta material. (Tomorrow, we are having a test on this material.)

Voltéate. (Turn around.)

Necesitas llegar a las _____ o te anotaré tarde. (You need to arrive at _____ o'clock or you'll be marked tardy.)

Necesitas entregar la tarea a tiempo. (You need to turn in your homework assignments on time.)

Siéntate y espera hasta que te toca a ti. (Have a seat and wait until it's your turn.)

Ahora puedes ponerte en la cola. (Now you can get in line.)

No cólete. (Don't cut.)

Haz una cola aquí. (Stand in line here.)

Está listo con su dinero a pagar al cajero. (Have your money ready to pay the cashier.)

No molesta a los demás mientras comen. (Don't bother others while they're eating.)

Habla con la voz baja. (Keep your voice down.)

Quédate en la mesa hasta que estás despedido. (Stay at your table until you're dismissed.)

Ahora puedes regresar a tu sala de clase. (Now you may return to your classroom.)

Ven aquí. (Come here.)

Espera tu turno. (Wait your turn.)

Llévate bien con los demás. (Play nicely.)

¡Alto! (Stop!)

No pega. (No hitting.)

Ponte a pie en un círculo. (Stand in a circle.)

Los que necesitan ir al baño, levánten las manos. (Whoever needs to go to the restroom, raise your hand.)

¿Quién necesita ir al baño? (Who needs to go to the restroom?)

Yo necesito ir al baño. (I need to go to the restroom.)

Lava las manos después de ir al baño. (Wash your hands after using the restroom.)

Quédate en la cola. (Stay in line.)

Quédate dentro de la escuela hasta que el autobús llega. (Remain inside until your bus arrives.)

Quédate en la acera. (Stay on the sidewalk.)

No empuja. (No pushing.)

No corre. (No running.)

No pisa el césped. (Stay off the grass.)

Pasa por aquí. (Step this way.)

Retrocede. (Step back.)

SCHOOL SUBJECTS

el algebra - algebra

el arte - art

la banda - band

la biología - biology

el cálculo - calculus

la química - chemistry

la informática - computer science

la geología - earth science

el inglés - English

la geografía - geography

la geometría - geometry

la salud - health

la historia - history
las artes industriales - industrial arts
las matemáticas - mathematics
la música - music
la caligrafía - penmanship
la educación física - physical education/gym
la física - physics
la ciencia - science
los estudios sociales - social studies
el discurso - speech
la ortografía - spelling

SCHOOL SUPPLIES

un bolígrafo - ballpoint pen
un libro - book
una mochila - backpack
una calculadora - calculator
unos lápices de colores - colored pencils
unos crayones - crayons
un diccionario - dictionary
una goma de borrar - eraser
una carpeta - folder
una barra de pegamento - glue stick
unos marcadores - markers
papel - paper
con líneas - wide-ruled
sin líneas - unruled
cuadriculado - graph
una pluma - pen

un lápiz - pencil
una regla - ruler
los útiles escolares - school supplies
unas tijeras - scissors
un libro de texto - textbook
una carpeta de tres anillos - three-ring binder

CHAPTER 5: Basic Vocabulary

Words change worlds. Wow the people with your knowing the Spanish vocabulary. When you hear a thing or two, you will no longer have to ask what the word means for you are already acquainted with it. That is our mission for this chapter.

Check out some basic Spanish vocabulary from A to Z.

A

a menudo: a meh-noo-doh = often
a pie: ah peeeh = walking (literally: on foot)
a rayas: ah rah-yahs = striped
a sus órdenes: a soos ohr-dehn-ehs = at your service
a veces: ah bveh-sehs = sometimes
abeja (f): ah-bveh-hah = bee
abogado/a (m, f): ah-bvoh-gah-doh/dah = lawyer
abrazarse: ah-bvrah-sahr-seh = to hug each other
abrigo (m): ah-bvree-goh = coat
abril (m): ah-bvreel = April
abrir: ah-bvreer = to open
abrocharse: ah-bvroh-chahr-seh = to fasten
absurdo: ahbv-soor-doh = absurd
abuela (f): ah-bvooh-lah = grandmother

abuelo (m): ah-bvooeh-loh = grandfather
abuelos (m): ah-bveh-lohs = grandparents
aburrido: ah-bvoo-rree-doh = boring
aburrir: ah-bvoo-rreer = to bore
aburrirse: ah-bvoo-rreer-seh = to become bored
acabar de: ah-kah-bvahr deh = to have just
acercarse: ah-sehr-kahr-seh = to approach, to near
aconsejar: ah-kohn-seh-Hahr = to advise
acordar (ue): ah-kohr-dahr = to agree
acostar (ue): ah-kohs-tahr = to put to bed
acostarse (ue): ah-kohs-tahr-seh = to go to bed
actor (m): ahk-tohr = actor
actriz (f): ahk-trees = actress
actuar: ahk-tooahr = to act
adelante: ah-deh-lahn-teh = in front, ahead
adiós: ah-deeohs = good bye
aduanas (f): ah-dooah-nah = customs
aeropuerto (m): ah-eh-roh-pooehr-toh = airport
afeitarse: ah-fehee-tahr-seh = to shave
afortunado: ah-fohr-too-nah-doh = fortunate
afuera: ah-fooeh-rah = outside
agencia (f): ah-Hehn-seeah = agency
agosto (m): ah-gohs-toh = August
agua (m): ah-gooah = water
aguacate (m): ah-gooah-kah-teh = avocado
ahora: ah-oh-rah = now
ahora mismo: ah-hoh-rah mees-moh = right now
ahorrar: ah-hoh-rrahr = to save

ajedrez (m): ah-Heh-drehs = chess
ají (m): ah-Hee = hot pepper (South America)
ajo (m): ah-Hoh = garlic
al fin: ahl feen = finally
alarma (f): ah-lahr-mah = alarm
alcalde (m, f): ahl-kahl-deh = mayor
alegrarse (de): ah-leh-grahr-seh (deh) = to be glad, to be happy
alegre: ah-leh-greh = happy
alegrememente: ah-leh-greh-mehn-teh = happily
alemán/alemana (m,f): ah-leh-mahn/nah = German
alfombra (f): ahl-fohm-bvrah = rug
algodón (m): ahl-goh-dohn = cotton
algún: ahl-goon = some
allá: ah-yah = over there
allí: ah-yee = there
almacén (m): ahl-mah-sehn = department store
almorzar (ue): ahl-mohr-sahr = to eat lunch
almuerzo (m): ahl-mooehr-soh = lunch
alrededor de: ahl-reh-deh-dohr de = around
alto: ahl-toh = tall; high
amable: ah-mah-bvleh = nice
amar: ah-mahr = to love
amarillo: ah-mah-ree-yoh = yellow
añadir: ah-nyah-deer = to add
andar: ahn-dahr = to walk
año (m): ah-nyoh = year
antes (de): ahn-tehs (deh) = before
apagar: ah-pah-gahr = to turn off

aparecer: ah-pah-reh-sehr = to appear
aplaudir: ah-plahoo-deer = to applaud
aplicar(se): ah-plee-kahr(seh) = to apply (oneself)
aprender: ah-prehn-dehr = to learn
apresurarse: ah-preh-soo-rahr-seh = to hurry
apretado: ah-preh-tah-doh = tight
aprobar (un examen): ah-proh-bahr (oon ehk-sah-mehn) = to pass (a test)
aquel, aquella: ah-kehl, ah-keh-yah = that
aquél, aquélla: ah-kehl, ah-keh-yah = that one
aquellos, aquellas: ah-keh-yohs, ah-keh-yahs = those
aquéllos, aquéllas: ah-keh-yohs, ah-keh-yahs = those ones
aquí: ah-kee = here
aretes (m): ah-reh-tehs = earrings
arreglar: ah-rreh-glahr = to repair
arroz (m): ah-rrohs = rice
ascensor (m): ah-sehn-sohr = elevator
asegurarse de: ah-seh-goo-rahr-seh deh = to make sure
asesor/a (m, f): ah-seh-sohr/rah = consultant
asiento (m): ah-seeehn-toh = seat
asistir: ah-sees-teer = to attend
asombrado: ah-sohm-bvrah-doh = astonished, surprised, amazed
aspiradora: ahs-pee-rah-doh-rah = vacuum cleaner
asustado: ah-soos-tah-doh = frightened
atacar: ah-tah-kahr = to attack
atentamente: ah-tehn-tah-mehn-teh = sincerely yours
atractivo: ah-trahk-tee-bvoh = attractive
atroz: ah-trohs = atrocious

atún (m): ah-toon = tuna
auditorio (m): ahoo-dee-toh-reeoh = auditorium
aumento (m): ahoo-mehn-toh = raise
aumento de sueldo (m): ahoo-mehn-toh deh sooehl-doh = raise (of salary)
auto (m): ahoo-toh = car (South America)
autopista (f): ahoo-toh-pees-tah = freeway
avenida (f): ah-bveh-nee-dah = avenue
avergonzado: ah-bvehr-gohn-sah-doh = embarrassed, ashamed
avergonzarse de: ah-bvehr-gohn-sahr-seh deh = to be ashamed of
avión (m): ah-bveeohn = plane
ayer: ah-yehr = yesterday
ayudar: ah-yoo-dahr = to help
azul: ah-sool = blue

B

bailar: bvahee-lahr = to dance
bajo: bvah-Ho = short, low, under
balcón (m): bvahl-kohn = balcony
baloncesto (m): bvah-lohn-sehs-toh = basketball
bañar: bvah-nyahr = to bathe (someone)
bañarse: bvah-nyahr-seh = to bathe oneself
bañera (f): bah-nyeh-rah = bathtub
baño (m): bvah-nyoh = bathroom
banquero/a (m, f): bvahn-keh-roh/rah = banker
barco (m): bvahr-koh = boat
barrio (m): bvah-rreeoh = neighborhood
basta: bvahs-tah = enough
bastante: bvahs-tahn-teh = quite; enough

basura (f): bvah-soo-rah = garbage
bate (m): bvah-teh = bat
batir: bvah-teer = to beat, whip, whisk
beber: bveh-bvehr = to drink
bebida (f): bveh-bvee-dah = drink
bello: bveh-yoh = beautiful
besar: bveh-sahr = to kiss
biblioteca (f): bvee-bvleeoh-teh-kah = library
bicicleta (f): bvee-see-kleh-tah = bicycle
bigote (m): bvee-goh-teh = moustache
bistec (m): bvees-tehk = steak
blanco: bvlahn-koh = white
boca (f): bvoh-kah = mouth
boda (f): bvoh-dah = wedding
boleto (m): bvoh-leh-toh = ticket
bolsillo (m): bvohl-see-yoh = pocket
bonito: bvoh-nee-toh = pretty
botella (f): bvoh-teh-yah = bottle
brazo (m): bvrah-soh = arm
brevemente: bvreh-bveh-mehn-teh = briefly
brillo: bvree-yoh = shine
brócoli (m): bvroh-koh-lee = broccoli
bronceador (m): bvrohn-sehah-dohr = suntan lotion
broncearse: bvrohn-seh-ahr-seh = to tan
bueno: bvooeh-noh = good
bulevar (m): bvoo-leh-bvahr = boulevard
burlarse (de): bvoor-lahr-seh (deh) = to make fun of
buscar: bvoos-kahr = to search, to look for

brevemente: bvreh-bveh-mehn-teh = briefly
brillo: bvree-yoh = shine
brócoli (m): bvroh-koh-lee = broccoli
bronceador (m): bvrohn-sehah-dohr = suntan lotion
broncearse: bvrohn-seh-ahr-seh = to tan
bueno: bvooeh-noh = good
bulevar (m): bvoo-leh-bvahr = boulevard
burlarse (de): bvoor-lahr-seh (deh) = to make fun of
buscar: bvoos-kahr = to search, to look for

C

caballo (m): kah-bvah-yoh = horse
cabero: kah-bvehr = to fit
cabeza (f): kah-bveh-sah = head
caer: cah-ehr = to fall
café (m): kah-feh = coffee
caja (f): kah-Hah = box
cajero/a (m, f): kah-Heh-roh/rah = cashier
caliente: kah-leeehn-teh = hot [temperature]
calificar: kah-lee-fee-kahr = to grade (papers, exams, and so on)
callarse: kah-yahr-seh = to be silent
calle (f): kah-yeh = street
calor (m): kah-lohr = heat
cartero/a (m, f): kahr-teh-roh/rah = postal worker
casa (f): kah-sah = house
casarse: kah-sahr-seh = to get married
cascada (f): kahs-kah-dah = waterfall
casi: kah-see = almost

cebollas (f): seh-bvoh-yahs = onions
cena (f): seh-nah = supper
centro comercial (m): sehn-troh coh-mehr-see-ahl = shopping mall
cepillarse: seh-pee-yahr-seh = to brush (hair, teeth)
cerámica (f): seh-rah-mee-kah = ceramic
cerca (de): sehr-kah (deh) = near (to)
cereales (m): seh-reh-ah-lehs = cereals
cereza (f): seh-reh-sah = cherry
cero (m): seh-roh = zero
cerrado: seh-rrah-doh = closed
cerrar: seh-rrahr = to close
cerveza (f): sehr-bveh-sah = beer
césped (m): sehs-pehd = lawn
champán (m): chahm-pahn = champagne
chaqueta (f): chah-keh-tah = jacket
cheque (m): cheh-keh = check
chico: chee-koh = little; small
chile (m): chee-leh chiste (m): chees-teh = joke
chofer (m): choh-fehr = driver
cielo (m): seeeh-loh = sky
ciencia (f): seeehn-seeah = science
cierto: seeehr-toh = certain, sure
cine (m): see-neh = cinema
ciruela (f): see-roo-eh-lah = plum
cirugía (f): see-roo-Heeah = surgery
cirujano (m): see-roo-hah-noh = surgeon
cita (f): see-tah = appointment, date
ciudad (f): seeoo-dahd = city

claro: klah-roh = light
cobre (m): koh-bvreh = copper
coche (m): koh-cheh = car
cohecito (m): koh-cheh-see-toh = baby carriage
cocina (f): koh-see-nah = kitchen
cocinar: koh-see-nahr = to cook
cocinero/a (m, f): koh-see-neh-rah = cook
coco (m): koh-koh = coconut
código postal (m): koh-dee-goh pohs-tahl = postal code [ZIP code]
coger: koh-hehr = to catch
colgar: kohl-gahr = to hang; to hang up
collar (m): koh-yahr = necklace= hot pepper (Mexico and Guatemala)
colocar: koh-loh-kahr = to place (something)
colocarse: koh-loh-kahr-seh = to place oneself; to get a job
comedor (m): koh-meh-dohr = dining room
comenzar (ie): koh-mehn-sahr = to begin
comer: koh-mehr = to eat
comida (f): koh-mee-dah = dinner
cómo: koh-moh = how
compañero/a (m, f): kohm-pah-nyeh-roh/rah = friend
compartir: kohm-pahr-teer = to share
completamente: kohm-pleh-tah-mehn-teh = completely
comportamiento (m): kohm-pohr-tah-meeehn-toh = behavior
comprar: kohm-prahr = to buy
computadora (f): kohm-poo-tah-doh-rah = computer
computadora portátil (f): lah kohm-poo-tah-doh-rah pohr-tah-teel = laptop computer
concesión (f): kohn-seh-seeohn = dealership

concienzudo: kohn-seeehn-soo-doh = conscientious
concluir: kohn-clueer = to conclude
conducir: kohn-doo-seer = to steer, to drive
confianza (f): kohn-feeahn-sah = confidence
conocer: koh-noh-sehr = to know (to be acquainted with)
conseguir (i): kohn-seh-geer = to get, obtain
consejo (m): kohn-seh-hoh = advice
consentir (ie): kohn-sehn-teer = to consent
construir: kohn-strooeer = to build
contar: kohn-tahr = count
contento: kohn-tehn-toh = content; satisfied
contestar: kohn-tehs-tahr = to answer
continuar: kohn-tee-nooahr = to continue
contratar: kohn-trah-tahr = to hire
contribuir: kohn-tree-booeer = to contribute
convencer: kohn-bvehn-sehr = to convince
conveniente: kohn-bveh-neeehn-teh = fitting
conviene: kohn-bveeeh-neh = it is advisable that
copiar: koh-peeahr = to copy, cheat
corazón (m): koh-rah-sohn = heart
corregir (i): koh-rreh-heer = to correct
correo (m): koh-rreh-oh = mail; post
correo electrónico (m): koh-rreh-oh eh-lehk-troh-nee-koh = e-mail
correr: koh-rrehr = to run
corrida de toros (f): koh-rree-dah deh toh-rohs = bullfight
cortar: kohr-tahr = to cut
cortés (cortesa): kohr-tehs, kohr-teh-sah = courteous
cortesía (f): kohr-teh-seeah = courtesy

cosa (f): koh-sah = thing
costar: kohs-tahr = to cost (as in price)
crecer: kreh-sehr = to grow
creer: kreh-ehr = to disbelieve
crucero (m): kroo-seh-roh = cruise
cuadra (f): kooah-drah = block
cuál(es): kooahl, koo-ah-lehs = which, what
cuándo: kooahn-doh = when
cuánto: kooahn-toh = how much
cuarto (m): kooahr-toh = fourth
cuarto (m): kooahr-toh = quarter
cuarto (m): kooahr-toh = room
cubrir: koobv-reer = to cover
cuchara (f): koo-chah-rah = spoon
cuello (m): kooeh-yoh = neck
cuenta (f): kooehn-tah = account
cuenta bancaria (f): kooehn-tah bvahn-kah-reeah = bank account
cuerpo (m): kooehr-poh = body
cuidado (m): kooee-dah-doh = care
cumpleaños (m): koom-pleeah-nyohs = birthday
cuñada (f): koo-nyah-dah = sister-in-law
cuñado (m): koo-nyah-doh = brother-in-law
curioso: koo-reeoh-soh = curious

D

dar: dahr = to give
dar un paseo: dahr oon pah-sehoh = to take a walk
dato (m): dah-toh = data

de: deh = from
de antemano: deh ahn-teh-mah-noh = beforehand, in advance
de buena gana: deh bvooh-nah gah-nah = willingly
de nuevo: deh nooeh-bvoh = again
de repente: deh reh-pehn-teh = suddenly
de retraso: deh reh-trah-soh = late (in arriving)
de vez en cuando: deh bvehs ehn kooahn-doh = from time to time
deber: deh-bvehr = to have to
débil: deh-bveel = weak
débito (m): deh-bvee-toh = debit
decidir: deh-see-deer = to decide
décimo (m): deh-see-moh = tenth
decir: deh-seer = to tell, say
dedo (f): deh-doh = finger
dedo del pie (m): deh-doh dehl peeh = toe
defender: deh-fehn-dehr = to defend
dejar (el trabajo): deh-hahr (ehl trah-bvah-hoh) = to quit (work)
delante (de): deh-lahn-teh (deh) = in front of
delgado: dehl-gah-doh = thin
delicioso: deh-lee-seeoh-soh = delicious
demasiado/a (m, f): deh-mah-seeah-doh/dah = rather, too, too much
demostrar: deh-mohs-trahr = to demonstrate
dentista (m): dehn-tees-tah = dentist
dentro (de): dehn-troh (deh) = inside (of)
deporte (m): deh-pohr-teh = sport
deportivo: deh-pohr-tee-bvoh = sporty
deprimido: deh-pree-mee-doh = depressed
derecha (f): deh-reh-chah = right

derecho (m): deh-reh-choh = straight
derramar: deh-rrah-mahr = to spill
desafortunadamente: deh-sah-fohr-too-nah-dah-mehn-teh =
unfortunately
desayunarse: deh-sah-yoo-nahr-seh = to have breakfast
desayuno (m): deh-sah-yoo-noh = breakfast
descansar: dehs-kahn-sahr = to rest
desconocido/a (m, f): dehs-kohn-oh-see-doh/dah = stranger
describir: dehs-kree-bveer = to describe
descubrir: dehs-koobv-reer = to discover
descuidado: dehs-kooee-dah-doh = untidy
desde: dehs-deh = from, since
desear: deh-sehahr = to desire, to wish, to want
desenfrenadamente: deh-sehn-freh-nah-dah-mehn-teh =
unrestrainedly
desfile (m): dehs-fee-leh = parade
desmayarse: dehs-mah-yahr-seh = to faint
despacio: dehs-pah-seeoh = slowly
despedir(se) (i): dehs-peh-deer (seh) = to say goodbye
despertar(se) (ie): dehs-pehr-tahr (seh) = to wake up
después: dehs-pooehs = after
destruir: dehs-trooeer = to destroy
desvestirse (i): dehs-bvehs-teer-seh = to get undressed
devolver (ue): deh-bvol-bvehr = to return
día (m): deeah = day
diario (m): deeah-reeoh = newspaper
dibujo (m): dee-bvoo-Hoh = drawing; pattern
diccionario (m): deek-seeohn-ah-reeoh = dictionary

diciembre (m): dee-seeehm-bvreh = December
diente (m): deeehn-teh = tooth
difícil: dee-fee-seel = difficult
dinero (m): dee-neh-roh = money
dirección (f): dee-rehk-see-ohn = address
discutir: dees-koo-teer = to discuss, to debate
disponible: dees-poh-nee-bvleh = available
distinguir: dees-teen-geer = to distinguish
distribuir: dees-tree-bvooer = to distribute
divertido: dee-bvehr-tee-doh = amusing; funny
divertirse (ie): dee-bvehr-teer-seh = to have fun
doblar: doh-bvlahr = to turn
doce: doh-seh = twelve
doler (ue): doh-lehr = to hurt
dolor (m): doh-lohr = pain
dolor de muelas (m): doh-lohr deh mooeh-lahs = toothache
domingo (m): doh-meen-goh = Sunday
¿dónde?: dohn-deh = where
dormir (ue): dohr-meer = to sleep
dormirse (ue): dohr-meer-seh = to fall asleep
dos: dohs = two
 ducharse: doo-chahr-seh = to take a shower
duda (f): doo-dah = doubt
dudar: doo-dahr = to doubt
dudoso: doo-doh-soh = doubtful
dulce: dool-seh = sweet
durante: doo-rahn-teh = during
durazno (m): doo-rahs-noh = peach

E

edificio (m): eh-dee-fee-seeoh = building
eficiente: eh-fee-seeehn-teh = efficient
egoísta: eh-gohees-tah = selfish
ejercicio (m): eh-hehr-see-seeoh = exercise
el: ehl = the
él: ehl = he
elegante: eh-leh-gahn-teh = elegant
elegir (i): eh-leh-Heer = to elect
ella: eh-yah = she
ellos, ellas: eh-yohs, eh-yahs = they
embotellada: ehm-bvoh-teh-yah-dah = bottled
emocionado: eh-moh-seeoh-nah-doh = excited
empezar: ehm-peh-sahr = to begin; to start
empleo (m): ehm-pleh-oh = job
empujar: ehm-poo-hahr = to push
en: ehn = in, on, at
en seguida: ehn seh-gee-dah = immediately
en taxi: ehn tahk-see = by taxi
en vez de: ehn vehs deh = instead of
encantado: ehn-kahn-tah-doh = delighted
encantador: ehn-kahn-tah-dohr = enchanting
encender (ie): ehn-sehn-dehr = to light
encontrar: ehn-kohn-trahr = to find
encontrarse (ue): ehn-kohn-trahr-seh = to meet, be located
encuesta (f): ehn-kooehs-tah = survey
enemigo (m): eh-neh-mee-goh = enemy

enero (m): eh-neh-roh = January
enfadado: ehn-fah-dah-doh = angry
enfadar: ehn-fah-dahr = to anger, irritate
enfadarse (con): ehn-fah-dahr-seh (kohn) = to get angry, annoyed (with)
enfermero/a (m, f): ehn-fehr-meh-roh/rah = nurse
enfermo/a (m, f): ehn-fehr-moh = sick person
enfrente (de): ehn-frehn-teh (deh) = in front (of)
engañar: ehn-gah-nyahr = to deceive
engañarse: ehn-gah-nyahr-seh = to be mistaken
enojado: eh-noh-Hah-do = angry, mad
enojarse: eh-noh-Hahr-seh = to become angry
ensalada (f): ehn-sah-lah-dah = salad
enseñar: ehn-seh-nyahr = to teach
entender (ie): ehn-tehn-dehr = to understand
entero (m): ehn-teh-roh = whole
entonces: ehn-tohn-sehs = then
entradas (f): ehn-trah-dahs = hors d'oeuvres
entre: ehn-treh = between
entrenador/a (m, f): ehn-treh-nah-dohr/rah = coach
entrevista (f): ehn-treh-bvees-tah = interview
enviar: ehn-bveeahr = to send
envolver (ue): ehn-bvohl-bvehr (oo-eh) = to wrap up
equipaje (m): eh-kee-pah-Heh = baggage
equipo (m): eh-kee-poh = team
equivocarse: eh-kee-bvoh-kahr-seh = to make a mistake, to be mistaken
escaparate (m): ehs-kah-pah-rah-teh = store window

escena (f): ehs-seh-nah = scene
escoger: ehs-koh-hehr = to choose
esconder: ehs-kohn-dehr = to hide (something)
esconder(se): ehs-kohn-dehr(seh) = to hide (oneself)
escribir: ehs-kree-bveer = to write
escritor/a (m, f): ehs-kree-tohr/rah = writer
escuchar: ehs-koo-chahr = to listen; to hear
escuela (f): ehs-kooeh-lah = school
escultura (f): ehs-kool-too-rah = sculpture
ese, esa: eh-seh, eh-sah = that
ése, ésa: eh-seh, eh-sah = that one
esencial: eh-sehn-seeahl = essential
esos, esas: eh-sohs, eh-sahs = those
ésos, ésas: eh-sohs, eh-sahs = those ones
español (m): ehs-pah-nyohl = Spanish (language)
español/a (m, f): ehs-pah-nyohl/ah = Spanish (person)
esparcir: ehs-pahr-seer = to spread out
especial: ehs-peh-seeahl = special
especialmente: ehs-peh-seeahl-mehn-teh = especially
espectáculo (m): eh-spehk-tah-koo-loh = show
esperar: ehs-peh-rahr = to wait, to hope
espinaca (f): ehs-pee-nah-kah = spinach
esposo/a (m, f): ehs-poh-soh/sah = spouse
esquí (m): ehs-kee = ski
esquiar: ehs-keeahr = to ski
esquina (f): ehs-kee-nah = corner
estación (m): ehs-tah-seeohn = station
estacionamiento (m): ehs-tah-seeoh-nah-meeehn-toh = parking

estadio (m): ehs-tah-deeoh = stadium
estado (m): ehs-tah-doh = state
estallar: ehs-tah-yahr = to break out
estar: ehs-tahr = to be
este, esta: ehs-teh, ehs-tah = this
éste, ésta: ehs-teh, ehs-tah = this one
estómago (m): ehs-toh-mah-goh = stomach
estos, estas: ehs-tohs, ehs-tahs = these
éstos, éstas: ehs-tahs = these ones
estrecho: ehs-treh-choh = narrow
estreñimiento (m): ehs-treh-nyee-meeehn-toh = constipation
estupendo: ehs-too-pehn-doh = stupendous
evidente: eh-bvee-dehn-teh = evident
exacto: ehk-sahk-toh = exact
examinar: ehk-sah-mee-nahr = to test, examine
excelente: ehk-seh-lehn-teh = excellent
excesivo: ehk-seh-see-bvoh = excessive
exigir: ehk-see-Heer = to require, to demand
expedir (i): ehks-peh-deer = to dispatch, issue
explicación (f): ehks-plee-kah-seeohn = explanation
explicar: ehks-plee-kahr = to explain
exposición (f): ehks-poh-see-seeohn = exhibit
extraer: ehks-trah-ehr = to extract
extranjero: ehks-trahn-Heh-roh = foreign
extraño: ehks-trah-nyoh = strange

F

fábrica (f): fah-bvree-kah = factory
fácil: fah-seel = easy

falda (f): fahl-dah = skirt
familia (f): fah-mee-leeah = family
famoso: fah-moh-soh = famous
farmacia (f): fahr-mah-seeah = pharmacy
fastidiado: fahs-tee-deeah-doh = bothered
fe (f): feh = faith
febrero (m): feh-bvreh-roh = February
fecha (f): feh-chah = date
felicidad (f): feh-lee-see-dahd = happiness
feliz: feh-lees = happy
feo: feh-oh = ugly
feroz: feh-rohs = ferocious
ferozmente: feh-rohs-mehn-teh = ferociously
festín (m): fehs-teen = feast
fiarse de: feeahr-seh deh = to trust
fideo (m): fee-de-oh = pasta
fiebre (f): feeeh-bvreh = fever
fiesta (f): feeehs-tah = party
fijarse (en): fee-Hahr-seh (ehn) = to notice
finalmente: fee-nahl-mehn-teh = finally
firmar: feer-mahr = to sign
físico: fee-see-koh = physical
flaco: flah-koh = skinny
flojera (f): floh-Heh-rah = weakness, laziness
flojo: floh-Hoh = loose, slack, lazy
folleto (m): foh-yeh-toh = brochure
fortaleza (f): fohr-tah-leh-sah = fort
fotografiar: foh-toh-grah-feeahr = to photograph

fotógrafo/a (m, f): foh-toh-grah-foh/fah = photographer
franqueza: frah-keh-sah = frankness
frecuentemente: freh-kooehn-teh-mehn-teh = frequently
fresa (f): freh-sah = strawberry (Mexico, Central America, and Spain)
fresco: frehs-koh = cool
frío: freeoh = cold
fruta (f): froo-tah = fruit
frutilla (f): froo-tee-yah = strawberry (from Colombia to the South Pole)
fuera: fooeh-rah = outside
furioso: foo-reeoh-soh = furious
fútbol (m): foot-bvohl = soccer

G

gabinete (m): gah-bvee-neh-teh = cabinet (government)
galletas (f): gah-yeh-tahs = cookies; crackers
ganar: gah-nahr = to earn, win
ganga (f): gahn-gah = bargain
ganso (m): gan-soh = goose
garantía (f): gah-rahn-teeah = warranty
garganta (f): gahr-gahn-tah = throat
gastar: gah-stahr = to spend
gastos (m): gahs-tohs = expenses
gato (m): gah-toh = cat
generoso: Heh-neh-roh-soh = generous
genial: Heh-neeahl = pleasant
gerente (m, f): Heh-rehn-teh = manager
gimnasio (m): Heem-nah-seeoh = gym
globo (m): gloh-bvoh = balloon, globe

gordo: gohr-doh = fat
grabación (f): grah-bvah-seeohn = tape recording
gracias: grah-seeahs = thank you
grande: grahn-deh = big; large
gris: grees = grey
gritar: gree-tahr = to scream
guanterá (f): gooahn-teh-rah = glove compartment
guapo: gooah-poh = pretty, good-looking
guayaba (f): gooah-yah-bvah = guava
guerra (f): geh-rrah = war
guía (m, f) gheeah = guide
guiar: gee-ahr = to guide
guisante (m): gee-sahn-teh = pea
gustar: goos-tahr = to like

H

habituár: ah-bvee-tooahr = to accustom
hablador: ah-bvlah-dohr = talkative
hablar: ah-bvlahr = to talk, speak
hace (+ time): ah-seh = ago
hacer ejercicio: ah-sehr eh-Hehr-see-seeoh = to exercise
hacer: ah-sehr = to make, to do
hacerse: ah-sehr-seh = to become
hambre: ahm-bvreh = hunger
hay: ahy = there is, are
hecho a mano: eh-choh ah mah-noh = hand made
helado (m): eh-lah-doh = ice cream
helar (ie): eh-lahr = to freeze

herencia (f): ehr-ehn-seeah = inheritance
hermana (f): ehr-mah-nah = sister
hermano (m): ehr-mah-noh = brother
hígado (m): ee-gah-doh = liver
higo (m): ee-goh = fig
hija (f): ee-Hah = daughter
hijo (m): ee-Hoh = son
hijos (m): ee-Hohs = children
hombre (m): ohm-bvreh = man
hombro (m): ohm-bvroh = shoulder
hora (f): oh-rah = hour
horrible: hoh-rree-bvleh = horrible
hospedar: ohs-peh-dahr = to house
hoy: ohy = today
hoy (en) día: ohy (ehn) deeah = nowadays
huachinango (m): ooah-chee-nahn-goh = red snapper
hueso (m): ooeh-soh = bone
huéspedes (m): ooehs-peh-dehs = guests
huevo (m): ooeh-bvoh = egg

I

identificación (f): ee-dehn-tee-fee-kah-seeohn = identification
idioma (m): ee-deeoh-mah = language
iglesia (f): ee-gleh-seeah = church
imperativo: eem-peh-rah-tee-bvoh = imperative
impermeable (m): eem-pehr-meh-ah-bleh = raincoat
importante: eem-pohr-tahn-teh = important
imposible: eem-poh-see-bvleh = impossible

imprimir: eem-pree-meer = to print
improbable: eem-proh-bvah-bvleh = improbable
impuesto (m): eem-pooehs-toh = tax
incluido: een-klooee-doh = included
incluir: een-klooeer = to include
increíble: een-krehee-bvleh = incredible
indispensable: een-dees-pehn-sah-bvleh = indispensable
infeliz: een-feh-lees = unhappy
ingeniero/a (m, f): een-Heh-neeoh-roh/rah = engineer
inglés (m): een-glehs = English (language)
inglés/a (m, f): een-glehs/ah = English (person)
ingrediente (m): een-greh-deeehn-teh = ingredient
ingresar: een-greh-sahr = to deposit
injusto: een-Hoo-stoh = unfair
inmigración (f): een-mee-grah-seeohn = immigration
inodoro: ee-noh-doh-roh = without a smell
insistir: een-sees-teer = to insist
institución de beneficencia (f): een-stee-too-seeohn deh bveh-neh-fee-sehn-seeah = charity organization
inteligente: een-teh-lee-Hehn-teh = intelligent
interesante: een-teh-reh-sahn-teh = interesting
intestino (m): een-tehs-tee-noh = bowel; intestine; gut
invierno (m): een-bveeehr-noh = winter
ir: eer = to go
ir de compras: eer deh kohm-prahs = to go shopping
irónico: ee-roh-nee-koh = ironic
irritado: ee-rree-tah-doh = irritated
irse: eer-seh = to go away

isla (f): ees-lah = island

izquierda: ees-keeehr-dah = left

J

jardín (m): Hahr-deen = garden

jarrón (m): Hah-rrohn = vase

jefe (m): Heh-feh = boss

joven: Hoh-bvehn = young

jueves (m): Hooeh-bvehs = Thursday

juez (m, f): Hooehs = judge

jugar (ue): Hoo-gahr = to play

jugar (ue) a las damas: Hoo-gahr ah lahs dah-mahs = to play checkers

jugo (m): Hoo-goh = juice

juguete (m): Hoo-geh-teh = toyjulio (m): Hoo-leeoh = July

junio (m): Hoo-neeoh = June

junto: Hoon-toh = together

justo: Hoos-toh = fair

juzgar: Hoos-gahr = to judge

L

la: lah = the; her, it

ladrar: lah-drahr = to bark

lago (m): lah-goh = lake

lamentable: lah-mehn-tah-bvleh = regrettable

lamentar: lah-mehn-tahr = to regret

lana (f): lah-nah = wool

langostino (m): lahn-gohs-tee-noh = prawn

lápiz (m): lah-pees = pencil

largo: lahr-goh = long

las: lahs = the; them
lástima (f): lahs-tee-mah = pity; shame
lavar: lah-bvahr = to wash
lavarse: lah-bvahr-seh = to wash oneself
le: leh = to him, to her, to you formal
leal: leh-ahl = loyal
lección (f): lehk-seeohn = lesson
leche (f): leh-cheh = milk
lechuga (f): leh-choo-gah = lettuce
leer: leh-ehr = to read
lejos: leh-Hohs = far
lentamente: lehn-tah-mehn-teh = slowly
les: lehs = to them, to you plural
levantar: leh-bvahn-tahr = to raise (something)
levantarse: leh-bvahn-tahr-seh = to get up
ley (f): leh = law
libra (f): lee-bvrah = pound
libre: lee-bvreh = free
libro (m): lee-bvroh = book
ligero: lee-Heh-roh = light, swift
limón (m): lee-mohn = lemon
limpiar: leem-peeahr = to clean
línea (f): lee-neh-ah = line
lisonjeado: lee-sohn-Heh-ah-doh = flattered
listo: lees-toh = ready
llamar: yah-mahr = to call
llamarse: yah-mahr-seh = to be called, to call oneself
llave (f): yah-bveh = key

llegar: yeh-gahr = to arrive

llevar: yeh-bvahr = to wear

llorar: yoh-rah = to cry

llover (ue): yoh-bvehr = to rain

lluvia (f): yoo-bveeah = rain

lo: loh = him, it

lodo (m): loh-doh = mud

los: lohs = the, them

luego: looeh-goh = later

lugar (m): loo-ghar = place

lujoso: loo-Hoh-soh = luxurious

luna (f): loo-nah = moon

lunes (m): loo-nehs = Monday

M

madera (f): mah-deh-rah = wood

madre (f): mah-dreh = mother

madrina (f): mah-dree-nah = godmother

magnífico: mahg-nee-fee-koh = magnificent

maleta (f): mah-leh-tah = luggage; suitcase

malo: mah-loh = bad

mañana (f): mah-nyah-nah = morning

mañana (f): mah-nyah-nah = tomorrow

mandar: mahn-dahr = to command, to order, to send

manejar: mah-neh-Hahr = to drive, to operate, to manage

manga (f): mahn-gah = sleeve

mango (m): mahn-goh = mango

mantel (m): mahn-tehl = tablecloth

mantequilla (f): mahn-teh-kee-yah = butter
manzana (f): mahn-sah-nah = apple
mapa (m): mah-pah = map
maquillarse: mah-kee-yahr-seh = to put on makeup
máquina (f): mah-kee-nah = machine
mar (m): mahr = sea
maravilloso: mah-rah-bvee-yoh-soh = marvelous
marcar: mahr-kahr = to mark; to dial; to punch in the number
marcharse: mahr-chahr-seh = to go away
marea (f): mah-reh-ah = tide
mareo (m): mah-reh-oh = dizziness
maridos (m): mah-ree-dohs = married couple
mariposa (f): mah-ree-poh-sah = butterfly
marisco (m): mah-rees-koh = seafood
marrón: mah-rrohn = brown
martes (m): mahr-tehs = Tuesday
marzo (m): mahr-soh = March
más: mahs = more
más tarde: mahs tahr-deh = later
masticar: mahs-tee-kahr = to chew
materialista: mah-teh-reeah-lees-tah = materialistic
matrícula (f): mah-tree-koo-lah = tuition
mayo (m): mah-yoh = Mayme: meh = me, to me
medicina (f): meh-dee-see-nah = medicine
médico/a (m, f): meh-dee-koh/kah = physician; doctor
medio (m): meh-deeoh = half
medio baño (m): meh-deeoh bvah-nyoh = half-bathroom (a bathroom with no shower or tub)

mediodía (m): meh-deeoh-dee-ah = noon
medir (i): meh-deer = to measure
mejor: meh-Hohr = best
melón (m): meh-lohn = melon
memorizar: meh-moh-ree-sahr = to memorize
menos: meh-nohs = less
mensajero/a (m, f): mehn-sah-Heh-roh/rah = messenger
mentir: mehn-teer = to lie
merecer: meh-reh-sehr = to deserve
mes (m): mehs = month
mesa (f): meh-sah = table
metro (m): meh-troh = subway
mezclar: mehs-klahr = to mix
mi(s): mee(s) = my
mientras: meehhn-trahs = while
miércoles (m): meeehr-koh-lehs = Wednesday
mil (m): meel = one thousand
milla (f): mee-yah = mile
millón (m): mee-yohn = one million
minuto (m): mee-noo-toh = minute
mío/a(s) (m, f, pl.): mee-oh(s)/ah(s) = mine
mirar: mee-rahr = to look at, to watch
mismo: mees-moh = same
mochila (f): moh-chee-lah = backpack
moda (f): moh-dah = style
moderno: moh-dehr-noh = modern
mojado: moh-Hah-doh = wet
moneda (f): moh-neh-dah = coin
montaña (f): mohn-tah-nyah = mountain

mora (f): moh-rah = blackberry
morado: moh-rah-doh = purple
moreno: moh-reh-noh = dark-haired
morir (ue): moh-reer = to die
mostaza: mohs-tah-sah = mustard
mostrar (ue): mohs-trahr = to show
mucho: moo-choh = a lot; much
mueble (m): mooeh-bvleh = furniture
mujer (f): moo-Hehr = woman
muñeca (f): moo-nyeh-kah = wrist
muñeco de nieve (m): moo-nyeh-koh deh neeh-bveh = snowman
museo (m): moo-seh-oh = museum
música clásica (f): moo-see-kah
klah-see-kah = classical music
muslo (m): moos-loh = thigh
muy: mooee = very

N

nacer: nah-sehr = to be born
nada: nah-dah = nothing
nadar: nah-dahr = to swim
nadie: nah-deeh = nobody, no one
naipe (m): nahee-peh = card (playing)
naranja (f): nah-rah-Hah = orange
nariz (f): nah-rees = nose
natación (f): nah-tah-seeohn = swimming
natural: nah-too-rahl = natural
necesario: neh-seh-sah-reeoh = necessary
necesitar: neh-seh-see-tahr = to need
negar (ie): neh-gahr = to deny

negro: neh-groh = black
nevar (ie): neh-bvahr = to snow
ni . . . ni: nee . . . nee = neither . . . nor
nieta (f): neeeh-tah = granddaughter
nieto (m): neeeh-toh = grandson
niña (f): nee-nyah = girl
ningún: neen-goon = none
niño (m): nee-nyoh = boy
no: noh = no, not
noche (f): noh-cheh = night
nos: nohs = us, to us, ourselves
nosotros: noh-soh-trohs = we, us
noticias (f): noh-tee-seeahs = news
novela (f): noh-bveh-lah = novel
noveno: noh-bveh-noh = ninth
noviembre (m): noh-bveeehm-bvreh = November
novio/a (m,f): noh-bveeoh/ah = boyfriend/girlfriend
nube (f): noo-bveh = cloud
nuera (f): nooeh-rah = daughter-in-law
nuestro/a (s): nooehs-troh(s)/trah(s) = our (ours)
nuevo: nooeh-bvoh = new
número (m): noo-meh-roh = number
nunca: noon-kah = never

O

o: oh = or
obedecer: oh-bveh-deh-sehr = to obey
obvio: ohb-bveeoh = obvious

octavo: ohk-tah-bvoh = eighth
octubre (m): ohk-too-bvreh = October
ocupado: oh-koo-pah-doh = occupied; busy
ofrecer: oh-freh-sehr = to offer, give
oír: oheer = to hear
ojalá que . . .: oh-Hah-lah keh = if only . . .
ojo (m): oh-Hoh = eye
oler: oh-lehr = to smell
olla (f): oh-yah = pot
olvidar: ohl-bvee-dahr = to forget
olvidarse (de): ohl-bvee-dahr-seh (deh) = to forget about
once: ohn-seh = eleven
oponer: oh-poh-nehr = to oppose
optimista: ohp-tee-mees-tah = optimistic
ordenar: ohr-deh-nahr = to order (command)
ordinario: ohr-dee-nah-reeoh = ordinary
oreja (f): oh-reh-Hah = ear
orgulloso: ohr-goo-yoh-soh = proud
orina (f): oh-ree-nah = urine
oro (m): oh-roh = gold
os: ohs = you, to you, yourselves
oscuro: ohs-koo-roh = dark
otoño (m): oh-toh-nyoh = autumn
otro: oh-troh = another

P

paciencia (f): pah-seeehn-seeah = patience
padre (m): pah-dreh = father

padrino (m): pah-dree-noh = godfather
pagado: pah-gah-doh = paid for
pagar: pah-gahr = to pay
país (m): pahees = country
pájaro (m): pah-Hah-roh = bird
palabra (f): pah-lah-bvrah = word
palomitas de maíz (f): pah-loh-mee-tahs deh mahees = popcorn
panadero/a (m, f): pah-nah-deh-roh/rah = baker
pantalla (f): pahn-tah-yah = screen
pantalones (m): pahn-tah-loh-nehs = trousers
pantorrilla (f): pahn-toh-rree-yah = calf
papas (f): pah-pahs = potatoes
papas fritas (f): pah-pahs free-tahs = potato chips
papaya (f): pah-pah-yah = papaya
papel (m): pah-pehl = paper, role
paquete (m): pah-keh-teh = package
para: pah-rah = for
parar: pah-rahr = to stop (something)
pararse: pah-rahr-seh = to stop oneself
parecer: pah-reh-sehr = to seem
parque (m): pahr-keh = park
partido (m): pahr-tee-doh = (sports) game
pasado: pah-sah-doh = past, last
pasaporte (m): pah-sah-pohr-teh = document; paper; passport
pasar: pah-sahr = to spend (time)
pasearse: pah-sehahr-seh = to go for a walk
paseo (m): pah-seh-oh = walk
pasillo (m): pah-see-yoh = aisle

pastel (m): pahs-tehl = cake
patín: pah-teen= skate
pato (m): pah-toh = duck
peaje (m): peh-ah-Heh = toll
pecho (m): peh-choh = chest
pedir (i): peh-deer = to ask for
peinarse: peh-nahr-seh = to comb one's hair
pelar: peh-lahr = to peel
pelea (f): peh-leh-ah = fight
película (f): peh-lee-koo-lah = movie, film
peligroso: peh-lee-groh-soh = dangerous
pelo (m): peh-loh = hair
pensar: pehn-sahr = to think
peor: peh-ohr = worse
pequeño: peh-keh-nyoh = small
pera (f): peh-rah = pear
perder: pehr-dehr = to lose
perezoso: peh-reh-soh-soh = lazy
perfeccionar: pehr-fehk-seeoh-nahr = to perfect
perfecto: pehr-fehk-toh = perfect
periódico (m): peh-reeoh-dee-koh = newspaper
perla (f): pehr-lah = pearl
permitir: pehr-mee-teer = to permit
pero: peh-roh = but
perro (m): peh-rroh = dog
pescado (m): pehs-kah-doh = fish (to eat)
pescar: pehs-kahr = to fish
pesimista: peh-see-mees-tah = pessimistic

peso: peh-soh = weight
pez (m): pehs = fish (live)
picante: pee-kahn-teh = hot [flavor]
pie (m): peeeh = foot
pierna (f): peeehr-nah = leg
piloto/a (m,f): pee-loh-toh/tah = pilot
piña (f): pee-nyah = pineapple
pintar: peen-tahr = to paint
pintura (f): peen-too-rah = painting
piscina (f): pees-see-nah = swimming pool
piso (m): pee-soh = floor
planchar: plahn-chahr = to iron
plátano (m): plah-tah-noh = baplatato (m): plah-toh = plate
platos (m): plah-tohs = dishes
playa (f): plah-yah = beach
plaza (f): plah-sah = square
plomo (m): ploh-moh = lead
pobre: poh-bvreh = poor
poco (m): poh-koh = a bit; a small amount
poder (ue): poh-dehr = to be able to, can
pollo (m): poh-yoh = chicken
polvo (m): pohl-bvoh = dust
poner (la mesa): poh-nehr (lah meh-sah) = to set (the table)
ponerse: poh-nehr-seh = to put (something on), to become, to place oneself
popular: poh-poo-lahr = popular
por: pohr = for, per
por ciento: pohr seeehn-toh = percent

por consiguiente: pohr kohn-see-geeehn-teh = consequently
por favor: pohr fah-bvohr = please
¿por qué?: pohr keh = why
por supuesto: pohr soo-pooehs-toh = of course
porcentaje (m): pohr-sehn-tah-Heh = percentage
porción (f): pohr-seeohn = portion
porque: pohr-keh = because
imposible: poh-see-bvleh = possible
potable: poh-tah-bvleh = drinkable
precio (m): preh-seeoh = price
precioso: preh-seeoh-soh = gorgeous; beautiful; lovely
preferible: preh-feh-ree-bvleh = preferable
preferir (ie): preh-feh-reer = to prefer
preguntar: preh-goon-tahr = to ask (a question)
preocuparse (de): preoh-koo-pahr-seh (deh) = to worry (about)
presión sanguínea (f): preh-seeohn sahn-gee-neh-ah = blood pressure
prestar: preh-stahr = to borrow
prestar atención: prehs-tahr ah-tehn-seeohn = to pay attention
prima (f): pree-mah = cousin [female]
primavera (f): pree-mah-bveh-rah = spring
primero: pree-meh-roh = first
primo (m): pree-moh = cousin [male]
probable: proh-bvah-bvleh = probable
probador (m): proh-bvah-dohr = fitting room
probar(se): proh-bvahr(seh) = to try (on)
producir: proh-doo-seer = to produce
producto lácteo (m): proh-dook-toh lahk-tehoh = dairy product
profundamente: pro-foon-dah-mehn-teh = deeply
prohibir: proh-hee-bveer = to forbid

prometer: proh-meh-tehr = to promise
pronto: prohn-toh = right away, soon
pronunciar: proh-noon-seeahr = to pronounce
propietario/a (m, f): proh-peeeh-tah-reeoh/ah = proprietor, owner
propio: proh-peeoh = [one's] own
próximo: proh-see-moh = next
proyecto (m): proh-yehk-toh = project
puerto (m): pooehr-toh = port
puesto (m): pooehs-toh = job, position
pulir: poo-leer = to polish
pulmón (m): pool-mohn = lung
pura: poo-rah = pure

Q

que: keh = that, than
¿qué?: keh = what
quedarse: keh-dahr-seh = to stay
quejarse (de): keh-hahr-seh (deh) = to complain (of, about)
quemadura (f): keh-mah-doo-rah = burn
queso (m): keh-soh = cheese
¿quién?: keeehn = who, whom
química (f): kee-mee-kah = chemistry
quinto: keen-toh = fifth
quitar(se): keeh-tahr(seh) = to remove, to take off

R

receta (f): reh-seh-tah = prescription, recipe
recibo (m): reh-see-bvoh = receipt
reclamar: reh-klah-mahr = to demand

recordar: reh-kohr-dahr = to remember
reembolsar: reh-ehm-bvol-sahr = to refund
refresco (m): reh-frehs-koh = soft drink
refriarse: reh-freeahr-seh = to catch a cold
regalo (m): reh-gah-loh = gift
régimen (m): reh-gee-mehn = diet
regla (f): reh-glah = rule, ruler
reglamentos (m, pl.): rehg-lah-mehn-tohs = regulations
regresar: reh-greh-sahr = to return
reino (m): rehee-noh = kingdom
reír: reheer = to laugh
relámpagos: reh-lahm-pah-gohs = lightning
repetir: reh-peh-teer = to repeat
reservación (f): reh-sehr-bvah-seeohn = reservation
responder: rehs-pohn-dehr = to answer
respuesta (f): rehs-pooehs-tah = answer
restaurante (m): rehs-tahoo-rahn-teh = restaurant
retiro: reh-tee-roh = withdrawal
reunión (f): rehoo-neeohn = meeting
reunirse: rehoo-neer-seh = to meet
riñón (m): ree-nyohn = kidney
río (m): ree-oh = river
robar: roh-bvahr = to steal; to rob
robo (m): roh-bvoh = robbery
rojo: roh-Hoh = red
romper: rohm-pehr = to break
rosado: roh-sah-doh = pink
roto: roh-toh = broken, shattered

rótulo (m): roh-too-loh = label

ruido (m): rooee-doh = noise

ruinas (f): rooee-nahs = ruins

ruta (f): roo-tah = road, route

S

sábado (m): sah-bvah-doh = Saturday

saco (m): sah-koh = bag

sagaz: sah-gahs = astute, wise

sala (f): sah-lah = living room

salado: sah-lah-doh = salty

saldo (m): sahl-doh = balance

salir: sah-leer = to leave

saltar: sahl-tahr = to jump

saludable: sah-loo-dah-bvleh = healthy

sandía (f): sahn-dee-ah = watermelon

sangre (f): sahn-greh = blood

secar(se): seh-kahr(seh) = to dry (oneself)

seco: seh-koh = dry

sed: sehd = thirst

seda (f): seh-dah = silk

seguir: seh-gheer = to follow

segundo (m): seh-goona-doh = second

selva (f): sehl-bvah = rainforest

semana (f): seh-mah-nah = week

señal (f): seh-nyahl = sign

señalar: seh-nyah-lahr = to signal

sentir (ie): sehn-teer = to be sorry, to regret

septiembre (m): seh-p-teeehm-breh = September
séptimo: seh-p-tee-moh = seventh
ser: sehr = to be
sexto: sehks-toh = sixth
siempre: seeehm-preh = always
siguiente: see-geeehn-teh = next
sirviente/a (m, f): seer-bveeehn-teh/tah = servant
sol (m): sohl = sun
sonar (ue): soh-nahr = to ring
sorprendido: sohr-prehn-dee-doh = surprised
sorpresa (f): sohr-preh-sah = surprise
subterráneo: soobv-teh-rrah-neh-oh = underground
suelo (m): sooeh-loh = ground
suelto: sooehl-toh = loose
suerte (f): sooehr-teh = luck
suéter (m): sooeh-tehr = sweater
suficiente: soo-fee-seeehn-teh = enough
sugerir (ie): soo-Heh-reer = to suggest
supermercado (m): soo-pehr-mehr-kah-doh = supermarket
suprimir: soo-pree-meer = to suppress

T

tabla (f): tah-bvlah = board [wood]
tal vez: tahl bvehs = perhaps
talla (f): tah-yah = size (of a person)
tamaño (m): tah-mah-nyoh = size (of a place or object)
también: tahm-bveeehn = also, too
tampoco: tahm-poh-koh = neither; not . . . either

tarde (f): tahr-deh = afternoon, late
tarjeta (f): tahr-Heh-tah = card
teatro (m): teh-ah-troh = theater
teclado (m): teh-klah-doh = keyboard
tele (f): teh-leh = TV (colloquial)
televisión (f): teh-leh-bvee-seeohn = television
tempestad (f): tehm-pehs-tahd = storm
temprano: tehm-prah-noh = early
tener (ie): teh-nehr = to have
tercero: tehr-seh-roh = third
terminar: tehr-mee-nahr = to finish
tía (f): tee-ah = aunt
tiempo (m): teehm-poh = time
tiempo (m): teehm-poh = weather
tienda (f): teehn-dah = store
tierra (f): teeh-rrah = land
timbre (m): teem-breh = bell
tintorería (f): teen-toh-reh-reeah = dry cleaner
tío (m): teeoh = uncle
típica: tee-pee-kah = typical
título (m): tee-too-loh = degree
tobillo (m): toh-bvee-yoh = ankle
todavía: toh-dah-bvee-ah = yet; still
todos (los domingos): toh-dohs (lohs doh-meen-gohs) = every (Sunday)
tomar el sol: toh-mahr ehl sohl = to sunbathe
toronja (f): toh-rohn-Hah = grapefruit
torpe: tohr-peh = clumsy

tos (f): tohs = cough
trabajador: trah-bvah-Hah-dohr = hard-working
traducir: trah-doo-seer = to translate
traer: trah-ehr = to bring
tráfico (m): trah-fee-koh = traffic
tragar: trah-gahr = to swallow
traje de baño (m): tra-Heh deh bvah-nyoh = swimsuit
tranquilo: trahn-kee-loh = quiet
tratar de: trah-tahr deh = to try to
tren (m): trehn = train
tronar (ue): troh-nahr = to thunder
trozo (m): troh-soh = piece
trucha (f): troo-chah = trout
truenos (m): trooeh-nohs = thunder

U

un rato: oon rah-toh = awhile
uniforme (m): oo-nee-fohr-meh = uniform
uva (f): oo-bvah = grape

V

vaciar: bvah-seeahr = to empty
valer: bvah-lehr = to be worth
vecindario (m): bveh-seen-dah-reeoh = neighborhood
vehículo (m): bveh-ee-koo-loh = vehicle
vender: bvehn-dehr = to sell
venir: bveh-neer = to come
venta (f): bvehn-tah = sale
ver: bvehr = to see

verano (m): bveh-rah-noh = summer
verdad (f): bvehr-dahd = truth
verde: bvehr-deh = green
vestir (i): bvehs-teer = to clothe
viajar: bveeah-Hahr = to travel
viaje (m): bveeah-Heh = trip
viajero/a (m,f): bveeah-Heh-roh/rah = traveler
vida (f): bvee-dah = life
vidrio (m): bvee-dreeoh = glass
viernes (m): bveeehr-nehs = Friday
vino (m): bvee-noh = wine
violeta: bveeoh-leh-tah = violet; purple
violín (m): bveeoh-leen = violin
víspera (f): bvees-peh-rah = eve
vivir: bvee-bveer = to live
volar: bvoh-lahr = to fly
volver (ue): bvohl-bvehr = to return
votar: bvoh-tahr = to vote
vuelta (f): bvooehl-tah = lap
vuelto (m): bvooehl-toh = change (as in money back)

Y

ya: yah = already
yerno (m): yehr-noh = son-in-law

Z

zanahoria (f): sah-nah-oh-reeah = carrot

CHAPTER 6: Idioms, Sayings, Modisms & Proverbs

It is a well-known fact that every language has a rich history behind it. Thus, forming different structures to the extent that a group of words' meanings is different from it usually means. This is true in idiomatic expressions, saying, modisms and proverbs. It usually takes years in a country to master their idioms and expressions. However, this chapter is going to give you a walk through it.

- ABRIR(SE) DE CAPA - To speak frankly and sincerely

Se abrió de capa cuando le pregunté acerca de mi hijo. (He gave it to me straight when I asked him about my son.)

- Aguantar carros y carretas - To have the capacity to take a lot of negative acts or nonsense from

A veces tengo que aguantarles carros y carretas a los latosos de mis parientes. (Sometimes I have to take a lot of nonsense from my annoying relatives.)

- Alborotar el gallinero - To get everyone in an uproar

No vayas a decir nada de los despidos proyectados. No queremos alborotar el gallinero. (Don't say anything about the projected layoffs. We don't want to get everyone in an uproar.)

- Aliviar(se) - To give birth

En este hospital se alivió Jimena. (Jimena gave birth in this hospital.)

- Andar - To be after

Enrique anda tras Lucía. (Enrique is after Lucy.)

- Andar amolado(a) - To be in a bad way (as concerns money or health)

He andado amolado de dinero. (I've been in a bad way as concerns money.)

- Andar con el Jesús en la boca - To be distraught

La pobre Leonor anda con el Jesús en la boca. (Poor Leonor is distraught.)

- Andar(se) con rodeos - To beat around the bush

No te andes con rodeos. ¡Dímelo claro! (Don't beat around the bush. Come right out with it!)

- Andar de boca en boca - To go from mouth to mouth, To be on everyone's lips; to be the talk of the town.)

Angélica anda de boca en boca. (Angelica is the talk of the town.)

- Andar de la ceca a la meca; Andar del tingo al tango - To go to a lot of places

Anduve de la ceca a la meca para encontrar lo que quería. (I had to go to a million places to find what I wanted.)

- Andar de malas - To have a run of bad luck

No quiero correr riesgos ahorita. He andado de malas. (I don't want to take any chances. I have had a run of bad luck.)

- Andar (estar) en las nubes - To be in the clouds, To be on cloud nine; to be (mentally) somewhere else (daydreaming)

Desde que lo aceptó Adriana, José Luis anda en las nubes. (Jose Luis has been on cloud nine ever since Adriana agreed to go steady with him.)

¡Muchacho! Atiende a la clase. ¡Estás en las nubes! (Hey, kid! Pay attention in class! You are daydreaming!)

- Andar giro(a) (girito(a)) - To be still going strong

A sus ochenta y siete años, nuestra abuela todavía anda muy girita. (Our grandmother is still going strong at 87.)

- Andar norteado(a) - To be disoriented

Todavía ando norteado. Apenas llevo dos días en esta ciudad. (I'm still disoriented. I've only been in this city for two days.)

- Armar(se) la gorda - To start a fight

Se puso agresivo y armó la gorda en el bar. (He got nasty and started a fight in the bar.)

Si nos siguen provocando, aquí se va a armar la gorda. (If they keep picking on us, there's going to be a fight.)

- Barajar(la) (más) despacio - To shuffle more slowly, To explain more slowly.

Perdón, no entiendo nada. Barájamela más despacio. (Sorry, I didn't get that. Explain it again more slowly.)

- Brillar por su ausencia - To shine by your absence, To be very conspicuously absent

En la boda, Dolores brilló por su ausencia. (Everybody noticed that Dolores wasn't at the wedding.)

- Buscarle ruido al chicharrón - To poke the chicharon until it makes a noise
- Buscarle tres pies al gato - To ask for it; To burn the candle at both ends; To look for trouble

Si no sigues las reglas de esta casa, le estás buscando ruido al chicharrón (le estás buscando tres pies al gato). (If you don't follow the rules of the house, you are looking for trouble.)

Caer al pelo - To be just the thing; to be just what one wants or needs

El cinturón que me regalaste me cayó al pelo. (The belt you gave me was just what I wanted.)

- Caer bien (o mal)* - To like

Elisa me cae muy bien. (I really like Elisa.)

Arturo no me cae bien (Arturo me cae mal). (I don't like Arturo.)

When one is speaking of food, this expression means “it goes down well.” When mal is used instead of bien, the meaning is the opposite.

El chocolate me cae mal. (Chocolate doesn't agree with me.)

El consomé le cae bien a uno cuando está enfermo. (Broth goes down well when one is sick.)

Note: In English, the subject used with the verb “to like” is the person who experiences the feeling of liking or affection. In Spanish, the subject is the person who is the object of that liking or affection.

- Caer como cubeta de agua fría - To fall on like a bucket of cold water, To astonish; to stun

La noticia me cayó como cubeta de agua fría. (The news stunned me.)

- Calentar(le) la cabeza a - To heat up 's head, To prejudice against
Efrén le calentó la cabeza a Carlos para que acusara a José. Efrén got Carlos all worked up so he would accuse Jose.

- Cargar con el muerto - To carry the body, To be blamed for
Arnulfo tuvo que cargar con el muerto por lo que pasó en la fiesta.
(Arnulfo got all the blame for what happened at the party.)

- Chupar(se) el dedo - To suck your thumb, To be born yesterday
No me vengas con ese cuento. No me chupo el dedo, ¿sabes? (Don't give me that story. I wasn't born yesterday, you know.)

- Comer ansias - To eat anxiety, To be anxious or fidgety
No hay prisa. Tómallo con calma. No comas ansias. (There is no hurry. Take it easy. Calm down.)

Por andar comiendo ansias, me salió todo mal. (Everything went wrong because I was in such a nervous state.)

- Comer(se) con los ojos a - To stare longingly at
Juan se la estaba comiendo con los ojos. (Juan was staring at her longingly.)

- Correr como reguero de pólvora - To spread like a trail of burning gunpowder, To spread like wildfire; to travel like lightning

La noticia corrió como reguero de pólvora. (The news spread like wildfire.)

- Correr por cuenta de - To be on, To see to it that ...

Las siguientes copas corren por mi cuenta. (The next round is on me.)

De mi cuenta corre que no lograrán embargarte. (I'll see to it that you're not sued.)

- Costar (mucho) trabajo (see Dar trabajo) - To be very difficult

Me costó mucho trabajo ser amable con Julio. (It was very difficult to speak to Julio politely.)

- Creer(se) la divina garza - To consider yourself the divine stork, To think a lot of yourself; to be conceited

Elena se cree la divina garza porque la escogieron para hacer el comercial. (Elena thinks she's God's gift to this world because she was chosen to do the commercial.)

- Creer(se) la gran cosa - To think a lot of oneself; to be conceited

Chucho se cree la gran cosa porque está en el equipo. (Chucho has a big head because he's on the team. Dar a luz)

- Dar(le) al clavo - To hit the nail on the head

Aurelio le dio al clavo con su respuesta. (Aurelio hit the nail on the head with his answer.)

- Dar(le) ánimo(s) a - To give moral support or courage, To encourage

El güisquito me dio ánimo para entrar a hablar con el director. That whiskey gave me the courage to go in and talk to the director.

Speaker A:

¿Cómo puedes seguir manejando después del accidente?

How can you go on driving after the accident?

Speaker B:

Gracias a Gloria, que siempre me da ánimos.

Thanks to Gloria. She always encourages me and makes me feel brave.

In the negative “dar ánimos” is a sarcastic way of saying “I really appreciate your support”.

Speaker A:

Te noto muy demacrado.

You look very wan.

Speaker B:

¡No me des ánimos!

Flattery will get you nowhere.

- Dar(le) atole con el dedo a - To feed gruel with your finger, To take advantage of someone's innocence

Sospecho que Carmen te está dando atole con el dedo. (I suspect Carmen is not playing fair with you.)

- Dar batería - To take sides; to be clear

Yo pagué la vez pasada; a ver si hoy das color. (I paid last time. It's your turn to pay.)

Ernesto no da color en el problema de la herencia. (Ernesto takes no sides in this business of the inheritance.)

Lalo, eres muy aguado. Ni pintas, ni das color. (Lalo, you're so wishy-washy. You can't decide one way or the other.)

- Dar(le) con la puerta en las narices a - To slam the door in someone's face (literally or figuratively)

Se enojó mucho y me dio con la puerta en las narices. (He got really upset and slammed the door in my face.)

- Dar(se) cuenta de; Dar(se) cuenta de que ... - To notice (that ...), To realize (that ...)

Me di cuenta del error demasiado tarde. (I noticed the mistake too late.)

¿No te das cuenta de que estás haciendo una tontería? (Don't you realize that what you're doing is not very bright?)

- Dar(le) cuerda a - To wind up, To egg on; to encourage; to humor
Rosendo siempre dice tonterías y Amalia siempre le da cuerda. (Rosendo always talks nonsense, and Amalia always eggs him on.)

¡Por amor de Dios, no le des cuerda! (For God's sake, don't encourage him!)

- Dar(se) cuerda solo(a) - To wind yourself up, To work yourself up, to get carried away

Desde que murió su mujer, Jorge se está dando cuerda solo. (Since his wife died, Jorge's been working himself into a real depression.)

- Dar(selas) de - To pretend to be you are not

Manuel se las da de arquitecto. (Manuel always passes himself off as an architect.)

- Dar de alta - To register; to sign up; to put on the payroll, etc. (except in a hospital, where dar de alta is to discharge a patient)

Si vas a trabajar, tienes que darte de alta en Hacienda. (If you're going to start working, you have to register as a taxpayer at the Treasury Department.)

Estas dos muchachas aún no están dadas de alta en la nueva escuela. (These two girls still haven't been registered at the new school.)

Ya llevo tres semanas trabajando aquí, y todavía no me dan de alta. (I've been working here for three weeks, and I still haven't been put on the payroll.)

Hijo, hay que dar de alta el coche nuevo. (Son, we have to register the new car.)

Doctor, ¿cuándo me dan de alta? Ya me quiero ir a casa. (Doctor, when will I be discharged from the hospital? I want to go home.)

- Dar de baja - To take off the registry, list, payroll, etc.

Me dieron de baja en el club cuando renuncié a la compañía. (When I quit my job, they cancelled my club membership.)

- Dar de botana - To put out to munch on

Nos dieron de botana aceitunas rellenas. (They gave us stuffed olives to munch on.)

- Dar de comer a - To feed

¿Ya le diste de comer a los niños? (Have the children eaten (been fed)?)

A esta hora siempre le da de comer al pollo. (She always feeds the chicken at this time.)

- Dar(se) el lujo de + verb - To give yourself the luxury of + verb, To be able to afford to + verb (not always connected with money)

No puedo darme el lujo de pelearme con mi jefe. (I can't afford to quarrel with my boss.)

- Dar(le) en la torre a - To hit on the tower, To do terrible to

Por confiado, ya te dieron en la torre. (You got taken because you're too trusting.)

- Dar(le) en qué pensar a - To give food for thought

Su actitud nos dio a todos mucho en qué pensar. (His attitude gave us all food for thought.)

- Dar ganas de (see Tener ganas) - To be appealing; to feel like

Con este calor dan ganas de meterse a nadar. (With this heat, you feel like getting into the pool.)

- Dar gato por liebre - To give a purchaser a cat instead of a hare, To deceive especially when referring to a purchase at the market.

No estoy seguro, pero creo que me dieron gato por liebre. (I'm not sure, but I think I was taken for a ride (I was deceived).)

- Dar(se) ínfulas (see Ser presumido) - To put on airs

Esa señora se da muchas ínfulas porque tiene título. (That woman puts on airs because she has a college degree.)

- Dar lástima (see Dar pena); Dar lata - To bother; to be a pain

Este coche da mucha lata. (This car is giving me a lot of trouble.)

La casera siempre está dando lata (es una latosa). (The landlady is always bugging me (she's a pain).)

- Dar mala espina - To give a bad thorn, To give a nasty feeling; to make suspicious

Su tardanza en resolver me da mala espina. (His delay in replying to my request makes me suspicious.)

- Dar patadas de ahogado - To thrash around uselessly in the water when you'll drown anyway, To fight a losing battle

Vicente, no pierdas el tiempo resistiéndote al divorcio. Son patadas de ahogado. (Vincent, don't waste your time trying to avoid the divorce. You're fighting a losing battle.)

- Dar pena; dar lástima - To (make) feel sorry for; To feel embarrassed; To take offense

Con tu modo de ser lograste que Irma te cortara; me das pena. (This is offensive; said in sympathy, this would be ¡Qué lástima! or ¡Qué pena!) (You are such a pain that Irma finally dropped you. I feel sorry for you.)

Me da pena pedirle dinero. (I feel embarrassed (I'm too timid) to ask her to lend me some money. Dar(se) por ofendido(a))

Hernán se dio por ofendido porque no aceptaron su propuesta. (Hernan took offense because his proposal was turned down.)

- Dar(le) por su lado a (see Seguirle la corriente a) - To humor, to go along with

Tu abuelo ya está viejo. No discutas con él. Dale por su lado para que no se enoje. (Your grandfather is old. Don't argue with him. Humor him so he doesn't get upset.)

Gloria le da por su lado a su marido para conservar la armonía. (Gloria goes along with everything her husband says just to keep the peace.)

- Dar(se) por vencido(a) - To give up

No he logrado conseguir suficiente dinero para el proyecto, pero me doy por vencido. (I haven't been able to raise all the money for the project, but I'm not giving up.)

- Dar(le) sabor al caldo - To give the broth some taste, To make things interesting

Las peripecias del viaje fueron las que le dieron sabor al caldo. (The unexpected things that happened on the trip were what made it interesting.)

- Dar trabajo (see Con trabajo(s) and Costar (mucho) trabajo) - To be difficult

Da mucho trabajo limpiar este piso. (It's a pain getting this floor clean.)

CHAPTER 7: 272 Easy Spanish Phrases

TRANSPORT

1. Where is the city hall? = ¿Dónde está el ayuntamiento?
2. The taxi stop is across the street = La parada de taxi está cruzando la calle.
3. Where is the bus stop? = ¿Dónde está la parada de autobús?
4. Could you please tell me where the main street is? = ¿Podría decirme dónde está la calle principal?
5. Is there a hotel nearby? = ¿Hay un hotel cerca?
6. Which way is downtown? = ¿Hacia dónde es el centro?
7. Should I turn right or left? = ¿Debo girar a la derecha o a la izquierda?
8. Is there a restaurant nearby? = ¿Hay un restaurante cerca?
9. How far is that place? = ¿Cómo de lejos está ese lugar?
10. Two streets more = Dos calles más.
11. Just a few metres from here = A sólo unos pocos metros de aquí.
12. You'll get there after passing the traffic lights = Llegarás allí después de pasar el semáforo.
13. On the next avenue = En la siguiente avenida.
14. On the opposite side = En el lado opuesto.
15. You need to get to the parallel street = Necesitas llegar a la calle paralela.
16. Keep going straight ahead = Siga recto.
17. There is an ATM to your left = Hay un cajero automático a tu izquierda.

18. Where can I find a pharmacy? = ¿Dónde puedo encontrar una farmacia?
19. The on-call pharmacy is near the community health center = La farmacia de guardia está cerca del ambulatorio.
20. Where is the nearest bakery? = ¿Dónde está la panadería más cercana?
21. The building is next to the park = El edificio está junto al parque.
22. There is a rest stop 200m from here = Hay una zona de ocio a 200 m de aquí.
23. What street are you looking for? = ¿Qué calle buscas?
24. Could you give me a reference site? = ¿Podrías darme un lugar de referencia?
25. Sorry, I don't know that place = Lo siento, no conozco ese lugar.
26. The name of the street sounds familiar = El nombre de la calle suena familiar.
27. I think I have been there = Creo que he estado allí.
28. I am not sure how to get there = No estoy seguro de cómo llegar.
29. Will you take me there? = ¿Me llevarías allí?
30. Are you sure it's that street? = ¿Estás seguro de que es esa calle?
31. Are you going there? = ¿Vas allí?
32. Should we go by car? = ¿Deberíamos ir en coche?
33. Should we go on foot? = ¿Deberíamos ir a pie?
34. Where is the train station? = ¿Dónde está la estación de tren?
35. How far is it from home? = ¿Cómo de lejos está de casa?
36. Where is the museum? = ¿Dónde está el museo?
37. Where is your friend's place? = ¿Dónde vive tu amigo?
38. Go past the roundabout = Pasa más allá de la rotonda.

39. You have to take a secondary road = Tienes que tomar una carretera secundaria.
40. Which way is faster to get there? = ¿Qué camino es más rápido para llegar allí?
41. Can you take me to the post office? = ¿Podrías llevarme a la oficina de correos?
42. I need to go home. Could you tell me how to go from here? = Necesito ir a casa, ¿podrías decirme cómo ir desde aquí?
43. How long does it take to get there? = ¿Cuánto se tarda en llegar allí?
44. Where is 5th Avenue? = ¿Dónde está la 5th Avenida?
45. Take the other road; this one is too bumpy = Toma la otra carretera; ésta tiene muchos baches.
46. Is there a bus that takes you to the hospital? = ¿Hay un autobús que te lleve al hospital?
47. How often can we find a bus stop along this street? = ¿Con qué frecuencia podemos encontrar una parada de bus a lo largo de esta calle?
48. I think it's not far from my place = Creo que no está lejos de mi casa.
49. Turn left when you reach the black building = Gira a la izquierda cuando llegues al edificio negro.
50. The candy shop is next to the main square = La tienda de caramelos está junto a la plaza principal.
51. Turn right, left and right again, until you see a skyscraper = Gira a la derecha, izquierda y derecha de nuevo, hasta que veas un rascacielos.
52. Excuse me. Am I heading in the right direction to the old town area? = Disculpe, ¿voy en la dirección correcta para el casco antiguo?

53. Climb the stairs, you'll get there faster = Sube las escaleras, irás más rápido.
54. Go up to the last floor = Sube al último piso.
55. The medical practice is on the second floor = La consulta del médico está en la segunda planta.
56. You will find that office next to the elevator = Encontrarás esa oficina junto al ascensor.
57. Where is Ana's home? = ¿Dónde está la casa de Ana?
58. Where can I find public parking? = ¿Dónde puedo encontrar un aparcamiento público?
59. Is this restaurant close to a pub? = ¿Este restaurante está cerca de un pub?
60. You will find a quiet cove down that hill = Encontrarás una cala tranquila bajando esa colina.
61. Follow the signs to the main monuments = Sigue las señales para los monumentos principales.
62. Is this a pedestrian street? = ¿Ésta es una calle peatonal?
63. Is this a one way street? = ¿Ésta es una calle de sentido único?
64. Can I drive through that avenue? = ¿Puedo conducir por esa avenida?
65. Could you please tell me if I am near the university? = ¿Podría decirme si estoy cerca de la universidad, por favor?
66. How many streets should I cross? = ¿Cuántas calles debería cruzar?
67. Will I be able to get there in less than ten minutes? = ¿Podré llegar allí en menos de diez minutos?
68. You'll have to go to the other side of town = Tendrás que ir al otro lado de la ciudad.

69. I don't know how to point the way = No sé cómo indicar el camino.
70. I could easily give directions = Podría dar indicaciones fácilmente.
71. I can point it out on a map = Puedo señalarlo en un mapa.
72. I am not sure how to get there = No estoy seguro de cómo llegar allí.
73. Could you tell me if this is the right way? = ¿Podrías decirme si éste es el camino correcto?
74. Where are we going? = ¿Dónde vamos?
75. This isn't the road I suggested = Ésta no es la carretera que sugerí.
76. Which way is the right to avoid traffic jams? = ¿Qué camino es el correcto para evitar atascos?
77. That street is longer, but safer = Esa calle es más larga, pero más segura.
78. I am totally lost = Estoy totalmente perdido.
79. Where are you going? = ¿Hacia dónde te diriges?
80. Is there any special place you want to see? = ¿Hay algún lugar en especial que quieras ver?
81. I need help to get somewhere = Necesito ayuda para llegar a un sitio.
82. Could you come with me? = ¿Podrías venir conmigo?
83. She walked me to the hotel = Ella me acompañó a pie hasta el hotel.
84. I would have never found the place myself = Yo nunca habría encontrado el sitio solo.
85. Those instructions helped me a lot = Esas instrucciones me ayudaron mucho.
86. Where is it in the map? = ¿Dónde está en el mapa?
87. Do you know this neighborhood? = ¿Conoces este barrio?
88. This is a dead-end street = Es una calle sin salida.
89. You should take this alley = Deberías tomar este pasaje.

90. Don't go that way, it is always crowded = No vayas por ahí, siempre está abarrotado.
91. You can take a shortcut here = Puedes tomar un atajo aquí.
92. The stairs will take you to the church = Las escaleras te llevarán a la iglesia.
93. How can I find a tattoo shop? = ¿Dónde puedo encontrar un estudio de tatuaje?
94. Excuse me, is this the ring road? = Disculpe, ¿es ésta la circunvalación?
95. How can I get to the fair? = ¿Cómo puedo llegar a la feria?
96. Should I go down that slope? = ¿Debería bajar esa pendiente?
97. Could you tell me where the bike path is? = ¿Podría decirme dónde está el carril bici?
98. Does this main highway go to the train station? = ¿Lleva esta carretera troncal a la estación de tren?
99. You must go straight ahead = Debes ir todo recto.
100. There is a wall, you will have to turn around = Hay un muro, tendrás que dar media vuelta.

TRAVEL

1. You will need to go through the park to get there faster = Necesitarás atravesar el parque para llegar allí más rápido.
2. The party is in the opposite way = La fiesta está en el sentido opuesto.
3. Should I go up or downhill? = ¿Debería subir o bajar la cuesta?
4. Can you take me to the local market? = ¿Podrías llevarme al mercado local?

5. After two roundabouts, turn right and continue fifty metres more = Después de dos rotondas, gira a la derecha y continúa cincuenta metros más.
6. Turn a corner = Girar en una esquina.
7. You can park on the street = Puedes aparcar en esta calle.
8. You can take either the ramp or the stairs = Puedes ir por la rampa o las escaleras.
9. You'll have to get the train there = Tendrás que tomar el tren para allá.
10. It is possible to go on foot, but it is far from here = Es posible llegar a pie, pero está lejos de aquí.
11. You should ask the police if you are lost = Deberías preguntar a la policía si estás perdido.
12. I'm going that way too = Yo también voy por ese camino.
13. It's tricky if you don't know the way = Es complicado si no conoces el camino.
14. Should we ask for directions now? = ¿Deberíamos pedir indicaciones ahora?
15. Are we going to the beach or the mountain? = ¿Vamos hacia la playa o la montaña?
16. Should we use the GPS? = ¿Deberíamos usar el GPS?
18. We better take a look at the signs = Mejor echamos un vistazo a las señales.
19. There is a crossing at the end of the street = Hay un cruce al final de la calle.
20. You should turn left and then right at the next corner = Deberías girar a la izquierda y después a la derecha en la siguiente esquina.

21. How many metres are there between your house and the park? =
¿Cuántos metros hay entre tu casa y el parque?
22. Which way? Through that narrow alley? = ¿Por dónde? ¿Atravesando ese callejón estrecho?
23. You should take that road, it's new = Deberías ir por esa carretera, es nueva.
24. If you follow the marked path, you'll get to the cabin = Si sigues el camino señalado, llegarás a la cabaña.
25. The hiking trail starts from that sign = La pista de senderismo comienza desde esa señal.
26. We have this new bike trail = Tenemos esta nueva pista para ciclismo.
27. The guide will give you good directions = El guía te dará buenas indicaciones.
28. How many different ways are there to get to that place? = ¿Cuántos caminos diferentes hay para llegar a ese sitio?
29. Do night buses stop here? = ¿Paran aquí los autobuses nocturnos?
30. Where should I go for information on local events? = ¿Dónde debería ir para obtener información sobre eventos locales?
31. This avenue goes across the whole village = Esta avenida cruza todo el pueblo.
32. How can I get to the airport? = ¿Cómo puedo llegar al aeropuerto?
33. This street leads to my office = Esta calle lleva a mi oficina.
34. You will find that shop two blocks from here = Encontrarás esa tienda a dos calles de aquí.
35. The butcher is around the corner = La carnicería está al girar la esquina.
36. How many floors do I have to go up? = ¿Cuántas plantas tengo que

subir?

37. Where is the service entrance? = ¿Dónde está la entrada de servicio?

38. Can you tell me the way out? = ¿Podría indicarme la salida?

39. How can I get to the town from here? = ¿Cómo podría llegar al ayuntamiento desde aquí?

40. Could you tell me the meaning of those signs? = ¿Podría decirme el significado de esas señales?

41. Can you tell me where the gas station is from here? = Iré desde aquí, ¿podrías decirme dónde está la gasolinera?

42. You will see the path clearly from the top of that hill = Verás el camino con claridad desde arriba de esa colina.

43. You will find the consignment for your luggage in that hall = Encontrarás la consigna para tu equipaje en esa sala.

44. Could you tell me where the restroom is, please? = ¿Podría decirme dónde está el aseo, por favor? 45. How can I get to the claims office? = ¿Cómo llego a la oficina de reclamaciones?

46. Follow those lights to the boarding gate = Sigue esas luces hasta la puerta de embarque.

47. Down and to the right = Al fondo a la derecha.

48. You will get to the unemployment line after turning that corner = Llegarás a la línea del paro después de girar esa esquina.

49. You can use this huge building as a landmark = Puedes tomar este enorme edificio como punto de referencia.

50. This bank is the first of a line that will take you to the end of the square = Este banco es el primero de una línea que te llevará al final de la plaza.

51. Take the train here and get off after three stops = Toma el tren aquí y baja después de tres paradas.

SHOPPING

1. Excuse me, do you have this shirt in a smaller size? = Disculpe, ¿tiene esta camisa en una talla más pequeña?
2. Could you tell me the price of this item? = ¿Podría decirme el precio de este artículo?
3. Where can I find a shoe shop? = ¿Dónde puedo encontrar una zapatería?
4. Can I have a refund? = ¿Puedo obtener un reembolso?
5. Is it possible to try this at home? = ¿Es posible probar esto en casa?
6. Is there a shopping center in this town? = ¿Hay un centro comercial en esta ciudad?
7. Is the shop open on weekends? = ¿Abre la tienda los fines de semana?
8. What hours do you work? = ¿Cuál es tu horario de trabajo?
9. Does this suit me? = ¿Me queda bien esto?
10. Do you have this in a different color? = ¿Tiene esto en un color diferente?
11. Can I pay in dollars? = ¿Puedo pagar en dólares?
12. Where can I find a local shop to buy some souvenirs? = ¿Dónde puedo encontrar una tienda local para comprar algunos recuerdos?
13. How much is that in pounds? = ¿Cuánto es eso en libras?
14. Which size is a Spanish M? = ¿Qué talla es una M española?
15. What is the name of a shop where you buy fish? = ¿Cuál es el nombre de una tienda donde compras pescado?

16. Is this a 24/7 store? = ¿Es esta una tienda 24h?
17. Can I buy sheets here? = ¿Puedo comprar sábanas aquí?
18. What exactly do you sell? = ¿Qué vendes exactamente?
19. Is this a second hand shop? = ¿Es esta una tienda de segunda mano?
20. Is this a bargain shop? = ¿Es esta una tienda de oportunidades?
21. Do you sell seasonal fruit? = ¿Vende fruta de temporada?
22. Do you sell typical regional food? = ¿Vende comida típica de la región?
23. Do your products have a certificate of origin? = ¿Sus productos tienen denominación de origen?
24. What are you buying? = ¿Qué compras?
25. How much are you planning to spend? = ¿Cuánto planeas gastar?
26. What do you need from here? = ¿Qué necesitas de aquí?
27. Is this food properly canned? = ¿Está envasada adecuadamente esta comida?
28. Where can I find a gourmet shop? = ¿Dónde puedo encontrar una tienda gourmet?
29. Will I get a refund? = ¿Obtendré un reembolso?
30. Can I exchange this for another item? = ¿Puedo cambiarlo por otro artículo?
31. Could you gift wrap it? = ¿Podría envolverlo para regalo?
32. Do you have something for a newborn? = ¿Tiene algo para un recién nacido?
33. Do you have wedding registry here? = ¿Tienen listas de boda aquí?
34. Do you offer gift certificates? = ¿Ofrecen certificados de regalo?
35. Is it possible to order something that is not in the shop now? = ¿Es posible pedir algo que no está en la tienda ahora?

36. When will you have it? = ¿Cuándo lo tendrá?
37. Do you also repair clothes? = ¿También hacen arreglos de ropa?
38. What do you need to buy? = ¿qué necesitas comprar?
39. I would like to visit some boutiques = Me gustaría visitar algunas boutiques.
40. This was the first shop in town = Ésta fue la primera tienda en la ciudad.
41. The old town is full of charming little shops = El casco antiguo está lleno de encantadoras tiendecitas. 42. This is a luxury furniture shop = Ésta es una tienda de muebles de lujo.
43. People from other towns come to this huge shopping centre = Gente de otras ciudades viene a este enorme centro comercial.
44. Does this business comply with the regulations? = ¿Cumple la normativa esta tienda?
45. They sell many odd items here = Aquí venden muchos artículos curiosos.
46. Where can I buy some art supplies? = ¿Dónde puedo comprar algo de material para manualidades? 47. I will take a final look at the local shops = Echaré un último vistazo a las tiendas locales.
48. I always come back with something from the duty free zone = Siempre vuelvo con algo de la zona libre de impuestos.
49. This is a wonderful haberdashery (clothier) store! = ¡Esta mercería es genial!
50. I'm looking for a herbalist's shop = Busco una herboristería.
51. Is there any place near to buy ground coffee? = ¿Hay algún lugar cerca para comprar café molido? 52. They have freshly baked bread here = Aquí tienen pan recién hecho.

53. They sell all types of tea in this shop = Venden todo tipo de té en esta tienda.
54. This is a barter spot = Éste es un lugar de trueque.
55. They sell things on consignment = Venden cosas en consigna.
56. You can bring your old clothes to this second hand shop = Puedes traer tu ropa vieja a esta tienda de segunda mano.
57. Do you accept credit cards? = ¿Acepta tarjetas de crédito?
58. I will pay in cash, thank you = Pagaré en efectivo, gracias.
59. I will need an invoice for my boss = Necesitaré una factura para mi jefe.
60. You have two weeks to exchange the item = Tiene dos semanas para cambiar el artículo.
61. Which material is this made of? = ¿De qué material está hecho esto?
62. Is this real leather? = ¿Es cuero verdadero?
63. Is this synthetic? = ¿Es sintético?
64. Is this pure cotton? = ¿Es algodón puro?
65. What kind of dye do you use? = ¿Qué clase de tinte usas?
66. Is this hypoallergenic? = ¿Es hipoalergénico?
67. Do you have this for other ages? = ¿Tiene esto para otras edades?
68. How many of these do you have? = ¿Cuántos de éstos tiene? 69. What does this shop offer? = ¿Qué ofrece esta tienda?
70. I will need more = Necesitaré más.
71. Are you open on weekends? = ¿Abre los fines de semana?
72. Is this shop part of a chain? = ¿Esta tienda es parte de una cadena?
73. Does this supermarket sell local products? = ¿Vende este supermercado productos locales?

74. Is this organic food? = ¿Es comida ecológica?
75. What is the price range? = ¿Cuál es el rango de precios?
76. They have a wide selection of footwear here = Aquí tienen una amplia selección de calzado.
77. How many businesses are there in this shopping center? = ¿Cuántos negocios hay en este centro comercial?
78. Do you sell food for gluten intolerant people? = ¿Venden comida para gente intolerante al gluten?
79. Where do your products come from? = ¿De dónde vienen sus productos?
80. Do you have this in stock? = ¿Tiene existencias de esto?
81. How many chairs go with this table? = ¿Cuántas sillas van con esta mesa?
82. This product is out of stock = Este producto está agotado.
83. I'm looking for an unlisted item = Busco un artículo descatalogado.
84. Do you have an online shop? = ¿Tiene tienda en línea?
85. Do you offer DIY kits? = ¿Ofrecen kits para aficionados?
86. Is there currently any additional offer? = ¿Actualmente hay alguna oferta adicional?
87. I was looking for a special gift = Buscaba un regalo especial.
88. Could you tell me about this piece of art? = ¿Podría hablarme sobre esta obra de arte?
89. Do you offer party kits for children? = ¿Ofrecen kits de fiesta para niños?
90. Do you make deliveries overseas? = ¿Hacen envíos al extranjero?
91. If I buy this here, could I receive it back home? = Si compro esto aquí, ¿podría recibirlo en casa?

92. Is this handmade? = ¿Está hecho a mano?
93. Is it possible to finance these products? = ¿Es posible financiar estos productos?
94. Do I have to make a down payment? = ¿Tengo que dejar un depósito?
95. Which is the latest model? = ¿Cuál es el último modelo?
96. I would need to know the product specifications = Necesitaría saber las especificaciones del producto.
97. Is this made of natural fibers? = ¿Está hecho de fibras naturales?
98. Is this battery-operated? = ¿Funciona con batería?
99. What is the lifespan of this printer? = ¿Cuál es la vida útil de esta impresora?
100. Are the batteries included? = ¿Están incluidas las pilas?
101. Is this suitable for babies? = ¿Es adecuado para bebés?
102. Is this ready to use? = ¿Está listo para usar?
103. Is this an exclusive design? = ¿Es un diseño exclusivo?
104. Do you have more products from this manufacturer? = ¿Tiene más productos de este fabricante?
105. Do you sell vintage items? = ¿Vende artículos vintage?
106. Do you collaborate with other brands? = ¿Colaboran con otras marcas?
107. Is this your only shop in the town? = ¿Es su única tienda en la ciudad?
108. Excuse me, I have some questions = Disculpe, tengo algunas preguntas.
109. Sorry, I need to check with my family first = Lo siento, necesito consultar a mi familia primero.
110. Are these for beginners? = ¿Son para principiantes?
111. Do you have any computer manuals? = ¿Tiene manuales informáticos?

112. Do you offer installation services? = ¿Ofrecen servicios de instalación?

113. How much is it to ship it to my home? = ¿Cuánto cuesta recibirlo en casa?

114. Could we set an appointment to design the products? = ¿Podríamos fijar una cita para diseñar los productos?

115. There is always a line here; you'll have to wait = Siempre hay cola aquí, tendréis que esperar.

116. This bar opens twice a week = Este bar abre dos veces por semana.

117. We close for the public when we host a party = Cerramos al público cuando damos una fiesta.

118. You can buy kitchen utensils here = Puedes comprar utensilios de cocina aquí.

119. How much is it to rent an inflatable castle? = ¿Cuánto cuesta alquilar un castillo hinchable?

120. Every business along this avenue is fashion related = Cada negocio de esta avenida está relacionado con la moda.

121. You will find top brands at deep discounts = Encontrarás primeras marcas con grandes descuentos.

SPANISH SHORT STORIES

Learn Spanish for Beginners in Your Car Like Crazy.

Language Learning Lessons for travel & Everyday.

How to Speak Spanish with Stories, Conversations,
Grammar & Common Phrases.

Table of Contents

[INTRODUCTION](#)

[CHAPTER 1: Spanish Short Stories for Beginners](#)

[CHAPTER 2: An Interview With A Native Spanish Woman](#)

[CHAPTER 3: Practical Application Of Spanish Language And The Summary Of Lessons Learned From The Spanish Short Stories Discussed In Chapter I](#)

[CHAPTER 4: Chronological Order In Learning Spanish Language](#)

[CHAPTER 5: Progress Of Learning Spanish Language](#)

[CHAPTER 6: Conclusion](#)

[CHAPTER 7: Additional Tips On How To Learn Spanish Language For Beginners The Easiest Way Possible](#)

[CHAPTER 8: The Aftermath](#)

© Copyright 2019 by Language Learning School - All rights reserved.

The following Book is reproduced below with the goal of providing information that is as accurate and reliable as possible. Regardless,

purchasing this Book can be seen as consent to the fact that both the publisher and the author of this book are in no way experts on the topics discussed within and that any recommendations or suggestions that are made herein are for entertainment purposes only. Professionals should be consulted as needed prior to undertaking any of the action endorsed herein.

This declaration is deemed fair and valid by both the American Bar Association and the Committee of Publishers Association and is legally binding throughout the United States.

Furthermore, the transmission, duplication, or reproduction of any of the following work including specific information will be considered an illegal act irrespective of if it is done electronically or in print. This extends to creating a secondary or tertiary copy of the work or a recorded copy and is only allowed with the express written consent from the Publisher. All additional right reserved.

The information in the following pages is broadly considered a truthful and accurate account of facts and as such, any inattention, use, or misuse of the information in question by the reader will render any resulting actions solely under their purview. There are no scenarios in which the publisher or the original author of this work can be in any fashion deemed liable for any hardship or damages that may befall them after undertaking information described herein.

Additionally, the information in the following pages is intended only for informational purposes and should thus be thought of as universal. As befitting its nature, it is presented without assurance regarding its prolonged validity or interim quality. Trademarks that are mentioned are done without

written consent and can in no way be considered an endorsement from the trademark holder.

INTRODUCTION

(INTRODUCCIÓN)

Learning Spanish is not about getting it right in a short period of time. How the learner delves in the process is the one that matters. On a lighter note, there are key areas every learner may consider in order to confidently speak Spanish in a considerable period of time. *(Aprender español no se trata de hacerlo bien en un corto período de tiempo. La forma en que el alumno profundiza en el proceso es lo que importa. En una nota más clara, hay áreas clave que todo alumno puede considerar para hablar español con confianza en un período considerable de tiempo.)*

The first key area is the process of building Spanish vocabulary. The more Spanish words one learner knows, the more chance of learning it fast. In short, every learner must build a strong language foundation. *(La primera área clave es el proceso de construcción de vocabulario en español. Cuantas más palabras en español sepa un alumno, más posibilidades tendrá de aprenderlo rápido. En resumen, cada alumno debe construir una base sólida de lenguaje.)*

Second is taking a self-study about a Spanish Course. In this way, the learner may consider taking time browsing the web and finding short stories that he may use because, at the end of every short story, he may find series of questions and answers about it. *(El segundo es tomar un autoestudio sobre un curso de español. De esta manera, el alumno puede considerar tomarse un tiempo para navegar por la web y encontrar historias cortas que pueda usar porque al final de cada historia corta, puede encontrar una serie de preguntas y respuestas al respecto.)*

Next is finding a Spanish Tutor in the web. Apart from Spanish Course self-study, the learner may consider taking a step higher, and that is finding a personal tutor which he can talk to, clarify certain ambiguous words, and learn in a much faster way than the conventional one. *(Lo siguiente es encontrar un tutor de español en la web. Además del autoaprendizaje del curso de español, el alumno puede considerar dar un paso más, y es encontrar un tutor personal con el que pueda hablar, aclarar ciertas palabras ambiguas y aprender de una manera mucho más rápida que la convencional.)*

The fourth one is taking it slow. One tip every learner must know is that when he puts a lot of effort in order to learn it the fastest way, the result is the other way around. It is a trap for every beginner, to obsess over learning Spanish the fastest way it is. Instead, the best way is to be careful, and do not consume a lot of time in obsessing over Spanish Course. *(El cuarto lo toma con calma. Un consejo que todo alumno debe saber es que cuando hace un gran esfuerzo para aprenderlo de la manera más rápida, el resultado es al revés. Es una trampa para todos los principiantes, obsesionarse con aprender español de la manera más rápida. En cambio, la mejor manera es tener cuidado y no gastar mucho tiempo obsesionado con el curso de español.)*

The learner must also try the most effective way of mastering Spanish Language and that is reading. In every learning process, one effective way to achieve the targeted results is reading. When the learner reads, he articulates better and fluently, at the same time his brain is being practiced to adjust on the kind of language he is reading. *(El alumno también debe probar la forma más efectiva de dominar el idioma español y eso es leer. En cada proceso de*

aprendizaje, una forma efectiva de lograr los resultados específicos es la lectura. Cuando el alumno lee, articula mejor y con fluidez, al mismo tiempo que su cerebro está siendo practicado para adaptarse al tipo de lenguaje que está leyendo.)

The sixth key area is considering Spanish as part of the learner's lifestyle and everyday routine. This means that the learner must not let the day pass without reading a Spanish short story, or learning a new word, or visiting one's Online Tutor. *(La sexta área clave es considerar el español como parte del estilo de vida y la rutina diaria del alumno. Esto significa que el alumno no debe dejar pasar el día sin leer un cuento corto en español, o aprender una nueva palabra, o visitar el Tutor en línea.)*

And the last is that never consider travelling abroad only for the purpose of learning Spanish. The learner must stay at home if he really wants to learn Spanish Course the best way it is. The reason is that if the learner stays at home, he is in control of his time, and he can schedule it according to his comfort. *(Y la última es que nunca consideres viajar al extranjero solo para aprender español. El alumno debe quedarse en casa si realmente quiere aprender el curso de español de la mejor manera posible. La razón es que si el alumno se queda en casa, tiene el control de su tiempo y puede programarlo de acuerdo con su comodidad.)*

Tips on How to Build Spanish Vocabulary ***(Consejos Sobre Cómo Construir*** ***Vocabulario En Español)***

In all languages, words are the composition. That means, without enough words, the learner may find it difficult to learn the Spanish

Language in a considerable period of time. If the learner does not have sufficient words, the learning process will be longer compared to the learner having a lot of words as building blocks. *(En todos los idiomas, las palabras son la composición. Eso significa que, sin suficientes palabras, el alumno puede tener dificultades para aprender el idioma español en un período de tiempo considerable. Si el alumno no tiene suficientes palabras, el proceso de aprendizaje será más largo en comparación con el que tenga muchas palabras como bloques de construcción.)*

The first tip is mastering the basic Spanish grammar. Like in all learning processes, it is enough to consider baby steps – that is, learning from the most basic one, and it develops into a step higher. By reading Spanish short stories, the learner will learn a lot of basic Spanish grammar. *(El primer consejo es dominar la gramática básica del español. Al igual que en todos los procesos de aprendizaje, es suficiente tener en cuenta los pequeños pasos, es decir, aprender del más básico y desarrollar un paso más alto. Al leer cuentos cortos en español, el alumno aprenderá mucha gramática básica en español.)*

Next is not only reading but also understanding spoken Spanish. The learner may resort to listening to Spanish movies or Spanish songs. It is an effective way to memorize words if the learner articulates it. Just like in memorizing the song's lyrics, if he keeps on singing it, he is unknowingly memorizing it little by little. *(Lo siguiente no es solo leer, sino también entender el español hablado. El alumno puede recurrir a escuchar películas en español o canciones en español. Es una forma efectiva de memorizar palabras si el alumno las articula. Al igual que al memorizar la letra de la canción, si sigue cantando, sin saberlo la está memorizando poco a poco.)*

The third is practicing it a lot. There is no substitute in practicing it every day since as the cliché goes, practice makes perfect. Even if the learner is already finished with the Spanish Course, just continue using it everyday because if the learner stops using it, there is a great tendency that he will forget what he has learned. (*El tercero es practicarle mucho. No hay sustituto para practicarle todos los días ya que, como dice el cliché, la práctica hace la perfección. Incluso si el alumno ya ha terminado con el curso de español, simplemente continúe usándolo todos los días porque si el alumno deja de usarlo, existe una gran tendencia a que olvide lo que ha aprendido.*)

Another one is to have a correct Spanish pronunciation. One of the most difficult tasks in learning new language not only Spanish Course is to articulate it according to the right tone and pronunciation. The reason is that there are words that, when mispronounced, will have a different meaning already. Therefore it is very important to know the proper way of articulating it. (*Otra es tener una pronunciación correcta en español. Una de las tareas más difíciles para aprender un nuevo idioma, no solo el curso de español, es articularlo de acuerdo con el tono y la pronunciación correctos. La razón es que hay palabras que, cuando se pronuncian mal, ya tendrán un significado diferente. Por lo tanto, es muy importante conocer la forma correcta de articularlo.*)

One important tip is getting used to the Spanish Language. If the learner gets used to it, he will find it as easy as eating peanuts and one day, he will wake up and realizing that he has already mastered Spanish Language. (*Un consejo importante es acostumbrarse al idioma español. Si el alumno se acostumbra, lo encontrará tan*

fácil como comer maní y un día, se despertará y se dará cuenta de que ya ha dominado el idioma español.)

The sixth and last one is sticking to the process that the learner has started with. For example, he has chosen reading Spanish short stories, then stick to it until it works for him. Do not shift from one way to another; for instance, the learner started with reading Spanish short stories, then the next day, he also starts another method like Online Tutor. The learner will only get confused if he keeps on using different methods simultaneously. It is the same as reading five different books at the same time, the learner doing it will not learn at all. He will only get confused and will find it difficult to choose where to focus. *(El sexto y último se apega al proceso con el que el alumno ha comenzado. Por ejemplo, él eligió leer cuentos cortos en español, luego se adhirió a él hasta que le funcione. No cambie de una manera a otra, por ejemplo, el alumno comenzó a leer cuentos cortos en español, luego al día siguiente también comienza otro método como Tutor en línea. El alumno solo se confundirá si sigue usando diferentes métodos simultáneamente. Es lo mismo que leer cinco libros diferentes al mismo tiempo, el alumno que lo haga no aprenderá en absoluto. Solo se confundirá y le resultará difícil elegir dónde concentrarse.)*

Among all these methods, the best way to learn the Spanish Language is to read short stories. As compared to watching Spanish movies, short stories are more effective in the sense that it is easy to start and easy to finish. It is somehow chopped into pieces so that the reader will be able to grasp every part of the story. Movies are long and composed of twists which will only prolong the learning process. For instance, there are two roads towards the same destination. The traveler will definitely choose the one with a shortcut route compared to a long drive. *(Entre todos estos*

métodos, la mejor forma de aprender español es leer cuentos cortos. En comparación con mirar películas en español, las historias cortas son más efectivas en el sentido de que es fácil comenzar y terminar. De alguna manera está cortado en pedazos para que el lector pueda comprender cada parte de la historia. Las películas son largas y se componen de giros que solo prolongarán el proceso de aprendizaje. Por ejemplo, hay dos caminos hacia el mismo destino. El viajero definitivamente elegirá el que tenga una ruta de acceso directo en comparación con un viaje largo.)

Why Give The Beginners Short Stories Reading? (¿Por Qué Dar A Los Principiantes Historias Cortas De Lectura?)

As mentioned earlier, baby steps are needed for beginners. Reading short stories is very important to Spanish students because it is where their comprehension and writing skills are being molded. Once they mastered understanding the Spanish short stories, the next thing is exposing them to spoken Spanish Language. *(Como se mencionó anteriormente, se necesitan pequeños pasos para principiantes. Leer cuentos cortos es muy importante para los estudiantes españoles porque es donde se están moldeando sus habilidades de comprensión y escritura. Una vez que dominen la comprensión de los cuentos cortos en español, lo siguiente es exponerlos al idioma español hablado.)*

By exposing their brains to written Spanish Language, most particularly native one, the learners will start to get familiarized with the language. It is a more effective method for beginners. They will not be able to capture and understand the sounds which can be obtained through movies, songs, and spoken Spanish

Language. (Al exponer sus cerebros al idioma español escrito, especialmente el nativo, los estudiantes comenzarán a familiarizarse con el idioma. Es un método más efectivo para principiantes. No podrán capturar y comprender los sonidos que se pueden obtener a través de películas, canciones y el idioma español hablado.)

CHAPTER 1: Spanish Short Stories for Beginners

(Cortos Historias Españolas Para Principiantes)

A. EN EL AEROPUERTO (AT THE AIRPORT)

The first Spanish short story is entitled, *En el Aeropuerto* or *At the Airport* in the English Language. The story goes like this: (*El primer cuento español se titula En el aeropuerto o At the Airport en inglés. La historia va así:*)

“Un día, un niño llamado "Miguel" se para en un carril particular en el aeropuerto. Durante su turno para acercarse al mostrador, inmediatamente camina hacia la parte delantera. La señora encargada de verificar las tarjetas de identificación le pide que presente su identificación. Luego, después de eso, la dama verifica los detalles indicados en su identificación, así como los detalles del vuelo. La siguiente es la aprobación de su vuelo 103 que se dirigía a Hawai desde Los Ángeles. Está aprobado para un vuelo del mediodía. Solo lleva consigo una mini bolsa. No tiene grandes bolsas con él.

El agente encargado de la distribución de la tarjeta de embarque imprime la tarjeta de Miguel y se la da. Los enormes perros entrenados pasan junto a él asistidos por los oficiales de seguridad del aeropuerto. El trabajo de cada perro es oler cada equipaje de los pasajeros a propósito para detectar si hay contrabando o drogas y explosivos insertados dentro de las bolsas. Luego, después, el perro comienza a oler la mini bolsa de Miguel y comienza a ladrar también. El oficial de seguridad mira a Miguel y le dice que tome su bolso y lo siga mientras lo lleva a un lugar diferente.”

In the English Language, the story goes like this:

One day, a boy named “Miguel” stands in a particular lane in the airport. During his turn to approach the counter, he immediately walks towards the front part. The lady in-charged with the checking of identification cards asks him to present his ID. Then after that, the lady checks the details stated in his ID as well as the flight details. The next is the approval of his flight 103 which bound to Hawaii boarding from Los Angeles. He is approved for a noon

flight. He only carries with him a mini-bag. He does not have any huge bags with him.

The agent in-charge with the distribution of boarding pass prints Miguel's pass and gives it to him. The trained huge dogs pass by him assisted by the security officers in the airport. The job of every dog is to sniff every luggage of passengers purposely to detect if there are contrabands or drugs and explosives inserted inside the bags. Then after, the dog starts sniffing Miguel's mini-bag and starts barking as well. The security officer looks at Miguel and tells him to get his bag and follow him as he leads him in a different place.

Preguntas (Questions) and Respuestas (Answers)

The following are some *preguntas* or questions and their corresponding *respuestas* or answers that can be used by learners in understanding the abovementioned short story. The learner must read them one by one and repeat them in order to improve and develop their spoken Spanish Language.

P1: *La pregunta número uno pregunta dónde está Miguel.* (In the English Language, the question number one asks where Miguel is.)

R1: *Por otro lado, la respuesta es que actualmente está haciendo cola en el interior del aeropuerto .* (On the other hand, the answer is that he is presently falling in line inside the airport.)

P2: *La pregunta número dos pregunta qué significa ID.* (If translated into the English Language, the question number two asks what ID means.)

R2: *La respuesta explica que la ID es "Identificación" cuando se abrevia.* (The answer explains that ID is "Identification" when abbreviated.)

P3: *La pregunta número dos es sobre la hora del vuelo de Miguel desde Los Ángeles.* (In English, question number two asks as to the time of Miguel's flight boarding from Los Angeles.)

R3: *La respuesta es al mediodía, está obligado a Hawái.* (The answer is at noon, he is bound to Hawaii.)

P4: *La pregunta número cuatro pregunta qué necesita Miguel para subir al avión.* (The question number four asks what Miguel needs in order to get in the plane.)

R4: *La respuesta es la tarjeta de embarque.* (The answer is boarding pass).

P5: *La pregunta número cinco se refiere a las cosas que los oficiales de seguridad intentan detectar del equipaje de los pasajeros.* (The question number five asks as to the things that the security officers try to detect from the passengers' luggage).

R5: *La respuesta es drogas, contrabando o explosivos.* (The answer is drugs, contraband or explosives).

Insights about the Short Story ***(Perspectivas Sobre La Historia Corta)***

The *En el Aeropuerto* short story is one of the best Spanish short stories to inspire beginners to learn how to speak, understand and write Spanish Language. The language used in the above short story is very simple, the tense used is in the present and the way it is written is plain and simple. Below is the translation to English Language for better understanding of every beginner. *(El cuento En el Aeropuerto es uno de los mejores cuentos en español para inspirar a los principiantes a aprender a hablar, entender y escribir en español. El lenguaje utilizado en el cuento anterior es muy simple, el tiempo utilizado está en el presente y la forma en*

que está escrito es simple y llanamente. A continuación se muestra la traducción al idioma inglés para una mejor comprensión de cada principiante.)

B.

LA

RATITA PRESUMIDA (THE PRESUMED LITTLE RAT)

The second Spanish short story is entitled *La Ratita Presumida* or *The Presumed Little Rat* in English Language. The story goes like this: (*El segundo cuento en español se titula La Ratita Presumida o The Presumed Little Rat in English Language. La historia va así:*)

“Hace mucho tiempo, vive un ratón muy seguro de sí mismo. Un día, el ratoncito barrió su casa y, accidentalmente, encontró una moneda de oro en el suelo. Luego lo recogió y pensó en las cosas que haría con esa moneda de oro. Estas son algunas de las opciones que tenía en mente: Primero, dijo que podía gastarlo todo en dulces. Pero luego, dijo que no está segura porque los dulces podrían causar dolor de estómago. Luego pensó en comprar alfileres, pero una vez más, dijo que esos alfileres podrían pinchar su piel y finalmente lastimarla. Y luego el ratoncito decidió comprar una cinta de seda para hacer algunos lazos. Luego usa la cinta en su cabeza y se inclina en su cola, luego eventualmente procedió al balcón para mostrar su nueva cinta y lazo.

Un burro se le acercó y la saludó con buenos días. Incluso le dijo al ratoncito que ella es tan hermosa. El ratoncito respondió con un agradecimiento y una voz muy segura. El burro le propuso matrimonio, pidiéndole que se casara con él. El ratoncito dijo que su respuesta depende de cómo le vaya en la noche. El burro respondió: "¡Hiooo, hiooo!" Pero el ratoncito respondió con un

"no" porque dijo que el burro la asustaría. El burro estaba desconsolado y ese fue el momento en que llegó el gallo. El gallo saludó al ratoncito y procedió con una propuesta de matrimonio. El ratoncito dijo que su respuesta dependerá de cómo le vaya al gallo por la noche. El gallo respondió: "¡Kikirikiiii, kikirikiii!" El gallo también tenía mucha confianza, pero el ratoncito rechazó la propuesta diciendo que el sonido podría despertarla mientras estaba dormida.

Luego, su vecina, llegó un ratoncito. Ese ratón estaba tan enamorado de ella. Ese vecino también la saludó, pero el ratoncito dijo que lo lamentaba porque no podía entretenerlo ya que estaba tan ocupada en este momento. El vecino se puso muy triste y se fue.

El gato llegó y la saludó, y dijo que el ratoncito es tan deslumbrante que podría proponerle matrimonio de inmediato. El ratoncito le preguntó cómo le iría de noche, y el gato respondió: "¡Miau! ¡Miau! "En un sonido muy dulce. Entonces la rata dijo "sí". Antes del día de la boda, el gato le pidió al ratoncito que hiciera un picnic en un bosque. Mientras el gato preparaba el fuego, el ratoncito también preparó la mesa y la canasta pensando que había mucha comida almacenada adentro. La canasta estaba vacía, y solo un tenedor y un cuchillo estaban colocados sobre la mesa. El ratoncito le preguntó al gato sobre la comida, y el gato respondió: "¡Tú eres la comida, ratoncito!" Pero la rata vecina acudió al rescate. Sospechó al gato desde el principio y logró golpear la cola del gato con un palo y se salvó el ratoncito. Entonces la rata vecina le preguntó al ratoncito si quería casarse con él.

El ratoncito preguntó cómo le iría por la noche, la rata vecina respondió: "Dormiré y callaré la boca" y los dos se casaron y

vivieron felices para siempre."

In the English Language, the story goes like this:

Long ago, there lives a very self-confident mouse. One day, the little mouse swept her house and accidentally, she found a gold coin on the floor. She then picked it and thought of things she would do with that gold coin. Here are some of the choices she had in mind: First, she said she could spend it all in candies. But then, she said she is unsure because the candies might cause stomachache. She then thought of buying pins instead, but then again, she said those pins might prick her skin and eventually hurt her. And then the little mouse decided to buy a silk ribbon in order to make some bows. She then wears the ribbon on her head and bows on her tail; then she eventually proceeded with the balcony to display her new ribbon and bow.

A donkey approached her and greeted her good morning. He even told the little mouse that she is so beautiful. The little mouse responded with a thanks and a very confident voice. The donkey proposed to her, asking to marry him. The little mouse said her answer depends on how he will do at night. The donkey answered, "hiooo, hiooo!" But the little mouse responded with a "no" because she said the donkey will scare her. The donkey was heartbroken, and that was the time when the rooster arrived. The rooster greeted the little mouse and proceeded with a marriage proposal. The little mouse said her answer would depend on how the rooster is doing at night. The rooster answered, "Kikirikiii, kikirikiii!!!" The rooster was also so confident, but the little mouse declined the proposal saying that sound might wake her up while asleep.

Then her neighbor, a little mouse arrived. That mouse was so in love with her. That neighbor greeted her as well, but the little mouse said she is sorry because she cannot entertain him since she is so busy as of the moment. The neighbor became so sad and walked away.

The cat arrived and greeted her, and he said the little mouse is so dazzling that he could propose for a marriage right away. The little mouse asked how he will do at night, and the cat answered, “Meow! Meow!” in a very sweet sound. Then the rat said, “yes.” Before the wedding day, the cat asked the little mouse to have a picnic date in a forest. While the cat was preparing the fire, the little mouse also prepared the table and the basket thinking that there is a lot of food stored inside. The basket was empty, and only a fork and a knife were placed on the table. The little mouse asked the cat about the food, and the cat answered, “You are the food, little mouse!” But the neighbor rat came to the rescue. He suspected the cat from the very beginning and managed to strike the cat’s tail with a stick, and the little mouse was saved. Then the neighbor rat asked the little mouse if she wants to marry him.

The little mouse asked about how he will do at night, the neighbor rat answered back, “I will just sleep and shut my mouth up” and the two got married and lived happily ever after.”

Preguntas (Questions) and Respuestas (Answers)

The only *pregunta* or question in this short story is to give the *analisis de sus valores* and that is the following:

“El alumno podrá aprender que el orgullo es una actitud negativa. En la historia anterior, el ratoncito está tan seguro de que rechazó a sus pretendientes para dar paso al gato que pensó que era tan

dulce. Pero, ella terminó casi comida por el gato hambriento. Otros valores aprendidos en este cuento es el amor y la humildad del gato vecino debido al amor incondicional que manifestó a pesar del rechazo.”

The *respuesta* or answer is this:

The student can learn that pride is a negative attitude. In the previous story, the little mouse is so sure that he rejected his suitors to make way for the cat that he thought was so sweet. But, she ended up almost eaten by the hungry cat. Other values learned in this story is the love and humility of the neighboring cat due to the unconditional love that manifested despite the rejection.

**Analysis, Insights, and Values about the Short
Story**
***(Análisis, Percepciones y Valores Sobre La Historia
Corta)***

The student will be able to learn that pride is a negative attitude. In the above story, the little mouse is so confident that she rejected her suitors in order to give way to the cat, which she thought was so sweet. But, she ended up almost eaten by the hungry cat. Another values learned in this short story is love and humility on the part of the neighbor cat because of the unconditional love he manifested despite rejection. *(El alumno podrá aprender que el orgullo es una actitud negativa. En la historia anterior, el ratoncito está tan seguro de que rechazó a sus pretendientes para dar paso al gato que pensó que era tan dulce. Pero, ella terminó casi comida por el gato hambriento. Otros valores aprendidos en este cuento es el*

amor y la humildad del gato vecino debido al amor incondicional que manifestó a pesar del rechazo.)

Insights about the Short Story as a Method of Learning Spanish Language ***(Perspectivas Sobre La Historia Corta Como Método De Aprendizaje Del Idioma Español)***

The story about the little mouse is a lot longer compared to the first short story in Chapter I. As such; the learner will be able to familiarize himself with the Spanish Language. The sole question in this short story gives clarity to the minds of the beginners because it discusses the values gathered through reading the short story. *(La historia sobre el ratoncito es mucho más larga en comparación con la primera historia corta del Capítulo I. Como tal, el alumno podrá familiarizarse con el idioma español. La única pregunta en esta historia corta da claridad a las mentes de los principiantes porque discute los valores reunidos al leer la historia corta.)*

Like the first short story in Chapter I, the story may sound some sort of negative on the part of the main character, but these two are being widely used in children's book since they are equipped with a lot of good morals and values. *(Al igual que la primera historia corta en el Capítulo I, la historia puede sonar algo negativa por parte del personaje principal, pero estos dos están siendo ampliamente utilizados en el libro para niños, ya que están equipados con una gran cantidad de buenas costumbres y valores.)*

C. LA SIGUANABA (THE SIGUANABA)

“La Siguanaba” is one of the most effective Spanish short stories which can be used by learners in their journey towards learning the Spanish Language. The story goes like this: (“La Siguanaba” es una de las historias cortas en español más efectivas que los estudiantes pueden utilizar en su viaje hacia el aprendizaje del idioma español. La historia va así:)

“La Siguanaba es una leyenda de una bella mujer conocida como Sihuehuet que creó una aventura ilícita con el hijo de Tlaloc, un dios conocido. Fuera de su aventura, Sihuehuet quedó embarazada. Dio a luz a su único hijo conocido como Cipitio, pero se convirtió en una mala madre porque lo dejó solo solo para estar con su amante. Cipitio comió ceniza para ganarse la vida porque no tiene con quién contar.

Luego, Tlaloc descubrió lo que le sucedió a Cipitio, que su madre dejó solo. Debido a esto, Tlaloc maldijo a Sihuehuet y, a partir de entonces, la llamaron Sihuanaba o la horrible mujer. Al principio, los hombres se sentirán atraídos por su belleza, pero cuando se dé la vuelta, su apariencia se volverá horrible. La maldición incluye viajar por la ciudad toda la noche y acercarse a hombres que también viajan solos por la noche.

Hay historias sobre la aparición de Sihuehuet a lo largo de los arroyos de El Salvador supuestamente lavando ropa y siempre buscando a su hijo perdido, Cipitio. Por otro lado, Cipitio fue recompensado por Tlaloc con una juventud eterna a cambio de su sufrimiento cuando su madre lo dejó solo.

Otra historia es sobre la trampa que Sihuehuet ha hecho para atrapar hombres. Algunos hombres la vieron bañándose y peinándose el pelo largo, vistiendo traje de noche. Entonces

muchos hombres se volvieron locos por su belleza. Pero cuando se acercó, se convirtió en una mujer horrible.

Para luchar contra la pérdida anticipada de almas, la víctima debe morder una cruz o incluso una medalla y rezar para pedirle ayuda a Dios. Otra historia mencionó que para asustar a Sihuehuet, estas palabras deben decirse en su rostro: "Adiós, comadre Maria, patas de pollo secas" (6 palabras) y el efecto es que Sihuehuet correrá tan rápido como pueda.

Otra forma de asustar a la horrible dama es acercarse a ella tanto como pueda, luego debe tirar todo su cuerpo al suelo mientras mira al cielo, luego la mano debe estirarse para tocar su cabello. Una vez que Sihuehuet lo haya visto, se asustará.

Por último, la víctima debe usar un cepillo y, a medida que se usa, Sihuehuet sentirá que le tiran del cabello y, según la leyenda, es la forma más efectiva de deshacerse de la horrible mujer.”

In English translation, the story goes like this:

The Siguanaba is a legend of a beautiful woman known as Sihuehuet who created an illicit affair with the son of Tlaloc, a known god. Out of their affair, Sihuehuet became pregnant. She gave birth to her only son known as Cipitio, but she, became a bad mother because she left him all alone only to be with her lover. Cipitio ate ash for a living because he has no one to count on to.

Tlaloc then discovered what happened to Cipitio, which was left alone by his mother. Because of this, Tlaloc cursed Sihuehuet, and from then on, she was called as *Sihuanaba* or the horrible woman. At first, men will get enticed by her beauty, but as she turns around, her appearance will become horrible. The curse includes travelling

around the city all night and approaching men who are likewise travelling alone at night.

There are stories about Sihuehuet's appearance along the streams of El Salvador allegedly washing clothes and always looking for his long lost son, Cipitio. On the other hand, Cipitio was rewarded by Tlaloc with forever youth in exchange for his suffering when he was left all alone by his mother.

Another story is about the trap Sihuehuet has made in order to catch men. Some men saw her bathing and combing her long hair, wearing a night gown. Then a lot of men went crazy over her beauty. But when approached, she turned into a horrible woman.

To fight the anticipated losing of the soul, the victim must bite a cross or even a medal and pray for guidance to God. Another tale mentioned that in order to scare Sihuehuet, these words must be said on her face, "*Goodbye, comadre Maria, dry chicken feet*" (6 words) and the effect is that Sihuehuet will run as fast as she can.

Another way to scare the horrible lady is to get close to her as much as he can, then he must throw his entire body into the ground as he faces the sky, then the hand must be stretched in order to touch his hair. Once Sihuehuet saw it, she will get scared.

Lastly, the victim must use a brush, and as the brush is being used, Sihuehuet will feel that her hair is being pulled and according to the legend, it is the most effective way of getting rid of the horrible lady.

Preguntas (Questions) and Respuestas (Answers)

P1: *La única pregunta que debe responderse aquí es, "¿cuáles son las lecciones aprendidas en el cuento?"* (The only question to be answered here is, "what are the lessons learned in the short story?")

R1: *La única lección adquirida en esta historia es que las madres deben saber ser responsables. Alimentar a su hijo, abrazarlo, amarlo. El abandono no es una de las opciones. En esta historia, Cipitio no debe haber experimentado todos los sufrimientos si su madre solo sabe cómo ser responsable. Un amante no es nada comparado con un hijo porque un hijo vino de su útero. Ella llevó a Capitio en su matriz por un largo período de tiempo, y no debe haber nadie para reemplazarlo. Demasiado tarde porque porque, el dios ya la castigó con fealdad mientras que Capitio fue recompensado con la eterna juventud.*

(The only lesson acquired in this story is that mothers must know how to be responsible. Feed her child, cuddle her child, love her child. Abandonment is not one of the choices. In this story, Cipitio must have not experienced all the sufferings if his mother only knows how to be responsible. A lover is nothing compared to a son because a son came from her womb. She carried Capitio in her womb for a long period of time, and there must be no one to replace him. Too late because God has already punished her with ugliness while Capitio was rewarded with eternal youth.)

D. CAYENDO HACIA LA TIERRA (FALLING TOWARDS EARTH)

This is a very good Spanish short story that beginners may consider reading if they really want to learn the language using the most effective method, reading. The story goes like this: *(Este es un cuento muy bueno en español que los principiantes pueden considerar leer si realmente quieren aprender el idioma usando el método más efectivo, la lectura. La historia va así:)*

“El sentimiento que tengo ahora es una combinación de ansiedad, miedo... mucho miedo. Tal vez, este será el día en que moriré. La gente, incluido mi hermano, me dijo que es muy divertido, pero ahora que ya lo he probado, ya no le creo. No es una buena idea.

No lo puedo obtener. ¿Por qué es tan importante saltar desde un avión y volar en el cielo? Las personas en mi lugar de trabajo son muy felices, y aquí me estoy ahogando de mi propio nerviosismo. Entramos en el avión. Todos están muy emocionados excepto yo. El instructor me preguntó si estoy bien, y yo dije que sí, pero eso no es cierto. Tengo más que miedo.

Mi instructor dijo que debo moverme hacia la puerta, pero no puedo ni una sola parte de mi cuerpo. Mis piernas no se pueden mover, así que simplemente me arrastré hacia la puerta. Luego, después de eso, revisó todo antes de abrir la puerta por razones de seguridad. Cuando se abrió la puerta, se nos acercó el aire y un sonido muy ruidoso.

Dios mío, ya me estoy separando del avión. Ya me estoy volviendo loco! Mi estómago se trastorna igual que mi mente y mi corazón. Pero eso es todo al principio: el miedo, el nerviosismo, ahora están desapareciendo. Lo que los reemplaza es el disfrute. Lo estoy amando. Ahora estoy sonriendo e incluso riendo. Es una experiencia que siempre atesoraré.

Entonces el paracaídas nos salvó de caer. Fue abierto y todo se vuelve controlable ya. La vista es muy hermosa, y estoy muy contento de estar vivo. Ya puedo ver el suelo, y cuando se acerca a mi cuerpo, puedo decir que definitivamente repetiré lo que hice.”

In English, the story goes like this:

“The feeling I have right now is a combination of anxiety, fear... a lot of fear. Perhaps, this will be the day that I will die. People, including my brother, told me that it is so fun, but now that I have tried it already, I do not believe him anymore. It is not a good idea.

I cannot get it. Why is it so important to jump from a plane and fly in the sky? People in my workplace are so happy, and here I am drowning from my own nervousness. We proceeded inside the plane. Everyone is so excited, except me. The instructor asked me if I am alright, and I said yes, but that is not true. I am more than afraid.

My instructor said I must move to the door, but I cannot even move even a single part of my body. My legs cannot be moved, so I just crawled towards the door. Then after that, he checked everything before opening the door for safety purposes. When the door was opened, we were approached by air and a very noisy sound.

Oh my God, I am already detaching myself from the plane. I am going crazy already! My stomach becomes upset same as my mind and heart. But those are all at first – the fear, the nervousness, now they are disappearing. What replaces them is enjoyment. I am loving it. I am now smiling and even laughing. It is an experience that I will forever treasure.

Then the parachute saved us from falling. It was opened, and everything becomes controllable already. The view is very beautiful, and I am so glad I am alive. I can already see the ground, and as it approaches my body, I can say I will definitely repeat what I did.”

Preguntas (Questions) and Respuestas (Answers)

His friends asked him after trying the skydiving experience.

P1: *¿Estás dispuesto a correr riesgos? (Are you willing to take risks?)*

R1: *Ahora que he intentado hacer paracaidismo, puedo decir que ya puedo correr riesgos porque todas las inhibiciones solo están disponibles durante la primera vez. Tan pronto como empiezo a volar, puedo decir que puedo hacer todas las cosas porque estoy vivo. (Now that I have tried skydiving, I can say I can already take risks because all the inhibitions are only available during the first time. As soon as I start flying, I can say that I can do all things because I am alive.)*

P2: *¿Cómo te sentiste antes de probar la experiencia? (How did you feel before trying the experience?)*

R2: *Al principio, realmente sentí que mis huesos se rompían debido al nerviosismo. No podía imaginar que pudiera estar tan nervioso y asustado. Todo lo que hice fue imaginar lo que podría suceder si algo sale mal. (At first, I really felt my bones are cracking due to nervousness. I could not imagine that I can be that nervous and afraid. All I did is to imagine what could possibly happen if anything goes wrong.)*

P3: *¿Cómo te sentiste después de probarlo? ¿Cómo compararás tus sentimientos antes y después de probarlo? (How did you feel after trying it? How will you compare your feeling before and after trying it?)*

R3: *Después de intentarlo, me sentí aliviado. Todos mis miedos anteriores fueron reemplazados por el disfrute y comencé a amar mi existencia. También comencé a amar el medio ambiente, la vista verde que veo mientras vuelo. Mi vida es de hecho una bendición del Creador. Sí, definitivamente puedo comparar el sentimiento antes y después de probarlo. Antes, todo lo que reinaba en mi*

mente era miedo y ansiedad, pero después de eso, lentamente me volví feliz y decidí intentarlo de nuevo. La felicidad versus el miedo, por supuesto, elegiré la felicidad.

(After trying it, I felt relieved. All my previous fears were replaced with enjoyment, and I just started loving my existence. I also started loving the environment, the green view that I watch as I fly. My life is indeed a blessing from the Creator. Yes, I can definitely compare the feeling before and after trying it. Before, all that was reigning in my mind is fear and anxiety. But after it, I slowly became happy, and outright, I have decided to try it again. Happiness versus fear, of course, I will choose happiness.)

P4: *¿Alentarás a tus amigos a probarlo también?* (Will you encourage your friends to try it too?)

R4: *Sí. Se lo recomendaré a todos mis amigos. También es genial experimentar este tipo de actividad que cambia la vida.* (Yes. I will recommend it to all my friends. It is also great to experience this kind of life changing activity.)

P5: *¿Qué viste mientras volabas?* (What did you see while flying?)

R5: *Vi árboles verdes, montañas, pájaros disfrutando del aire con sus amigos y familiares, y mucha felicidad.* (I saw green trees, mountains, birds enjoying the air with their friends and families, and a lot of happiness.)

P6: *¿Qué valores aprendiste de la experiencia de volar desde el avión?* (What values did you learn from the experience of flying from the plane?)

R6: *Aprendí muchos valores. Primero, aprendí a confiar en mi instructor porque si no confías en tu instructor, no podrás comenzar todo. No ha experimentado la belleza de la experiencia*

si al principio no confiaba en su instructor. Segundo, aprendí a creer en mí mismo. La confianza en mí mismo se desarrolló en mí mientras intentaba este tipo de experiencia. Normalmente no lo hago, es el interés de mi hermano paracaidismo. Solo estoy escuchando sus historias y aliento. En tercer lugar, aprendí unos buenos valores y es aprovechar el día. Como dice el cliché, "carpe diem" aprovechando el día es algo bueno que hacer cuando aún eres joven. Al menos, cuando envejeces, tienes mucho para volver y contarles a tus nietos, y también alentarlos a aprovechar el día.

(I learned a lot of values. First, I learned to **trust** my instructor because if you do not trust your instructor, you cannot be able to start everything. You have not experienced the beauty of the experience if at first, you did not trust your instructor. Second, I learned to **believe in myself**. Self-confidence has been developed in me while I tried this kind of experience. I do not usually do it; it is my brother's interest to skydive. I am just listening to his stories and encouragement. Third, I learned one good values, and that is **to seize the day**. As the cliché goes, "carpe diem" seizing the day is indeed a good thing to do while you are still young. At least, when you grow old, you have a lot to go back to and tell your grandchildren, and also encourage them to seize the day.)

Insights about the Short Story as a Method of Learning Spanish Language

(Perspectivas Sobre La Historia Corta Como Método De Aprendizaje Del Idioma Español)

The story *Cayendo Hacia La Tierra* teaches the students new values that they may use in their daily lives. (*La historia Cayendo*

Hacia La Tierra enseña a los estudiantes nuevos valores que pueden usar en su vida diaria.)

Confidence – If the character in the short story did not learn how to trust himself, he should have not experienced everything that he is enjoying right now. Sometimes, one thing that is hindering a person from enjoying life is his loss of confidence. For example, he wants to learn a new hobby, but he cannot even make a single move because of fear that he cannot make it. *(Confianza: si el personaje del cuento no aprendió a confiar en sí mismo, no debería haber experimentado todo lo que está disfrutando en este momento. A veces, una cosa que impide que una persona disfrute de la vida es su pérdida de confianza. Por ejemplo, quiere aprender un nuevo pasatiempo, pero ni siquiera puede hacer un solo movimiento por temor a no poder hacerlo.)*

Applying these values in learning the Spanish Language through reading short stories, the beginner must be confident enough to believe that everything can be achieved and there is no room for failure. *(Aplicando estos valores en el aprendizaje del idioma español a través de la lectura de cuentos, el principiante debe tener la confianza suficiente para creer que todo se puede lograr y que no hay lugar para el fracaso.)*

The character also applied confidence towards another person. He trusted his instructor in checking everything in him for safety purposes. Also, he trusted him in assisting him as he jumped from the plane. Applying this in learning the Spanish Language also, the beginner must put his trust in the material that he is reading. Once the learner decides to read a certain book, stick to that. He does not need to find a lot of books or references because it will only leave him confused of everything he has read. *(El personaje también*

aplicó confianza hacia otra persona. Confió en su instructor para verificar todo en él por motivos de seguridad. Además, confiaba en él para ayudarlo mientras saltaba del avión. Aplicando esto también en el aprendizaje del idioma español, el principiante debe confiar en el material que está leyendo. Una vez que el alumno decida leer cierto libro, quédese con eso. No necesita encontrar muchos libros o referencias porque solo lo dejará confundido de todo lo que ha leído.)

Discipline – The character in this short story manifested these values. Discipline is always the key to success. For instance, the character did not choose to practice self-control, then his anxiety must have taken over him. *(Disciplina: el personaje de esta historia corta manifestó estos valores. La disciplina es siempre la clave del éxito. Por ejemplo, el personaje no eligió practicar el autocontrol, entonces su ansiedad debe haberlo dominado.)*

Applying this in one's learning process, discipline must always be put first. He must allot an hour everyday to read a short story about the Spanish Language and repeat it for mastery. It is also a must to read all the *preguntas* and *respuestas* (questions and answers) for familiarity with the words used. *(Aplicando esto en el proceso de aprendizaje, la disciplina siempre debe ser lo primero. Debe dedicar una hora todos los días para leer un cuento sobre el idioma español y repetirlo para dominarlo. También es imprescindible leer todas las preguntas y respuestas para conocer las palabras utilizadas.)*

E. NO PUEDE SER POSIBLE (IT CAN'T BE POSSIBLE)

The Spanish short story that is featured in this Chapter is a good source of Spanish Language ideas. In the Spanish Language, the story goes like this: *(El cuento en español que se presenta en este Capítulo es una buena fuente de ideas en español. En español, la historia es así:)*

“La verdad es que el cambio puede suceder incluso en tu propia vida. Puede dar un giro que está muy lejos de lo que esperaba que fuera su vida. Ese día exacto, me estaba quedando dentro de la casa de nuestros padres. No es normal que esté presente porque solo los veo una vez en todo el año ya que viven lejos de los nuestros.

Si estoy aquí, me alegraría poder ayudar a mis padres. Hice la limpieza de la casa, lavé la ropa sucia y, después de todas esas tareas, descansé mi cuerpo en el sofá y vi algunos programas en la televisión que la mayoría de las veces me aburrían.

Mi madre es un gusano de libros en la mayor medida. Siempre la llevo dentro de la biblioteca, y supongo que las horas de viaje nos llevaron unos quince minutos desde nuestro punto de origen. Caminamos, y cada vez que llegamos aquí en la biblioteca, a ella le encantan los muchos libros. Yo también me volví muy feliz por dentro, incluso si mis brazos ya están cansados.

Dentro de la biblioteca, estaba arreglando los libros en el estante cuando vi a un hombre de unos 20 años mayor que yo. Nos vemos igual: los ojos, el cabello, la tez. Pensé que él es mi papá debido a la gran similitud. Debido a mi duda, corrí rápido hacia nuestra casa, busqué a mi mamá. Respiraba rápidamente y no podía respirar. Inmediatamente fui a la cocina y la encontré allí. Le

pregunté acerca de mi duda, y pude notar el cambio en su estado de ánimo, la expresión facial cambió automáticamente.

Le pregunté sobre cuál es la verdad sobre mi verdadero padre. Ella solo se rió y dijo que él no es mi padre, él es mi tío. Insistí y dije que somos muy similares, y ella dijo que es porque estamos relacionados. Mi papá no quiere ir a la biblioteca porque no están en buenos términos. Aparte de eso, no hay nada que no sepa.”

If translated in English, the story is like this:

“The truth is change may happen even in your own life. It may make a twist that is far from what you expected your life would be. That exact day, I was staying inside our parents’ abode. It is not ordinary that I am present because I only see them once in the entire year since they live far from ours.

If I am here, I would be glad if I could help my parents. I did the cleaning of the house, the washing of the dirty clothes, and after all those chores, I rested my body on the couch and watched some shows on the television which most of the time bored me.

My mother is a book worm to the highest extent. I am always bringing her inside the library, and I guess the travel hours took us around fifteen minutes from our point of origin. We walked, and every time we arrive here in the library, she becomes so fond of the many books. I too became so happy in the inside even if my arms are already tired.

Inside the library, I was fixing the books into the shelf when I saw a man at around 20 years older than me. We look the same – the eyes, the hair, the complexion. I would think he is my Dad because of the great similarity. Because of my doubt, I ran fast towards our

house, looked for my Mom. I was breathing rapidly, and I could not breathe. I immediately went to the kitchen and found her there. I asked her about my doubt, and I could notice the change in her mood, the facial expression automatically changed.

I asked her about what is the truth about my true father. She just laughed and said that he is not my father, he is my uncle. I insisted and said that we are very much similar, and she said it is because we are related. My Dad does not want to go to the library because they are not in good terms. Other than that, there is nothing I do not know.”

Preguntas (Questions) and Respuestas (Answers).

P1: *¿Cuál es la lección moral de la historia?* (What is the moral lesson of the story?)

R1: *La moraleja de la lección es que las personas deben aprender los hechos a través de la investigación que asumir un hecho que ni siquiera existe.* (The moral of the lesson is that people must learn the facts through investigation than assume a fact that does not even exist.)

P2: *¿Qué debe hacer un niño cuando sus padres y alguien tienen un malentendido?* (What must one child do when his parent and somebody has a misunderstanding?)

R2: *Si los padres no están de acuerdo con otro amigo o pariente, lo mejor para un niño es mediar. No debe unirse al desacuerdo porque eso es una pérdida de respeto no solo a los adversarios de sus padres sino también a sus padres principalmente.* (If parents have a disagreement with another friend or relative, the best thing for a child to do is to mediate. He must not join the disagreement

because that is loss of respect not only to his parents' adversaries but also to his parents primarily.)

Insights about the Short Story as a Method of Learning Spanish Language **(*Perspectivas Sobre La Historia Corta Como Método De Aprendizaje Del Idioma Español*)**

In the story, the grammar used is very simple same with the tenses used. It is either present or past tense, which the students will find easy to understand. On the other hand, the story is very relatable because there are relatives who are closely resembled. Many also would think that they are adopted because they resemble more with other people than with their parents. *(En la historia, la gramática utilizada es muy simple, igual que los tiempos verbales utilizados. Es en tiempo presente o pasado, que los estudiantes encontrarán fácil de entender. Por otro lado, la historia es muy relatable porque hay familiares que se parecen mucho. Muchos también pensarían que son adoptados porque se parecen más a otras personas que a sus padres.)*

F. CIMA DEL MUNDO (TOP OF THE WORLD)

The story that will be featured in this Chapter is one of the best short stories ever told. In Spanish Language, it is stated as follows: *(La historia que se presentará en este Capítulo es una de las mejores historias cortas jamás contadas. En idioma español, se establece lo siguiente:)*

“¡He esperado este día, 23 de mayo! Sin embargo, ya son las 8:00 de la mañana, y todavía estoy atrapado aquí en mi cama. El comienzo habitual de mi día es a las 8:30 de la mañana, pero por

ahora, supongo que voy a llegar tarde al trabajo. Pero bueno, ¡es el 23 de mayo! Y no me importa si llegaré tarde.

¡Hoy tenemos un gran día! El sol brilla y no hay nubes en el cielo, lo que significa que no hay una sola posibilidad de lluvia. Puedo ver los perros y los gatos y me hace muy feliz. ¡Incluso los pájaros cantan felices en la cima de los árboles y realmente se siente bien! Entré en mi auto, encendí la radio y ¡adivina qué! Esa fue mi canción favorita sonando en la radio. ¡Supongo que es tan perfecto para mí! Ahora voy a trabajar y, como siempre, estoy atrapado en medio del tráfico, pero está bien.

Durante los días normales, me enojaba mucho porque llego tarde. Pero ahora es diferente, incluso si voy a llegar tarde, estoy feliz. Mi automóvil no es tan bueno, no hay una máquina de aire acondicionado instalada y, de hecho, hace mucho calor, pero todavía estoy sonriendo. ¿Razón? ¡Es el 23 de mayo y estoy muy feliz! Por fin, estoy aquí en mi oficina. Lo primero que hice fue ver mi reflejo en el espejo. Ahora me veo diferente, creo que me veo bien hoy, e incluso mejor que antes. Al acercarme a mi jefe, puedo ver que no está contento de que llegue tarde otra vez.

Mi jefe me preguntó: "¿Qué hora es ahora?"

Le respondí: "Señor, el tiempo no es importante ahora".

Estaba sorprendido por mi respuesta. Pero seguía preguntando, hizo otra pregunta: "¿A qué hora comenzarás a trabajar?"

Le respondí: "¡Señor, nunca!"

De nuevo, está confundido. Pero no deja de preguntar: "¿Qué significa" nunca "?"

Le respondí: "Señor, el significado de" nunca "nunca es. Es decir, no comenzaré a trabajar, ni hoy ni nunca. Ahora señor,

¿comprende?

Ese fue el momento en que se enoja. Frunció el ceño y me preguntó: "¿Qué acabas de decir? ¿Sigues interesado en tu trabajo?"

También me sorprendió mi respuesta: "Nunca. Nunca quise este trabajo. ¿Este trabajo que me da estrés todo el día? ¿Este trabajo es más que mi salario? No quiero este trabajo, señor. Eres muy desconsiderado. ¡Lo dejo! ¡Renuncio! Si estás escuchando, gracias por ello. Pero si me disculpa, he terminado con este trabajo. ¡Tengo muchas cosas que hacer!"

Mientras empacaba mis cosas, esperaba que mi jefe me gritara e incluso me dijera muchas palabras insultantes. Pero, él solo me mira haciendo el empaque de mis cosas y pertenencias personales. Mis compañeros de trabajo también me ven hacer lo que estoy haciendo. ¡Finalmente! Termine. Le dije a mi jefe: "Adiós, señor, y nunca lo volveré a ver". Abrí la puerta y sentí el aire fresco en mi cara, ¡y es tan perfecto!"

To be fully understood, there is an English translation of Cima Del Mundo, and here it is:

“I have waited for this day, May 23! However, it is already 8:00 in the morning, and I am still stuck here on my bed. The usual start of my day is 8:30 in the morning, but for now, I guess I am going to be late for work. But hey, it is May 23! And I do not care if I will be late.

Today, we have a great day! The sun shines bright, and there are no clouds at all in the sky, which means there is no single chance of raining. I can see the dogs and the cats, and it makes me so happy. Even the birds are happily singing on top of the trees, and it really

feels good! I rode inside my car, and turned the radio on, and guess what! That was my favorite song playing over the radio. I guess it is so perfect for me! I am now going to work, and as usual, I am stuck in the middle of the traffic, but it is alright.

During the ordinary days, I got so mad because I am late. But now is different, even if I am going to be late, I am happy. My car is not that good, no air-conditioning machine installed and it is indeed so hot, but I am still smiling. Reason? It is May 23, and I am so happy! At last, I am here at my office. The first thing I did is to see my reflection in the mirror. I look different now; I believe I look good today and even better than before. As I approach my boss, I can see that he is not happy that I am late again.

My boss asked me, “What time is it now?”

I answered him, “Sir, the time is not important now.”

He was shocked by my answer. But he still kept asking; he asked another question, “What time will you start working?”

I answered him, “Sir, never!”

Again, he is confused. But he does not stop asking, “What does ‘never’ mean?”

I answered, “Sir, the meaning of ‘never’ is not ever. Meaning, I will not start working, not today, not ever. Now Sir, do you understand?”

That was the time that he becomes angry. He frowned and asked me, “What did you just say? Are you still interested in your job?”

I was also shocked with my answer, “Never. I never wanted this work. This work that gives me stress all day? This work that is more than my salary? I do not want this job, Sir. You are so inconsiderate. I quit! I resign! If you are listening, thanks for

it. But if you may excuse me, I am finished with this work. I have a lot of things to do!”

As I pack my things, I was anticipating for my boss to yell at me and even tell me a lot of insulting words. But, he just watches me doing the packing of my things and personal belongings. My co-workers also watch me doing what I am doing. Finally! I am done. I said to my boss, “Good bye, Sir, and I will never see you again.” I opened the door and felt the fresh air on my face, and it is so perfect!”

Preguntas (Questions) and Respuestas (Answers).

P1: *¿Cuál es la lección en este cuento español?* (What is the lesson in this Spanish short story?)

R1: *La lección aquí es vivir la vida al máximo. Si estás aburrido con tu trabajo, tienes todas las decisiones en la vida. Puede dejarlo o puede elegir quedarse pero aprender a decir "No"* (The lesson here is to live life to the fullest. If you are bored with your job, you have all the decisions in life. You may quit it, or you may choose to stay but learn to say “No”.)

P2: *¿Desea permanecer en un trabajo específico que no sea propicio para el crecimiento pero que sea bien remunerado?* (Do you want to stay in a specific job that is not conducive for growth but is a nice-paying one?)

R2: *Entre un trabajo que paga bien y un trabajo propicio para el crecimiento, la mejor decisión es una combinación de ambos. Pero si una opción es suficiente, la mejor opción es dónde está tu corazón* (As between a job that is nice-paying and a job that is conducive for growth, the best decision is a combination of both.

But if one choice is enough, the better choice is where your heart is.)

Insights about the Short Story as a Method of Learning Spanish Language **(*Perspectivas Sobre La Historia Corta Como Método De Aprendizaje Del Idioma Español*)**

In this short story, you can easily learn the Spanish Language because of the good vibe that it gives. It does not pressure the student to learn the language easily. The story also is applicable to all; it may happen to you also because as a working person, there will always be bosses who are inconsiderate and does not care at all. *(En este cuento, puedes aprender fácilmente el idioma español debido a la buena vibra que brinda. No presiona al estudiante a aprender el idioma fácilmente. La historia también es aplicable a todos, puede sucederle a usted también porque, como persona trabajadora, siempre habrá jefes que sean desconsiderados y no les importe en absoluto.)*

Additionally, the tenses used are past and present which are understandable to the beginners. The immediately preceding sub-branch is also a good point of learning. The question and answer portion gives the students a slow process of understanding each word used. *(Además, los tiempos verbales utilizados son pasados y presentes, lo que es comprensible para los principiantes. La sub-rama inmediatamente anterior también es un buen punto de aprendizaje. La parte de preguntas y respuestas les da a los estudiantes un proceso lento de comprensión de cada palabra utilizada.)*

G.

UN DIA

DE SUERTE (ONE LUCKY DAY)

This short story is easier to understand for beginners compared to the first few short stories featured in the preceding Chapter. The reason for that is because it is designed for those non-Spanish students who want to learn Spanish from basics going to difficult phases. *(Este cuento es más fácil de entender para los principiantes en comparación con los primeros cuentos presentados en el Capítulo anterior. La razón de esto es porque está diseñado para aquellos estudiantes que no son españoles que quieren aprender español desde lo básico hasta las fases difíciles.)*

The Spanish version of this is here: *(La versión en español de esto está aquí:)*

“Hoy tenemos un día maravilloso. El sol brilla intensamente e incluso el taxista va a trabajar felizmente. La distancia de su trabajo desde su residencia es de aproximadamente quince minutos de viaje. Tal vez, ya puede adivinar qué tipo de trabajo tiene el taxista. Es operado por un pedal, y él está recorriendo a los turistas de un destino a otro. Ahora, ¿cuál es su trabajo? Tienes razón, él es un guía turístico. Como guía turístico, permite que sus huéspedes visiten el centro principal de la ciudad al mismo tiempo, el paseo marítimo. Puedes ver en las caras de los turistas que disfrutan lo que están viendo.

El conductor del taxi a pedales disfruta mucho de su trabajo. Dijo que ama su trabajo porque disfruta y ama ver caras felices al mismo tiempo, puede hacer ejercicio en el camino. Al estar ocupado y hacer ejercicio, cree que tiene el mejor trabajo en la Tierra porque también gana mucho dinero con él.

Un día, mientras el conductor del taxi a pedal disfruta de recorrer a sus invitados, un automóvil se le acerca en la intersección, lo que hace que el taxi se arruine y la gente lo vio debajo del automóvil de conducción rápida. Pero el conductor del taxi no pudo ser localizado. La gente se sorprendió y se puso muy preocupada y ansiosa porque el conductor es una muy buena persona. Buscaron por toda la escena del accidente pero no encontraron a nadie debajo. El impacto fue tan fuerte que la gente pensaría que el conductor del taxi ya está muerto. No sabían que el conductor del pedal tuvo tanta suerte. Debido al fuerte impacto causado por el accidente, el conductor del taxi fue empujado lejos de la escena del accidente, e incluso un solo hematoma no puede ser visible en su cuerpo.

La gente pensaría que es un milagro, y tanto el conductor de la ambulancia como el conductor del automóvil rápido no creyeron lo que acaba de suceder. Por otro lado, el taxista está tan agradecido que no sufrió ningún daño por el accidente. Ora mucho y da gracias al Uno de arriba por el milagro que acaba de suceder. Mientras está tan vivo, cree que su trabajo ya no se puede materializar y continuar porque el pedal de taxi ha sido totalmente dañado.”

On the other hand, the English translation of which is as follows:

“We have a very wonderful day today. The sun is shining brightly, and even the taxi rider is happily going to work. The distance of his work from his residence is approximately fifteen minutes of travel. Maybe, you can already take a guess of what kind of work does the taxi rider has. It is operated by a pedal, and he is touring the tourists from one destination to another. Now, what is his work? You are right; he is a tourist guide. As a tourist guide, he allows his

guests to visit the main town center at the same time, the waterfront. You can see on the faces of the tourists that they enjoy what they are seeing.

The pedal taxi rider enjoys his work much. He said he loves his work because he enjoys and loves seeing happy faces at the same time and that he is able to exercise along the way. Being busy and being able to exercise, he believes he has the best work on Earth because he also earns good money out of it.

One day, while the pedal taxi rider enjoys touring his guests, a car approaches him in the intersection causing the pedal taxi to be ruined, and the people saw it under the fast driving car. But the pedal taxi driver could not be located. The people were all shocked and became so worried and anxious because the driver is a very good person. They searched all over the accident scene, but they did not find anyone underneath. The impact was so hard that people would think that the pedal taxi driver is already dead. They did not know that the pedal driver was so lucky. Because of the hard impact caused by the accident, the pedal taxi driver was pushed away from the accident scene, and even a single bruise cannot be visible on his body.

People would think that it is a miracle, and both the ambulance driver and the fast car driver did not believe what just happened. On the other hand, the pedal taxi driver is so thankful that he did not suffer any damage out of the accident. He prays hard and gives thanks to the One above because of the miracle that just transpired. While he is so alive, he believes his work can no longer be materialized and continued because the pedal taxi has been totally damaged.”

Preguntas (Questions) and Respuestas (Answers).

P1: *Crees en la suerte?* (Do you believe in luck?)

R1: *La suerte es un concepto muy vago. Tal vez haya un pequeño punto de suerte en la vida, pero todos deben creer en las oraciones más que en la suerte.* (Luck is a very vague concept. Maybe there is a slight point of luck in one's life, but everybody must believe in prayers more than luck.)

P2: *Con respecto a lo que sucedió en la historia corta, ¿crees que hay un elemento de suerte involucrado aquí?* (Regarding what happened in the short story, do you believe there is an element of luck involved here?)

R2: *Creo que hay un ligero elemento de suerte en el cuento. Pero, lo más importante para creer es la oración. El conductor del taxi a pedales se salvó de una muerte inminente debido a su fe en el Uno de arriba. Él es un creyente de Dios más que la suerte. Todos los días, está agradecido de estar vivo y ofrece una sonrisa a sus clientes.* (I believe there is a slight element of luck in the short story. But, the most important thing to believe is prayer. The pedal taxi rider was saved from an impending death because of his faith to the One above. He is a believer of God more than luck. Everyday, he is thankful to be alive, and he offers a smile to his customers.)

Insights about the Short Story as a Method of Learning Spanish Language

(Perspectivas Sobre La Historia Corta Como Método De Aprendizaje Del Idioma Español)

As compared to the previous short stories featured in the preceding Chapter, this is the test of whether you believe in luck or not. By knowing your own stand on this issue, you will be able to have a

lot of reasons to speak the Spanish Language. The reason is that luck is a very broad topic which may be divided into different topics such as “Luck versus Faith” and others. *(En comparación con las historias cortas anteriores presentadas en el Capítulo anterior, esta es la prueba de si crees en la suerte o no. Al conocer su posición sobre este tema, podrá tener muchas razones para hablar español. La razón es que la suerte es un tema muy amplio que se puede dividir en diferentes temas como "Suerte versus fe" y otros.)*

As to the technicalities of language learning, you can see that the tense used since Chapter 1 (A) is present tense and third or second person. It is because students are prone to confusion, so there is a need for a simpler way of teaching them the Spanish Language.

H. LAVADORAS AFRICANAS (AFRICAN WASHING MACHINES)

This is an amazing Spanish short story about a kind of publicly accepted chore which has spread towards entire Africa, and you will be amazed of this. *(En cuanto a los tecnicismos del aprendizaje de idiomas, puede ver que el tiempo utilizado desde el Capítulo 1 (A) es tiempo presente y tercera o segunda persona. Debido a que los estudiantes son propensos a la confusión, existe la necesidad de una forma más sencilla de enseñarles el idioma español.)*

In Spanish, the story goes like this: *(En español, la historia es así:)*

“Hay un grupo de campistas que llegaron al sitio en África. Estaban allí para experimentar la cultura de África. David, uno de los campistas, decidió lavarse la camisa porque es muy vanidoso.

Quiere que toda su ropa esté limpia, incluso si están acampando en un lugar lejano como África. Buscó una lavadora pero no pudo encontrarla. Intentó preguntar a sus compañeros de campamento y amigos que viven en África si conocen a un buen operador de lavadora. Uno de esos amigos sugirió un grupo de lavadoras en África. David estuvo de acuerdo y habló con una de esas lavadoras, también estuvo de acuerdo con el precio e inmediatamente pagó el precio acordado. También dejó su camisa favorita para lavar.

Luego, al día siguiente, David y sus amigos y co-campistas se despertaron con la hermosa escena del campamento de Uganda. El río Nilo también estaba cerca y los campistas son muy afortunados de experimentar tanto la belleza del campamento de Uganda como la belleza majestuosa del río Nilo. Puedes sentir la verdadera sensación de los campistas una vez que estás allí, ya que el campamento solo tiene carpas y una sola barra. No tiene más remedio que quedarse afuera y disfrutar de las escenas que sus ojos pueden ver.

El día estuvo bien porque el equipo tiene un plan, y es montar el bote conocido como rápidos de quinto grado. Después de algunos encuentros en bote, descansaron y fue realmente un día divertido para pasar con amigos y compañeros de campamento. Mientras navegan sin problemas, pasaron junto a un grupo de niños que jugaban a lo largo del río. Además de los niños, los campistas vieron a las madres de los niños lavando la ropa en el río. Como no están acostumbrados a ver esto, se lo contaron a David. Cuando David giró la cabeza hacia la dirección, vio una sorpresa: su camisa favorita, colgada de una enorme roca. Estaba tan

irritado e incluso se enfrentó a las lavadoras que contrató para cuidar su camisa favorita.

Pero para su sorpresa, la camisa estaba muy limpia, fragante y no tenía ningún rasguño. Ese fue el momento en que decidió creer que la lavadora africana es una de las mejores lavadoras del mundo.”

In English, the version of this story is:

There is a group of campers who arrived at the site in Africa. They were there to experience the culture of Africa. David, one of the campers, decided to have his shirt washed because he is so vain. He wants all his clothes to be clean even if they are camping in a far place like Africa. He looked for a washing machine, but he could not find one. He tried asking his co-campers and friends who live in Africa if they know of a good washing machine operator. One of those friends suggested a group of washers in Africa. David agreed, and talked to one of those washers, agreed also as to the price, and immediately paid the agreed price. He also left his favorite shirt to be washed.

Then the day after, David and his friends and co-campers woke up to the beautiful scene of Uganda camping site. The Nile River was also nearby, and the campers are so lucky to experience both the beauty of the Uganda camping site and the Nile River's majestic beauty. You can feel the true camper feeling once you are there since the campsite only has tents and a single bar. You have no choice but to stay outside and enjoy the scenes that your eyes can see.

The day was fine because the team has one plan, and that is to ride the boat known as rapids of grade five. After some boat encounters, they rested, and it was really a fun day to spend with friends and

co-campers. While they are smooth sailing, they passed by a group of kids playing along the river. Besides the kids, the campers saw the kids' mothers washing the clothes in the river. Because they are not used to seeing this, they told David about it. When David turned his head towards the direction, he saw a surprise – his favorite shirt, hanging on a huge rock. He was so irritated and even confronted the washers that he hired to take care of his favorite shirt.

But to his surprise, the shirt was so clean, fragrant and has no single scratch. That was the time that he decided to believe that African washing machine is one of the best washing machines all over the world.

Preguntas (Questions) and Respuestas (Answers)

P1: *¿Cuál es la lección más importante aprendida en esta historia?*
(What is the most important lesson learned in this story?)

R1: *La mejor lección aprendida en esta historia es explorar el mundo y experimentar las normas y tradiciones de diferentes países. En esta historia, David ha aprendido algo hermoso sobre África, y es algo de lo que estará orgulloso.* (The best lesson learned in this story is to explore the world and experience the norms and traditions of different countries. In this story, David has learned something beautiful about Africa, and it is something that he will be proud of.)

P2: *¿Cuál es la tradición de África cuando se trata de lavadoras?*
(What is the tradition of Africa when it comes to washing machines?)

R2: *La tradición que se practica en África es la forma tradicional de lavar la ropa.* (The tradition being practiced in Africa is the

traditional way of washing clothes.)

Insights about the Short Story as a Method of Learning Spanish Language **(*Perspectivas Sobre La Historia Corta Como Método De Aprendizaje Del Idioma Español*)**

Reading a short story like this is a good method if you want to learn the Spanish Language in a short period of time. Although admittedly, learning Spanish Language takes time, but if you are going to use this method – which is reading short stories, then you will learn the language in a much shorter period of time. *(Leer una historia corta como esta es un buen método si quieres aprender español en un corto período de tiempo. Aunque es cierto que aprender el idioma español lleva tiempo, pero si vas a usar este método, que es leer cuentos cortos, aprenderás el idioma en un período de tiempo mucho más corto.)*

I. POR QUE YO? (WHY ME)

This short story is different from the aforementioned stories because it is somewhat comedy. It goes like this: *(Este cuento es diferente de los cuentos antes mencionados porque es algo cómico. Dice así:)*

Spanish Version: *(Version en español:)* “Un día, un hombre camina en un modo relajado, y no está trabajando hoy porque es su cumpleaños. Le dio hambre, así que pasó por un restaurante chino que sirve la mejor comida que más le gusta. Bebe agua primero mientras espera la comida, y cuando se sirve, la comida está muy caliente. Entonces, espera nuevamente a que se enfríe, y mientras

esperaba, tomó una galleta de la fortuna y leyó lo que está escrito en ella: “Salga del área ahora. Tu día se arruinará si no te vas.

Al leerlo, inmediatamente se sintió nervioso y miró a su alrededor. No hay clientes en el restaurante que no sean él. Al mirar todo el lugar, se dio cuenta de que había un automóvil estacionado frente al restaurante. No hay nada aparte del auto. Se puso nervioso, así que inmediatamente se levantó y se alejó del auto. Luego, el motor del automóvil ruge detrás del hombre, lo que significa que lo sigue el automóvil. Él continuó corriendo rápido contra el auto que se acercaba rápidamente. Ya podía sentir los latidos del corazón y podía oírlo más rápido que antes. El está muy nervioso.

Mientras corre rápido, vio a un grupo de policías y pidió ayuda. Desafortunadamente, los policías no pudieron escuchar lo que está diciendo. Entonces, él no tiene nada que hacer sino correr nuevamente. Él ya puede ver su casa desde lejos, por lo que incluso corre más rápido que nunca. El auto también lo siguió. Ese fue el momento en que decidió correr de la manera más rápida que pudo. Pero, para su consternación, se dejó caer del piso y los dos hombres dentro del auto lo recogieron. Lo acompañaron hasta las puertas de su casa. Y cuando se abrió la puerta, escuchó gente cantando una canción de cumpleaños, y estaban muy felices. Recordó que es su cumpleaños y todos ellos son parte de una gran sorpresa. Está enojado y feliz combinado, mientras su esposa se acerca a él y lo abraza fuerte. Ella lo saludó feliz cumpleaños y él sonrió.

Comieron la comida y los pasteles preparados y bebieron vino como una forma de celebración.”

English Translation: One day, a man is walking in a relaxed mode, and he is not working today because it is his birthday. He got hungry, so he dropped by at a Chinese Restaurant serving the best food that he likes most. He drinks water first while waiting for the food, and when served, the food is so hot. So, he waits again for it to cool, and while waiting, he picked up a fortune cookie and read what is written on it – *“Leave the area now. Your day will be ruined if you will not leave.”*

Upon reading it, he immediately felt nervous and looked around the area. There are no customers in the restaurant other than him. Upon gazing at the entire place, he noticed that a car is parked in front of the restaurant. There is nothing there aside from the car. He got nervous, so he immediately stood and walked away from the car. Then the car engine roars behind the man, which means that he is being followed by the car. He continued to run fast against the car fast approaching him. He could already feel the heart beat and could hear it as fast as before. He is very nervous.

As he runs fast, he saw a group of policemen, and he shouted for help. Unfortunately, the policemen could not hear what he is saying. So, he does not have anything to do but to run again. He can already see his house from afar, so he even runs faster than ever. The car also followed him. That was the time that he decided to run the fastest way he could. But, to his dismay, he dropped off the floor, and the two men inside the car picked him up. They accompanied him to the doorsteps of his house. And when the door was opened, he heard people inside singing a birthday song, and they were so happy. He remembered it is his birthday, and all of those are a part of a big surprise. He is mad and happy combined,

as his wife approaches him and hugged him tight. She greeted him happy birthday, and he smiled.

They ate the food and cakes prepared and drink wine as a form of celebration.

Preguntas (Questions) and Respuestas (Answers)

P1: *¿Cuál es la ocasión en la historia?* (What is the occasion in the story?)

R1: *La ocasión en la historia es el cumpleaños del personaje principal.* (The occasion in the story is the birthday of the main character)

P2: *¿Cuál es la esencia del cuento?* (What is the gist of the short story?)

R2: *La esencia del cuento es la "sorpresa" para el celebrante del cumpleaños de su esposa y familia.* (The gist of the short story is the “surprise” for the birthday celebrant by his wife and family.)

P3: *¿Qué harás si te enfrentas a dos hombres desconocidos que viajan en un automóvil desconocido?* (What will you do if you will be confronted with two unknown men riding an unknown car?)

R3: *Si eso sucede, lo mejor que puede hacer es correr rápido hacia una estación de policía y decir todo lo que le está sucediendo que lo llevará a la estación .* (If that will happen, the best thing to do is to run fast towards a police station and state everything that is happening to you leading you towards the station.)

J. SI SI SI (YES YES YES)

This kind of story is not only applicable to Spanish Language beginners but also in children whose first language is not Spanish. As the first few stories, you will be able to read the Spanish

version, and it will be followed by English version. (*Este tipo de historia no solo es aplicable en principiantes en español, sino también en niños cuyo primer idioma no es el español. Al igual que las primeras historias, podrá leer la versión en español y le seguirá la versión en inglés.*)

“En la parte baja de Chile y Argentina, encontrarás un destino famoso especialmente diseñado para excursionistas. Es conocida como la Patagonia. Dado que Patagonia es un lugar muy pequeño, está diseñado exclusivamente para practicar senderismo. Debe recordar que la Patagonia se encuentra en el sur de Chile y Argentina, pero también hay lugares para practicar senderismo en Chile y lugares para practicar senderismo en Argentina también. Por ejemplo, en Argentina, un famoso lugar de senderismo es conocido como El Chaltén. Si desea ir a El Chaltén, el modo de transporte es en avión o incluso en autobús.

La historia que leerá involucra lo que sucedió en los autobuses durante un día normal.

Un día, hay un autobús con destino a El Chaltén. Las personas que viajan en el autobús no se hablan entre sí, sino que utilizan sus cámaras para capturar escenas y vistas. Una de las vistas que quitan el aliento es el llamado Monte Fitz Roy, que se puede ver claramente desde el autobús. La sonrisa del conductor del autobús no se puede quitar de su rostro porque está muy feliz de ver a los pasajeros tomando fotos y disfrutando de los lugares pintorescos. Cuando el autobús se detuvo, los pasajeros saltaron inmediatamente del autobús y tomaron fotos una por una.

Las personas en el autobús estaban muy contentas por la experiencia que les dio el conductor. Todavía no han llegado a El

Chaltén, pero ya están satisfechos con la vista por la que están pasando. El conductor dijo: "De nada" y continuó conduciendo hacia el destino. De repente, pasaron por un pequeño pueblo y nuevamente, quedaron tan asombrados por las hermosas escenas en ese lugar. Luego, el conductor se detuvo en un hotel, pero un turista estadounidense le preguntó al conductor si el hotel es Rancho Grande. El conductor no pudo responder porque es español y no habla inglés. Entonces, el turista estadounidense preguntó: "¿Dónde está el albergue Rancho Grande?" Y el conductor respondió: "¿Qué albergue?", Entonces el turista estadounidense respondió: "Sí". El conductor le preguntó al turista estadounidense: "¿Puede repetir mi nombre de nuevo?" y este último respondió: " Sí ". El conductor volvió a preguntar: " ¿Qué es de nuevo?" y el turista respondió: " Sí ". Y así, el conductor concluyó que el turista estadounidense solo sabe hablar un poco de español pero no entiende completamente el idioma ”.

In English, the story will be like this:

“In the lower part of Chile and Argentina, you will find a famous destination, especially designed for hikers. It is known as Patagonia. Since Patagonia is a very small place, it is solely designed for hiking purposes. You have to remember that Patagonia is located in the South of Chile and Argentina, but there are also hiking places in Chile and hiking places in Argentina also. For instance, in Argentina, one famous hiking place is known as El Chalten. If you want to go to El Chalten, the mode of transportation is either plane or even bus.

The story that you will read involves what happened in buses during an ordinary day.

One day, there is a bus bound to El Chalten. People riding the bus are not talking to each other; instead, they are busily using their cameras to capture scenes and views. One of the views taking their breath away is the so-called Mount Fitz Roy, which can be gazed clearly from the bus. The bus driver's smile cannot be taken away from his face because he is so happy seeing the passengers taking photos and enjoying the scenic places. As the bus stopped, the passengers immediately jumped off the bus and took pictures one by one.

The people on the bus were very glad because of the experience given to them by the driver. They have not reached El Chalten yet, but they are already satisfied with the view they are passing by. The driver said, "You are all welcome" and continued driving towards the destination. Suddenly, they passed by a small town and again, they became so amazed by the beautiful scenes in that place. Then, the driver stopped in a hotel, but one American tourist asked the driver if the hotel is Rancho Grande. The driver could not answer back because he is a Spanish and he does not speak English. So the American tourist asked, "*¿Dónde esta el hostel Rancho Grande?*" And so the driver answered, "Which hostel?" so the American tourist answered back, "Yes." The driver asked the American tourist, "Can you repeat my name again?" and the latter answered back, "Yes." The driver asked again, "What is it again?" and the tourist answered, "Yes." And so the driver concluded that the American tourist only knows how to speak a little Spanish Language, but he does not fully understand the language."

Preguntas (Questions) and Respuestas (Answers)

P1: *¿Qué implica la historia?* (What does the story imply?)

R1: *La historia implica una cosa, y es no alardear si no conoce todo el proceso. Al igual que en esta historia, el turista estadounidense fingió que sabía hablar español con fluidez, pero terminó sabiendo el idioma español básico. En otras palabras, él solo sabe hablar pero no sabe entender el idioma español. Como resultado, no lograron una conversación perfecta entre ellos. (The story implies one thing, and that is not to boast if you do not know the entire process. Like in this story, the American tourist pretended that he knows how to speak fluent Spanish Language but ended up knowing just basic Spanish Language. In other words, he just knows how to speak, but he does not know how to understand the Spanish Language. As a result, they did not achieve a perfect conversation with each other.)*

CHAPTER 2: An Interview With A Native Spanish Woman

(Una Entrevista Con Una Señora Nativa Española)

Another good read about Spanish Language Learning for beginners is the following chronological way of interviewing a native Spanish Lady. In this case, the author took chance to ask questions and converse with our neighbor Ms. Ximena. The interview goes like this: *(Otra buena lectura sobre el aprendizaje del idioma español para principiantes es la siguiente forma cronológica de entrevistar a una dama española nativa. En este caso, el autor aprovechó para hacer preguntas y conversar con nuestra vecina, la Sra. Ximena. La entrevista es así:)*

PHASE I (FASE I)

ENGLISH VERSION (VERSIÓN INGLESA)

- Good day, Ms. Ximena. Can I ask questions and solicit answers from you. I will be needing this for the e-book that I am finalizing.

Sure. I will be glad to answer some questions since I have already finished doing the household chores. You are just on time.

- Madame, are you both Spanish and English speaking person?

Yes. I am Spanish by birth, but an American couple raised me. But at home, we are speaking English more than Spanish.

- Can I ask about the advantages of being able to speak both American and Spanish Language?

Of course, the advantage of being able to speak dual is that in work, you will always be on top compared to other employees. In my work as a receptionist before, I could easily answer the queries of every customer. Another advantage is that you will not be considered as ignorant by other people because either way, you can speak and understand two languages, and they do not.

- How old were you when you first spoke the English Language?

The first time I spoke English was 1 year old, I guess. As I mentioned a while ago, I was raised by an English couple. That was because my biological parents died at a very young age. So, I was given to a couple who could not bear a child.

- So, it did not give you any struggle learning English?

You are right! It did not give me any difficulty because I was so young when I learned the language.

- How about learning Spanish? Did you also find it so easy to learn the language Madame?

No!!! It took me a year to learn fluent Spanish because even if I am Spanish by blood, but my adoptive parents did not teach me how to relive the Spanish Language in me.

- So, what pushed you to learn the Spanish Language?

When I learned that I am not English by blood, it created a trigger inside my heart that I need to speak Spanish because that is what I am, a Spanish lady.

- How long did it take you to learn?

It took me a year to learn fluently.

**SPANISH VERSION
(VERSION EN ESPAÑOL)**

- Buenos días, Sra. Ximena. ¿Puedo hacer preguntas y solicitar respuestas de usted? **Necesitaré esto para el libro electrónico que estoy finalizando. Por supuesto. Estaré encantado de responder algunas preguntas ya que ya he terminado de hacer las tareas del hogar. Llegas justo a tiempo.**
- Señora, ¿habla español e inglés?
Sí. Soy español de nacimiento, pero fui criado por una pareja estadounidense. Pero en casa, hablamos inglés más que español.
- ¿Puedo preguntar sobre las ventajas de poder hablar tanto el idioma americano como el español?

Por supuesto, la ventaja de poder hablar dual es que en el trabajo, siempre estará en la cima en comparación con otros empleados. En mi trabajo como recepcionista antes, podía responder fácilmente las consultas de cada cliente. Otra ventaja es que otras personas no lo considerarán ignorante porque de cualquier manera, puede hablar y comprender dos idiomas, y ellos no.

- **¿Qué edad tenías cuando hablaste inglés por primera vez? Supongo que la primera vez que hablé inglés tenía 1 año. Como mencioné hace un tiempo, fui criado por una pareja inglesa. Eso fue porque mis padres biológicos murieron a una edad muy temprana. Entonces, me dieron a una pareja que no podía tener un hijo.**
- **Entonces, ¿no te costó aprender inglés?
¡Tienes razón! No me dio ninguna dificultad porque era muy joven cuando aprendí el idioma.**
- **¿Qué tal aprender español? ¿También te resultó tan fácil aprender el idioma Madame?
¡¡¡No!!! Me tomó un año aprender español con fluidez porque, aunque soy español de sangre, mis padres adoptivos no me enseñaron cómo revivir el idioma español en mí.**
- **Entonces, ¿qué te empujó a aprender español?
Cuando supe que no soy inglés de sangre, creó un disparador dentro de mi corazón que necesito hablar español porque eso es lo que soy, una mujer española.**
- **¿Cuánto tiempo te llevó aprender?
Me tomó un año aprender con fluidez.**

PHASE II

FASE II

ENGLISH VERSION (*VERSIÓN INGLESA*)

- Now, Madame, can I ask you personal questions now?

Yes, I have already prepared myself about it.

- You said that you are not the biological daughter of your English parents. How did it happen?

Yes, I am not their biological daughter, but they have treated me like one. I am so blessed that I was adopted. My biological parents were their former nanny and driver. They were so young. So when they both died in an accident, I was left alone. Luckily, their bosses, my adoptive parents, were there.

- I am sorry to hear about it Madame, are you still willing to answer my questions which are all personal in nature?

Yes, it is fine with me. You can ask me anything under the sun.

- Okay, Madame. Do you have any sibling?

Yes, I have a sister and two brothers. But they are not my siblings by blood. They are my adoptive parents' children.

- Did they treat you well, Madame?

Yes, they did. Actually, they do treat me well until now.

- Are they English speaking too?

Yes, but unlike me, they speak fluent Spanish.

- Oh? Why Madame?

It is because they have studied at a University and they teach Spanish subjects in the school that they work in.

- Did you try to ask for their help?

Yes, they helped me learn a lot. They told me that as a beginner, I should create a personalized phrasebook. At first, I did not know the purpose of that until they told me that I will use it in the future. Then the second is that they asked me to use a flashcard, wherein the words I learned through the phrasebook are combined into phrases and sentences and are used in the conversation.

- Nice. So, what can you advice a beginner in case he finds it difficult to learn the Spanish Language?

The only advice that I want to give the beginners to learn how to love what you do. It is because even if you have the best teachers in Spanish Language, but if you have no focus on your goal, then it will all be fruitless.

SPANISH VERSION
(VERSION EN ESPAÑOL)

- Ahora, señora, ¿puedo hacerle preguntas personales ahora?
Sí, ya me he preparado al respecto.

- Dijiste que no eres la hija biológica de tus padres ingleses.
¿Como paso?

Sí, no soy su hija biológica, pero me han tratado como tal. Soy tan bendecido que fui adoptado. Mis padres biológicos eran su ex niñera y chofer. Eran muy jóvenes. Entonces, cuando ambos murieron en un accidente, me quedé solo. Afortunadamente, sus jefes, mis padres adoptivos, estaban allí.

- Lamento escucharlo, señora, ¿todavía está dispuesta a responder mis preguntas que son de naturaleza personal?

Sí, está bien conmigo. Puedes preguntarme cualquier cosa bajo el sol.

- Está bien, señora. ¿Tienes algún hermano?

Sí, tengo una hermana y dos hermanos. Pero ellos no son mis hermanos de sangre. Son los hijos de mis padres adoptivos.

- ¿Te trataron bien, señora?

Sí, lo hicieron. En realidad, me tratan bien hasta ahora.

- ¿También hablan inglés?

Sí, pero a diferencia de mí, hablan español con fluidez.

- ¿Oh? ¿Por qué madame?

Es porque han estudiado en una universidad y enseñan materias de español en la escuela en la que trabajan.

- ¿Intentaste pedir su ayuda?

Sí, me ayudaron a aprender mucho. Me dijeron que, como principiante, debería crear un libro de frases personalizado. Al principio, no sabía el propósito de eso, hasta que me dijeron que lo usaré en el futuro. Luego, el segundo es que me pidieron que usara una tarjeta de memoria flash, en la que las palabras que aprendí a través del libro de frases se combinan en frases y oraciones y se usan en la conversación.

- Agradable. Entonces, ¿qué puede aconsejar a un principiante en caso de que le resulte difícil aprender español?

El único consejo que quiero aconsejar a los principiantes es aprender a amar lo que haces. Es porque incluso si tienes los mejores maestros en español pero si no te enfocas en tu objetivo, todo será infructuoso.

PHASE III

FASE III

ENGLISH VERSION (*VERSIÓN INGLESA*)

- Madame, what is your favorite song?

My favorite song is “What a Wonderful World” by Louis Daniel Armstrong.

- How about a song in Spanish?

My favorite Spanish song is “Que Sera, Sera” by Doris Day.

- What do you prefer, color green or color blue?

Actually I do not like both.

- Why is it, Madame?

It is because I am a fanatic of the color red. I cannot trade color red with any color.

- Can you tell me Madame about your life’s goal?

Well, my life is just so simple. You can see me sweeping the floor every day, cooking sumptuous meals for my grandchildren, and visiting the grave of my parents weekly, and the grave of my biological parents monthly. I am a person who sticks in a schedule. I am a person who loves color red, and the reason behind it is probably because I see no bad in that color. It symbolizes love, intense passion, and luck. I am a person who loves children because every time I see a homeless child, I would imagine my life when I was left all alone by my parents. My passion is music. I love the music of Doris Day and Louis Daniel Armstrong. What else?

- Glad to hear all of those. But I like to know more, Madame. What would you prefer, love or family?

That is a very good question, a long time ago, I met a man who changed my life. Before, I used to be a stiff woman who does not want to marry anyone. But, one day, while I was driving home, I met a man who captured my heart. We dated for how many months, and eventually, we became sweethearts. But my family does not condone our love story. They do not want a black man to be associated with us, English family. Did you know, what did I do? What was my decision?

- Madame, do not make me think! I need to know the decision!

Okay, my decision is that I chose the man I love and started a family with him. That is why I have a family now, that is all because of him. I told myself that I wanted

to build my own family, so I chose him. We had two children who are now residing in England, and I have a lot of grandchildren from them who are staying with me. But before my parents died, I have successfully made peace between my husband and them.

**SPANISH VERSION
(VERSION EN ESPAÑOL)**

- **Madame, ¿cuál es tu canción favorita?**
Mi canción favorita es "What a Wonderful World" de Louis Daniel Armstrong.
- **¿Qué tal una canción en español?**
Mi canción favorita en español es "Que Sera, Sera" de Doris Day.
- **¿Qué prefieres, color verde o color azul?**
En realidad no me gustan los dos.
- **¿Por qué, señora?**
Es porque soy un fanático del color rojo. No puedo cambiar el color rojo con ningún color.
- **¿Me puede decir Madame sobre el objetivo de su vida?**
Bueno, mi vida es muy simple. Puedes verme barriendo el piso todos los días, cocinando suntuosas comidas para mis nietos y visitando la tumba de mis padres semanalmente y la tumba de mis padres biológicos mensualmente. Soy una persona que se apega a un horario. Soy una persona que ama el color rojo, y la razón detrás de esto es probablemente porque no veo nada malo en ese color. Simboliza el amor, la pasión intensa y la suerte. Soy una persona que ama a los niños porque cada vez que veo a un niño sin hogar, imagino mi vida cuando mis

padres me dejan solo. Mi pasión es la música. Me encanta la música de Doris Day y Louis Daniel Armstrong. ¿Qué más?

- **Me alegra escuchar todo eso. Pero me gusta saber más, señora. ¿Qué preferirías, amor o familia?**

Esa es una muy buena pregunta, hace mucho tiempo, conocí a un hombre que cambió mi vida. Antes, solía ser una mujer rígida que no quiere casarse con nadie. Pero, un día, mientras conducía a casa, conocí a un hombre que capturó mi corazón. Salimos por cuántos meses, y eventualmente nos convertimos en novios. Pero mi familia no aprueba nuestra historia de amor. No quieren que se nos asocie un hombre negro, una familia inglesa. ¿Sabías que hice? ¿Cuál fue mi decisión?

- **Señora, ¡no me hagas pensar! ¡Necesito saber la decisión!**

Bien, mi decisión es que elegí al hombre que amo y comencé una familia con él. Es por eso que ahora tengo una familia, eso es todo gracias a él. Me dije que quería construir mi propia familia, así que lo elegí. Tuvimos dos hijos que ahora residen en Inglaterra, y tengo muchos nietos de ellos que se quedan conmigo. Pero antes de que murieran mis padres, hice las paces con éxito entre mi esposo y ellos.

PHASE IV

FASE IV

ENGLISH VERSION (*VERSIÓN INGLESA*)

- **Madame, can I ask you about hypothetical questions?**

Sure, as I have told you a while ago, I am more willing to be asked certain questions.

- Just in case you will be stuck on an island, and you will not be allowed to contact anyone, what will you do?

Wow! That was a tough question, and I cannot imagine myself stuck on an island. But if I will be in that situation, I will definitely enjoy the view. The island is a beautiful place to live or to sojourn to. So, if I will be put in a situation like that, I will just enjoy it. If I will not be able to contact anyone because of the absence of phone signal, that is so fine because I am not addicted to gadgets like that. Maybe that is because of my age, and I am already a grandma.

- For example, you will be given a chance to talk to your younger self, what will you tell her?

If I will be able to talk to my younger self, I will tell her to stop being emotional. I will tell her that life may not always be good to us, but what is important is how we deal with it and how tough we become after everything. I will tell her to stop keeping grudges against people who mistreated her, people who spoke foul words against her, people whom she loved but did not love her in return.

SPANISH VERSION (VERSION EN ESPAÑOL)

- Señora, ¿puedo hacerle preguntas hipotéticas?
Claro, como te dije hace un tiempo, estoy más dispuesto a que me hagan ciertas preguntas.
- En caso de que se quede atrapado en una isla y no se le permita contactar a nadie, ¿qué hará?

¡Guauu! Esa fue una pregunta difícil y no me puedo imaginar a mí mismo atrapado en una isla. Pero si voy a estar en esa situación, definitivamente disfrutaré de la vista. La isla es un hermoso lugar para vivir o para vivir. Entonces, si me ponen en una situación como esa, lo disfrutaré. Si no podré contactar a nadie debido a la ausencia de señal telefónica, está muy bien porque no soy adicto a dispositivos como ese. Tal vez sea por mi edad, ya soy abuela.

- Por ejemplo, se le dará la oportunidad de hablar con su yo más joven, ¿qué le dirá?

CHAPTER 3: Practical Application Of Spanish Language And The Summary Of Lessons Learned From The Spanish Short Stories Discussed In Chapter I

**(Aplicación Práctica Del Lengua Española Y El
Resumen De Las Lecciones Aprendidas De Las
Historias Cortas Españolas Discutidas En El
Capítulo I.)**

In this Chapter, the students will be put to practical application of their learnings about Spanish short stories. This will be divided into two columns, the first one is English Version and the second column is its translation in Spanish Language just like the manner of presentation in the foregoing Chapter. *(En este capítulo, los estudiantes serán puestos en práctica de sus aprendizajes sobre cuentos en español. Esto se dividirá en dos columnas, la primera es la versión en inglés y la segunda columna es su traducción al español al igual que la forma de presentación en el capítulo anterior.)*

***PRACTICAL APPLICATION OF SPANISH
LANGUAGE
(APLICACIÓN PRÁCTICA DEL LENGUA
ESPAÑOLA)***

Here, you need to practice reading the Spanish Version continuously. You will notice at the end of the Chapter that you will find it easy to read a voluminous Spanish text, and your tongue will be practiced with the proper pronunciation. *(Aquí, debes practicar leyendo la versión en español continuamente. Al final del Capítulo, notará que le resultará fácil leer un voluminoso texto en español y que su lengua se practicará con la pronunciación correcta.)*

ENGLISH TEXT	SPANISH TEXT
A. EN EL AEROPUERTO (AT THE AIRPORT)	
<p>Summary: This is the story of a boy named Miguel, who was believed to be apprehended because of his bag. The sniffing dogs approached his mini-bag and continuously barked at it. So, the impression of the security officers is that there is a contraband, illegal drugs or explosive materials stored inside his mini-bag.</p> <p>Lesson: One great lesson involved in this short story is not to do anything bad or illegal. It is because if you are not doing anything bad, there is nothing</p>	<p>Resumen: Esta es la historia de un niño llamado Miguel que se cree que fue detenido por su bolso. Los perros que olfateaban se acercaron a su minibolsita y la ladraron continuamente. Entonces, la impresión de los oficiales de seguridad es que hay un contrabando, drogas ilegales o materiales explosivos almacenados dentro de su mini bolsa.</p> <p>Lección: Una gran lección involucrada en este cuento es no hacer nada malo o ilegal. Es porque si no está haciendo nada malo, no hay nada que temer, ni siquiera</p>

to be afraid of, not even any kind of searching procedure.

Another lesson is following the standard operating procedure. Here, Miguel conscientiously followed the rules imposed by the airport.

ningún tipo de procedimiento de búsqueda.

Otra lección es seguir el procedimiento operativo estándar. Aquí, Miguel siguió concienzudamente las reglas impuestas por el aeropuerto.

B. LA RATITA PRESUMIDA (THE PRESUMED LITTLE RAT)

Summary:

The story of this Spanish short story is about a very confident little mouse who finds it so good seeing suitors going home broken-hearted because she rejected them one by one. Instead of giving chance to suitors who have a good heart, she gave that big chance to the cat. But instead of preparing good food during their dinner date, it turned out that she will be the food to be eaten.

Good that her neighbor mouse came to the rescue and it turned out that he did it because he loves her. The ending is that they live

Resumen:

La historia de este cuento español es sobre un ratoncito muy confiado que lo encuentra tan bueno al ver a los pretendientes irse a casa con el corazón roto porque los rechazó uno por uno. En lugar de darle oportunidad a los pretendientes que tienen un buen corazón, ella le dio esa gran oportunidad al gato. Pero en lugar de preparar una buena comida durante la cena, resultó que ella será la comida que se comerá.

Es bueno que su ratón vecino haya venido al rescate y resultó que lo hizo porque la ama. El

happily ever after as husband and wife.

Lesson:

There are a lot of lessons to be learned in this Spanish short story. First, do not be too confident. Second and last lesson, give chance to people who have a good heart instead of people who have a good persuading style and a good look.

final es que viven felices para siempre como marido y mujer.

Lección:

Hay muchas lecciones que aprender en este cuento español. Primero, no tengas demasiada confianza. Segunda y última lección, brinde la oportunidad a las personas que tienen un buen corazón en lugar de las personas que tienen un buen estilo de persuasión y una buena apariencia.

C. LA SIGUANABA (THE SIGUANABA)

Summary:

The story of *La Siguanaba* involves a very beautiful woman who abandoned her only son and eloped with another man. The known god punished her and turned her beautiful face into an ugly one. On the other hand, her son was blessed and awarded with a youthful life.

As a form of a curse, Sihuehete was believed to be

Resumen:

La historia de *La Siguanaba* involucra a una mujer muy hermosa que abandonó a su único hijo y se fugó con otro hombre. El dios conocido la castigó y convirtió su hermoso rostro en uno feo. Por otro lado, su hijo fue bendecido y galardonado con una vida juvenil.

Como una forma de maldición, se creía que Sihuehete seducía

seducing men in the middle of the night, and when the man came near her, she will transform into a very ugly woman.

Lesson:

One huge lesson of this Spanish short story is to love one's child more than herself. Even if that child is a son or a daughter, the mother must put him or her as a priority instead of herself. No one, not even another man, must fall in an equal setting with his or her child.

a los hombres en medio de la noche, y cuando el hombre se acercara a ella, ella se transformaría en una mujer muy fea.

Lección:

Una gran lección de este cuento español es amar al hijo de uno más que a ella misma. Incluso si ese niño es un hijo o una hija, la madre debe ponerlo como una prioridad en lugar de a sí misma. Nadie, ni siquiera otro hombre, debe caer en igualdad de condiciones con su hijo.

D. CAYENDO HACIA LA TIERRA (FALLING TOWARDS EARTH)

Summary:

This is a story of a boy who was so nervous trying to imagine jumping off the plane for a sky diving experience. However, when he tried to give his trust on his instructor, he realized that jumping off the plane is one of the best decisions he has made. He

Resumen:

Esta es la historia de un niño que estaba tan nervioso tratando de imaginar saltar del avión para una experiencia de paracaidismo. Sin embargo, cuando trató de confiar en su instructor, se dio cuenta de que saltar del avión es una de las mejores decisiones que ha

could see the environment which is very much green, the view which is very scenic, the birds happily chirping, and the air slowly and sweetly touching his face.

Lesson:

One single lesson learned here is "trust." Once you put your trust on something you are doing, then expect a very good result. In this short story, the boy trusted his instructor and followed every detail or rule in sky diving. The result is he ended up enjoying the scene while flying and decided to repeat it again with friends and family.

tomado. Podía ver el entorno que es muy verde, la vista que es muy pintoresca, los pájaros cantando alegremente y el aire tocando su rostro lenta y dulcemente.

Lección:

Una sola lección aprendida aquí es "confianza". Una vez que confía en algo que está haciendo, espere un muy buen resultado. En este cuento, el niño confió en su instructor y siguió cada detalle o regla en el paracaidismo. El resultado es que terminó disfrutando de la escena mientras volaba y decidió repetirla nuevamente con amigos y familiares.

E. NO PUEDE SER POSIBLE (IT CAN'T BE POSSIBLE)

Summary:

The story involves a little boy who believed that the one he saw in the library is his father. The reason why he believes it is the fact that they look so similar. When he confronted

Resumen:

La historia trata de un niño que creía que el que vio en la biblioteca es su padre. La razón por la que él cree es el hecho de que se ven tan similares. Cuando se enfrentó a su madre, su madre

his mother, his mother clarified that he is related to that man. But, he is not his father, and she is not betraying his father. The man in the library is the brother of his father whom he is not in good terms with.

Lesson:

The lesson here is not to assume unless you have a proof to support your claim. Do not assume a fact and believe it with all your heart if you have not searched for concrete evidence to substantiate your assumption.

aclaró que él está relacionado con ese hombre. Pero, él no es su padre y ella no está traicionando a su padre. El hombre de la biblioteca es el hermano de su padre con quien no está en buenos términos.

Lección:

La lección aquí es no asumir, a menos que tenga una prueba que respalde su reclamo. No asuma un hecho y créalo con todo su corazón si no ha buscado una evidencia concreta para corroborar su suposición.

F. CIMA DEL MUNDO (TOP OF THE WORLD)

Summary:

This story involves a man who has long decided to resign from his work, and now, he is materializing it. He woke up at his comfort, prepared for work with a smile, and confronted his boss with confidence. He resigned and talked to his boss, stating

Resumen:

Esta historia involucra a un hombre que durante mucho tiempo decidió renunciar a su trabajo y ahora lo está materializando. Se despertó cómodo, se preparó para trabajar con una sonrisa y se enfrentó a su jefe con confianza. Renunció y habló con su jefe, declarando

everything that he believes to be happening, like the unfair treatment he has suffered before, and now he is making a decision of his life. As he went out of the room, he embraced freedom once again, and because of that, he becomes so happy and content.

Lesson:

The lesson here is to decide from the heart. If you do not want what is happening in your life, you have all the right to change it. Not only the right, but you have the power to change your situation. You may learn how to say “No” and consider respecting yourself because that is the most important thing.

todo lo que cree que está sucediendo, como el trato injusto que ha sufrido antes, y ahora está tomando una decisión sobre su vida. Cuando salió de la habitación, abrazó la libertad una vez más y debido a eso, se vuelve tan feliz y contento.

Lección:

La lección aquí es decidir desde el corazón. Si no quiere lo que está sucediendo en su vida, tiene todo el derecho de cambiarlo. No solo lo correcto, sino que tiene el poder de cambiar su situación. Puede aprender a decir "No" y considerar respetarse a sí mismo porque eso es lo más importante.

G. UN DIA DE SUERTE (ONE LUCKY DAY)

Summary:

The story is about a pedal taxi rider who is a believer of God. He prays hard before going to

Resumen:

La historia es sobre un conductor de taxi que cree en Dios. Ora mucho antes de ir a

work and enjoys his work. He gives praise and thanks to the Lord before starting his work. He loves seeing smiling faces from his customers, and that is the reason why people love him so much.

One day, a fast approaching car hit his pedal taxi along the intersection. People believed that he also suffered injuries because of that, but he was saved by the hard impact, causing him to be thrown away from the accident. Not even a single scratch or bruise is visible on his appearance.

People believed that it is because of luck. But more people are also non-believer of luck.

Lesson:

The lesson here is prayers can move mountains. That is not because of luck, but because of the fact that every morning before going to work, the pedal taxi rider is saying praise and thanks to the Lord.

trabajar y disfruta de su trabajo. Él alaba y agradece al Señor antes de comenzar su trabajo. Le encanta ver caras sonrientes de sus clientes, y esa es la razón por la cual la gente lo ama tanto.

Un día, un automóvil que se acercaba rápidamente golpeó su taxi a lo largo de la intersección. La gente creía que él también sufrió heridas debido a eso, pero fue salvado por el fuerte impacto, lo que lo arrojó lejos del accidente. Ni siquiera un rasguño o hematoma es visible en su apariencia.

La gente creía que era por suerte. Pero más personas tampoco creen en la suerte.

Lección:

La lección aquí es que las oraciones pueden mover montañas. Eso no es por suerte, sino por el hecho de que todas las mañanas antes de ir a trabajar, el conductor del taxi está alabando y agradeciendo al Señor.

H. LAVADORAS AFRICANAS (AFRICAN WASHING MACHINES)

Summary:

The story involves a non-African visitor in the Uganda camping site who was looking for a washer or washing machine operator for his dirty clothes. One of those clothes is his favorite shirt, which he does not want to get dirty or even slightly scratched. His friends recommended the traditional way of washing clothes in Africa, and that is the washing in the river.

At first, he was so mad because he is expecting that his shirt is already dirty and ruined. But to his surprise, the shirt is in good condition and fragrant.

Lesson:

The lesson here is to learn how to appreciate the beauty of traveling while you still have the energy, the money and the time. It is because if

Resumen:

La historia involucra a un visitante no africano en el campamento de Uganda que buscaba una lavadora o un operador de lavadora para su ropa sucia. Una de esas prendas es su camisa favorita, que no quiere ensuciarse ni rascarse. Sus amigos recomendaron la forma tradicional de lavar la ropa en África y ese es el lavado en el río.

Al principio, estaba tan enojado porque espera que su camisa ya esté sucia y arruinada. Pero para su sorpresa, la camisa está en buenas condiciones y es fragante.

Lección:

La lección aquí es aprender a apreciar la belleza de viajar mientras todavía tienes la energía, el dinero y el tiempo. Es porque si continúa

<p>you keep on postponing it, you will have a lot of time and a lot of money too, but you will no longer have the energy to explore the world.</p>	<p>posponiéndolo, tendrá mucho tiempo y mucho dinero también, pero ya no tendrá la energía para explorar el mundo.</p>
<p>I. POR QUE YO? (WHY ME)</p>	
<p>Summary: The story revolves on the comedy that happened in the life of a birthday celebrant. He was waiting for his food in a certain restaurant when he noticed a car was doubtful, so he immediately left the place. The car followed him until his house, and to his surprise, it was all a surprise for his birthday by his wife.</p> <p>Lesson: Always appreciate life by celebrating it with family and not celebrating it alone.</p>	<p>Resumen: La historia gira en torno a la comedia que sucedió en la vida de un celebrante de cumpleaños. Estaba esperando su comida en cierto restaurante, cuando notó que un auto era dudoso, por lo que inmediatamente abandonó el lugar. El auto lo siguió hasta su casa, y para su sorpresa, fue toda una sorpresa para su cumpleaños por parte de su esposa.</p> <p>Lección: Siempre aprecie la vida celebrándola con la familia y no celebrándola sola.</p>
<p>J. SI SI SI (YES YES YES)</p>	
<p>Summary: This is a very entertaining story of a Spanish-speaking driver and an American tourist</p>	<p>Resumen: Esta es una historia muy entretenida de un conductor de habla hispana y un turista</p>

who are talking to each other. At first, the American tourist was impressing the driver as he speaks the Spanish language, but when the driver started speaking Spanish, the American tourist just responded, "Yes! Yes! Yes". The driver assumed that the American tourist just pretended to be fluent in Spanish Language, but the truth is he only knows few Spanish vocabularies, but if he will be put in a conversation, there is nothing he could do but say "Yes."

Lesson:

The lesson is to be humble. There is no other substitute for being humble. People will love you for being down to earth. If you will start a conversation using a language other than your first language, then you must be prepared for a deeper conversation other than basic ones. In this story, the driver only asked basic questions, but the American

estadounidense que están hablando entre sí. Al principio, el turista estadounidense estaba impresionando al conductor mientras hablaba español, pero cuando el conductor comenzó a hablar español, el turista estadounidense simplemente respondió: "¡Sí! ¡Sí! Sí". El conductor asumió que el turista estadounidense solo pretendía hablar con fluidez el idioma español, pero la verdad es que solo conoce poco vocabulario en español, pero si se lo pone en una conversación, no hay nada que pueda hacer más que decir "Sí."

Lección:

La lección es ser humilde. No hay otro sustituto para ser humilde. La gente te amará por estar con los pies en la tierra. Si comenzará una conversación usando un idioma que no sea su primer idioma, entonces debe estar preparado para una conversación más profunda que no sea la básica. En esta historia, el conductor solo hizo preguntas

tourist cannot answer back properly and correctly.	básicas, pero el turista estadounidense no puede responder de manera correcta y correcta.
--	---

CHAPTER 4: Chronological Order In Learning Spanish Language (Orden Cronológico En El Aprendizaje Del Lengua Española)

A. KNOW THE BASIC IN SPANISH LANGUAGE (CONOZCA LO BÁSICO EN LENGUA ESPAÑOLA)

The following phrases and words are elementary to those who are expert in Spanish Language. But to beginners, these are important words to know because without them, it is difficult to start a conversation with friends. *(Las siguientes frases y palabras son elementales para los expertos en lengua española. Pero para los principiantes, estas son palabras importantes para saber porque sin ellas, es difícil comenzar una conversación con amigos.)*

Spanish Language	English Language	Sentence Use
1. Hola	Hi or Hello!	S: Hola , <i>Bienvenido a nuestra casa!</i> E: Hello, welcome to our

		house!
2. Buenos Dias	Good Morning	S: <i>Solo vine a decir buenos días !</i> E: I just came to say good morning.
3. Buenos Tardes	Good Afternoon	S: <i>¡Buenas tardes! ¿Cuál es tu almuerzo para hoy?</i> E: Good afternoon! What is your lunch for today?
4. Buenas Noches	Good Evening/Good Night	S: <i>Ya me voy a dormir! ¡Buenas noches a todos!</i> E: I am going to sleep already! Goodnight everyone!
5. ¿Cómo está usted? Como estas? (informal)	How are you?	S: <i>Hace tiempo que no te veo. ¿Cómo está usted?</i> E: I have not seen you for a

		while. How are you?
6. Muy Bien	Very well	S: <i>Mi vida esta muy bien por ahora.</i> E: My life is very well for now.
7. Me llamo	My name is...	S: <i>Sabes como me llamo ?</i> E: Do you know what my name is?
8. Por favor	Please	S: <i>Por favor, prestame tus oídos, necesito que escuches lo que voy a decir.</i> E: Please lend me your ears, I need you to listen to what I am going to say.
9. ¿Qué hora tienes? Qué hora es?	What time is it?	S: <i>Le pregunté a mi hermano qué hora es , y él respondió a las 4:00 PM.</i> E: I asked my brother what

		time is it, and he answered 4:00 PM.
10. eme! ¡Perdón	Excuse me!	S: <i>¡Perdóneme!</i> <i>Yo no comí tu pastel.</i> E: Excuse me! I did not eat your cake!

B. DO'S IN SPANISH LANGUAGE LEARNING (*ESTÁ EN APRENDIZAJE DE LENGUA ESPAÑOLA*)

After learning the basics in the Spanish Language, the next thing that must be learned is the list of things to consider: (*Después de aprender los conceptos básicos en español, lo siguiente que debe aprender es la lista de cosas a considerar:*

1. Since everyone's time is precious, consider making a very good schedule or calendar of activities.

- Spare a little time of every day and allot it in your Spanish Language learning;
- Consider what time of the day to prepare, learn, and improve one's Spanish Language.

(Dado que el tiempo de todos es valioso, considere hacer un muy buen horario o calendario de actividades.

- *Ahorre un poco de tiempo todos los días y asígnelo a su aprendizaje del idioma español;*

- *Considere esa hora del día para prepararse, aprender y mejorar el idioma español.)*

2. Watch/repeat watching movies and TV shows which the learner has already watched in the past.

- When the learner has already learned the basic of Spanish Language, then he must consider this tip. Because the learner has already finished watching that particular movie or TV show, then he must repeat watching it, but he must change the language setting of which and do not read the subtitle.

(Mire / repita viendo películas y programas de televisión que el alumno ya ha visto en el pasado.

- *Cuando el alumno ya ha aprendido lo básico del idioma español, debe considerar este consejo. Debido a que el alumno ya ha terminado de ver esa película o programa de televisión en particular, debe repetir la reproducción, pero debe cambiar la configuración del idioma y no leer el subtítulo.)*

3. Use cellular phone applications in learning new or additional Spanish vocabulary.

- The learner must at all times consider each day as a learning process. The use of handy gadget like cellular phone is one of the effective ways of learning new Spanish vocabulary.

(Usar aplicaciones de telefonía celular para aprender vocabulario español nuevo o adicional.)

- *El alumno debe considerar en todo momento cada día como un proceso de aprendizaje. El uso de dispositivos útiles como teléfonos celulares es una de las formas efectivas de aprender vocabulario nuevo en español.)*

4. Take Spanish Classes.

- Here, the learner may consider enrolling in actual Spanish classes or even online Spanish classes.

(Toma clases de español.

- *Aquí, el alumno puede considerar inscribirse en clases reales de español o incluso en clases de español en línea.)*

C. DON'TS IN SPANISH LANGUAGE LEARNING (NO HACE EN EL APRENDIZAJE DE LENGUA ESPAÑOLA)

On the other hand, there are things that must be considered once the learner is only a beginner in the learning process: *(Por otro lado, hay cosas que deben considerarse una vez que el alumno es solo un principiante en el proceso de aprendizaje:)*

1. Set a very high goal to be inspired in learning the language.

- That is not advisable more, particularly if the learner is only a beginner. What must be instilled into the minds of the learner is a reasonable goal to reach not a very high goal to be inspired. Inspiration is good, but it must

not be too high that the learner will find it very difficult to achieve.

- In setting a deadline, it must also be reasonable. Do not make a deadline that is too short of achieving. Always remember that for beginners, the more the time is given, the more he is to learn about the things that one must know in the language.

(Establezca un objetivo muy alto para inspirarse en el aprendizaje del idioma.

- *Eso no es aconsejable más particularmente si el alumno es solo un principiante. Lo que debe inculcarse en las mentes del alumno es un objetivo razonable para alcanzar un objetivo no muy alto para inspirarse. La inspiración es buena, pero no debe ser demasiado alta para que el alumno tenga dificultades para lograrla.*
- *Al establecer una fecha límite, también debe ser razonable. No establezca un plazo que sea demasiado corto para cumplir. Siempre recuerde que para los principiantes, cuanto más tiempo se le dé, más aprenderá sobre las cosas que uno debe saber en el idioma.)*

2. Be sure of everything. Do not indulge if the learner will just make a mistake.

- This is not true. Everybody makes mistakes. People are not perfect, and once the mistake is made, it must be corrected. Being afraid of making mistakes only has a possible outcome, and that is a refusal to learn.

- For instance, the learner is struggling in pronouncing a certain word. He must not be discouraged because it does not mean he cannot do it through constant practice and repetition.

(Asegúrate de todo. No permitas que el alumno se

equivoque.

- *Esto no es verdad. Todos cometen errores. Las personas no son perfectas, y una vez que se comete el error, debe corregirse. Tener miedo de cometer errores solo tiene un resultado posible, y eso es negarse a aprender.*
- *Por ejemplo, el alumno tiene dificultades para pronunciar una palabra determinada. No debe desanimarse porque no significa que no pueda hacerlo a través de la práctica y la repetición constantes.)*

CHAPTER 5: Progress Of Learning Spanish Language

(Progreso De Aprendizaje Del Lengua Española)

During the first day of Spanish Language learning, the learner, which is presumed to be a beginner, is considered as a “scavenger” of words to be placed inside the bucket of vocabulary. As to the purpose of this phase, the learner is expected to collect a lot of Spanish words and phrases that he may use in the coming future. *(Durante el primer día de aprendizaje del idioma español, el alumno, que se presume que es un principiante, es considerado como un "carroñero" de palabras que se coloca dentro del cubo del vocabulario. En cuanto al propósito de esta fase, se espera que el alumno recopile muchas palabras y frases en español que pueda usar en el futuro.)*

The best way to start is to think that he is going to introduce a lot about himself. At the end of Day 1, the learner must already be able to supplement answers in the Spanish Language to these questions, like:

- What is my name?
- Where do I live?
- What is my hobby?
- What is the nature of my work?
- Where is my workplace?

(La mejor manera de comenzar es pensar que va a presentar mucho sobre sí mismo. Al final del día 1, el alumno ya debe ser

capaz de complementar las respuestas en español a estas preguntas, como:

- *¿Cuál es mi nombre?*
- *¿Donde vivo?*
- *¿Cuál es mi pasatiempo?*
- *¿Cuál es la naturaleza de mi trabajo?*
- *¿Dónde está mi lugar de trabajo?*

It is best to learn through the use of phrasebook. The benefit of using phrasebook is correct pronunciation. For instance, the learner is not quite sure of the correct pronunciation of words and phrases stated in the phrasebook, then call a Spanish-speaking friend and clarify or double check it to him. While seeking answers to your queries, get a pen and book and state in there all the answers. *(Es mejor aprender a través del uso del libro de frases. El beneficio de usar el libro de frases es la pronunciación correcta. Por ejemplo, el alumno no está seguro de la pronunciación correcta de las palabras y frases que figuran en el libro de frases, luego llame a un amigo que hable español y aclare o vuelva a verificarlo. Mientras busca respuestas a sus consultas, obtenga un bolígrafo y un libro e indique todas las respuestas.)*

You need to continue visiting and reading your phrasebook daily. That is one effective way of exposing your attention to the Spanish Language, and slowly, you will realize that your tongue has already adapted to the language. Then the next thing that you need to do is combination of those words. Again, try to do this daily. As you go along, you will be able to practice the word combination. Finally, use the phrasebook if you want to converse with your friend. At first, you may open it while talking to them, however as time

passes by, you will find yourself being independent of the book already. *(Debe continuar visitando y leyendo su libro de frases a diario. Esa es una forma efectiva de exponer su atención al idioma español, y lentamente se dará cuenta de que su lengua ya se ha adaptado al idioma. Luego, lo siguiente que debe hacer es la combinación de esas palabras. Nuevamente, intente hacer esto diariamente. A medida que avance, podrá practicar la combinación de palabras. Finalmente, use el libro de frases si desea conversar con su amigo. Al principio, puede abrirlo mientras habla con ellos, sin embargo, a medida que pasa el tiempo, ya se encontrará independiente del libro.)*

There is one challenge to be done at the end of the week. It is difficult, but you need to do it in order to check if you have learned something for the past first week of learning Spanish Language. You need to find a native Spanish person whom you are going to talk to. It is difficult, challenging, and scary but you need to do it. You may use chatting via Skype or Facetime if you are not confident to talk to that person in flesh. Another step is talking to a native Spanish person via phonecall. You need to be confident speaking Spanish Language because you have learned enough with this method of learning. If you are already confident with your Spanish Language, you can already initiate talking to a native Spanish Language in flesh or in person. *(Hay un desafío por hacer al final de la semana. Es difícil, pero debe hacerlo para verificar si ha aprendido algo durante la última semana de aprendizaje del idioma español. Necesita encontrar una persona española nativa con quien va a hablar. Es difícil, desafiante y aterrador, pero debes hacerlo. Puede usar el chat a través de Skype o Facetime si no está seguro de hablar con esa persona en persona. Otro paso es hablar con una persona española nativa a través de una llamada*

telefónica. Debe estar seguro de hablar español porque ha aprendido lo suficiente con este método de aprendizaje. Si ya tiene confianza en su idioma español, ya puede comenzar a hablar con un idioma español nativo en persona o en persona.)

If you are already done with the foregoing step, it is recommended to look for a Spanish Language Teacher, which you may converse with. It is recommended because the teacher will tell you if you are right or wrong. However, in cases like this, it is believed that the teacher is always pricey. It is better if you will pay a considerable price because the teacher will be a patient one if you do. If you will just ask him or her to teach you without any price, you cannot demand for a patient teacher who will understand your slow Spanish speaking skill. You will never forget talking to a real person as you practice your Spanish Language skill. *(Si ya ha terminado con el paso anterior, se recomienda buscar un profesor de español, con el que pueda conversar. Se recomienda porque el maestro le dirá si tiene razón o no. Sin embargo, en casos como este, se cree que el maestro siempre es caro. Es mejor si pagará un precio considerable porque el maestro será paciente si lo hace. Si solo le pide que le enseñe sin ningún precio, no puede exigir un maestro paciente que entienda su lenta habilidad para hablar español. Nunca olvidará hablar con una persona real mientras practica su habilidad en el idioma español.)*

During week number 2, you must no longer use your phrasebook. The reason is that it is only applicable for use during the first week of learning process. The use of flashcards is the next thing that will work for your learning progress. It will be very useful in memorizing if you will use flashcards than a phrasebook. If you are financially able, you may consider web application which prompts

if you tend to forget the vocabulary you have previously memorized. You may also consider reading Spanish short stories by this time, which have been featured in Chapter I. *(Durante la semana número 2, ya no debes usar tu libro de frases. La razón es que solo es aplicable para su uso durante la primera semana del proceso de aprendizaje. El uso de flashcards es lo siguiente que funcionará para su progreso de aprendizaje. Será muy útil para memorizar si usará tarjetas de vocabulario que el libro de frases. Si tiene capacidad financiera, puede considerar la aplicación web que le indica si tiende a olvidar el vocabulario que ha memorizado previamente. También puede considerar leer cuentos en español en este momento, que se han presentado en el Capítulo I.)*

From week number 3 onwards, you must be able to talk to a Spanish person about a topic or two. Since then, you can be able to assess yourself regarding the progress of your learning Spanish Language. Just continue to practice and go back to your learnings in order not to forget the vocabulary. *(A partir de la semana número 3 en adelante, debe poder hablar con una persona española sobre un tema o dos. Desde entonces, puede evaluarse a sí mismo con respecto al progreso de su aprendizaje del idioma español. Simplemente continúe practicando y vuelva a sus aprendizajes para no olvidar el vocabulario.)*

CHAPTER 6: Conclusion

(Conclusión)

Not only Spanish Language, but learning a second language is not that easy. You need to know the relation between language and

learning. They are actually interrelated, which means that one cannot function without the other and vice versa. Language is made up of a compilation of words, vocabulary, and combination of words. On the other hand, learning involves how to properly use these words, solely for the purpose of communicating with other people. It is also prevalent for a person who is constantly speaking as a speaker. *(No solo el idioma español, sino que aprender un segundo idioma no es tan fácil. Necesitas saber la relación entre el lenguaje y el aprendizaje. En realidad, están interrelacionados, lo que significa que uno no puede funcionar sin el otro y viceversa. El lenguaje se compone de la compilación de palabras, vocabulario y combinación de palabras. Por otro lado, el aprendizaje implica cómo usar adecuadamente estas palabras, con el único fin de comunicarse con otras personas. También es frecuente para una persona que habla constantemente como orador.)*

The combination of language and learning is best enhanced through communication and constant practice. That is the main purpose of this book, which is to teach the Spanish Language learners to appreciate the language through the use of reading short stories with translation to Spanish Language. *(La combinación de lenguaje y aprendizaje se mejora mejor a través de la comunicación y la práctica constante. Ese es el objetivo principal de este libro, que es enseñar a los estudiantes de español a apreciar el idioma mediante el uso de la lectura de cuentos cortos con traducción al idioma español.)*

In the first Chapter, you witnessed a lot of stories which are captivating in the eyes of a beginner. Now, use these stories to practice and enhance your learning about a second language other than your own language of origin. *(En el primer capítulo, fue*

testigo de muchas historias que cautivan a los ojos de un principiante. Ahora, use estas historias para practicar y mejorar su aprendizaje sobre un segundo idioma que no sea su propio idioma de origen.)

In the second Chapter, the author interviewed a native Spanish lady and learned a lot from her. She said, “*no presumas español si no sabes hablar el idioma.*” That means if you do not know how to speak the language (in this case, Spanish Language), then do not assume or boast that you know it. The reason here is that if you pretend that you know how to speak Spanish Language, then the people will expect more conversation from you. A topic will not be enough if the other person wants to know more from you. Additionally, the person will stop talking to you if he is expecting that you will understand everything that will be discussed. *(En el segundo capítulo, el autor entrevistó a una señora española nativa y aprendió mucho de ella. Ella dijo: "no presumas español si no sabes hablar el idioma." Eso significa que si no sabe hablar el idioma (en este caso, el idioma español), entonces no asuma ni se jacte de que lo sabe. La razón aquí es que si finges que sabes hablar español, entonces la gente esperará más conversación tuya. Un tema no será suficiente si la otra persona quiere saber más de ti. Además, la persona dejará de hablar con usted si espera que usted entienda todo lo que se discutirá.)*

In the said Chapter, you witnessed the manner of the interview in both English and Spanish Language. Through that, at least you have pinched a hint if you will be placed in the same situation either as the interviewer or the interviewee. *(En dicho Capítulo, usted presenció la forma de la entrevista en inglés y español. A*

través de eso, al menos has dado una pista si te colocarán en la misma situación que el entrevistador o el entrevistado.)

In the third Chapter, you were tested if you have learned something out of the reading process in the immediately preceding chapter. The short stories were summarized, and lessons were also discussed one by one. The good part here is that the answers and discussions were translated into the Spanish Language purposely for the students to appreciate their goal – which is to learn Spanish Language. *(En el segundo Capítulo, usted fue evaluado si aprendió algo del proceso de lectura en el capítulo inmediatamente anterior. Se resumieron las historias cortas y las lecciones también se discutieron una por una. Lo bueno aquí es que las respuestas y las discusiones se tradujeron en español a propósito para que los estudiantes aprecien su objetivo, que es aprender el idioma español.)*

In the fourth Chapter, you were taught of the chronological order in learning the Spanish Language. It started with the process of knowing the Basic in Spanish Language, like the proper way of greeting your friend or introducing yourself. Do's and Don'ts were also discussed as part of the order. The chronological order in learning the language involves learning the basic way of greeting a boss or a friend, introducing one's self, and the next is considering making a very good schedule or calendar of activities, watching and repeat watching movies and TV shows which the student has already watched in the past, using of cellular phone applications in order to know additional words in the Spanish vocabulary, and consider also taking Spanish Classes. While you are taking the said Spanish Classes, you must not stop reading short stories and repeat them with a loud voice. By voicing it out, you will be able to

practice if you have already learned the accent of a Spanish person. *(En el tercer capítulo, se le enseñó el orden cronológico en el aprendizaje del idioma español. Comenzó con el proceso de conocer el Básico en español, como la forma correcta de saludar a tu amigo o presentarte. Qué hacer y qué no hacer también se discutieron como parte del pedido. El orden cronológico en el aprendizaje del idioma implica aprender la forma básica de saludar a un jefe o un amigo, presentarse, y el siguiente es considerar hacer un muy buen horario o calendario de actividades, ver y repetir ver películas y programas de televisión que el estudiante ya ha visto en el pasado, el uso de aplicaciones de teléfonos celulares para conocer palabras adicionales en el vocabulario español, y considerar también tomar clases de español. Mientras esté tomando dichas clases de español, no debe dejar de leer cuentos y repetirlo en voz alta. Al expresarlo, podrás practicar si ya has aprendido el acento de una persona española.)*

In the fifth Chapter, you were taught of the progress of learning the Spanish Language. First is becoming like a scavenger, who is so hungry for words. You may use a lot of methods in order to collect words to be added in your vocabulary. You may also consider using the so called phrasebook, which may be personalized. You may consider it, and use it daily by writing a lot of Spanish words. Remember that it is not used to memorize the vocabulary, but it is just a good source of help if you want to collect words about Spanish origin, and you are in your beginner or elementary stage still. During the end of the first week, it must be noted that you are expected to talk to a stranger who is a native Spanish person. Talk about anything under the sun, introduce yourself, say “Hi,” and then smile. During the second week, you are expected to open up a topic or two, and then discuss it with that person. However, this

book suggests that you should talk to a teacher, a Spanish teacher in particular. The reason is that you will be treated with a high degree of patience if you still speak slowly since Spanish is not an easy language to learn from. *(En el cuarto capítulo, se le enseñó el progreso del aprendizaje del idioma español. Primero se está volviendo como un carroñero, que tiene tanta hambre de palabras. Puede utilizar muchos métodos para recopilar palabras que se agregarán a su vocabulario. También puede considerar usar el llamado libro de frases, que puede ser personalizado. Puede considerarlo y usarlo diariamente escribiendo muchas palabras en español. Recuerde que no se utiliza para memorizar el vocabulario, pero es una buena fuente de ayuda si desea recopilar palabras sobre el origen español, y todavía está en su etapa de principiante o primaria. Durante el final de la primera semana, debe tenerse en cuenta que se espera que hable con un extraño que es una persona española nativa. Hable sobre cualquier cosa bajo el sol, preséntese, diga "Hola" y luego sonría. Durante la segunda semana, se espera que abra uno o dos temas y luego lo discuta con esa persona. Sin embargo, este libro sugiere que deberías hablar con un maestro, un maestro de español en particular. La razón es que será tratado con un alto grado de paciencia si aún habla despacio, ya que el español no es un idioma fácil de aprender.)*

Remember that using phrasebook is not advisable if you are already in the second week of learning or onwards. It is because you cannot be helped by this book in memorizing your Spanish vocabulary. What it can do is just to help you recall the words you collected in your vocabulary. The best way of helping yourself memorize the words and its combination is through flashcards. You may opt to make a personalized flashcards or a cellular phone application which prompts you if you tend to forget the words you

should have known since day one. *(Recuerde que el uso del libro de frases no es aconsejable si ya está en la segunda semana de aprendizaje o en adelante. Es porque este libro no puede ayudarlo a memorizar su vocabulario en español. Lo que puede hacer es ayudarlo a recordar las palabras que recopiló en su vocabulario. La mejor manera de ayudarte a memorizar las palabras y su combinación es a través de tarjetas de vocabulario. Puede optar por hacer una tarjeta de memoria personalizada o una aplicación de teléfono celular que le indique si tiende a olvidar las palabras que debería haber sabido desde el primer día.)*

Lastly, remember to love what you do. In everything that you do, put your heart on it, and you will surely succeed and get a favorable decision after all the efforts exerted. *(Por último, recuerda amar lo que haces. En todo lo que haga, ponga su corazón en ello y seguramente tendrá éxito y obtendrá una decisión favorable después de todos los esfuerzos realizados.)*

CHAPTER 7: Additional Tips On How To Learn Spanish Language For Beginners The Easiest Way Possible

**(Consejos Adicionales Sobre Cómo Aprender
Lengua Española Para Principiantes De La
Manera Más Fácil Posible)**

A. CONSIDERING THE BRAIN ACTIVITY OF THE LEARNER

***(CONSIDERANDO LA ACTIVIDAD
CEREBRAL DEL APRENDIZAJE)***

The learning process varies from one person to another. Some people are fast-learners, others are slow ones. It is because there are people who are intelligent and there are also those who are average when it comes to intellectual faculties. You may grasp a certain topic easily, while other people could hardly grasp the topic at all. *(El proceso de aprendizaje varía de una persona a otra. Algunas personas aprenden rápido, otras son lentas. Es porque hay personas que son inteligentes y también hay personas que son promedio cuando se trata de facultades intelectuales. Puede comprender un determinado tema fácilmente, mientras que otras personas difícilmente podrían comprenderlo en absoluto.)*

Intelligence has been understood as the ability of one person to grasp knowledge and information and the ability to reason out and

understand the topic given to him. Have you asked yourself as to why a person's intelligence and learning process vary differently? The reasons are so many, and they may be as many as a sand in the ocean. *(La inteligencia se ha entendido como la capacidad de una persona para captar el conocimiento y la información y la capacidad de razonar y comprender el tema que se le ha dado. ¿Te has preguntado por qué el proceso de inteligencia y aprendizaje de una persona varía de manera diferente? Las razones son muchas, y pueden ser tantas como una arena en el océano.)*

First, one reason why intelligence varies from person to person is their mental capacity. If you are listening to your Science teacher before, you have realized and learned that the size of a brain is connected with one's intelligence. But through researches which came after our lessons about Science, it was explained that it is not the size of the brain but instead, the folds of the lobes in the forebrain that determine one's intelligence. One good example of this is Plato, which has a smaller brain than the ordinary human. On the other hand, Albert Einstein also has an average-sized brain compared to the usual brain of a human being. You can see the folds in the lobes of the forebrain through MRI and through that, you can study the activity of the brains. *(Primero, una razón por la cual la inteligencia varía de persona a persona es su capacidad mental. Si ya está escuchando a su maestro de Ciencias, se habrá dado cuenta y habrá aprendido que el tamaño de un cerebro está conectado con la inteligencia de uno. Pero a través de investigaciones que surgieron después de nuestras lecciones sobre ciencia, se explicó que no es el tamaño del cerebro sino los pliegues de los lóbulos en el cerebro anterior lo que determina la inteligencia de uno. Un buen ejemplo de esto es Platón, que tiene un cerebro más pequeño que el humano común. Por otro lado,*

Albert Einstein también tiene un cerebro de tamaño promedio en comparación con el cerebro habitual de un ser humano. Puede ver los pliegues en los lóbulos del cerebro anterior a través de la resonancia magnética y, a través de eso, puede estudiar la actividad de los cerebros.)

Second probable reason why learning and intelligence vary from person to person is their genetic attribute. Humans are different from one another because not even twins are considered to be totally the same or identical. Just like our brains, no two people have identical brains. For example, the child's parents are intelligent, it would likely appear that the child is also intelligent. Their intelligence is being passed from their generation to the generation of their children. However, have you been wondering why two siblings have different intelligence, one may be smarter than the other? It is because of their different genetic make-up. *(La segunda razón probable por la cual el aprendizaje y la inteligencia varían de persona a persona es su atributo genético. Los humanos son diferentes entre sí porque ni siquiera los gemelos se consideran totalmente iguales o idénticos. Al igual que nuestros cerebros, no hay dos personas que tengan cerebros idénticos. Por ejemplo, los padres del niño son inteligentes, probablemente parezca que el niño también es inteligente. Su inteligencia se transmite de generación en generación a sus hijos. Sin embargo, ¿se ha estado preguntando por qué dos hermanos tienen inteligencia diferente, uno puede ser más inteligente que el otro? Es debido a su diferente composición genética.)*

Third probable reason is environmental influence. Again, the size of the brain of a person has the effect on his intelligence. During the formidable years of a child, his brain gradually increases and as

it gets bigger, the child becomes more intelligent. The formidable years of a child involves the first five years of himself after birth. In this stage, there are a lot of factors affecting their brain development leading to either higher or lower intelligence. These factors are the following: The place where the child is being raised, the proper way of treating the child, even their family's lifestyle, and the educational background of a child. *(La tercera razón probable es la influencia ambiental. Nuevamente, el tamaño del cerebro de una persona tiene el efecto en su inteligencia. Durante los años formidables de un niño, su cerebro aumenta gradualmente y a medida que crece, el niño se vuelve más inteligente. Los años formidables de un niño implican los primeros cinco años de sí mismo después del nacimiento. En esta etapa, hay muchos factores que afectan su desarrollo cerebral que conducen a una inteligencia más alta o más baja. Estos factores son los siguientes: el lugar donde se cría al niño, la forma adecuada de tratarlo, incluso el estilo de vida de su familia y los antecedentes educativos de un niño.)*

The place or location where the child is being raised is one factor affecting his intelligence. The place may be the country and its norms. Sometimes, the tradition of that country affects the child's brain development and how they think in the future. For example, the child was raised in a liberated country; then, when he grows up, there is a strong chance that he will also think liberally. *(El lugar o ubicación donde se cría al niño es un factor que afecta su inteligencia. El lugar puede ser el país y sus normas. A veces, la tradición de ese país afecta el desarrollo del cerebro del niño y cómo piensa en el futuro. Por ejemplo, el niño fue criado en un país liberado, luego, cuando crezca, existe una gran posibilidad de que también piense liberalmente.)*

The proper way of treating the child also has an effect on him. For example, the child's parents are not good examples or good models for their child, then the child's brain development will also be affected. Say, for instance. The mother is a prostitute then the father is a drunkard; there is a strong possibility that the child will end up growing as a loud and a drunkard too. *(La forma correcta de tratar al niño también tiene un efecto en él. Por ejemplo, los padres del niño no son buenos ejemplos o buenos modelos para su hijo, entonces el desarrollo del cerebro del niño también se verá afectado. Digamos, por ejemplo, que la madre es una prostituta, el padre es un borracho, existe una gran posibilidad de que el niño termine creciendo como un ruidoso y un borracho también.)*

The family's lifestyle, be it poverty or richness, also has a strong effect on the brain development of a child. There were children who grow up to be more intelligent if they are poor rather than when they are rich. It is probably because poor children were taught to give more importance to education because they do not have enough money to support his education. *(El estilo de vida de la familia, ya sea pobreza o riqueza, también tiene un fuerte efecto en el desarrollo cerebral de un niño. Hubo niños que crecieron para ser más inteligentes si son pobres en lugar de cuando son ricos. Probablemente se deba a que a los niños pobres se les enseñó a dar más importancia a la educación porque no tienen suficiente dinero para mantener su educación.)*

Lastly, their educational background affects the child. For example, in a family of doctors, there is a great chance that the child will also be a doctor when he grows up. Like in other professions, the work of one's parents have an effect on the child as to what course to take in College. *(Por último, su formación académica afecta al*

niño. Por ejemplo, en una familia de médicos, existe una gran posibilidad de que el niño también sea médico cuando crezca. Al igual que en otras profesiones, el trabajo de los padres tiene un efecto en el niño sobre qué curso tomar en la universidad.)

**B. TIME
FRAME IN LEARNING HOW TO
SPEAK AND UNDERSTAND SPANISH
LANGUAGE FOR BEGINNERS**

***(MARCO DE TIEMPO PARA APRENDER
CÓMO HABLAR Y ENTENDER EL LENGUA
ESPAÑOLA PARA PRINCIPIANTES)***

Ordinarily, the formal Spanish Language learning would take approximately one year in order for a person to fluently speak and understand Spanish Language. Here are some tips that you would consider if you are learning Spanish Language on your own: *(Por lo general, el aprendizaje formal del idioma español tomaría aproximadamente un año para que una persona hable y entienda con fluidez el idioma español. Aquí hay algunos consejos que consideraría si está aprendiendo español por su cuenta:)*

The first one is motivation. Sometimes, you will become courageous in life because you have an aim to achieve. Through that motivation, you will understand that the thing you thought was a problem had become a good motivator for you to take life seriously. For instance, why do you want to learn the Spanish Language? One of the reasons given by people learning Spanish Language is that because they will use it in their work. Spanish

knowledge is a requirement for a particular person to qualify for a position. If you are motivated, you will have that drive to reach that goal of yours. *(El primero es la motivación. A veces, serás valiente en la vida porque tienes un objetivo que alcanzar. A través de esa motivación, comprenderá que lo que creía que era un problema se ha convertido en un buen motivador para tomarse la vida en serio. Por ejemplo, ¿por qué quieres aprender español? Una de las razones dadas por las personas que aprenden español es porque lo usarán en su trabajo. El conocimiento del español es un requisito para que una persona en particular califique para un puesto. Si está motivado, tendrá ese impulso para alcanzar ese objetivo suyo.)*

Another one is the focus. If you are learning the language other than your language at birth, then you should give a hundred percent of focus because, without it, you will only waste your time. Even if how interested you are to learn the language; if you keep on taking it lightly, then you will earn nothing from it. You have to take things seriously in order for you to learn Spanish Language the easiest way possible. *(Otro es el foco. Si está aprendiendo un idioma que no es su idioma al nacer, entonces debe concentrarse cien por ciento porque sin él, solo perderá su tiempo. Incluso si estás interesado en aprender el idioma, si sigues tomándolo a la ligera, no ganarás nada con él. Tienes que tomar las cosas en serio para poder aprender español de la manera más fácil posible.)*

One more tip in order to learn Spanish Language easily is time. You need to create a schedule of Spanish short story reading, which must be daily. Focus on your phrasebook and read it everyday. From that day on, you will be able to familiarize yourself with the Spanish vocabulary. *(Un consejo más para aprender español*

fácilmente es el tiempo. Debe crear un horario de lectura de cuentos en español, que debe ser diario. Concéntrese en su libro de frases y léalo todos los días. A partir de ese día, podrás familiarizarte con el vocabulario español.)

C. LEARNING THE ATTITUDE OF SPANISH PEOPLE

(APRENDER LA ACTITUD DE LAS PERSONAS ESPAÑOLAS)

The next step after the phrasebook and flashcards is the process of conversing with a Spanish person, a Spanish speaking person, or a Spanish Subject Teacher. That is the reason why you need to understand and learn the attitude of Spanish people just for the purpose of preparing yourself for a long conversation. If the person you are talking to is not that friendly, then you cannot sustain the conversation. *(El siguiente paso después del libro de frases y las tarjetas de vocabulario es el proceso de conversar con una persona española, una persona que habla español o un maestro de español. Esa es la razón por la que necesita comprender y aprender la actitud de los españoles solo con el fin de prepararse para una larga conversación. Si la persona con la que está hablando no es tan amigable, entonces no puede mantener la conversación.)*

The truth is that Spanish people are naturally friendly and will give you a warm welcome if you are new to their place. However, these people are easily irritated by their visitors. There are visitors who did some unwanted things which make these Spanish people do things which are opposite to being friendly. They may raise their brows and other similar things. One example of these is that

Spanish people do not like shaking hands; they kiss each other's cheeks as a form of respect. *(La verdad es que los españoles son amigables por naturaleza y te darán una cálida bienvenida si eres nuevo en su lugar. Sin embargo, estas personas se irritan fácilmente por sus visitantes. Hay visitantes que hicieron cosas no deseadas que hacen que estos españoles hagan cosas opuestas a ser amigables. Pueden levantar las cejas y otras cosas similares. Un ejemplo de esto es que a los españoles no les gusta darse la mano, se besan las mejillas como una forma de respeto.)*

Another one, Spanish, usually have a long siesta after eating lunch. That is the reason why there is a misconception that Spanish people are lazy group of people. Actually, they are not; they are just fond of having long siesta. *(Otro, los españoles suelen tener una larga siesta después de almorzar. Esa es la razón por la cual existe una idea errónea de que los españoles son un grupo de personas perezoso. En realidad no lo son, simplemente les gusta tener una larga siesta.)*

Also, when it comes to going out of their houses for work, they usually leave the house late. That is one of the aspects of a Spanish person. They are not used to waking up early and leaving the house early. If they do it, they will only have an unproductive day. They will yawn all day, and they will think of sleeping all day. *(Además, cuando se trata de salir de sus casas por trabajo, generalmente salen tarde de la casa. Ese es uno de los aspectos de una persona española. No están acostumbrados a levantarse temprano y salir temprano de la casa. Si lo hacen, solo tendrán un día improductivo. Bostezarán todo el día y pensarán en dormir todo el día.)*

Are Spanish people rude? No, they are not. They also consider their private place as sacred. You will enter it if you are trusted. Another one, Spanish people are touchy and would usually talk to you so closely. That is normal for Spanish people. They do not shake hands. Instead, they kiss the cheeks of the person they are greeting. Usually, the kiss would be from cheek to cheek. (*¿Son groseros los españoles? No, ellos no son. También consideran su lugar privado como sagrado. Lo ingresarás si eres de confianza. Otro, los españoles son sensibles y por lo general te hablan muy de cerca. Eso es normal para los españoles. No se dan la mano, sino que besan las mejillas de la persona que están saludando. Por lo general, el beso sería de mejilla a mejilla.*)

Other common attitudes of Spanish people are courteous, tardy (like what was mentioned a while ago), jealous, possessive, passionate, short-tempered, hospitable and lazy (like what was also mentioned in the abovementioned discussion). Although they are considered as rude by some, Spanish people are actually courteous. They respect the elderly and their spouses. Actually, researches say that most of the Spanish people do not have concubines. Although the women are even more prone to having paramours. (*Otras actitudes comunes de los españoles son corteses, tardías (como lo que se mencionó hace un tiempo), celosas, posesivas, apasionadas, de mal genio, hospitalarias y flojas (como lo que también se mencionó en la discusión mencionada anteriormente). Aunque algunos los consideran groseros, los españoles en realidad son corteses. Respetan a los ancianos y sus cónyuges. En realidad, las investigaciones dicen que la mayoría de los españoles no tienen concubinas. Aunque las mujeres son aún más propensas a tener amantes.*)

Another not so good trait of a Spanish person is that they usually fall in love (or actually not, they are just sexually attractive) with a blood relative. Just like in Chinese culture, they are prone to having an unwanted relationship with a relative. But unlike Chinese culture, that relationship is not for the purpose of fencing their wealth altogether, but for the purpose of sexual fantasies. *(Otro rasgo no tan bueno de una persona española es que generalmente se enamoran (o en realidad no, solo son sexualmente atractivos) con un pariente de sangre. Al igual que en la cultura china, son propensos a tener relaciones no deseadas con un pariente. Pero sin relacionar la cultura china, esa relación no tiene el propósito de cercar su riqueza por completo, sino el propósito de las fantasías sexuales.)*

But even if they are considered as rude, there is no single record that Spanish people created a non-friendly relation with other countries. While they are not considered a threat to the peace of other countries, but they are racists. That means that they do not want certain people or races to stay in their country. Two of those races are the Arabs and the North Africans. On the other hand, they love and adore the Portuguese people. When you are invited by Spanish people to enter their country, you must be very lucky. However, that is not true at all times because if one Spanish person invites an alien that is because of business and not because of friendly purposes. *(Pero incluso si se consideran groseros, no existe un registro único de que los españoles hayan creado una relación no amistosa con otros países. Si bien no se consideran una amenaza para la paz de otros países, son racistas. Eso significa que no quieren que ciertas personas o razas se queden en su país. Dos de esas razas son los árabes y los africanos del norte. Por otro lado, aman y adoran a los portugueses. Cuando los españoles te*

invitan a entrar en su país, debes ser muy afortunado. Sin embargo, eso no es cierto en todo momento porque si una persona española invita a un extranjero por motivos comerciales y no por motivos amistosos.)

Those are the traits of Spanish people which you must know before you approach them and start a conversation with them. Remember what they like and what they do not like. They love kissing and not shaking hands, they are kind of lazy in the morning, and they are active at night. Yes, you have read it right! They are very much active at night, but they are sleeping in the morning. Give them their personal space, and you will not get into trouble. So if you are planning to initiate a conversation with the Spanish people, you better talk to them at night and over a bottle of whisky or rum. They are not actually drunkards, but they love drinking liquor and having chit-chats with their friends. *(Esos son los rasgos de los españoles que debes conocer antes de acercarte a ellos y comenzar una conversación con ellos. Recuerde lo que les gusta y lo que no les gusta. Les encanta besar y no darse la mano, son un poco flojos por la mañana y están activos por la noche. ¡Sí, lo has leído bien! Son muy activos por la noche pero duermen por la mañana. Déles su espacio personal y no se meterá en problemas. Entonces, si planea iniciar una conversación con los españoles, es mejor que hable con ellos por la noche y con una botella de whisky o ron. En realidad no son borrachos, pero les encanta beber licor y tener charlas con sus amigos.)*

Spanish people also are usually well-off in life. They enjoy their lifestyle much than Americans. They give importance to social status and family life. They are also loud, they are liberated, and they enjoy partying more than Americans do. When it comes to

family, its concept is more tangible compared to other races. They give more preference to daughters compared to sons. Unlike in Australian culture wherein sons and daughters reaching eighteen years of age, Spanish eighteen-aged people are still living in the house of their parents more particularly if they are ladies. They take care of ladies more than men. *(Los españoles también suelen ser acomodados en la vida. Disfrutan de su estilo de vida mucho más que los estadounidenses. Dan importancia al estatus social y a la vida familiar. También son ruidosos, están liberados y disfrutan más de la fiesta que los estadounidenses. Cuando se trata de familia, su concepto es más tangible en comparación con otras razas. Dan más preferencia a las hijas que a los hijos. A diferencia de la cultura australiana en la que los hijos y las hijas alcanzan los dieciocho años, los españoles de dieciocho años todavía viven en la casa de sus padres, especialmente si son mujeres. Cuidan más a las damas que a los hombres.)*

As mentioned a while ago, Spanish people are usually jealous ones. Yes, that is true. Spanish people do not like to be cheated on. If they catch their partners cheating on them, they will definitely initiate break-up or divorce. It is also mentioned in the abovementioned discussion that men are more faithful than women in Spain, so that means they love harder compared to women. That is the reason why they do not want to be cheated on. They feel they deserve respect and love, which is unconditional because they love truthfully. They do not want to be cheated on because they believe they do not deserve it. They are also possessive, which means their property, their partners, and their wealth are kept privately. Another one is that Spanish people are very private in life. They are not also expressive of their love in public. Yes, they are touchy and close when talking to you, but they are not expressive of their love. That

is the difference between Spanish people compared to Australian people. The latter are more expressive. They buy expensive gifts for their wives and kids but for Spanish people. They just prepare food for you. They just wash your clothes, iron your pants and skirts, send you to your work and fetch you thereafter. In other words, the Spanish people are showing their love through action and not through expensive gifts. *(Como se mencionó hace un tiempo, los españoles suelen ser celosos. Si eso es verdad. A los españoles no les gusta que los engañen. Si descubren que sus parejas los engañan, definitivamente iniciarán la ruptura o el divorcio. También se menciona en la discusión antes mencionada que los hombres son más fieles que las mujeres en España, lo que significa que aman más que las mujeres. Esa es la razón por la que no quieren ser engañados. Sienten que merecen respeto y amor, lo cual es incondicional porque aman con sinceridad. No quieren ser engañados porque creen que no lo merecen. También son posesivos, lo que significa que su propiedad, sus socios y su riqueza se mantienen en privado. Otra es que los españoles son muy privados en la vida. No son también expresivos de su amor en público. Sí, son sensibles y cercanos cuando te hablan, pero no expresan su amor. Esa es la diferencia entre los españoles y los australianos. Los últimos son más expresivos. Compran regalos caros para sus esposas e hijos, pero para los españoles, solo preparan comida para usted, simplemente lavan su ropa, planchan sus pantalones y faldas, lo envían a su trabajo y lo buscan a partir de entonces. En otras palabras, los españoles muestran su amor a través de la acción y no a través de regalos caros.)*

One last topic that you need to know is how Spanish wants to be respected. They want not to be disturbed when it comes to taking their siesta. The sacred hour that must be respected about them is

from two to five o'clock in the afternoon. Just after their lunch time, they need to recharge so that they have a lot of time in the evening to party and talk about business. So if you are planning to initiate a good conversation with them, approach them not on these hours because you will get either a napping conversation partner or an angry one. It is a cliché that you must choose to disturb a drunk person rather than a person who lacks sleep. *(Un último tema que debe saber es cómo quiere ser respetado el español. Quieren no ser molestados cuando se trata de tomar su siesta. La hora sagrada que debe respetarse acerca de ellos es de las dos a las cinco de la tarde. Justo después de la hora del almuerzo, necesitan recargarse para tener mucho tiempo en la noche para divertirse y hablar de negocios. Entonces, si planeas iniciar una buena conversación con ellos, acércate a ellos no en estas horas porque obtendrás un compañero de conversación para la siesta o uno enojado. Es un cliché que debes elegir molestar a una persona borracha en lugar de a una persona que carece de sueño.)*

CHAPTER 8: The Aftermath

(La Tarde)

After learning much from this book, the author wants you to practice these steps as a form of post-test and so that you can be able to learn even after finishing these Eight Chapter Book. Here it is:

- First, the author wants you to find a Spanish Teacher. It is preferred that you do not know that person;
- Second, consider opening a topic that will fit you and will create enthusiasm on the part of the other person;
- The third is introducing yourself to that person in such a way that he will understand your Spanish Language;
- Fourth is make yourself comfortable;
- Fifth, make your partner comfortable too;
- Sixth, consider bringing a glass of wine or any liquor of his preference;
- Seventh, give him a kiss on both cheeks and do not shake hands with them;
- Eighth, be frank with your questions but maintain a smiling face;
- Ninth, do not forget to say a closing statement;
- Tenth, say good bye and promise to be back again for another set of conversation

(Después de aprender mucho de este libro, el autor quiere que practique estos pasos como una forma de prueba posterior y para que pueda aprender incluso después de terminar este Libro de ocho capítulos. Aquí está:

- *Primero, el autor quiere que encuentres un maestro de español. Se prefiere que no conozca a esa persona;*
- *Segundo, considere abrir un tema que se ajuste a usted y que genere entusiasmo por parte de la otra persona;*
 - *Tercero es presentarte a esa persona de tal manera que entienda tu idioma español;*
 - *Cuarto es ponerse cómodo;*
 - *Quinto, haga que su pareja también se sienta cómoda;*
 - *Sexto, considere traer una copa de vino o cualquier licor de su preferencia;*
 - *Séptimo, dale un beso en ambas mejillas y no le des la mano;*
 - *Octavo, sé franco con tus preguntas pero mantén una cara sonriente;*
 - *Noveno, no te olvides de decir una declaración final;*
 - *Décimo, di adiós y promete volver para otra conversación.)*

The author congratulates you for finishing this voluminous book, and expect that within a few months and a maximum of one year, you will already be considered as the fluent in the Spanish Language. *(El autor lo felicita por terminar este voluminoso libro, y espera que dentro de unos meses y un máximo de un año, ya sea considerado como un fluido en español.)*